

NEW

Sachhoc.com  
mind  
map

E N G L I S H  
G R A M M A R

ĐỘT PHÁ MIND MAP  
NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH



TRƯỜNG THÀNH

ĐỘT PHÁ MIND MAP  
NGỮ PHÁP  
TIẾNG ANH

LƯU HÀNH NỘI BỘ



# LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Các bạn thân mến!

- Trong xu thế phát triển xã hội và hội nhập kinh tế toàn cầu, tiếng Anh ngày càng trở lên quan trọng và cần thiết hơn bao giờ hết. Tuy nhiên, ngôn ngữ là một phạm trù rất rộng nên việc thông thạo một ngoại ngữ đòi hỏi người học phải kiên trì, quyết tâm và đặc biệt là có phương pháp học tập hiệu quả. Với bất cứ ai khi học tiếng Anh đều gặp phải những khó khăn nhất định, như cách để nắm được các mảng ngữ pháp tiếng Anh, cách vận dụng cấu trúc tiếng Anh linh hoạt trong từng tình huống cụ thể, cách ghi nhớ từ vựng và dùng đúng từ theo ngữ cảnh của câu... Tất cả những bí quyết đó được trình bày một cách chi tiết, cẩn thận, logic và khoa học trong cuốn sách mà các bạn đang cầm trên tay **“ĐỘT PHÁ MIND MAP NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH”**

- Cuốn sách **“ĐỘT PHÁ MIND MAP NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH”** gồm 28 chuyên đề mỗi chuyên đề ứng với 1 mục ngữ pháp mỗi phần là một phạm trù kiến thức trong tiếng Anh được trình bày một cách ngắn gọn, đơn giản, cô đọng và hệ thống hoá dưới dạng sơ đồ, bảng biểu nhằm phát triển khả năng tư duy của người học và từ đó giúp người học nhớ kiến thức nhanh hơn và sâu hơn. Sau hầu hết các phần lý thuyết đều có 100 đến 200 câu bài tập áp dụng bao gồm trắc nghiệm và tự luận để kiểm tra cũng như khắc sâu kiến thức cho người học. Tuy dày nhưng cuốn sách lại có thể bao trọn toàn bộ kiến thức từ đơn giản đến phức tạp cộng với cách tận dụng tối đa và áp dụng triệt để cách học tiếng Anh bằng sơ đồ tư duy. Tôi hi vọng cuốn sách này sẽ trở thành cẩm nang hữu ích trong lộ trình đạt tới sự thông thạo ngôn ngữ của người học.

## ❖ CÁC ĐỐI TƯỢNG NÊN DÙNG SÁCH

- Học sinh, sinh viên, giáo viên tham khảo
- Luyện thi các chứng chỉ , IELTS, TOEIC...
- Đặc biệt thích hợp cho các bạn Học sinh luyện thi vào 10, THPT Quốc gia, Ôn Chuyên, Học sinh năng khiếu.
- Tôi tin rằng khi cầm trên tay **“ĐỘT PHÁ MIND MAP NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH”** các bạn sẽ vững bước, đạt nhiều thành tích cao trong học tập rèn luyện.
- Mặc dù đã vô cùng tâm huyết khi biên soạn nhưng không thể không mất phải những thiếu sót mong sự góp ý chân thành từ quý thầy cô, các em học sinh.
- Hãy gửi phản hồi về hòm thư : [trantruongthanh3237906@gmail.com](mailto:trantruongthanh3237906@gmail.com)

*Tác giả*  
*Trần Trường Thành*



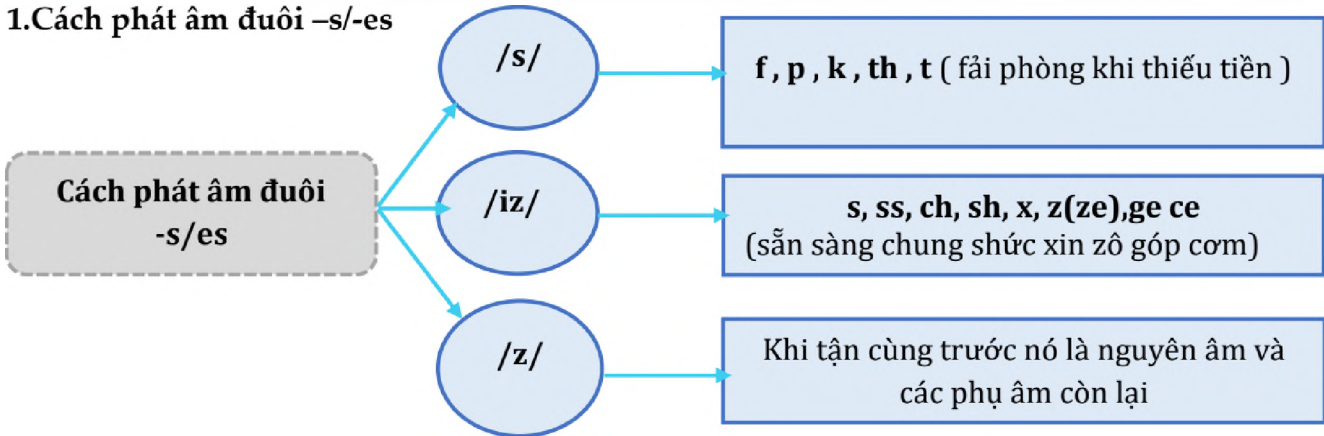
# MỤC LỤC

	SỐ TRANG
PHẦN I : HỆ THỐNG CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP CHUYÊN ĐỀ	
MODULE 01 : PHONETICS	5
MODULE 02 : VERB TENSES	15
MODULE 03 : THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES	24
MODULE 04 : SUBJECT AND VERB AGREEMENTS	30
MODULE 05 : MODAL VERBS	37
MODULE 06 : THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	49
MODULE 07 : GERUND AND INFINITIVE VERBS	60
MODULE 08 : TAG QUESTIONS	73
MODULE 09 : COMPARISONS	85
MODULE 10 : ARTICLES	99
MODULE 11 : WORD FORMATION	108
MODULE 12 : EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY	119
MODULE 13 : PASSIVE VOICES	120
MODULE 14 : CONDITIONAL SENTENCE AND WISHES	145
MODULE 15 : REPORTED SPEECH	161
MODULE 16 : RELATIVE CLAUSES	182
MODULE 17 : PHRASE AND CLAUSE	193
MODULE 18 : INVERSION	212
MODULE 19 : CONJUNCTIONS	223
MODULE 20 : PREPOSITIONS	241
MODULE 21 : PHRASAL VERBS	255
MODULE 22 : IDIOMS	275
MODULE 23 : COLLOCATIONS	288
MODULE 24 : CONFUSING WORDS	302
MODULE 25 : COMMUNICATION SKILLS	317
MODULE 26 : EMPHATIC	334
MODULE 27 : ERROR IDENTIFICATION	342
MODULE 28 : OTHER STRUCTURES	353
TỔNG ÔN NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 01	362
TỔNG ÔN NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 02	365
TỔNG ÔN NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 03	368
PHẦN II : ĐÁP ÁN	372

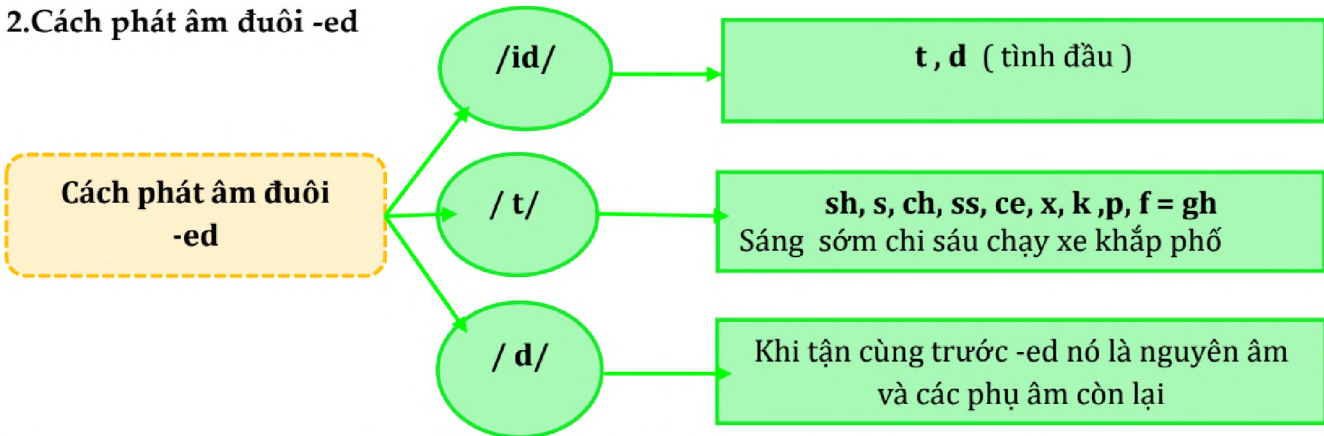
A. PHÁT ÂM TRONG TIẾNG ANH

I. CÁCH PHÁT ÂM ĐUÔI -S/-ES/-ED

1. Cách phát âm đuôi -s/-es



2. Cách phát âm đuôi -ed



LƯU Ý KHI PHÁT ÂM ĐUÔI S/ES

- Khi thêm s, có một số từ thay đổi cách phát âm : say => says/seɪz/, do => does/dəʊz/
- Khi th phát âm là / θ / thì s/es mới phát âm là /s/ như baths, breaths, cloths...
- Khi th phát âm là / ð / thì s/es phát âm là /z/ như breathes, cloths, clothes, bathes,...
- Khi gh phát âm là / f / thì s phát âm là /s/ như laughs, coughs,...
- Khi gh là âm câm thì s phát âm là /z/ như ploughs, weighs...

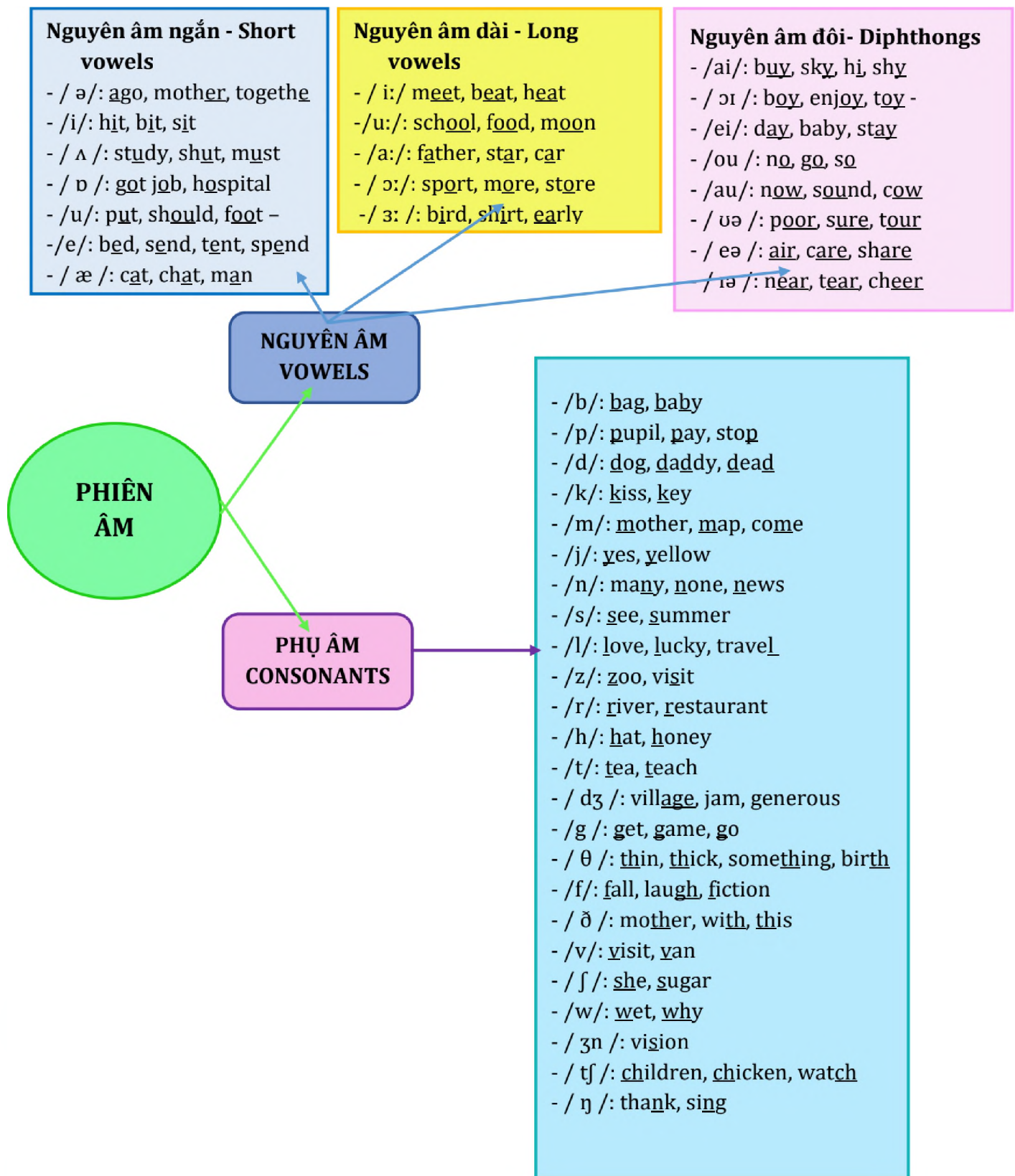
LƯU Ý KHI PHÁT ÂM ĐUÔI ED

-Một số tính từ tận cùng bằng -ed có cách phát âm đặc biệt: âm tiết cuối cùng được đọc là /ɪd/ thay vì /d/ hay /t/ (theo quy tắc phát âm đuôi -ed của động từ).

- |                     |                                    |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| -aged /'eɪdʒɪd/     | -beloved /brɪ'lʌvɪd/               |
| -blessed /'blesɪd/  | -crooked /'krʊkɪd/                 |
| -dogged /'dɒɡɪd/    | -naked /'neɪkɪd/                   |
| -learned /'lɜ:nɪd/  | -ragged /'ræɡɪd/                   |
| -sacred /'seɪkrɪd/  | -wicked /'wɪkɪd/                   |
| -wretched /'retʃɪd/ | -one/three/four-legged /legɪd/chân |

**Chú ý:** aged được đọc là /'eɪdʒd/ khi nó mang nghĩa là "tuổi" (ví dụ trong câu He has a daughter aged 10: Anh ấy có một đứa con gái 10 tuổi) hoặc khi aged là động từ.

II. CÁCH PHÁT ÂM NGUYÊN ÂM VÀ PHỤ ÂM



### III. ÂM CÂM

- Một số chữ cái trong một số từ bao gồm phụ âm và nguyên âm không được phát âm thành tiếng được gọi là âm câm (silent sounds). Sau đây là một số âm câm thường gặp:

Chữ cái – Trường hợp thường gặp	Ví dụ
<b>b</b> đứng cuối trong một số từ (thường đi sau m)	climb, dumb, comb, doubt, debt
<b>b</b> đứng trước t	
<b>c</b> đứng trước k	snack, dock
<b>c</b> đứng sau s trong một số từ	scene, muscle, science



<b>d</b> trong một số từ	hand <u>s</u> ome, Wed <u>ne</u> sday
<b>h</b> trong một số từ	hou <u>r</u> , ex <u>h</u> hausted
<b>gh</b> trong một số từ (đặc biệt là sau i)	weigh <u>gh</u> , sigh <u>t</u>
<b>k</b> đứng trước n	kn <u>o</u> w, kn <u>ee</u> , kn <u>i</u> fe
<b>l</b> trong một số từ	hal <u>l</u> f, cou <u>ld</u>
<b>n</b> đứng sau m	autum <u>n</u> , condem <u>n</u>
<b>p</b> đứng đầu một từ, theo sau là một phụ âm và một số trường hợp khác	psychology, receipt
<b>r</b> đứng trước một phụ âm khác hoặc đứng cuối từ đó	car <u>d</u> , park, far <u>m</u> , burn, neighbour, volunte <u>r</u>
<b>t</b> trong một số từ	list <u>en</u> , cast <u>le</u>
<b>w</b> đứng trước r hoặc h trong một số từ	w <u>r</u> eck, <u>w</u> ho

#### IV. THỰC HÀNH.

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG PHÁT ÂM

I. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three on pronunciation on each of the following questions.

- A. final                      B. writer                      C. ivory                      D. widow
- A. passed                      B. managed                      C. cleared                      D. threatened
- A. ejects                      B. defends                      C. advocates                      D. breaths
- A. produced                      B. believed                      C. stopped                      D. laughed
- A. alien                      B. alloy                      C. alley                      D. anthem
- A. affected                      B. looked                      C. decreased                      D. washed
- A. missed                      B. worked                      C. realized                      D. watched
- A. need                      B. speech                      C. see                      D. career
- A. loved                      B. appeared                      C. agreed                      D. coughed
- A. pagoda                      B. integral                      C. against                      D. aquatic
- A. imagines                      B. bikes                      C. cultures                      D. involves
- A. office                      B. practice                      C. service                      D. device
- A. finished                      B. cooked                      C. attended                      D. laughed
- A. number                      B. future                      C. furious                      D. amuse
- A. concerned                      B. candied                      C. travelled                      D. dried
- A. speaks                      B. speeds                      C. graphs                      D. beliefs
- A. dune                      B. hummock                      C. shrub                      D. buffalo
- A. increased                      B. pleased                      C. replaced                      D. fixed
- A. looks                      B. knows                      C. helps                      D. sits
- A. linked                      B. declared                      C. finished                      D. developed
- A. heat                      B. beat                      C. meant                      D. easy
- A. sports                      B. thanks                      C. games                      D. enthusiasts
- A. sacrificed                      B. trusted                      C. recorded                      D. acted
- A. cooks                      B. loves                      C. joins                      D. spends
- A. interviewed                      B. performed                      C. finished                      D. delivered
- A. misses                      B. goes                      C. leaves                      D. potatoes
- A. removed                      B. approved                      C. reminded                      D. relieved
- A. young                      B. plough                      C. couple                      D. cousin
- A. confine                      B. conceal                      C. convention                      D. concentrate



- |                          |                       |                      |                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 30. A. <u>isolated</u>   | B. <u>climate</u>     | C. <u>island</u>     | D. <u>automobile</u>    |
| 31. A. <u>river</u>      | B. <u>rival</u>       | C. <u>native</u>     | D. <u>driven</u>        |
| 32. A. <u>valentine</u>  | B. <u>imagine</u>     | C. <u>discipline</u> | D. <u>determine</u>     |
| 33. A. <u>crop</u>       | B. <u>common</u>      | C. <u>household</u>  | D. <u>bodily</u>        |
| 34. A. <u>merchant</u>   | B. <u>sergeant</u>    | C. <u>mermaid</u>    | D. <u>commercial</u>    |
| 35. A. <u>obstacle</u>   | B. <u>obscure</u>     | C. <u>obsession</u>  | D. <u>oblivious</u>     |
| 36. A. <u>failed</u>     | B. <u>reached</u>     | C. <u>absorbed</u>   | D. <u>solved</u>        |
| 37. A. <u>develops</u>   | B. <u>takes</u>       | C. <u>laughs</u>     | D. <u>volumes</u>       |
| 38. A. <u>species</u>    | B. <u>invent</u>      | C. <u>medicine</u>   | D. <u>tennis</u>        |
| 39. A. <u>advanced</u>   | B. <u>established</u> | C. <u>preferred</u>  | D. <u>stopped</u>       |
| 40. A. <u>exact</u>      | B. <u>examine</u>     | C. <u>eleven</u>     | D. <u>elephant</u>      |
| 41. A. <u>heavy</u>      | B. <u>head</u>        | C. <u>weather</u>    | D. <u>heat</u>          |
| 42. A. <u>processed</u>  | B. <u>infested</u>    | C. <u>balanced</u>   | D. <u>reached</u>       |
| 43. A. <u>food</u>       | B. <u>shoot</u>       | C. <u>book</u>       | D. <u>boot</u>          |
| 44. A. <u>amount</u>     | B. <u>country</u>     | C. <u>counter</u>    | D. <u>around</u>        |
| 45. A. <u>apologize</u>  | B. <u>agree</u>       | C. <u>algebra</u>    | D. <u>aggressive</u>    |
| 46. A. <u>likes</u>      | B. <u>tightens</u>    | C. <u>heaps</u>      | D. <u>coughs</u>        |
| 47. A. <u>building</u>   | B. <u>suitable</u>    | C. <u>suit</u>       | D. <u>recruitment</u>   |
| 48. A. <u>create</u>     | B. <u>creature</u>    | C. <u>easy</u>       | D. <u>increase</u>      |
| 49. A. <u>needed</u>     | B. <u>played</u>      | C. <u>rained</u>     | D. <u>followed</u>      |
| 50. A. <u>ploughs</u>    | B. <u>photographs</u> | C. <u>gas</u>        | D. <u>laughs</u>        |
| 51. A. <u>broad</u>      | B. <u>load</u>        | C. <u>road</u>       | D. <u>boat</u>          |
| 52. A. <u>acronym</u>    | B. <u>agency</u>      | C. <u>became</u>     | D. <u>aviation</u>      |
| 53. A. <u>account</u>    | B. <u>amount</u>      | C. <u>mourning</u>   | D. <u>trout</u>         |
| 54. A. <u>sound</u>      | B. <u>touchy</u>      | C. <u>outdated</u>   | D. <u>account</u>       |
| 55. A. <u>fungus</u>     | B. <u>rubbish</u>     | C. <u>function</u>   | D. <u>furious</u>       |
| 56. A. <u>contain</u>    | B. <u>entertain</u>   | C. <u>certain</u>    | D. <u>campaign</u>      |
| 57. A. <u>measure</u>    | B. <u>pleasure</u>    | C. <u>threat</u>     | D. <u>treat</u>         |
| 58. A. <u>south</u>      | B. <u>southern</u>    | C. <u>scout</u>      | D. <u>drought</u>       |
| 59. A. <u>dome</u>       | B. <u>comb</u>        | C. <u>home</u>       | D. <u>tomb</u>          |
| 60. A. <u>accountant</u> | B. <u>country</u>     | C. <u>count</u>      | D. <u>fountain</u>      |
| 61. A. <u>clubs</u>      | B. <u>books</u>       | C. <u>hats</u>       | D. <u>stamps</u>        |
| 62. A. <u>advance</u>    | B. <u>ancient</u>     | C. <u>cancer</u>     | D. <u>annual</u>        |
| 63. A. <u>canoeing</u>   | B. <u>penalty</u>     | C. <u>rival</u>      | D. <u>tsunami</u>       |
| 64. A. <u>increase</u>   | B. <u>meant</u>       | C. <u>flea</u>       | D. <u>lease</u>         |
| 65. A. <u>goalie</u>     | B. <u>archive</u>     | C. <u>signal</u>     | D. <u>advertisement</u> |
| 66. A. <u>bury</u>       | B. <u>hurt</u>        | C. <u>turn</u>       | D. <u>excursion</u>     |
| 67. A. <u>book</u>       | B. <u>foot</u>        | C. <u>brook</u>      | D. <u>booth</u>         |
| 68. A. <u>punctual</u>   | B. <u>rubbish</u>     | C. <u>thunder</u>    | D. <u>furious</u>       |
| 69. A. <u>sound</u>      | B. <u>touch</u>       | C. <u>down</u>       | D. <u>account</u>       |
| 70. A. <u>clerk</u>      | B. <u>reserve</u>     | C. <u>deserve</u>    | D. <u>herb</u>          |
| 71. A. <u>spark</u>      | B. <u>share</u>       | C. <u>park</u>       | D. <u>smart</u>         |
| 72. A. <u>hasty</u>      | B. <u>nasty</u>       | C. <u>wastage</u>    | D. <u>tasty</u>         |
| 73. A. <u>neigh</u>      | B. <u>height</u>      | C. <u>weigh</u>      | D. <u>vein</u>          |
| 74. A. <u>butter</u>     | B. <u>gum</u>         | C. <u>butcher</u>    | D. <u>summer</u>        |
| 75. A. <u>hall</u>       | B. <u>salt</u>        | C. <u>drawn</u>      | D. <u>roll</u>          |
| 76. A. <u>lost</u>       | B. <u>post</u>        | C. <u>loan</u>       | D. <u>pole</u>          |

77. A. adopted                      B. appealed                      C. dedicated                      D. wounded  
78. A. mile                              B. militant                      C. smile                              D. kind  
79. A. peace                              B. great                              C. treat                              D. meat  
80. A. sailor                              B. tailor                              C. naivety                              D. painter  
81. A. character                              B. flatter                              C. equally                              D. attraction  
82. A. peace                              B. wear                              C. weak                              D. sea  
83. A. zoo                                  B. goose                              C. tooth                              D. good  
84. A. skill                                  B. fine                                  C. dinner                              D. since  
85. A. hook                                  B. floor                                  C. book                                  D. look  
86. A. dedicate                              B. eliminate                              C. educate                              D. certificate  
87. A. seems                                  B. plays                                  C. visits                                  D. travels  
88. A. stool                                  B. bamboo                              C. good                                  D. loose  
89. A. sculpture                              B. result                                  C. justice                              D. figure  
90. A. searched                              B. practiced                              C. subscribed                              D. increased  
91. A. adverb                                  B. advent                                  C. advertise                              D. advance  
92. A. allow                                  B. tomorrow                              C. slowly                              D. below  
93. A. included                              B. wanted                                  C. noticed                              D. decided  
94. A. bushes                                  B. wishes                                  C. researches                              D. headaches  
95. A. tool                                      B. spoon                                  C. foot                                      D. noon  
96. A. dressed                              B. dropped                              C. matched                              D. joined  
97. A. walk                                      B. call                                      C. take                                      D. talk  
98. A. passed                                  B. opened                                  C. washed                                  D. worked  
99. A. dream                                  B. wear                                      C. treat                                      D. mean  
100. A. attacks                                  B. medals                                  C. concerns                              D. Fingers

## B. TRỌNG ÂM TRONG TIẾNG ANH

### I. KHÁI QUÁT CHUNG VỀ TRỌNG ÂM

#### 1. Trọng âm của từ hai âm tiết.

- Tiếng Anh là ngôn ngữ đa âm tiết. Những từ có hai âm tiết trở lên luôn có một âm tiết phát âm khác biệt hẳn so với những âm tiết còn lại về độ dài, độ lớn và độ cao. Âm tiết nào được phát âm to hơn, giọng cao hơn và kéo dài hơn các âm khác trong cùng một từ thì ta nói âm tiết đó được nhấn trọng âm. Hay nói cách khác, trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết đó.

- Khi nhìn vào phiên âm của một từ thì trọng âm của từ đó được kí hiệu bằng dấu (') ở phía trước, bên trên âm tiết đó.

#### 2. Các quy tắc cơ bản để đánh dấu trọng âm.

(Chương này tổng hợp kiến thức về trọng âm và quy tắc đánh dấu trọng âm thường xuyên thi trong các kì thi dành cho học sinh cấp trung học phổ thông và thi tốt nghiệp THPT quốc gia môn tiếng Anh)

- Trọng âm chỉ rơi vào các chữ NGUYÊN ÂM và BÁN NGUYÊN ÂM gồm: U-E-O-A-I-Y

- Hãy đọc các từ lên và dựa vào độ CAO, độ VANG, của các ÂM TIẾT trong từ để SUY RA TRỌNG ÂM của từ.

QUY TẮC	NỘI DUNG QUY TẮC VÀ VÍ DỤ MINH HỌA
0	Trọng âm chính của các từ có hai âm tiết <u>thường</u> rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 đối với các động

từ - trừ các âm tiết thứ 2 đó có chứa nguyên âm /ə/, /i/, hoặc /əʊ/, và rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất đối với các từ loại còn lại, trừ trường hợp âm tiết thứ nhất đó có chứa nguyên âm đơn /ə/.

**Ngoại lệ:**

	<b>Verbs</b>	<b>Transcriptions</b>		<b>Others</b>	<b>Transcriptions</b>	
1.	borrow	/ 'bɔrəʊ /	1	1. afraid	/ ə'freɪd /	2
2.	bother	/ 'bɒðə /	1	2. across	/ ə'krɒs /	2
3.	broaden	/ 'brɔdən /	1	3. around	/ ə'raʊnd /	2
4.	enter	/ 'entə /	1	4. canal	/ kə'næl /	2
5.	follow	/ 'fɒləʊ /	1	5. career	/ kə'riə /	2
6.	harbor	/ 'hɑ:bər /	1	6. surround	/ sə'raʊnd /	2
7.	suffer	/ 'sʌfə /	1	7. polite	/ pə'lait /	2
8.	widen	/ 'waidən /	1	8. police	/ pə'lis /	2
9.	loosen	/ 'lu:zən /	1	9. today	/ tə'dei /	2
10.	tighten	/ 'taitən /	1	10. tonight	/ tə'nait /	2

(quy tắc này có thể được quy sang quy tắc "Đọc từ" )

**1**

**Tận cùng là ATE**

- hai âm tiết, trọng âm 1

- ba âm tiết, trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3 kể từ ATE đếm ngược lên

**Tận cùng là IZE, ISE+ Y (Trừ LY)**

(Đếm như quy tắc của ATE phía trên)

<b>CLASS</b>		MATE		
<u>1</u>		2		
CON	<b>GRA</b>	TU	LATE	
4	<u>3</u>	2	1	ĐẾM NGƯỢC
1	<u>2</u>	3	4	ĐẾM XUÔI

Organize, Industry, CHEmistry

**Đuôi cho quy tắc này là : "ate", "fy", "ity", "ize"**

**2**

**Các từ trọng âm rơi vào CHÍNH NÓ, thấy NÓ, thì trọng âm rơi vào NÓ**

- EE, EER, ESE, ADE, OO, OON, ETTE, IQUE, ESQUE, MENTAL

DE	<b>GREE</b>
1	<u>2</u>

- enginEER\_3, chinESE\_2, lemonADE\_3, bambOO\_2, cigarETTE\_3, unIQUE\_2, picturESQUE\_3, fundeMENTAL\_3

**Đuôi cho quy tắc này : "ese", "ee", "eer", "ier", "ette", "oo", "esque"**

**3**

**Các từ có trọng âm rơi vào NGAY TRƯỚC NÓ, thấy NÓ, thì trọng âm rơi vào NGAY TRƯỚC NÓ**

- IC, ISH, ION, IAN, IAL, ICAL, (I-E-U) OUS, (I-E-U)TY, LOGY, GRAPHY

**Ngoại lệ (trừ):**

	<b>CENtigrade, COMrade, COffee, comMITtee, Engine, Pedigree, Cukoo, TEAspoon</b>			
	RO	<u>MAN</u>	TIC	
	1	<u>2</u>	<u>ĐUÔI IC</u>	
	- FInish, NAtion, poliTician, SPEcial, technoLOGical, deLicious, pubLicity <b>Đuôi của quy tắc này: "ian", "ic", "ience", "ient", "al", "ial", "ual", "eous", "ious", "iar", "ion"</b>			
4	<b>Danh từ chỉ MÔN HỌC, trọng âm cách âm tiết CUỐI 01 ÂM TIẾT</b> - geOlogy, biOlogy			
6	<b>Từ ghép:</b> + danh từ ghép: TRỌNG ÂM 1 + động từ ghép: TRỌNG ÂM chính ĐỘNG TỪ + tính từ, giới từ, liên từ GHÉP: TRỌNG ÂM rơi vào âm tiết ĐẦU TIÊN của từ thứ HAI - BLACKbird, GREENhouse, RAINcoat - overCOME, undeSTAND, overFLOW - badTEMpered, oldFASHioned, homeSICK			
7	<b>Tiền tố: KHÔNG BAO GIỜ CÓ TRỌNG ÂM</b> <b>Các tiền tố hay gặp:</b> UN_, IM_, IN_, DIS_, IR_, RE_, ANTI_, AUTO_, CO_, HYPER_, INTER_, NON_, POST_, TRANS_			
8	<b>Quy tắc các từ/ dấu hiệu sau KHÔNG có TRỌNG ÂM</b> FFUL, MENT, ENT, ANT, ANCE, ENCE, ISH, IT, LY (ADV), AL, AGE, NESS, LESS, ABLE, IBLE, ED, ING			
9	<b>Quy tắc ĐỌC THÀNH TIẾNG để xác định TRỌNG ÂM</b> - Đọc là O, Ó, Ò, Ô, Ồ, Ù, Ừ, ÛN, ÛN, ÛM, PHU, NÍT thì KHÔNG TRỌNG ÂM - Hai từ đọc rơi vào quy tắc 9- quy tắc không trọng âm, ta ưu tiên trọng âm 1 VÍ DỤ: PERSON (PO-SUN), hai âm tiết đều rơi vào O và ÛN, là không trọng âm, đứng liền nhau, ta ưu tiên TRỌNG ÂM 1 Vậy nên: PERson <b>Quy tắc xác định NGAY TRỌNG ÂM khi đọc từ:</b> - E đọc là E, CÓ TRỌNG ÂM - O đọc là O, CÓ TRỌNG ÂM - Y đọc là AI, CÓ TRỌNG ÂM - Y đọc là Y, KHÔNG TRỌNG ÂM - AT, AP, AD, thường KHÔNG trọng âm			
10	<b>Các trường hợp đặc biệt cần lưu ý:</b>			
	<b>on the first syllable (1)</b>		<b>on the second syllable (2)</b>	
	<b>Words</b>	<b>Transcriptions</b>	<b>Words</b>	<b>Transcriptions</b>
	1 internet	/ 'intənet /	1. important	/ im'pɔ:tənt /



2. interest / 'intərist /	2. remember / ri'membə /
3. interested / 'intəristid /	3. deliver / dɪ'livə /
4. interesting / 'intəristiŋ /	4. september / sep'tembə /
5. character / 'kærɪktə /	5. October / ɔk'təʊbə /
6. characterize / 'kærɪktəraɪz /	6. november / nəʊ'vembə /
7. different / 'dɪfərənt /	7. december / dɪ'sembə /
8. difference / 'dɪfərəns /	<b>3<sup>rd</sup> syllable words</b>
9. differently / 'dɪfərəntli /	<b>Transcriptions</b>
10. difficult / 'dɪfɪkəlt /	1. magazine / mægə'zi:n/
11. difficulty / 'dɪfɪkəlti /	2. understand / ʌndə'stænd/
12. difficultly / 'dɪfɪkəltli /	3. recommend / rɪkə'mend/
	4. comprehend / kəmprɪ'hend/

### 3. Một số chú ý khi xét trọng âm.



## II. THỰC HÀNH.

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG TRỌNG ÂM

I. Mark the letter A, B, c, or D to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

- |                     |                 |                  |                |
|---------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. A. apply         | B. persuade     | C. reduce        | D. offer       |
| 2. A. preservatives | B. congratulate | C. preferential  | D. development |
| 3. A. president     | B. physicist    | C. inventor      | D. property    |
| 4. A. economy       | B. unemployment | C. communicate   | D. particular  |
| 5. A. elephant      | B. dinosaur     | C. buffalo       | D. mosquito    |
| 6. A. scientific    | B. intensity    | C. disappearance | D. expectation |
| 7. A. conference    | B. lecturer     | C. researcher    | D. reference   |
| 8. A. intentional   | B. optimistic   | C. environment   | D. participant |
| 9. A. explain       | B. happen       | C. decide        | D. combine     |
| 10. A. represent    | B. intensive    | C. domestic      | D. employment  |
| 11. A. minister     | B. dependent    | C. encourage     | D. agreement   |
| 12. A. equip        | B. listen       | C. answer        | D. enter       |

- |                     |                 |                |                  |
|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 13. A. involve      | B. provide      | C. install     | D. comment       |
| 14. A. hospital     | B. inflation    | C. policy      | D. constantly    |
| 15. A. garment      | B. comment      | C. cement      | D. even          |
| 16. A. different    | B. achievement  | C. educate     | D. primary       |
| 17. A. sorrow       | B. schooling    | C. passion     | D. subtract      |
| 18. A. certainty    | B. activity     | C. organize    | D. compliment    |
| 19. A. publish      | B. replace      | C. involve     | D. escape        |
| 20. A. police       | B. system       | C. woman       | D. novel         |
| 21. A. attract      | B. amaze        | C. offer       | D. require       |
| 22. A. delicate     | B. promotion    | C. volcanic    | D. resources     |
| 23. A. figure       | B. honest       | C. polite      | D. happy         |
| 24. A. engage       | B. import       | C. conserve    | D. maintain      |
| 25. A. original     | B. responsible  | C. reasonable  | D. comparison    |
| 26. A. person       | B. hotel        | C. signal      | D. instance      |
| 27. A. situation    | B. appropriate  | C. informality | D. entertainment |
| 28. A. different    | B. bamboo       | C. rainfall    | D. wildlife      |
| 29. A. gorilla      | B. interesting  | C. September   | D. opponent      |
| 30. A. promote      | B. precede      | C. picture     | D. pollute       |
| 31. A. exciting     | B. impolite     | C. attention   | D. attractive    |
| 32. A. curious      | B. receive      | C. unique      | D. achieve       |
| 33. A. comprehend   | B. entertain    | C. develop     | D. introduce     |
| 34. A. consider     | B. concentrate  | C. interest    | D. sacrifice     |
| 35. A. pollutant    | B. graduate     | C. enjoyable   | D. suspicious    |
| 36. A. generous     | B. endangered   | C. horrible    | D. wonderful     |
| 37. A. history      | B. village      | C. surprise    | D. physics       |
| 38. A. deafness     | B. arrange      | C. absorb      | D. exhaust       |
| 39. A. pressure     | B. sensible     | C. treatment   | D. canal         |
| 40. A. publish      | B. predict      | C. reply       | D. refuse        |
| 41. A. machine      | B. export       | C. chemist     | D. proceed       |
| 42. A. applicant    | B. preference   | C. sufficient  | D. appointment   |
| 43. A. interview    | B. concentrate  | C. comfortable | D. technology    |
| 44. A. example      | B. happiness    | C. advantage   | D. disaster      |
| 45. A. explain      | B. involve      | C. swallow     | D. control       |
| 46. A. character    | B. guitarist    | C. astronaut   | D. bachelor      |
| 47. A. surgeon      | B. conquest     | C. profit      | D. canal         |
| 48. A. supply       | B. consist      | C. happen      | D. delay         |
| 49. A. broaden      | B. persuade     | C. reduce      | D. explain       |
| 50. A. solidarity   | B. effectively  | C. documentary | D. dedication    |
| 51. A. royal        | B. unique       | C. remote      | D. extreme       |
| 52. A. enroll       | B. promote      | C. require     | D. danger        |
| 53. A. optimistic   | B. diversity    | C. environment | D. assimilate    |
| 54. A. affectionate | B. kindergarten | C. respectable | D. occasional    |
| 55. A. certificate  | B. compulsory   | C. remember    | D. information   |
| 56. A. treasure     | B. appoint      | C. advance     | D. diverse       |
| 57. A. conceal      | B. contain      | C. conserve    | D. conquer       |
| 58. A. forgettable  | B. philosophy   | C. humanism    | D. objectively   |
| 59. A. centralize   | B. candidate    | C. applicant   | D. motivation    |

- |                   |               |               |                  |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| 60. A. compass    | B. campus     | C. comfort    | D. command       |
| 61. A. engineer   | B. Vietnamese | C. entertain  | D. employee      |
| 62. A. encounter  | B. agency     | C. influence  | D. memory        |
| 63. A. personify  | B. generate   | C. affection  | D. encourage     |
| 64. A. contain    | B. achieve    | C. improve    | D. enter         |
| 65. A. company    | B. instrument | C. business   | D. adventure     |
| 66. A. suffer     | B. differ     | C. prefer     | D. offer         |
| 67. A. contact    | B. concert    | C. constant   | D. concern       |
| 68. A. recipe     | B. candidate  | C. instrument | D. commitment    |
| 69. A. inflation  | B. maximum    | C. applicant  | D. character     |
| 70. A. compulsory | B. biography  | C. curriculum | D. admirable     |
| 71. A. struggle   | B. anxious    | C. confide    | D. comfort       |
| 72. A. offer      | B. canoe      | C. country    | D. standard      |
| 73. A. pollution  | B. computer   | C. currency   | D. allowance     |
| 74. A. financial  | B. fortunate  | C. marvelous  | D. physical      |
| 75. A. prepare    | B. survive    | C. finish     | D. appeal        |
| 76. A. bamboo     | B. forget     | C. deserve    | D. channel       |
| 77. A. endanger   | B. furniture  | C. determine  | D. departure     |
| 78. A. teacher    | B. lesson     | C. action     | D. police        |
| 79. A. important  | B. happiness  | C. employment | D. relation      |
| 80. A. possible   | B. cultural   | C. confident  | D. supportive    |
| 81. A. office     | B. nature     | C. result     | D. farmer        |
| 82. A. difficult  | B. popular    | C. effective  | D. national      |
| 83. A. answer     | B. reply      | C. singer     | D. future        |
| 84. A. medical    | B. essential  | C. dangerous  | D. regular       |
| 85. A. doctor     | B. student    | C. advice     | D. parent        |
| 86. A. advice     | B. justice    | C. circus     | D. product       |
| 87. A. politician | B. genetics   | C. artificial | D. controversial |
| 88. A. sympathy   | B. poverty    | C. equipment  | D. character     |
| 89. A. intend     | B. install    | C. follow     | D. decide        |
| 90. A. apartment  | B. benefit    | C. argument   | D. vacancy       |
| 91. A. explain    | B. involve    | C. borrow     | D. discuss       |
| 92. A. behave     | B. relax      | C. enter      | D. allow         |
| 93. A. disaster   | B. origin     | C. charity    | D. agency        |
| 94. A. president  | B. opponent   | C. assistant  | D. companion     |
| 95. A. obtain     | B. perform    | C. affect     | D. happen        |
| 96. A. inform     | B. explore    | C. prevent    | D. cancel        |
| 97. A. attitude   | B. manager    | C. invention  | D. company       |
| 98. A. respect    | B. marry      | C. depend     | D. predict       |
| 99. A. fantastic  | B. powerful   | C. sensitive  | D. personal      |
| 100. A. travel    | B. return     | C. connect    | D. deny          |

I. CÁC NGUYÊN TẮC CHIA ĐỘNG TỪ SỐ ÍT VÀ SỐ NHIỀU.

I. NHÓM THÌ HIỆN TẠI

CÁC THÌ HIỆN TẠI

CÔNG THỨC

CÁCH DÙNG

THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN (Với động từ thường)

- + S + V[-s/es]
- S + don't / doesn't + V1
- ? Do / Does + S + V1 .....

THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN (Với động từ to be)

- + S + is/am/are...
- S + is/am/are + not + ...
- ? is/am/are + S + ..... ?

**Cách dùng :** Diễn tả một hành động hay sự việc chung chung, lặp đi lặp lại nhiều lần hoặc một sự thật hiển nhiên hay một hành động diễn ra trong thời gian ở hiện tại.

- Dấu hiệu nhận biết :**
- always, usually, occasionally, often, ...
  - every: every day, every year, every Sunday
  - once a day , twice..., 3 times...

THÌ HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN

- + S + is/am/are + V-ing
- S + is/am/are + not + V-ing
- ? is /am/are + S + V-ing

**Cách dùng :** Để diễn tả các sự việc xảy ra ngay lúc chúng ta nói hoặc xung quanh thời điểm nói, và cũng có thể là hành động chưa chấm dứt (còn tiếp tục diễn ra).

- Dấu hiệu nhận biết :**
- now, at present
  - at the moment
  - Sau câu mệnh lệnh :
  - Vd: Keep silent! The baby is sleeping.
  - Look! He is running.

THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH

- + S + has/have + V3/ed
- S + has/have + V3/ed
- ? has/have + S + V3/ed...?

**Cách dùng :** Hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ và vẫn còn diễn ra ở hiện tại hoặc có liên hệ hay ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại

- Dấu hiệu nhận biết :**
- just, already, ever, yet, recently, lately,..
  - since, for : since 1995, for 9 years



## II. NHÓM THÌ QUÁ KHỨ

### CÁC THÌ QUÁ KHỨ

#### CÔNG THỨC

#### CÁCH DÙNG

#### THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN (VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG)

+ S + V-2/ed]

- S + didn't + V1

? Didn't + S + V1 .....?

#### THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN (VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ TO BE)

+ S + was/were...

- S + was/were + not + ...

? was/were + S + ..... ?

**Cách dùng :** dùng để diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ, đã chấm dứt ở hiện tại và biết rõ thời gian hành động đó diễn ra.

**Dấu hiệu nhận biết :** - yesterday

- last + time: last week, last Sunday...

- time + ago : two months ago, five years ago...

- in the past, in + year (past): in 1990, ...

#### THÌ QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN

+ S + was/were + V-ing

- S + was/were + not + V-ing

? was/were + S + V-ing

**Cách dùng :** Sử dụng để nhấn mạnh diễn biến hay quá trình của sự vật, sự việc hoặc thời gian sự vật, sự việc diễn ra trong quá khứ có tính chất kéo dài.

**Dấu hiệu nhận biết :**

- At that moment

- When / As + S + (simple past), S + was/were V-ing

Vd: When I came, she was crying.

- While :

Vd: A dog crossed the road while I was

#### THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH

+ S + had + V3/ed

- S + hadn't + V3/ed

? had + S + V3/ed...?

**Cách dùng :** Dùng để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước 1 hành động khác trong quá khứ. Hành động nào xảy ra trước sẽ dùng thì quá khứ hoàn thành. Hành động nào xảy ra sau sẽ dùng thì quá khứ đơn.

**Dấu hiệu nhận biết :**

- after + S + had V3/ED, (simple past)

- before + (simple past), S + had V3/ED

- By the time + S + V(simple past), S + had V3/ED: cho đến lúc.....- so far, up to now, It is the first time.....

### III. NHÓM THÌ TƯƠNG LẠI

## CÁC THÌ TƯƠNG LẠI

### CÔNG THỨC

### CÁCH DÙNG

#### THÌ TƯƠNG LẠI ĐƠN

+ S + will + V1  
- S + will not + V1  
? will + S + V1 .....?

#### THÌ TƯƠNG LẠI TIẾP DIỄN

+ S + will be + v-ing  
- S + will + not + be + V-ing  
? will + S + be + V-ing

#### THÌ TƯƠNG LẠI HOÀN THÀNH

+ S + will have + V3/ed  
- S + will not have + V3/ed  
? will + S + have + V3/ed...?

#### THÌ TƯƠNG LẠI GẦN

+ S + am/is/are going to + V 1  
- S + am/is/are not going to + V 1  
? am/is/are + S + going to + V 1

**Cách dùng :** Diễn đạt một kế hoạch, dự định (intention, plan), dự đoán dựa vào bằng chứng (evidence) ở hiện tại.

**Dấu hiệu nhận biết :**

in + thời gian: trong ... nữa (in 2 minutes: trong 2 phút nữa)  
tomorrow: ngày mai

**Cách dùng :** được dùng khi không có kế hoạch hay quyết định làm gì nào trước khi chúng ta nói. Chúng ta ra quyết định tự phát tại thời điểm nói. Thường sử dụng thì tương lai đơn với động từ to think trước nó.

**Dấu hiệu nhận biết :** - tomorrow

- next + time : next week, next Monday,....  
- in the future ago...  
- in the past, in + year (past): in 1990, ...

**Cách dùng :** Được dùng để nói về 1 hành động đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

**Dấu hiệu nhận biết :**

Trong câu có các trạng từ chỉ thời gian trong tương lai kèm theo thời điểm xác định:  
- At this time/ at this moment + thời gian trong tương lai: Vào thời điểm này ....  
- At + giờ cụ thể + thời gian trong tương lai: vào lúc .....

**Cách dùng :** Được dùng để diễn tả hành động sẽ hoàn thành tới 1 thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

**Dấu hiệu nhận biết :**

- by the end of this month  
- by the time+S+ V (simple present), S + will have V3/ED

## IV. THỰC HÀNH.

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG THÌ ĐỘNG TỪ

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. John.....tennis once or twice a week.  
A. is playing usually                      B. is usually playing  
C. usually plays                              D. plays usually
2. Tom.....his hand when he was cooking dinner.  
A. burnt                      B. was burning                      C. has burnt                      D. had burnt
3. Everything is going well. We.....any problems so far.  
A. didn't have                      B. don't have                      C. haven't had                      D. hadn't had
4. Jane.....just a few minutes ago.  
A. left                      B. has left                      C. leaves                      D. had left
5. When I was a child, I used to.....the violin.  
A. was playing                      B. am playing                      C. played                      D. play
6. I'm busy at the moment. I.....on the computer.  
A. work                      B. worked                      C. am working                      D. working
7. When I looked round the door, the baby.....quietly.  
A. is sleeping                      B. slept                      C. was sleeping                      D. were sleeping
8. Robert.....ill for three weeks. He is still in hospital.  
A. had been                      B. has been                      C. is                      D. was
9. I'm very tired. I.....over four hundred miles today.  
A. drive                      B. am driving                      C. have been driving                      D. have driven
10. This isn't my first time to visit London..... here before  
A. I'm                      B. I'd been                      C. I was                      D. I've been
11. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she.....the fire department.  
A. was telephoning                      B. telephoned                      C. had telephoned                      D. has telephoned
12. Every time Parkas sees a movie made in India, he..... homesick.  
A. will have left                      B. felt                      C. feels                      D. is feeling
13. Since I left Venezuela six years ago, I..... to visit friends and family several times.  
A. return                      B. will have returned                      C. am returning                      D. have returned
14. After the race....., the celebration began.  
A. had been won                      B. is won                      C. will be won                      D. has been won
15. While he was washing his car, Mr. Brown.....a small dent in the rear fender.  
A. has discovered                      B. was discovering                      C. is discovering                      D. discovered
16. The Earth.....on the Sun for its heat and light.  
A. is depended                      B. depends                      C. is depending                      D. has depended
17. At this time tomorrow.....over the Atlantic.  
A. we're flying                      B. we'll be flying                      C. we'll fly                      D. we're to fly
18. When I entered the room, everyone.....  
A. has been dancing                      B. was dancing!  
C. had danced                      D. danced
19. I was very tired because I.....all the day  
A. have worked                      B. have been working  
C. had worked                      D. had been working

20. How long.....able to drive? - Since 1990.  
 A. could you      B. have you been      C. were you      D. are you
21. She won't get married until she.....25 years old  
 A. is      B. will be      C. had been      D. was
22. At this time yesterday, we.....a small party in the garden.  
 A. were having      B. am having      C. will be having      D. had
23. When she ..... the noise,she..... down to the kitchen and..... on the lights.  
 A. hears - goes - turns      B. heard - went - turned  
 C. heard - was going - turned      D. had heard - went - had turned
24. John and Ann..... married last Saturday.'B. heard - went - turned  
 A. get      B. got      C. is getting      D. have got
25. Your English.....wonderfully since last month.  
 A. improved      B. was improved      C. has improved      D. has been improved
26. Please don't make so much noise. I .....  
 A. studying      B. study      C. am studying      D. studied
27. It is raining now. It began raining two hours ago, so it.....for two hours  
 A. rains      B. is raining      C. has rained      D. rained
28. After they their breakfast, they..... shopping yesterday.  
 A. have - go      B. had had -go      C. had - had gone      D. had had - went
29. He to HCMC last year and I..... him since then.  
 A. moved - didn't see      B. moved - haven't seen  
 C. moves - haven't seen      D. moved - hadn't seen
30. We.....what to do with the money yet.  
 A. not decide      B. haven't decided      C. didn't decide      D. hadn't decided
31. John \_\_\_\_\_ tennis once or twice a week.  
 A. is playing usually      B. is usually playing  
 C. usually plays      D. plays usually
32. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ his hand when he was cooking dinner.  
 A. burnt      B. was burning      C. has burnt      D. had burnt
33. Jim is away on holiday. He \_\_\_\_\_ to Spain.  
 A. is gone      B. have been      C. has been      D. was
34. Everything is going well. We \_\_\_\_\_ any problems so far.  
 A. didn't have      B. don't have      C. haven't had      D. hadn't had
35. Jane \_\_\_\_\_ just a few minutes ago.  
 A. left      B. has left      C. leaves      D. had left
36. Timson \_\_\_\_\_ 13 films and I think the latest is the best.  
 A. made      B. had made      C. has made      D. was making
37. \_\_\_\_\_ Robert lately?  
 A. Did you see      B. Have you seen      C. Do you see      D. Are you seeing
38. When I was a child, I \_\_\_\_\_ the violin.  
 A. was playing      B. am playing      C. played      D. play
39. He \_\_\_\_\_ for the national team in 65 matches so far.  
 A. has played      B. has been played      C. played      D. is playing
40. I'm busy at the moment. I \_\_\_\_\_ on the computer.  
 A. work      B. worked      C. am working      D. working
41. When I looked round the door, the baby \_\_\_\_\_ quietly.  
 A. is sleeping      B. slept      C. was sleeping      D. were sleeping



42. Robert \_\_\_\_\_ ill for three weeks. He is still in hospital.  
 A. had been                      B. has been                      C. is                                      D. was
43. I'm very tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ over four hundred miles today.  
 A. drive                              B. am driving                      C. have driven                      D. have driven
44. What time \_\_\_\_\_ to work this morning?  
 A. did you get                      B. are you getting                      C. have you got                      D. do you get
45. When I \_\_\_\_\_ this man, he was running away  
 A. see                                      B. was seeing                      C. saw                                      D. had seen
46. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she \_\_\_\_\_ the fire department.  
 A. was telephoning                      B. telephoned                      C. had telephoned                      D. has telephoned
47. Every time Parkas sees a movie made in India, he \_\_\_\_\_ homesick.  
 A. will have left                      B. felt                                      C. feels                                      D. is feeling
48. After the race \_\_\_\_\_, the celebration began.  
 A. had been won                      B. is won                                      C. will be won                      D. has been won
49. The earth \_\_\_\_\_ on the sun for its heat and light.  
 A. is depended                      B. depends                                      C. is depending                      D. has depended
50. When I entered the room, everyone \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. has been dancing                      B. was dancing                      C. had danced                      D. danced

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. Jane \_\_\_\_\_ law at Harvard for four years now.  
 A. is studying                      B. has been studying                      C. studies                                      D. studied
2. This time tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach sunbathing and drinking freshly squeezed fruit juice!  
 A. I'll have been lying                      B. I will lie  
 C. I will be lying                      D. I will have lain
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ for three hours and we are very tired.  
 A. waited                                      B. have been waiting                      C. wait                                      D. had waited
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ for hours. That's why her eyes are red now.  
 A. cried                                      B. has been crying                      C. was crying                                      D. has cried
5. When I last saw him, he \_\_\_\_\_ in London.  
 A. is living                                      B. has been living                      C. was living                                      D. lived
6. By the time he arrives here tomorrow, they \_\_\_\_\_ for London.  
 A. would have left                      B. will have left                      C. will left                                      D. are leaving
7. Mr. Pike \_\_\_\_\_ English at our school for 20 years before he retired last year.  
 A. had been teaching                      B. has been teaching  
 C. was teaching                                      D. is teaching
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ for Japan at 10.30 tomorrow.  
 A. will be leaving                      B. have left                                      C. will have left                      D. will leave
9. When I \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport, I realized that I \_\_\_\_\_ my passport at home.  
 A. got/had left                      B. got/left                                      C. had got/had left                      D. got/was left
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ was angry when you saw me because I \_\_\_\_\_ with my sister.  
 A. have been arguing                      B. had been arguing                      C. argued                                      D. would argue
11. Call me as soon as you \_\_\_\_\_ your test results.  
 A. get                                      B. will get                                      C. will have got                      D. got
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ to Greece until Sally and I went there last summer.

- A. have never been    B. had never been    C. was never being    D. were never
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ along the street when I suddenly heard footsteps behind me.  
A. was walking    B. am walking    C. walk    D. walked
14. He occasionally \_\_\_\_\_ a headache in the morning.  
A. has had    B. has    C. have    D. is having
15. The boy fell while he \_\_\_\_\_ down the stairs.  
A. run    B. running    C. was running    D. runs
16. I will come and see you before I \_\_\_\_\_ for America.  
A. leave    B. will leave    C. have left    D. left
17. When the first child was born, they \_\_\_\_\_ for three years.  
A. have been married    B. had been married  
C. will be married    D. will have been married
18. It \_\_\_\_\_ a long time since we were apart. I did not recognize her.  
A. is    B. has been    C. was    D. had been
19. Many of the people who attended Mr. David's funeral \_\_\_\_\_ him for many years.  
A. didn't see    B. wouldn't see    C. haven't seen    D. hadn't seen
20. We were both very excited about the visit, as we \_\_\_\_\_ each other for \_\_\_\_\_ ages.  
A. never saw    B. didn't see    C. hadn't seen    D. haven't seen
21. In one year's time, she \_\_\_\_\_ for this company for 15 years.  
A. will be working    B. will have been working  
C. will work    D. has worked
22. His health has improved a lot since he \_\_\_\_\_ doing exercises regularly.  
A. starts    B. started    C. has started    D. had started
23. She hurt herself while she \_\_\_\_\_ hide-and-seek with her friends.  
A. is playing    B. had played    C. played    D. was playing
24. What \_\_\_\_\_ at 9 o'clock last night? I phoned you but couldn't get through to you.  
A. did you do    B. were you doing    C. would you do    D. had you done
25. It is raining heavily with rolls of thunder. We \_\_\_\_\_ such a terrible thunderstorm.  
A. would never see    B. had never seen    C. have never seen    D. never see
26. I \_\_\_\_\_ my old teacher last week.  
A. visited    B. visit    C. am visiting    D. have visited
27. My brother usually \_\_\_\_\_ me for help when he has any difficulties with his homework.  
A. ask    B. asks    C. asked    D. has asked
28. I \_\_\_\_\_ all of my homework last night.  
A. finish    B. will finish    C. have finished    D. finished
29. Lan \_\_\_\_\_ learning English a few years ago.  
A. starts    B. will start    C. started    D. is starting
30. Only after she \_\_\_\_\_ from a severe illness did she realize the importance of good health.  
A. would recover    B. has recovered  
C. had recovered    D. was recovering
31. Only after the bus \_\_\_\_\_ for a few miles did Jane realize she was on the wrong route.  
A. was running    B. had run    C. has run    D. runs
32. The children \_\_\_\_\_ to bed before their parents came home from work.  
A. were all going    B. had all gone    C. had all been going    D. have all gone
33. Paul noticed a job advertisement while he \_\_\_\_\_ along the street.  
A. was walking    B. would walk    C. walked    D. had walked
34. I haven't met him again since we \_\_\_\_\_ school ten years ago.

- A. have left                      B. leave                              C. left                                  D. had left
35. For the last 20 years, we \_\_\_\_\_ significant changes in the world of science and technology.  
A. witness                      B. have witnessed                      C. witnessed                      D. are witnessing
36. My best friend Lan \_\_\_\_\_ to England 10 years ago.  
A. was moving                      B. moves                              C. moved                                  D. has moved
37. Mr. Pike \_\_\_\_\_ for this company for more than thirty years, and he intends to stay here until he \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. worked/retires                      B. works/is retiring  
C. has been working/retires                      D. is working/will retire
38. While I \_\_\_\_\_ at the bus stop, three buses went by in the opposite direction.  
A. was waiting                      B. waited                              C. had waited                      D. were waiting
39. By the end of last March, I \_\_\_\_\_ English for five years.  
A. had been studied                      B. had been studying  
C. will have been studying                      D. will have studied
40. \_\_\_\_\_ Alan for hours but he hasn't answered his mobile. I hope nothing's wrong.  
A. I call                              B. I've been calling                      C. I'm calling                      D. called
41. We \_\_\_\_\_ in silence when he suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ me to help him.  
A. walked - was asking                      B. were walking - asked  
C. were walking - was asking                      D. walked - asked
42. By the time the software \_\_\_\_\_ on sale next month, the company \_\_\_\_\_ \$2 million on developing it.  
A. went - had spent                      B. will go - has spent  
C. has gone - will spend                      D. goes - will have spent
43. When Carol \_\_\_\_\_ last night, I \_\_\_\_\_ my favorite show on television.  
A. called /was watching                      B. had called /watched  
C. called /have watched                      D. was calling /watched
44. Linda took great photos of butterflies while she \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest.  
A. was hiking                      B. is hiking                              C. hiked                                  D. had hiked
45. When I \_\_\_\_\_ for my sister in front of the supermarket, a strange man came to talk with me.  
A. was waiting                      B. waited                              C. had waited                      D. were waiting
46. Over the past 30 years, the average robot price \_\_\_\_\_ by half in real terms, and even further relative to labor costs.  
A. is fallen                              B. has fallen                              C. were fallen                      D. have fallen
47. When I came to visit her last night, she \_\_\_\_\_ a bath.  
A. is having                              B. was having                              C. has had                                  D. had had
48. John \_\_\_\_\_ in the same house since he left school.  
A. lived                                  B. had lived                              C. was living                              D. has lived
49. Since Tom \_\_\_\_\_, I have heard nothing from him.  
A. had left                              B. left                                      C. has left                                  D. was left
50. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
A. finish                                  B. has finished                              C. will finish                              D. finished

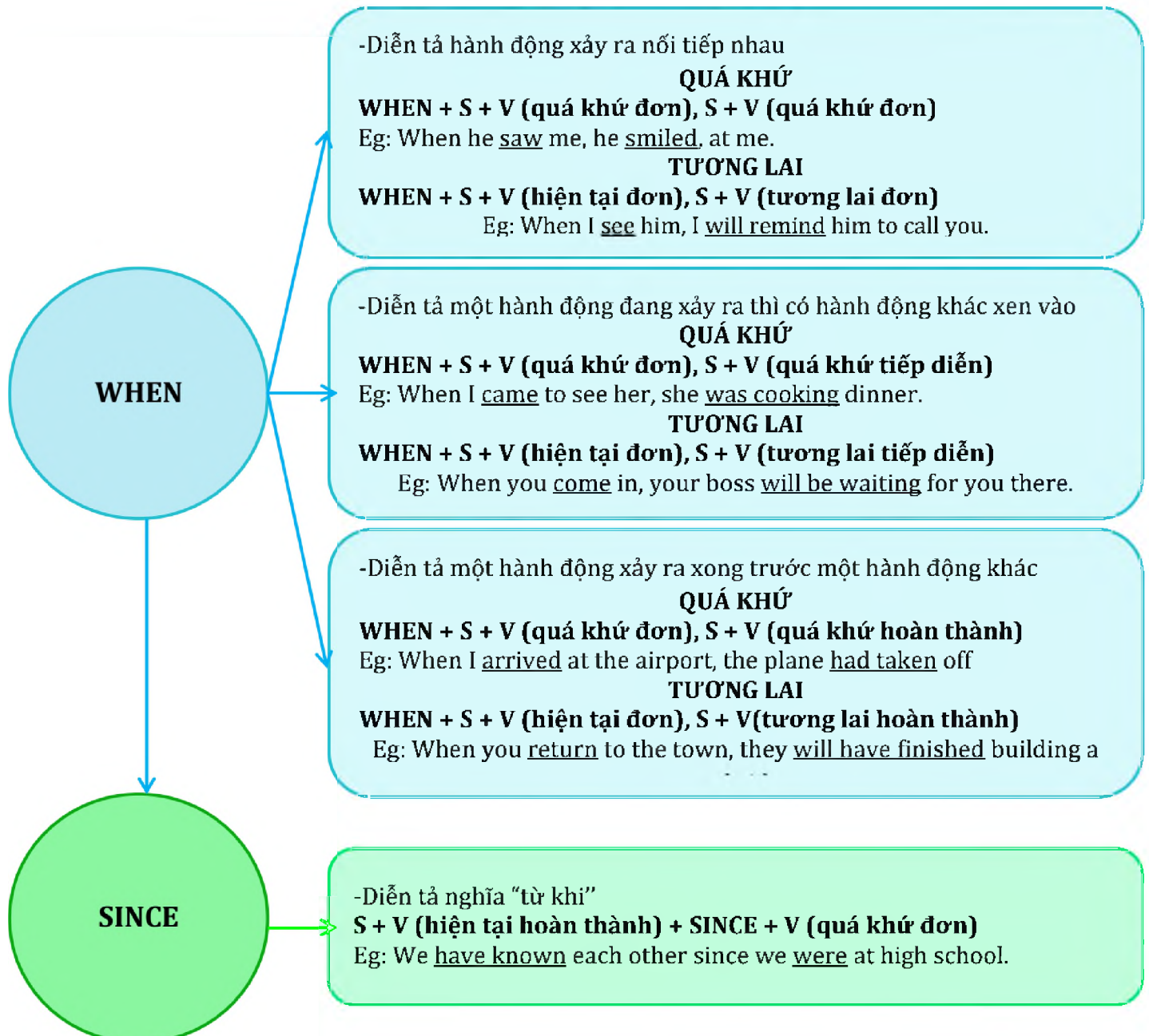
I. SỰ KẾT HỢP THÌ VÀ PHƯƠNG PHÁP KẾT HỢP THÌ.

1. Khái niệm về sự kết hợp thì .

- Một câu có thể bao gồm một mệnh đề chính (*main clause*) và một hoặc nhiều mệnh đề phụ (*subordinate clause*). Khi trong câu có hai mệnh đề trở lên, các động từ phải có sự kết hợp về thì.

Main clause (Mệnh đề chính)	Adverbial clause of time (Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian)
Hiện tại	Hiện tại
Quá khứ	Quá khứ
Tương lai	Hiện tại

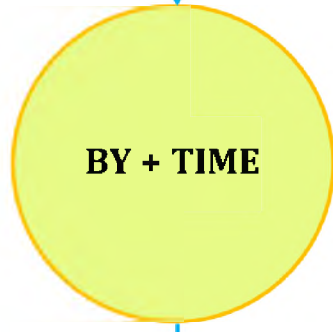
2. Phương pháp kết hợp thì trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian .



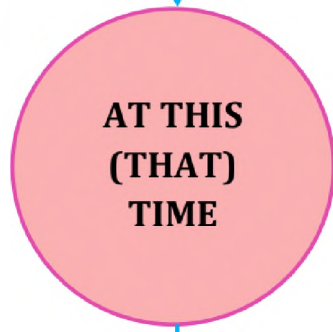




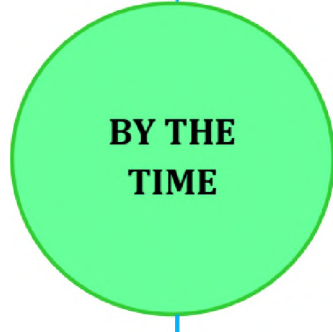
-Diễn tả hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau  
**QUÁ KHỨ**  
**AS SOON AS + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ đơn)**  
 Eg: As soon as she saw a mouse, she shouted and ran away.  
**TƯƠNG LAI**  
**AS SOON AS + S + V (hiện tại đơn/hiện tại hoàn thành), S + V (tương lai đơn)**  
 Eg: I will call you as soon as I have finished / finish the work.



-Diễn tả hành động kết thúc tính đến một điểm nào đó trong quá khứ/tương lai  
**QUÁ KHỨ**  
**BY + trạng từ của quá khứ + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**  
 Eg: By last month, we had worked for the company for 9 years.  
**TƯƠNG LAI**  
**BY + trạng từ của tương lai + S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)**  
 Eg: By next month, we will have worked for the company for 9 years.



-Diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ/tương lai  
**QUÁ KHỨ**  
**AT THIS/THAT TIME + trạng từ của quá khứ + S + V (QKTD)**  
 Eg: At this time last week, we were preparing for Tet.  
**TƯƠNG LAI**  
**AT THIS/THAT TIME + trạng từ của tương lai + S + V (TLTD)**  
 Eg: At this time next week, we will be having a big party in the garden.

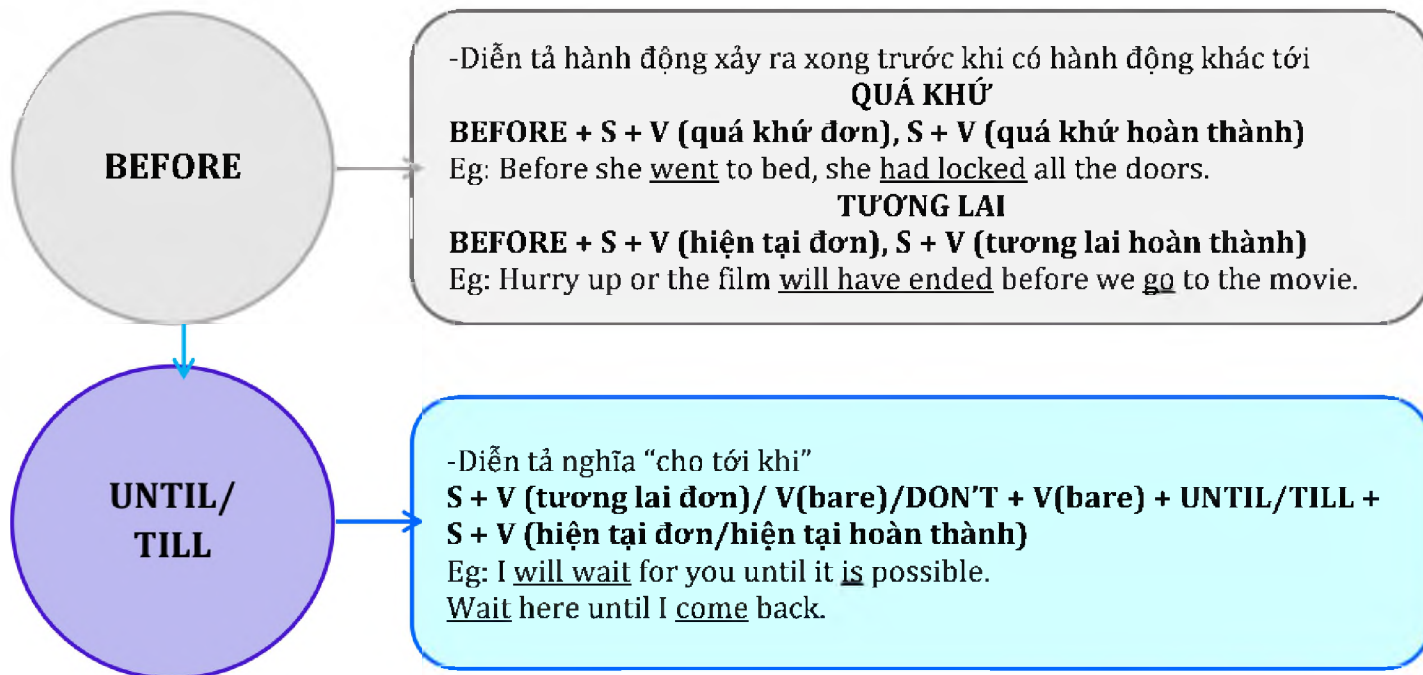


- Diễn tả nghĩa "vào lúc"  
**QUÁ KHỨ**  
**BY THE TIME + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**  
 Eg: By the time she got home, everyone had gone to bed.  
**TƯƠNG LAI**  
**BY THE TIME + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)**  
 Eg: By the time she gets home, everyone will have gone to bed.



-Diễn tả hành động xảy ra xong rồi mới tới hành động khác  
**QUÁ KHỨ**  
**AFTER + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành), S + V (quá khứ đơn)**  
 Eg: After she had done her homework, she went out for a walk.  
**TƯƠNG LAI**  
**AFTER + S + V (hiện tại hoàn thành), S + V (hiện tại đơn)**  
 Eg: After she has done her homework, she goes out for a walk.





### 3.Phương pháp chuyển đổi từ thì quá khứ đơn sang thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

**1.S + Last +V2/ed + time +ago/in+ mốc thời gian./when + clause**  
=> S +have/has + not + V3/ed + for +khoảng thời gian.  
+ since + mốc thời gian.  
=>It's + time + since + S +last +V2/ed  
=>The last time + S + V2/ed +was+ time + ago

**2.This is the first time + S + have/has + V3/ed**  
=>S + have/has + never + V3/ed + before

**3.S started/began + Ving/to V +.....+khoảng thời gian +ago**  
+.....In + mốc thời gian./when + clause  
=>S + have/has + V3/ed +for + khoảng thời gian  
+since + mốc thời gian

**4.When + did + S + started/begin + to V/Ving.....?**  
=>How long + have/has + S + V3/ed....?

## II.THỰC HÀNH.

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG SỰ HÒA HỢP THÌ

I.Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- When I last saw him, he \_\_\_\_\_ in London.  
A. has lived                      B. is living                      C. was living                      D. has been living
- We \_\_\_\_\_ Dorothy since last Saturday.  
A. don't see                      B. haven't seen                      C. didn't see                      D. hadn't seen
- The train \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour ago.  
A. has been leaving                      B. left                      C. has left                      D. had left
- My sister \_\_\_\_\_ for you since yesterday.  
A. is looking                      B. was looking                      C. has been looking                      D. looked
- Christopher Columbus \_\_\_\_\_ American more than 500 years ago.  
A. discovered                      B. has discovered                      C. had discovered                      D. had been discovering

6. He fell down when he \_\_\_\_\_ towards the church.  
A. run                      B. runs                      C. was running                      D. had run
7. I'll come and see you before I \_\_\_\_\_ for the States.  
A. leave                      B. will leave                      C. have left                      D. shall leave
8. John \_\_\_\_\_ a book when I saw him.  
A. is reading                      B. read                      C. was reading                      D. reading
9. Her brother \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada at present.  
A. working                      B. works                      C. is working                      D. work
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ to the same barber since last year.  
A. am going                      B. have been going                      C. go                      D. had gone
11. Her father \_\_\_\_\_ when she was a small girl.  
A. dies                      B. died                      C. has died                      D. had died
12. Almost everyone \_\_\_\_\_ for home by the time we arrived.  
A. leave                      B. left                      C. leaves                      D. had left
13. I couldn't cut the grass because the lawn mower \_\_\_\_\_ a few days previously.  
A. broke down                      B. has been broken                      C. had broken down                      D. breaks down
14. Since \_\_\_\_\_, I have heard nothing from him.  
A. he had left                      B. he left                      C. he has left                      D. he was left
15. After I \_\_\_\_\_ lunch, I looked for my bag.  
A. had                      B. had had                      C. have has                      D. have had
16. By the end of next year, George \_\_\_\_\_ English for two years.  
A. will have learned                      B. will learn                      C. has learned                      D. would learn
17. Henry \_\_\_\_\_ into the restaurant when the writer was having dinner.  
A. was going                      B. went                      C. has gone                      D. did go
18. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
A. finish                      B. finishes                      C. will finish                      D. finishing
19. I \_\_\_\_\_ from him since he \_\_\_\_\_ two years ago.  
A. hadn't heard; disappeared                      B. haven't heard; disappeared  
C. didn't hear; has disappeared                      D. will not hear; disappears
20. After the guests \_\_\_\_\_, she \_\_\_\_\_ back into the living-room and \_\_\_\_\_ off the light.  
A. left; went; turned                      B. had left; had gone; turned  
C. have left; will got; turned                      D. had left; went; turned
21. By the time you finish cooking they \_\_\_\_\_ their homework.  
A. will have finished                      B. will finish                      C. had finished                      D. have finished
22. I will tell John about it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. when I will see him this afternoon.                      B. when I see him this afternoon.  
C. when I saw him this afternoon.                      D. after I had seen him this afternoon.
23. I have heard nothing from him since he \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
A. had left                      B. left                      C. has left                      D. leaves
24. He fell down while he \_\_\_\_\_ towards the church.  
A. run                      B. runs                      C. was running                      D. had run
25. Bill's mother won't let him go out with his friends \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. when he finished his homework                      B. after he had finished his homework  
C. once he finished his homework                      D. until he has finished his homework
26. Her academic performance has greatly improved since she her study \_\_\_\_\_ methods.  
A. will change                      B. changed                      C. was changing                      D. would change
27. You may not see how important your family is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. after you had lived far from home                      B. when you were living far from home  
C. until you live far from home                              D. as soon as you lived far from home
28. The city has changed a lot since I last \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. visited                      B. would visit                      C. will visit                      D. visit
29. He will take the dog out for a walk \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. as soon as he finished dinner                      B. as soon as he will finish  
C. as soon as he has finished                      D. as soon as he was finishing
30. Ask her to come and see me \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. when she finished her work                      B. when she has finished her work  
C. after she had finished her work                      D. as soon as she was finishing her work.
31. My mother usually \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking every day.  
A. do                      B. does                      C. is doing                      D. to do
32. In my family, everybody \_\_\_\_\_ the household chores.  
A. sharing                      B. to share                      C. shares                      D. share
33. She \_\_\_\_\_ her homework at the moment.  
A. is doing                      B. to do                      C. does                      D. do
34. She often \_\_\_\_\_ a big breakfast but today she \_\_\_\_\_ only a glass of milk.  
A. has/ is having                      B. was having/ had                      C. had/has                      D. had had/ is having
35. The baby \_\_\_\_\_ Don't make so much noise.  
A. sleep                      B. sleeps                      C. is sleeping                      D. slept
36. I have not read a newspaper since Sunday.  
A. I never read a newspaper on Sunday.  
B. The last time I read a newspaper was on Sunday.  
C. I only read a newspaper on Sunday.  
D. It is Sunday on which I read a newspaper.
37. John \_\_\_\_\_ tennis once or twice a week.  
A. usually play                      B. is usually playing  
C. usually plays                      D. have usually played
38. He left school three years ago.  
A. It is three years since he had left school.                      B. It is three years since he left school.  
C. It is three years since he has left school.                      D. It has been three years ago since he left school.
39. She \_\_\_\_\_ German for two years.  
A. has learnt                      B. is learning                      C. learn                      D. learns
40. Tina \_\_\_\_\_ for London two years ago, and I \_\_\_\_\_ from her since then.  
A. left / have not heard                      B. is leaving / had not heard  
C. is going to leave / do not hear                      D. leave / are not hearing.
41. She has learnt English and French \_\_\_\_\_ the age of five.  
A. since                      B. for                      C. before                      D. in
42. \_\_\_\_\_ you go to the dentist?  
A. How often are                      B. How often do                      C. How often does                      D. How are
43. She usually \_\_\_\_\_ skirt. But today she \_\_\_\_\_ trousers.  
A. has worn/wears                      B. wears/is wearing                      C. wears/was wearing                      D. wore/ has worn
44. I'm busy at the moment \_\_\_\_\_ on the computer.  
A. I work                      B. I'm worked                      C. I'm working                      D. I worked
45. A cold wind \_\_\_\_\_ for the last three days.  
A. has been blowing                      B. blows

C. is blowing

D. blew

46. For years, scientists in many countries \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of research to find a vaccine against AIDS.

A. are doing

B. will do

C. did

D. have done

47. I don't know where he is. He hasn't arrived \_\_\_\_\_.

A. already

B. still

C. since

D. yet

48. How long \_\_\_\_\_ here? – Exactly 4 years today. I'm thinking of changing my job next year.

A. are you working

B. have you been working

C. did you work

D. do you work

49. I \_\_\_\_\_ in this school for ten years.

A. has been studying

B. have been studying

C. studied

D. were studying

50. I'm afraid I'm not hungry now. I've \_\_\_\_\_ eaten lunch.

A. yet

B. still

C. already

D. ever

**II. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. This is the first time he went abroad.

=> He hasn't.....

2. She started driving 1 month ago.

=> She has.....

3. We began eating when it started to rain.

=> We have.....

4. I last had my hair cut when I left her.

=> I haven't.....

5. It is a long time since we last met.

=> We haven't.....

6. When did you have it ?

=> How long .....?

7. This is the first time I had such a delicious meal .

=> I haven't.....

8. I haven't seen him for 8 days.

=> The last.....

9. I haven't taken a bath since Monday.

=> It is.....

10. Samuel started keeping a diary in 1997

=> Samuel has.....

11. We started learning English five years ago.

=> We have .....

12. I began living in Ho Chi Minh City when I was 8.

=> I have.....

13. She has taught the children in this remote village for five months

=> She started .....

14. He has written to me since April.

=> The last time.....

15. She hasn't had a swim for five years

=> She last .....

16. They last talked to each other two months ago  
=>They haven't .....
17. The last time she saw her elder sister was in 1999  
=>She hasn't .....
18. She hasn't written to me for years  
=>It's years.....
19. Robert and Catherine have been married for ten years  
=>It's ten years .....
20. We have not jogged since August.  
=>The.....



### I. CÁC NGUYÊN TẮC CHIA ĐỘNG TỪ SỐ ÍT VÀ SỐ NHIỀU.

#### QUY TẮC CHUNG

- Chủ ngữ là danh từ số ít hoặc danh từ không đếm được đi cùng động từ số ít và chủ ngữ số nhiều đi cùng động từ số nhiều. Đôi khi chủ ngữ còn hoà hợp với động từ tùy theo ý tưởng diễn đạt hoặc danh từ/đại từ đứng trước theo các quy tắc nhất định. Sau đây là một số quy tắc cơ bản về sự hoà hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ .

V (số ít)	Chủ ngữ là danh từ và cụm danh từ số ít.
	Chủ ngữ là các đại lượng chỉ thời gian, khoảng cách, tiền bạc, hay sự đo lường.
	Chủ ngữ là các đại từ bất định: <b>someone, anything, nothing, eve-eryone, another...</b>
	Chủ ngữ là mệnh đề danh từ Ex: All I want to do now is to sleep.
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng "to infinitive" hoặc "V-ing".
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng cụm từ " <b>Many a</b> ".
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu là một phân số có tử số là 1. Ex: 1/2 is larger than 1/3.
	Chủ ngữ là một số danh từ đặc biệt có hình thức số nhiều: môn học ( <b>Physics, Maths</b> ), môn thể thao ( <b>billards, athletics...</b> ), tin tức ( <b>news</b> ), các loại bệnh ( <b>rabies, measles...</b> ), tên 1 số quốc gia và tổ chức ( <b>UN, the United States, the Philipines...</b> ), loài động vật ( <b>ants, elephants...</b> )
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng: <b>Most of/All of/Plenty of/ + N (không đếm được/số ít)</b> .
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng " <b>The number of + N (số nhiều)</b> ".
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng " <b>None of + N (số nhiều)/ No + N (số ít)</b> ".
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng N <sub>1</sub> (số ít) of N <sub>2</sub> .
	Chủ ngữ là cụm danh từ chỉ nhóm động vật (số ít) mang nghĩa " <b>bầy, đàn</b> ": flock of birds/sheep, school of fish, pride of lion, pack of dogs, herd of cattle...
	<b>A large amount/A great deal + N (không đếm được/ số ít)</b> .
	<b>Neither (of)/Either of + N (số nhiều)</b> Ex: - Neither restaurants is expensive. - Either of them works in this company.
	Chủ ngữ là một tựa đề. Ex: "Chi pheo" is a famous work of Nam Cao.
Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng "A pair of + N (số nhiều)". Ex: A pair of pants is in the drawer.	
Chủ ngữ là danh từ và cụm danh từ số nhiều. Ex: Oranges are rich in vitamin C	
Một số danh từ kết thúc bằng "s" nhưng dùng số nhiều: <b>people, police, cattle, children, geese, mice...</b> Ex: People are searching for something to eat.	
Hai chủ ngữ nối nhau bằng "and" và có quan hệ đẳng lập Ex: Jane and Mary are my best friends. Tuy nhiên, nếu 2 danh từ cùng chỉ một người, một bộ phận hoặc 1 món ăn...	

	<p>thì động từ chia ở số ít. (Lưu ý: không có “the” ở trước danh từ sau “and”.) Ex: Bread and butter is their daily food.</p>
V (số nhiều)	<p>Cấu trúc “<b>both N<sub>1</sub> and N<sub>2</sub></b>” Ex: Both Betty and Joan are cooking for their dinner party.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ là 1 đại từ: <b>several, both, many, few, all, some + N (số nhiều)</b>. Ex: Several students are absent.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ là “<b>The + adj</b>”, chỉ một tập hợp người Ex: The poor living here need help.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu là một phân số có tử số từ 2 trở lên. Ex: 2/5 are smaller than 1/2.</p>
	<p>Các danh từ luôn dùng dạng số nhiều (thường đi theo cặp): <i>trouser, eyeglasses, jeans, tweezers, shorts, pliers, pants, tongs...</i> Ex: The pants are in the drawer.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng: <b>Most of/All of/ Plenty of/Some of/Majority of/ The last of/ One of/Half of/Part of/The rest of/Percentage of/A lot of/Lots of/A third of/Minority of + N (số nhiều)</b>. Ex: Most of people in the factory are male.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng “<b>A number of + N (số nhiều)</b>”. Ex: A number of students going to class decrease.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng “<b>No + N (số nhiều)</b>”. Ex: No people understand what he says.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng “<b>N<sub>1</sub> (số nhiều) of N<sub>2</sub></b>”. Ex: The studies of how living things work are called philosophy.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ là cụm danh từ chỉ nhóm động vật (số nhiều) mang nghĩa “bầy, đàn”: <i>flocks of birds/sheep; schools of fish; prides of lion; packs of dogs; herds of cattle...</i> Ex: Flocks of birds are flying to its destination.</p>
V chia theo chủ ngữ đầu tiên	<p>Chủ ngữ được nối với nhau bởi các liên từ: “<b>as long as, as well as, with, together with, along with, in addition to, accompanied by</b>”. Ex: - She, along with her classmates, is going to university this year. - Mrs. Smith together with her sons is going abroad.</p>
V chia theo các danh từ thứ 2	<p>Either ...or... Neither ... nor... Not only ... but also... ... or... ... nor... Not... but...</p>

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG SỰ HÒA HỢP CHỦ-VỊ

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. One of \_\_\_\_\_ a goldfish bowl on her kitchen table.  
A. my friend keep    B. my friends keep    C. my friend keeps    D. my friends keeps
2. Every \_\_\_\_\_ love.  
A. man, woman and child needs    C. man, woman and child need  
B. men, women and children needs    D. men, women and children need
3. One of the girls who \_\_\_\_\_ in this office \_\_\_\_\_ my niece  
A. works / is    B. works / are    C. work / is    D. work / are
4. Neither Lan nor her parents \_\_\_\_\_ the film.  
A. like    B. likes    C. is like    D. are like
5. Each \_\_\_\_\_ the same as the day before.  
A. days was    B. day was    C. days were    D. day were
6. More men than \_\_\_\_\_ left handed.  
A. woman are    B. woman is    C. women are    D. women is
7. Every one of the students \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class  
A. is    B. are    C. were    D. have been
8. There \_\_\_\_\_ some money on the table.  
A. are    B. were    C. have been    D. is
9. This information about taxes \_\_\_\_\_ helpful  
A. were    B. have been    C. is    D. are
10. The vegetables in the bowl on the table \_\_\_\_\_ fresh.  
A. looks    B. smells    C. are    D. is
11. Writing \_\_\_\_\_ her happy  
A. letter makes    B. letters makes    C. letter make    D. letters make
12. None of the money robbed from the banks last year \_\_\_\_\_ yet.  
A. has been found    B. have been found    C. has found    D. have found
13. My father and mother \_\_\_\_\_ for the same company.  
A. works    B. work    C. is working    D. has worked
14. The elderly \_\_\_\_\_ this kind of music, but the young \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. don't like / does    B. doesn't like / does    C. don't like / do    D. doesn't like / do
15. A large number of students in this school.....English quite fluently.  
A. speaks    B. is speaking    C. has spoken    D. speak
16. Beauty as well as health.....failed her this term.  
A. has    B. have    C. is    D. are
17. Not only John but his brothers.....also in debts.  
A. is    B. have    C. was    D. were
18. The quality of these recordings.....not very good.  
A. is    B. are    C. is being    D. has been
19. To what place.....either the man or his son wish to go?  
A. is    B. does    C. do    D. are
20. We have had.....homework in Mathematics recently.  
A. lots of    B. many    C. several    D. any
21. The use of credit cards in place of cash.....increased rapidly in recent years.  
A. have been    B. has been    C. has    D. have
22. Three years in a strange land.....like a long time for lonely people.  
A. is seeming    B. are seeming    C. seems    D. seemed
23. For most of these children, poverty.....them from having enough schooling.  
A. makes    B. avoids    C. prevents    D. refuses

24. If anyone....., tell him I'll come back later.  
A. was calling      B. called      C. call      D. calls
25. About 60% of students in this class.....from China.  
A. was      B. were      C. are      D. is
26. The writer and poet.....at the meeting yesterday.  
A. have been      B. was      C. were      D. had been
27. The Browns.....here since 1950.  
A. are living      B. is living      C. have lived      D. has lived
28. The science classes at this.....difficult.  
A. schools are      B. school is      C. school are      D. school's is
29. She isn't used to.....in these bad conditions.  
A. work      B. working      C. worked      D. be working
30. One of the.....from Italy.  
A. student is      B. students are      C. student are      D. students is
31. My mother.....drink much coffee but now she has become addicted to it.  
A. didn't use to      B. didn't used to      C. wasn't used to      D. used to
32. You have to pay extra if you take too.....with you.  
A. much luggages      B. many luggages      C. much luggage      D. many luggage
33. ....in your class have tickets for the lecture series?  
A. Do any of the student      C. Do any of the students  
B. Does any of the student      D. Does any of the students
34. There.....available in his area of specialization.  
A. isn't a lot of job      B. aren't a lot of jobs      C. isn't a lot of jobs      D. aren't a lot of job.
35. Many of the.....not expect to win.  
A. participants in the race do      C. participants in the race does  
B. participants in the races does      D. participant in the race does
36. The English.....strong traditions.  
A. has      B. have much      C. have many      D. has much
37. ....moved to that city recently.  
A. A number of Vietnamese have      C. The number of Vietnamese have  
B. A number of Vietnamese has      D. The number of Vietnamese has
38. Each of the reference.....available in the school library.  
A. books on that list is      B. books on that list are  
C. book on that list is      D. book on that list are
39. There .....in the world today.  
A. is many new computer company      C. are many new computers companies  
B. is many new computers company      D. are many new computer companies
40. The doctor who has visited dozens of countries and has helped thousands of patients all around the world.....over there.  
A. is      B. are      C. was      D. were
41. A series of lectures.....being presented at the Central Hall this week.  
A. are      B. will be      C. has become      D. is
42. Each student..... answered the first three questions.  
A. has      B. have      C. have to      D. must
43. Either John or his wife .....breakfast each morning.  
A. make      B. is making      C. makes      D. made
44. Everybody who ..... a fever must go home at once.

- A. has                      B. have                      C. is having                      D. are having
45. Five dollars .....all I have on me.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. will be                      D. have
46. John, along with twenty friends, ..... planning a party.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. has been                      D. have been
47. Mathematics..... the science of quantity.  
A. was                      B. are                      C. is                      D. were
48. Measles.....cured without much difficulty nowadays.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. will be                      D. have
49. Neither Mary nor her brothers.....a consent form for tomorrow's field trip.  
A. need                      B. needs                      C. is needing                      D. has need
50. The army..... eliminated this section of the training test.  
A. has                      B. is having                      C. are                      D. have
51. The number of the months in a year.....twelve.  
A. was                      B. were                      C. are                      D. is
52. The picture of the soldiers..... back many memories.  
A. will bring                      B. brings                      C. bring                      D. have brought
53. These pictures, as well as the photograph..... the room.  
A. brightens                      B. brightening                      C. brighten                      D. being brightened
54. What he told you..... to be of no importance.  
A. seems                      B. seem                      C. must seem                      D. have seemed
55. Mr. John, accompanied by several members of the committee,..... proposed some changes of the rules.  
A. have                      B. has                      C. are                      D. is
56. The flock of birds..... circling overhead.  
A. gets                      B. are                      C. is                      D. get
57. The levels of intoxication..... from subject to subject.  
A. has been varied                      B. havebeen varied                      C. varies                      D. vary
58. Advertisements on television..... becoming more competitive than ever before.  
A. has                      B. have                      C. are                      D. is
59. A large number of students in this school.....English quite fluently.  
A.speaks                      B.is speaking                      C.has spoken                      D.speak
60. A series of lecture.....being presented at the Central Hall this week.  
A.are                      B.will be                      C.has become                      D.is

## II. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- Three months (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a long time to wait.
- Five dollars (be) \_\_\_\_\_ too much to pay for that book.
- A number of books (be) \_\_\_\_\_ on the table over there.
- The number of students in this class (be) \_\_\_\_\_ limited to thirty.
- It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ my two brothers who (be) \_\_\_\_\_ hurt.
- It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ the children playing upstairs.
- Neither of the answers (be) \_\_\_\_\_ correct.
- Many of the girls in my school (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ white shirts.
- What we need most (be) \_\_\_\_\_ books.
- Either your key or my key (be) \_\_\_\_\_ missing.
- John or his brothers (be) \_\_\_\_\_ going to help me tomorrow.
- Bread and butter (be) \_\_\_\_\_ all he asked for.



13. The author and lecturer (be) \_\_\_\_\_ arriving today.
14. My old friend and colleague, George (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in town right now.
15. Three fourths of the wall (be) \_\_\_\_\_ painted so far.
16. There (have) \_\_\_\_\_ been more excitement in this city about a sporting event.
17. The ship with its load of timer (be) \_\_\_\_\_ leaving the port today.
18. The package of cigarettes (be) \_\_\_\_\_ on the table over there.
19. Oranges and cream (be) \_\_\_\_\_ perishable and should be refrigerated.
20. The newspaper and the dictionary (be) \_\_\_\_\_ on the table.
21. A good man and useful citizen (have) \_\_\_\_\_ passed away.
22. Half of the students (be) \_\_\_\_\_ looking out.
23. There (be) \_\_\_\_\_ plenty of time. So don't be so hurry.
24. There (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of lakes in Hanoi.
25. I, your master, (command) \_\_\_\_\_ you.
26. My wife, not my friends, ( wait) \_\_\_\_\_ waiting for me at the moment.
27. Early to bed and early to rise (make) \_\_\_\_\_ a man healthy, wealthy and wise.
28. The English (be) \_\_\_\_\_ famous for their calmness.
29. The money that (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ on education every year (be) \_\_\_\_\_ not enough.
30. Five kilos of gold (steal) \_\_\_\_\_ from the bank yesterday.

**III. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

1. I like a classical music very much.  
I like .....
2. Cattle was driven hundreds of miles.  
Cattle .....
3. That's a wonderful news.  
That's .....
4. Has the police arrived yet?  
.....
5. I don't like hot weather. Thirty degrees are too hot for me.  
I don't .....
6. Every girl and boy have to wear uniform at this school.  
Every girl .....
7. Where is my trousers? Have you seen it anywhere?  
Where .....
8. There are some water in the bottle.  
There .....
9. The trees over the hill is green.  
The .....
10. China, a country with many people, grow a lot of rice.  
China, .....
11. The computer lab, with its many computers, are moving into the new building.  
The computer lab, .....
12. The shoes I bought last month, while comfortable, is out of style.  
The shoes .....
13. The number of students who knows the answer are very low.  
The number .....
14. Economics are the main subject of her department.  
Economics .....

15. 20 percent of the forest have been destroyed lately

20 percent .....

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA/CÁCH DÙNG ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU

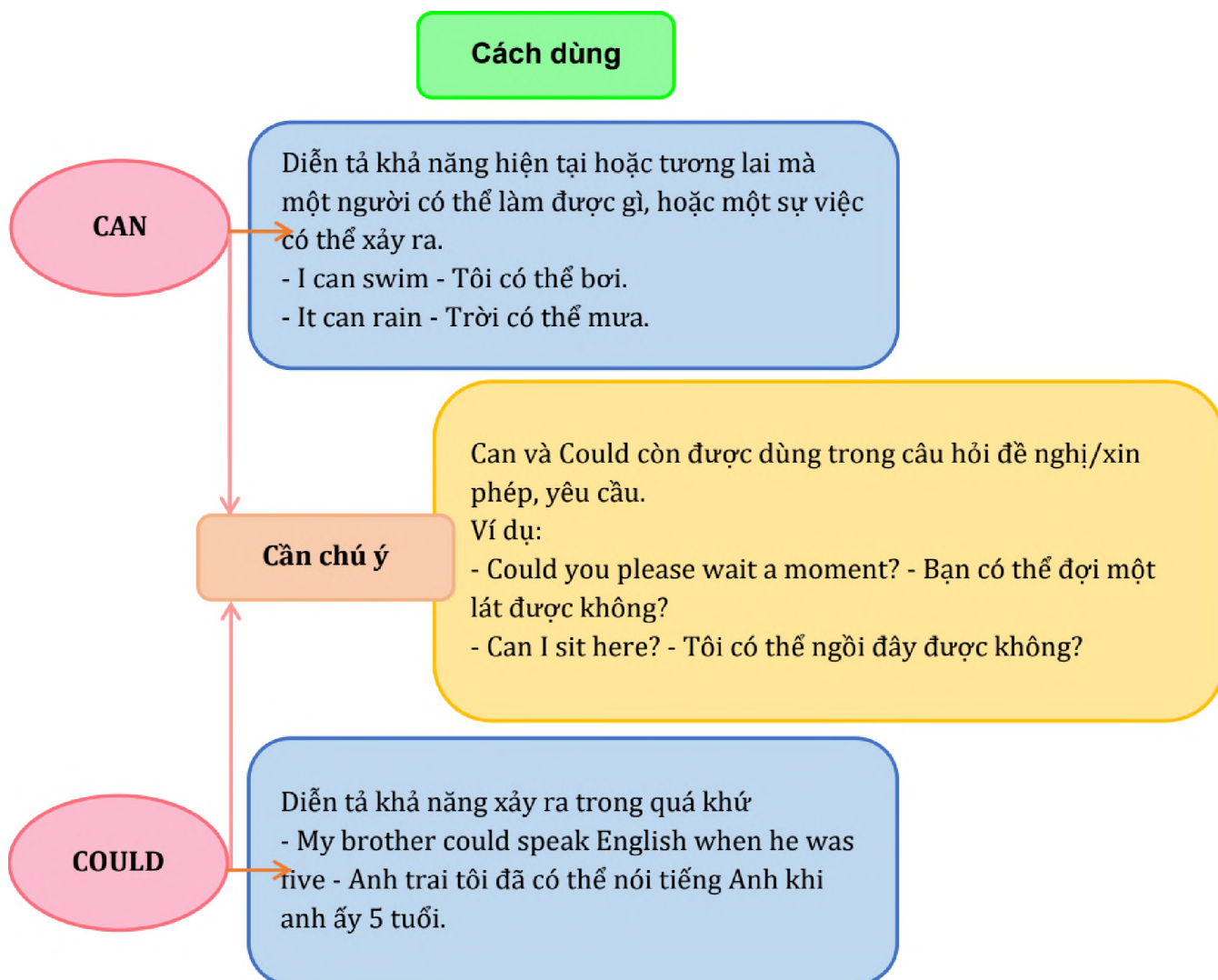
1. Động từ khuyết thiếu là gì ?

- Động từ khuyết thiếu là động từ nhưng lại không chỉ hành động mà nó chỉ giúp bổ nghĩa cho động từ chính.
- Những động từ khuyết thiếu này có thể dùng chung cho tất cả các ngôi và không chia theo thì. Các động từ theo sau động từ khuyết thiếu này được giữ nguyên thể.
- Các động từ khuyết thiếu thường dùng là: can, could, may, might, shall, should, will, would, must, ought to, need, have to.

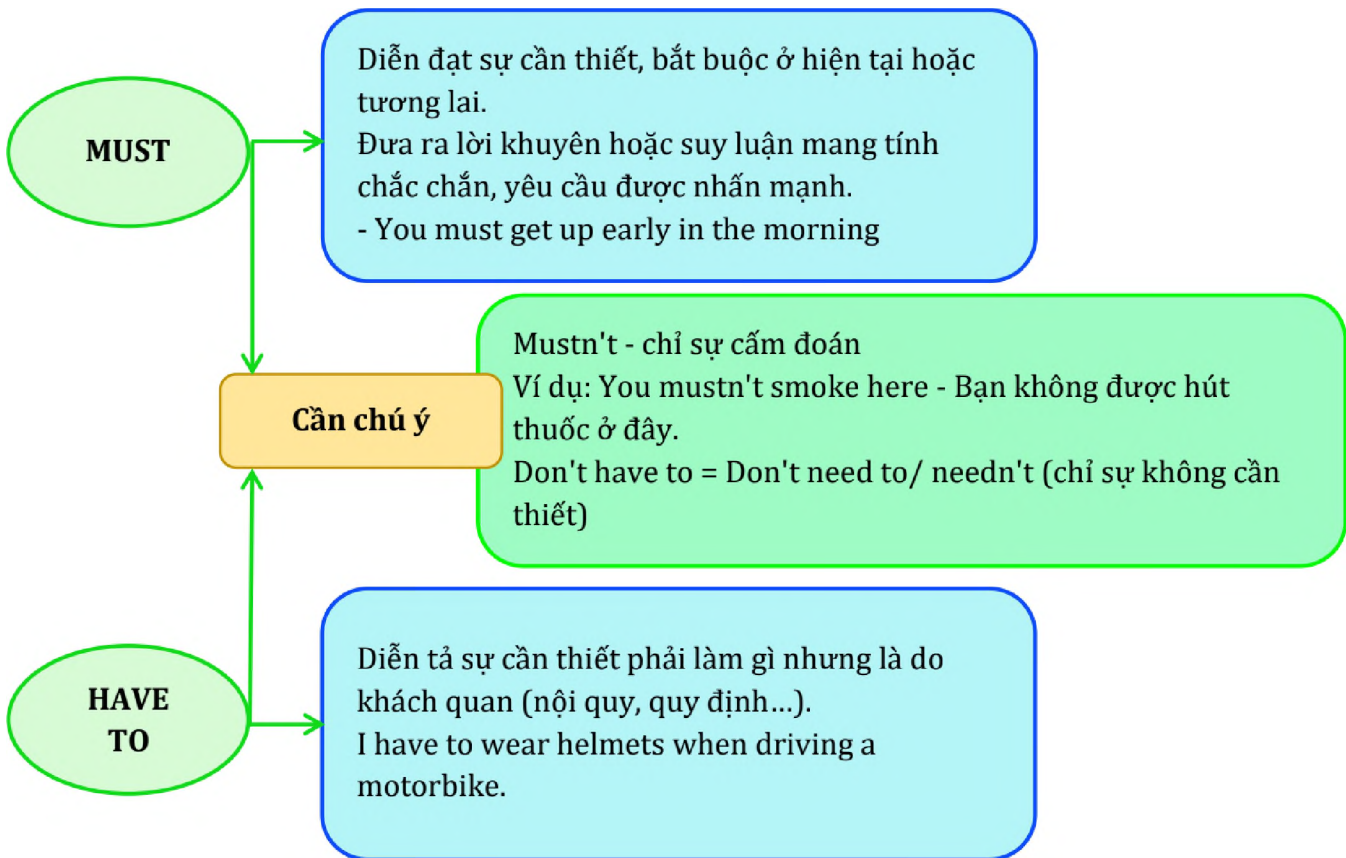
2. Cách dùng động từ khuyết thiếu.

❖ Trường hợp 1 : Modal verb + V1

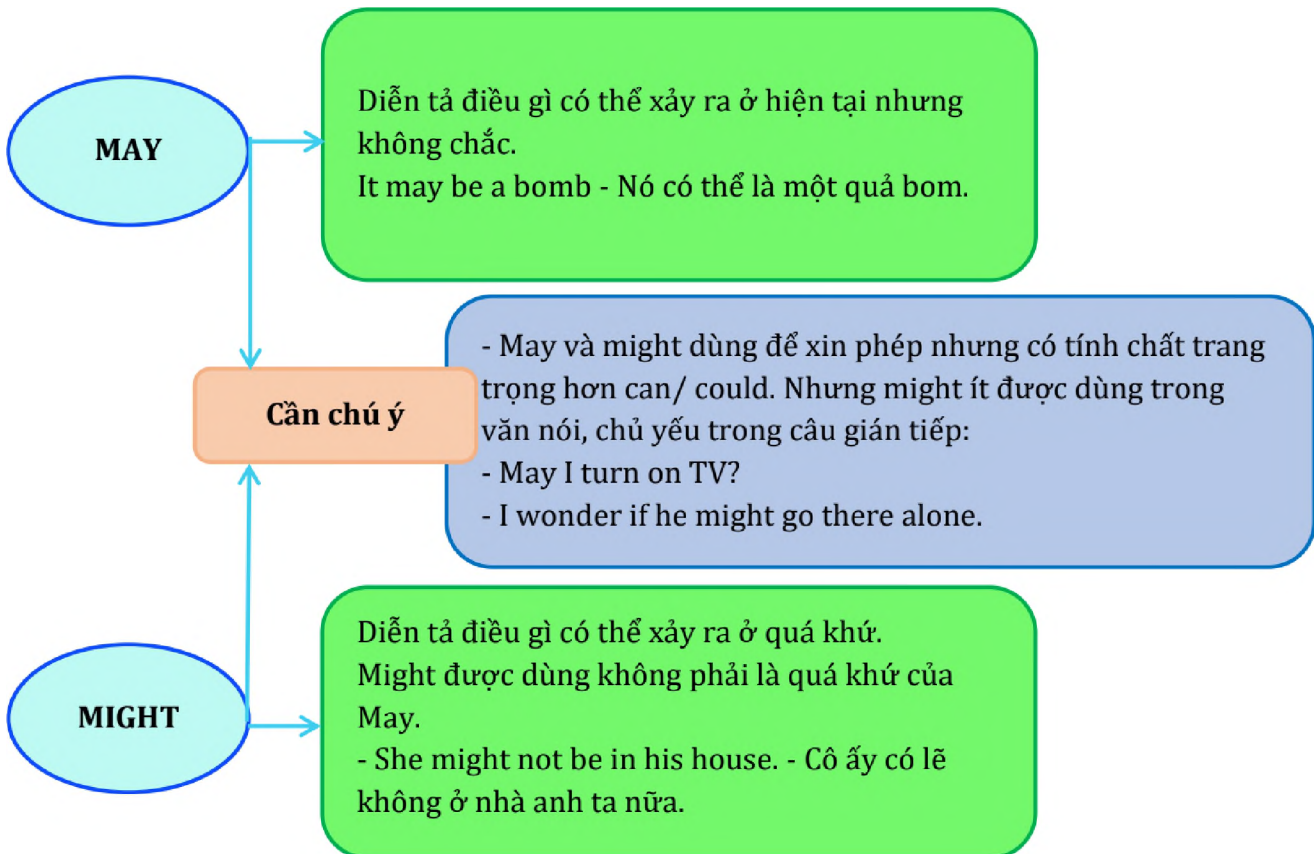
a. Modal verb : can/could



## b.Modal verb : must/have to

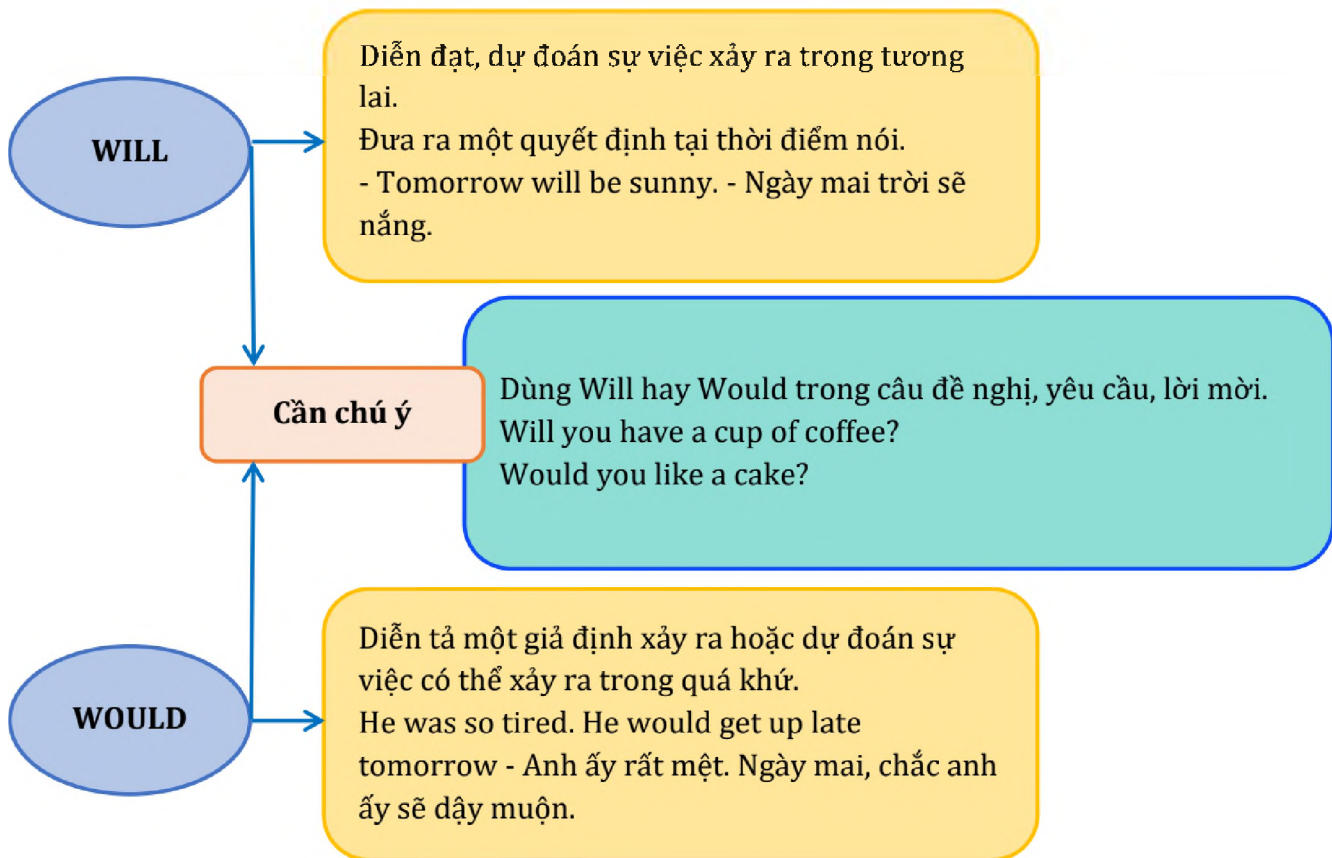


## c.Modal verb : may/might.





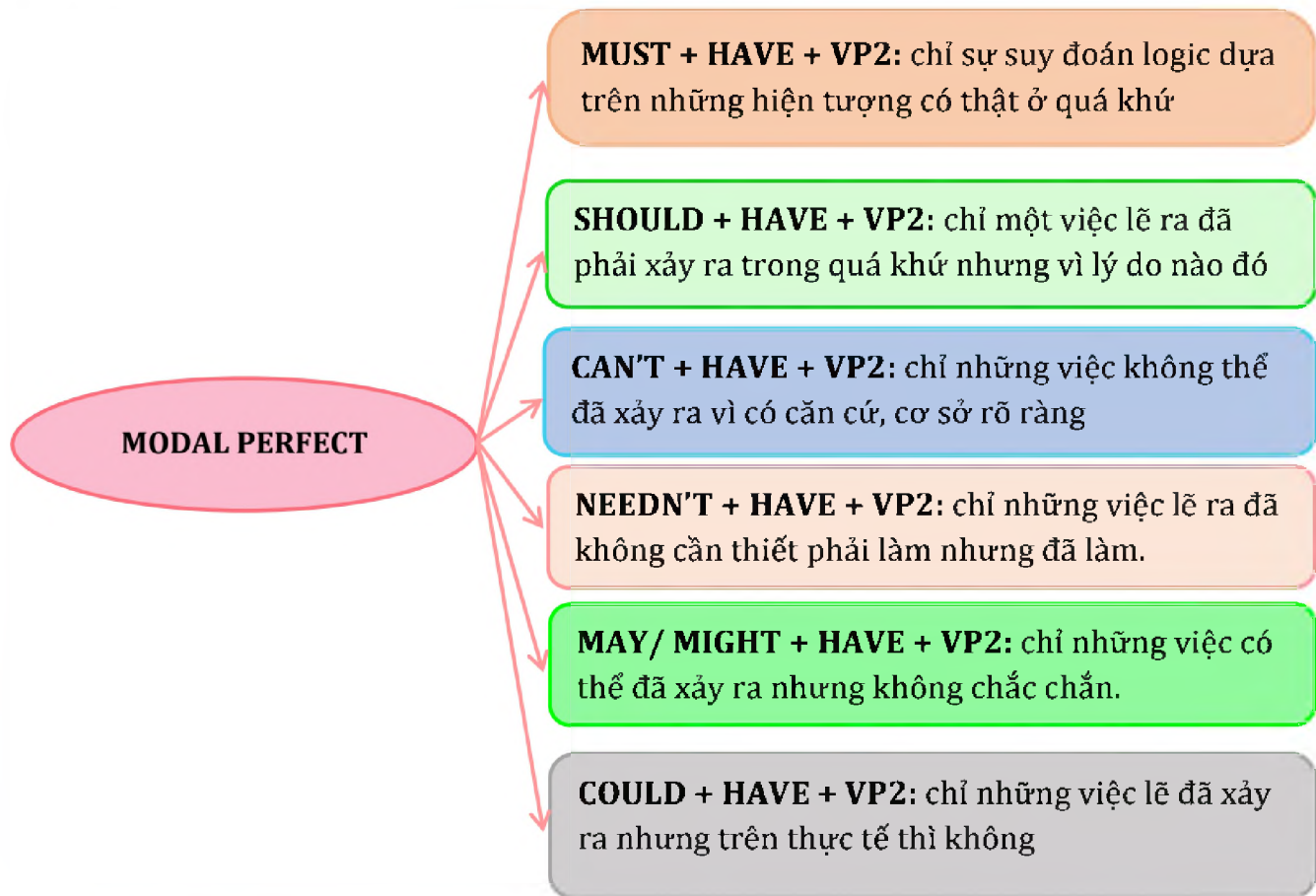
#### d.Modal verb : will/would



#### e.Modal verb : shall/should/ought to.



❖ Trường hợp 2 : Modal verb + have + V3/ed (pp)



**PHƯƠNG PHÁP BIẾN ĐỔI CÂU TƯƠNG ĐƯƠNG**

- **be necessary** (for O) + to-V = **need / have to**
- **be unnecessary** (for O) + to- V = **don't need / don't have to**

Ex: It is unnecessary for him to study many subjects.

He needn't study many subjects

He does not have to study many subjects.

- **be possible / impossible** + to-V = **can/ cannot + V** hoặc **may/might**

Ex: It is impossible for me to finish it now.

I can't finish it now

- **perhaps( có lẽ) = may/might**
- **it's better/it's time .....= should**
- **be not permitted /be not allowed = mustn't**

**II.THỰC HÀNH**

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU**

I.Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. You aren't allowed to take photographs here.  
A. You needn't take photographs here.  
B. You can't take photographs here.

- C. You don't have to take photographs here.  
D. You mustn't take photographs here.
2. She felt ill and \_\_\_\_\_ leave early.  
A. has to                      B. must                      C. had to                      D. ought
  3. You \_\_\_\_\_ use your mobile phone in the examination room.  
A. oughtn't to              B. mustn't                      C. don't have to              D. shouldn't
  4. My grandparents live in the suburb, so whenever we visit them, we \_\_\_\_\_ a bus.  
A. must take                      B. should take                      C. have to be taken              D. have to take
  5. "Must I take my umbrella?" - "No, you \_\_\_\_\_. It's not going to rain."  
A. mustn't                      B. have to                      C. needn't                      D. don't
  6. "Must you come when your neighbour calls?" - "No, I....."  
A. must not                      B. mustn't                      C. don't have to                      D. must not come
  7. You ..... exercise regularly.  
A. mustn't                      B. should                      C. would                      D. needn't
  8. Young people \_\_\_\_\_ obey their parents.  
A. must                      B. may                      C. will                      D. ought to
  9. Laura, you and the kids just have dinner without waiting for me. I \_\_\_\_\_ work very hard today.  
A. can                      B. may                      C. should                      D. would
  10. I \_\_\_\_\_ be delighted to show you round the factory.  
A. ought to                      B. would                      C. might                      D. can
  11. Leave early so that you \_\_\_\_\_ miss the bus.  
A. didn't                      B. won't                      C. shouldn't                      D. mustn't
  12. Jenny's engagement ring is enormous! It \_\_\_\_\_ have cost a fortune  
A. must                      B. might                      C. will                      D. should
  13. You \_\_\_\_\_ to write them today.  
A. should                      B. must                      C. had                      D. ought
  14. If you like, we \_\_\_ volleyball with the children while the men \_\_\_ up the barbecue.  
A. could play - are setting                      B. could have played - have set  
C. will play - were setting                      D. can play - had been setting
  15. Unless he runs he \_\_\_\_\_ catch the train.  
A. will                      B. mustn't                      C. wouldn't                      D. won't
  16. Do you always have to say the first thing that pops into your head. \_\_\_ you think once in a while before you speak?  
A. Can not                      B. Don't                      C. Can't                      D. Why
  17. "\_\_\_\_\_ you hand me that pair of scissors, please?"  
A. May                      B. Will                      C. Shall                      D. Should
  18. John still hasn't come out. He \_\_\_\_\_ everything for the trip now.  
A. must have been preparing                      C. must be preparing  
B. will be preparing                      D. will have prepared
  19. Ted's flight from Amsterdam took more than 11 hours. He \_\_\_ be exhausted after such a long flight.  
A. can                      B. must                      C. had better                      D. has
  20. You \_\_\_ take along some cash. The restaurant may not accept credit cards.  
A. had better                      B. has to                      C. can                      D. dare
  21. The machine \_\_\_ on by flipping this switch.  
A. could be turning                      B. can be turned

- C. may turn  
D. need turning
22. To remain on the safe side, we should not take things for granted and should be able to cope with all kinds of contingency; in Salts, for instance, the villagers \_\_\_ for accommodating all the visitors.  
A. may have been unprepared  
B. need not to be prepared  
C. must not be prepared  
D. may be unprepared
23. Kate: \_\_\_ hold your breath for more than a minute? - Jack: No, I can't.  
A. Might you  
B. Are you able to  
C. Can you  
D. Will you
24. You \_\_\_ be rich to be a success. Some of the most successful people I know haven't got a penny to their name.  
A. can't  
B. shouldn't  
C. don't have to  
D. mustn't
25. The company had sent the advertisement to the newspaper when they realised they'd mistyped the salary they were offering for the position. Luckily, they \_\_\_ the newspaper to correct their mistake before they printed it.  
A. could have asked  
B. must have asked  
C. were able to ask  
D. might have asked
26. Susan \_\_\_ hear the speaker because the crowd was cheering so loudly.  
A. couldn't  
B. might not  
C. can't  
D. doesn't
27. I've redone this math problem at least twenty times, but my answer is wrong according to the answer key. The answer in the book \_\_\_\_\_be wrong!  
A. should  
B. have to  
C. must  
D. could
28. You \_\_\_\_\_ worry so much. It doesn't do you any good. Either you get the job, or you don't. If you don't, just apply for another one. Eventually, you will find work.  
A. can't  
B. don't have to  
C. shouldn't  
D. may not
29. \_\_\_\_\_we move into the living room? It's more comfortable in there and there's a beautiful view of the lake.  
A. Will  
B. Must  
C. Shall  
D. Dare
30. If I had gone white water rafting with my friends, I \_\_\_\_\_ down the Colorado River right now.  
A. would be floating  
B. would have floated  
C. would float  
D. would have been floated
31. At first, my boss didn't want to hire Sam. But, because I had previously worked with Sam, I told my boss that he \_\_\_\_\_ take another look at his resume and reconsider him for the position.  
A. has to  
B. must  
C. ought to  
D. will
32. I'm overweight and the doctor says that I \_\_\_\_\_do exercise more often.  
A. may  
B. will  
C. have to  
D. can
33. You are not allowed to take photos in the museum.  
A. You may take photos in the museum.  
B. You should take photos in the museum.  
C. You mustn't take photos in the museum.  
D. You needn't take photos in the museum.
34. I'm certain that Joe attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.  
A. Joe could have attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.  
B. Joe must have attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.  
C. Joe mightn't have attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.  
D. Joe needn't have attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.



35. I thought it was not necessary to book tickets for the film in advance, but I was wrong.
- A. I needn't have booked tickets for the film in advance.
  - B. I couldn't have booked tickets for the film in advance.
  - C. I should have booked tickets for the film in advance.
  - D. I must have booked tickets for the film in advance.
36. I'm sure that they had practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals
- A. They couldn't have practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals
  - B. They must have practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals
  - C. They shouldn't have practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals
  - D. They might have practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals.
37. It was wrong of you to criticise your son in front of his friends.
- A. You could have criticised your son in front of his friends.
  - B. You must have criticised your son in front of his friends.
  - C. You mightn't have criticised your son in front of his friends.
  - D. You shouldn't have criticised your son in front of his friends.
38. I'm sure Luisa was very disappointed when she failed the exam.
- A. Luisa must be very disappointed when she failed the exam.
  - B. Luisa must have been very disappointed when she failed the exam.
  - C. Luisa may be very disappointed when she failed the exam.
  - D. Luisa could have been very disappointed when she failed the exam.
39. I really believe my letter came as a great surprise to John.
- A. John might be very surprised to receive my letter.
  - B. John might have been very surprised to receive my letter.
  - C. John must be very surprised to receive my letter.
  - D. John must have been very surprised to receive my letter.
40. Sally paid for her travel in advance, but it wasn't necessary.
- A. Sally needn't have paid for her travel in advance.
  - B. Sally might not have paid for her travel in advance.
  - C. Sally may not have paid for her travel in advance.
  - D. Sally couldn't have paid for her travel in advance.
41. You needn't have taken so many warm clothes there.
- A. It was not necessary for you to take so many warm clothes there.
  - B. You have taken so many warm clothes there that I don't need.
  - C. There's no need for you to take so many warm clothes there.
  - D. You took lots of warm clothes there but it turned out not necessary.
42. Mary should never have been allowed to try to swim in the sea alone.
- A. When Mary let to swim in the sea alone, she said new what she was doing.
  - B. It would probably be wrong to let Mary swims in the sea on her own.
  - C. No one could have stopped Mary from trying to swim in the sea by herself.
  - D. Someone ought to have stopped Mary from attempting to swim in the sea on her own.
43. It was impossible that he forgot to wear the helmet.
- A. He should have worn the helmet
  - B. He must have worn the helmet
  - C. He might have forgot to wear the helmet
  - D. He needn't have forgot wearing the helmet
44. The fishes had died. I'm sure he forgot to feed them.
- A. He must have forgot to feed the fishes.



- B. He should have fed the fishes.  
 C. He needn't have fed the fishes.  
 D. He might have forgot feeding the fishes.
45. His parents complained about his absence from school. It's wrong of him not to tell them about that.  
 A. He should have told his parents about his absence from school.  
 B. He might have told his parents about his absence from school.  
 C. He must have told his parents about his absence from school.  
 D. He can have told his parents about his absence from school.
46. I'm sure that she didn't kill him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened.  
 A. She mustn't have killed him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened.  
 B. She needn't have killed him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened.  
 C. She can't have killed him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened.  
 D. She shouldn't have killed him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened
47. Perhaps he will return before you call.  
 A. He may be returning before you called.  
 B. He may/might have returned before you called.  
 C. He should have returned before you called.  
 D. He may return before you call.
48. You don't need to type the letter right now. You can do it later.  
 A. You mustn't type the letter right now because you can do it later.  
 B. You can't have typed the letter right now because you can do it later.  
 C. You needn't type the letter right now because you can do it later.  
 D. You needn't have typed the letter right now because you can do it later.
49. It's against the law if you hunt the endangered species.  
 A. You don't need to hunt the endangered species.  
 B. You mustn't hunt the endangered species.  
 C. You needn't hunt the endangered species.  
 D. You can't hunt the endangered species.
50. I'm sure he knew all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.  
 A. He must be knowing all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.  
 B. He should have known all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.  
 C. He must have known all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.  
 D. He might have known all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.
51. It isn't mandatory to submit my assignment today.  
 A. I mustn't submit my assignment today.  
 B. My assignment must have been submitted today.  
 C. I needn't submit my assignment today.  
 D. My assignment is required to submit by today.
52. Tom went on and on apologizing about it, which was quite unnecessary.  
 A. Tom can't have apologized. I quite understand.  
 B. Tom shouldn't have apologized. I quite understand.

- C. Tom wouldn't have apologized. I quite understand.  
 D. Tom needn't have apologized. I quite understand.
53. It's possible that she didn't hear what I said.  
 A. She might have not heard what I said.  
 B. She might not hear what I said.  
 C. She may not hear what I said.  
 D. She may not have heard what I said.
54. It's was wrong of you to betray her because she was kind to you.  
 A. You shouldn't have betrayed her because she was kind to you.  
 B. You needn't have betrayed her because she was kind to you.  
 C. You can't have betrayed her because she was kind to you.  
 D. You mustn't have betrayed her because she was kind to you.
55. I'm sure he did this because I saw him standing there.  
 A. He must have done this because I saw him standing there.  
 B. He can have done this because I saw him standing there.  
 C. He need have done this because I saw him standing there.  
 D. He may have done this because I saw him standing there.
56. I'm sure it wasn't Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.  
 A. It mustn't have been Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.  
 B. It can't have been Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.  
 C. It mightn't be Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.  
 D. It couldn't be Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.
57. You have to do clean the house every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.  
 A. The house has been cleaned every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.  
 B. The house has to do by you every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.  
 C. The house has to be done every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.  
 D. The house have to be done every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.
58. It isn't necessary for you to send her a letter today.  
 A. Her letter must have been sent today.  
 B. I mustn't send her letter today.  
 C. Her letter was required to send today.  
 D. You needn't send her a letter today.
59. Is it possible for me to phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?  
 A. Will I phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?  
 B. Can I phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?  
 C. Must I phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?  
 D. Could phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?
60. It's time for me to start to think about the job I will do in the future.  
 A. I should start to think about the job I will do in the future.  
 B. I may start to think about the job I will do in the future.  
 C. I needn't start to think about the job I will do in the future.  
 D. I must have started to think about the job I will do in the future.

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. Daisy is reading her English test because she has a test tomorrow. She \_\_\_\_\_ be studying.  
 a. will                      b. should                      c. must                      d. can
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ put the fish in the fridge before it spoils.

- a. had to                      b. may                      c. can                      d. had better
3. Mr. Brown is very rich. He \_\_\_\_\_ work hard for a living.  
a. mustn't                      b. shouldn't                      c. can't                      d. doesn't have to
4. Tom has just got a new job. He \_\_\_\_\_ be very pleased.  
a. might                      b. must                      c. should                      d. will
5. Tom painted his room black. It looks dark and dreary. He \_\_\_\_\_ have chosen another colour.  
a. should                      b. must                      c. could                      d. may
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you carry this bag for me?  
a. May                      b. Should                      c. Will                      d. Shall
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ throw litter on the streets.  
a. mustn't                      b. couldn't                      d. needn't                      d. won't
8. My mother permitted me to go out at night. She said, "You \_\_\_\_\_ go out tonight".  
a. may                      b. have to                      c. must                      d. ought to
9. It is possible that she will come to our party tonight. She come her tonight.  
a. need                      b. may                      c. should                      d. will
10. They can type. They \_\_\_\_\_ type.  
a. lean how to                      b. are able to                      c. know how to                      d. both B & C
11. When my father was young, he \_\_\_\_\_ work in the garden for long hours.  
a. can                      b. could                      c. will                      d. should
12. He \_\_\_\_\_ have committed the crime because he was with me that day.  
a. mustn't                      b. shouldn't                      c. won't                      d. couldn't
13. Since we have to be there by 8.30, we \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi.  
a. had better                      b. may                      c. ought                      d. are able to
14. It \_\_\_\_\_ rain this evening. Why don't you take an umbrella?  
a. could be                      b. must                      c. might                      d. had better
15. \_\_\_\_\_ you help me with the homework?  
a. May                      b. Shall                      c. Should                      d. Will
16. She hasn't eaten anything since yesterday. She \_\_\_\_\_ be really hungry.  
a. might                      b. will                      c. must                      d. can
17. I put my keys on the table, but now it's gone. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ have taken it.  
a. may                      b. had to                      c. should                      d. would rather
18. He advised me to take an English course. I \_\_\_\_\_ take it early.  
a. should                      b. shall                      c. will                      d. may
19. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ in the field than \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
a. to work/ to stay                      b. work/ stay                      c. working/ staying                      d. worked/stayed
20. As an orphan, he \_\_\_\_\_ earn his living alone.  
a. have to                      c. has had to                      c. ought to                      d. had to
21. They prayed that their daughter \_\_\_\_\_ be lucky again.  
a. may                      b. will                      c. could                      d. might
22. He \_\_\_\_\_ all that money, so she could save some.  
a. didn't need to spend                      b. needn't have spent  
c. shouldn't spend                      d. oughtn't to spend
23. He spent all that money last week. He \_\_\_\_\_ so much.  
a. didn't need to spend                      b. shouldn't spend  
c. needn't have spent                      d. didn't have to spend
24. He had to work hard so that he \_\_\_\_\_ his family.  
a. may support                      b. supported                      c. can support                      d. might support

25. He will have to stay in hospital. That's what he \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. has done                      b. must do                      c. must be doing                      d. must have done
26. Do you have to buy this hat? No, I \_\_\_\_\_. It isn't necessary.  
 a. mustn't                      b. won't                      c. needn't                      d. don't need
27. A man never have too many ties. It's \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. unable                      b. impossible                      c. improbable                      d. incapable
28. It could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz.  
 a. might not                      b. may not                      c. mustn't                      d. wasn't able to
29. This plane could get over the mountain if it rose to 10,000 feet. This means it \_\_\_\_\_ over the mountains.  
 a. would succeed in getting                      b. got  
 c. was bale to get                      d. had got
30. The plane was then able to rise. This means it \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. could rise                      b. might rise                      c. might succeed in rising                      d. rose
31. Byrd knew that he would be able to reach the South Pole. It would be \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. impossible                      b. necessary                      c. able                      d. possible
32. He ought not \_\_\_\_\_ him but she did.  
 a. to tell                      b. to telling                      c. tell                      d. to have told
33. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
 a. do                      b. don't do                      c. won't do                      d. didn't do
34. \_\_\_\_\_ run so fast?  
 a. Does he need                      b. Need he to                      c. Need he                      d. Needs he
35. He didn't need \_\_\_\_\_ out of his room in Moscow.  
 a. go                      b. to going                      c. going                      d. to go
36. I could not \_\_\_\_\_ it even though I had wanted to do so.  
 a. had bought                      b. buy                      c. buying                      d. have bought
37. I left my pen in this box, but it isn't there now. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 a. must have taken                      b. must take                      c. had to take                      d. had taken
38. Mary received 100 dollars from her sister. She \_\_\_\_\_ the ring she wanted. It only costs 10 dollars.  
 a. buys                      b. had bought                      c. bought                      d. might have bought
39. It lost my Honda last week; I hadn't locked it. You \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 a. should lock                      b. should have locked                      c. ought to lock                      d. could lock
40. In 1900 the world had no deaths from rabies. Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful vaccine.  
 a. has discovered                      b. discovered  
 c. must have discovered                      d. should have discovered
41. Mary received 100 dollars from her sister. She \_\_\_\_\_ the computer she wanted. It costs 200 dollars.  
 a. wouldn't buy                      b. hadn't bought                      c. couldn't have bought                      d. didn't buy
42. Once Helen failed in her exam. She played too much. She \_\_\_\_\_ too much.  
 a. shouldn't have played                      b. should play  
 c. shouldn't play                      d. wouldn't have played
43. If I had liked that watch, may be I \_\_\_\_\_ bought it.  
 a. will have                      b. must have                      c. would have                      d. shall have
44. Did my sister tell you that I had been to Dalat?  
 a. might have                      b. could have                      c. would have                      d. must have
45. The women of this tribe \_\_\_\_\_ precious ornaments for slat because they didn't have any salt.

- a. have traded      b. traded      c. would have traded      d. could trade
46. I took my only son to the park but he didn't like it. You \_\_\_\_\_ him to the zoo.  
a. should take      b. had to take      c. took      d. should have taken
47. We are now wet. You \_\_\_\_\_ the raincoats with you.  
a. should bring      b. should have brought      c. must bring      d. have to bring
48. The yard is wet. It \_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
a. must rain      b. must have rain      c. must have rained      d. had to rain
49. Many birds will \_\_\_\_\_ more than 3,000 miles to reach their winter homes.  
a. flying      b. fly      c. be fly      d. flew
50. The pen won't write; it \_\_\_\_\_ out of ink.  
a. must run      b. must be running      c. must have run      d. must have ran
51. The line is busy; someone \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone now.  
a. must be using      b. must have used  
c. must used      d. must have been using
52. Bob is absent; he \_\_\_\_\_ sick gain now.  
a. must have been      b. must be      c. must be being      d. must being
53. He \_\_\_\_\_ his j ob because he seems very happy.  
a. would like      b. can like      c. will like      d. must like
54. She told me that she'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ on the committee.  
a. not to serve      b. not serving      c. not serve      d. serving not
55. They have plenty of time, so they need not \_\_\_\_\_  
a. be hurry      b. to hurry      c. hurry      d. to be hurry
56. You're having a sore throat. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor.  
a. to go      b. went      c. go      d. going
57. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_ poor but happy than become rich without happiness.  
a. being      b. be      c. to be      d. was
58. Sit down please \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of tea?  
a. Do you like      b. Do you like to drink  
c. Would you like      d. Will you like
59. Must you come when your neighbout calls?  
No, I \_\_\_\_\_  
a. must not      b. mustn't      c. don't have to      d. must not come
60. May I have 2 tickets, please? two tickets, please?  
a. You must given me      b. You have got to give me  
c. Could I have      d. You may give me



I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA/ CÁCH DÙNG CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH/PHÂN LOẠI.

1. Câu giả định là câu gì ?

- Câu giả định hay còn gọi là câu cầu khiến là loại câu đối tượng thứ nhất muốn đối tượng thứ hai làm việc gì. Câu giả định có tính chất cầu khiến chứ không mang tính ép buộc như câu mệnh lệnh.

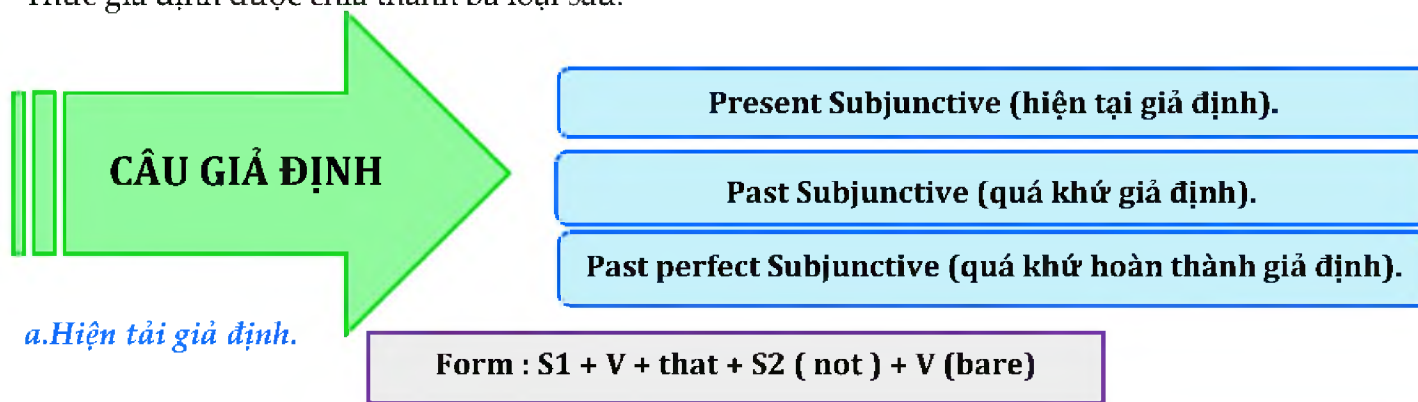
2. Cách sử dụng câu giả định.

- Câu giả định chủ yếu được sử dụng để nói đến những sự việc không chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra. Ví dụ, chúng ta sử dụng khi nói về những sự việc mà một ai đó:

- + Muốn xảy ra.
- + Dự đoán sẽ xảy ra.
- + Xảy ra trong tương trọng.

3. Phân loại câu giả định.

Thức giả định được chia thành ba loại sau:



a. Hiện tại giả định.

Dùng trong một số câu thành ngữ/ câu cảm thán để thể hiện một ao ước, hi vọng hay một lời cầu chúc.

- (God) Bless you! (Chúa phù hộ cho con)
- Heaven/God help sb! (Cầu chúa phù hộ cho ai)
- Long live Vietnam! (Việt Nam muôn năm)
- Heaven forbid! (Lạy trời!)
- Success attend you! (Chúc bạn thành công)

Dùng sau một số các động từ để thể hiện ý muốn, yêu cầu, đề nghị, gợi ý, ra lệnh:

advise, demand, prefer, require, insist, propose, stipulate, command, move, recommend, suggest, decree, order..

Dùng sau một số tính từ sau:

important, necessary, urgent, obligatory, essential, advisory, recommended, required, mandatory, proposed..

It + be (any tense) + Adj + that + s + (not) + V (present subjunctive)

Những danh từ: demand, recommendation, insistence, request, proposal, suggestion, preference, importance

Dùng trong cấu trúc với "would rather" có hai chủ ngữ  
S1 + would rather that + S2 + (not) + V (present subjunctive)

### b. Quá khứ giả định

Dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 2:  
**If + S + V (quá khứ đơn) +..., S + would/could + V (nguyên dạng)**

Dùng trong câu ước không có thực ở hiện tại (wish = If only)  
**(S + wish)/if only + S + V (quá khứ đơn)**

Được sử dụng sau "as if / as though"  
**S1 + V (hiện tại đơn) + as if/ as though + S2 + V (quá khứ đơn)**

Dùng trong mẫu câu "would rather" để chỉ một ao ước đối lập với hiện tại.  
**S1 + would rather that + S2 + V (quá khứ đơn)**

Dùng trong cấu trúc "it's time..."  
**It's (high/about) time + S + V (quá khứ đơn) = It's time for sb to do st:**  
(đã đến lúc cho ai đó làm gì)

### c. Quá khứ hoàn thành giả định.

Dùng trong mệnh đề điều kiện của câu điều kiện loại 3  
**If + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)+..., S + would/ could + have + Vp2**

Dùng sau "wish/ If only" để diễn đạt ý cầu mong hoặc giả định đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ  
**(S + wish)/if only + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**

Dùng sau "as if / as though" để chỉ một giả định không có thật trong quá khứ.  
**S1 + V (quá khứ đơn) + as if/as though + S2 + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**

Dùng với cấu trúc would rather (hai chủ ngữ) để chỉ một mong muốn đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ.  
**S1 + would rather that + S2 + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG GIẢ ĐỊNH CÁCH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. It's important that he \_\_\_\_\_ to take her medicine twice a day  
A. remember      B. remembering      C. to remember      D. Remembered
2. I suggest that John \_\_\_\_\_ the directions carefully before assembling the bicycle. He doesn't want the wheels to fall off while he is riding down a hill.  
A. Reading      B. To read      C. Read      D. Have read
3. Mrs. Mary demanded that the heater \_\_\_\_\_ immediately. Her apartment was freezing.  
A. repaired      B. be repaired      C. repair      D. .repairing

4. It's vital that the United States \_\_\_\_\_ on improving its public education system. What we do now will affect our country for generations to come.  
A. focuses                      B. focus                      C. focusing                      D. To focus
5. The monk insisted that the tourists \_\_\_\_\_ the temple until they had removed their shoes.  
A. not entering                      B. not to enter                      C. not enter                      D. entered
6. I am not going to sit here and let her insult me. I demand that she immediately \_\_\_\_\_ for what she just said.  
A. apologize                      B. apologizing                      C. to apologize                      D. apologized
7. Tom asked that we \_\_\_\_\_ her graduation ceremony next week.  
A. attended                      B. to attend                      C. attend                      D. attending
8. Was it really necessary that I \_\_\_\_\_ there watching you the entire time you were rehearsing for the play? It was really boring watching you repeat the scenes over and over again.  
A. sits                      B. am sitting                      C. be sitting                      D. To sit
9. It is important to remember that Henry \_\_\_\_\_ very differently from you. She may not agree to the changes you have made in the organization of the company  
A. think                      B. to think                      C. thinks                      D. thinking
10. It's a little difficult to find the restaurant. I propose that we all \_\_\_\_\_ together so that nobody gets lost along the way.  
A. is driving                      B. drive                      C. to drive                      D. driven
11. I enjoyed the movie very much. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ the book from which it was made.  
A. have read                      B. had read                      C. should have read                      D. am reading
12. You are late. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes earlier, you \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. came / Would meet                      B. had come / Would have met  
C. come / Will meet                      D. had come / would meet
13. I can't stand him. He always talks as though he \_\_\_\_\_ everything.  
A. knew                      B. knows                      C. has know                      D. had known
14. His doctor suggested that he \_\_\_\_\_ short trip abroad.  
A. will take                      B. would take                      C. take                      D. took
15. We might have failed if you \_\_\_\_\_ us a helping hand.  
A. have not given                      B. would not give                      C. had not given                      D. did not give
16. The law requires that everyone \_\_\_\_\_ his car checked at least once a month.  
A. has                      B. have                      C. had                      D. will have
17. He was busy yesterday, otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting.  
A. would come                      B. would have been                      C. could have been                      D. would be
18. If there were no subjunctive mood, English \_\_\_\_\_ much easier.  
A. will be                      B. would have been                      C. could have been                      D. would be
19. \_\_\_\_\_ the fog, we should have reached our school.  
A. Because of                      B. In spite of                      C. In case of                      D. But for
20. –“What will you do during winter vacation?” –“I don't know, but it's about time \_\_\_\_\_ something.”  
A. I decided                      B. I'll decide                      C. I'd decided                      D. I'm deciding
21. He was very busy yesterday, otherwise, he \_\_\_\_\_ to your birthday party.  
A. would come                      B. came                      C. would have come                      D. should come
22. The two strangers talked as if they \_\_\_\_\_ friends for years.  
A. should be                      B. had been                      C. have been                      D. were
23. Look! What you've done! You \_\_\_\_\_ have been more careful.  
A. should                      B. may                      C. ought                      D. would



- B. I wish you would tell us about this.  
 C. I wish you had told us about this.  
 D. I wish you have told us about this.
43. I wish that someday I \_\_\_\_\_ able to marry her.  
 A. will be                      B. am                              C. would be                      D. had been
44. He talks as if he.....all the work himself but in fact Tom and I did most of it.  
 A. was doing                      B. had done                      C. did                              D. has done
45. They treat us as if we.....all idiots.  
 A. are                              B. had been                      C. were                              D. was
46. I don't understand this point of grammar. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ it better.  
 A. understood                      B. would understand                      C. had understood                      D. understands
47. Yesterday I met a very beautiful girl. I really want to see her again but I don't know how to go about it. I wish.....  
 A. I didn't meet her yesterday                      B. I had know her address  
 C. I knew her address                              D. I will meet her tomorrow
48. He looks as though he.....a square meal in his life, but in fact his wife feeds him very well.  
 A. has never got                      B. never got                      C. never gets                      D. had never got
49. I feel terrible. The heavy truck raced by me at full speed. I feel as if I.....over.  
 A. was run                      B. have been run                      C. had been run                      D. was being run
50. It is desirable that the hotel manager \_\_\_\_\_ to call the maintenance staff every 6 months to clean up the air conditioners.  
 A. remember                      B. will remember                      C. must remember                      D. remembers
51. The Principal demanded that the heaters \_\_\_\_\_ immediately. Winter is coming!  
 A. are repaired                      B. be repaired                      C. were repaired                      D. repair
52. It's vital that the government \_\_\_\_\_ more on environmental issues.  
 A. focuses                      B. must focus                      C. should be focused                      D. focus
53. The boss insisted that Sam \_\_\_\_\_ at the meeting as he is too talkative for such a confidential project.  
 A. not be                      B. isn't                      C. was                      D. is
54. The fans proposed that they \_\_\_\_\_ there when G-Dragon gets off the plane.  
 A. be standing                      B. stood                      C. should have stood                      D. were standing
55. It is recommended the candidate \_\_\_\_\_ take as many IELTS mock tests as possible before going for the real exam, which cost nearly \$250.  
 A. takes                      B. should take                      C. must take                      D. will take
56. The board of executives requested every employee \_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting this weekend.  
 A. to come                      B. comes                      C. come stem                      D. must comedy
57. We suggested that you \_\_\_\_\_ to the organization.  
 A. be admitted                      B. admitted                      C. admit                      D. are admitted
58. It is imperative that you \_\_\_\_\_ ready when the car comes for you.  
 A. be                      B. will be                      C. getting                      D. are already
59. Olga recommends that his brother \_\_\_\_\_ the job without reading the work contract thoroughly.  
 A. should take                      B. can take on                      C. take                      D. not take
60. The doctor advised that the man \_\_\_\_\_ to a private room.  
 A. should transfer                      B. be transferred                      C. transfer                      D. must be transferred
61. The lawyer was insistent that the contract \_\_\_\_\_ in the presence of all the parties concerned.



- A. sign                      B. should be signed                      C. must be signed                      D. were signed
62. It is necessary that you \_\_\_\_ able to come with us.  
A. are                      B. be                      C. being                      D. to be
63. I suggest that Peter \_\_\_\_ the directions carefully before assembling the bicycle.  
A. read                      B. reading                      C. reads                      D. to read
64. We request that she \_\_\_\_ the window.  
A. not open                      B. not to open                      C. not opening                      D. to not open
65. The UK is considering the proposal that it \_\_\_\_ compensations for damages of the Indian embassy.  
A. been paying                      B. is paying                      C. paid                      D. pay
66. Howard prefers that I \_\_\_\_ to his party.  
A. am going                      B. go                      C. going                      D. will go
67. Mary demanded that the heater \_\_\_\_ immediately. Her apartment was freezing.  
A. repaired                      B. be repaired                      C. being repaired                      D. been repaired
68. The monk insisted that the tourists \_\_\_\_ the temple until they had removed their shoes.  
A. not enter                      B. not entering                      C. not to enter                      D. to not enter
69. The recommendation that she \_\_\_\_ a holiday was carried out.  
A. has taken                      B. take                      C. taken                      D. taking
70. Was it really necessary that I \_\_\_\_ there watching you the entire time you were rehearsing for the play? It was really boring watching you repeat the scenes over and over again.  
A. am sitting                      B. be sitting                      C. being sitting                      D. sitting
71. I propose that we all \_\_\_\_ together so that nobody gets lost along the way.  
A. be driving                      B. drive                      C. driven                      D. driving
72. It is impolite that you \_\_\_\_ there when he gets off the plane.  
A. be not standing                      B. been not standing  
C. not be standing                      D. not been standing
73. It is recommended that the vehicle owner \_\_\_\_ present at the court.  
A. be                      B. be not                      C. not being                      D. not to be
74. Congress has decreed that the gasoline tax \_\_\_\_.  
A. abolish                      B. abolished                      C. be abolished                      D. been abolished
75. The doctor recommended that she \_\_\_\_ a specialist about the problem.  
A. be seen                      B. seeing                      C. should be seen                      D. should see
76. It is essential that she \_\_\_\_ the truth.  
A. told                      B. should be tell                      C. should be told                      D. should been told
77. It has been proposed that we \_\_\_\_ the topic.  
A. not change                      B. not to change                      C. to change                      D. to not change
78. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ to retake my exams.  
a. do not have                      b. will not have                      c. am about                      d. did not have
79. The spacemen felt as if he \_\_\_\_\_ in a paradise.  
a. had been                      b. falls                      c. fall                      d. has fallen
80. The two strangers talked as if they \_\_\_\_\_ friends for years.  
A. should be                      B. had been                      C. have been                      D. were
81. I wish another more effective teaching method \_\_\_\_\_ used.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. were                      D. has been
82. She wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ a fairy now.  
A. was                      B. were                      C. is                      D. were

83. –“What will you do during winter vacation?”–“I don’t know, but it’s about time\_\_\_\_\_something.”  
 A. I decided            B. I’ll decide            C. I’d decided            D. I’m deciding
84. She spends money as if she always\_\_\_\_\_ plenty of it.  
 A. has            B. have            C. has had            D. had
85. She talks too much but I wish she\_\_\_\_\_  
 A. didn't            b. doesn't            C. won't            D. wouldn't
86. They will drink wine but I wish they\_\_\_\_\_  
 A. didn't            b. don't            C. won't            D. wouldn't
87. She made lot of mistakes but I wish she\_\_\_\_\_  
 A. didn't            B. hadn't            C. wouldn't            D. did
88. My wife wishes she\_\_\_\_\_ the guitar now  
 A. could play            B. can play            C. could have played            D. plays
89. Yesterday he missed the lesson. He wishes he\_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 A. didn't miss            B. hadn't miss            C. hasn't missed            D. hadn't missed
90. I suggest that the doctor\_\_\_\_\_ up his mind without delay.  
 A. makes            B. make            C. made            D. is to make

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. Mary didn’t wear the raincoat, so she got cold.  
 A. if Mary wore the raincoat, she wouldn’t get a cold.  
 B. If Mary had won the raincoat , she didn’t et a cold.  
 C. If Mary had won the raincoat , she wouldn’t have got a cold.  
 D. If Mary has worn the raincoat , she wouldn’t have got a cold.
2. She stepped back and didn’t say a word.  
 A. She stepped back when didn’t say a word.  
 B. She stepped back until didn’t say a word.  
 C. She stepped back without saying a word.  
 D. She stepped back before she said a word.
3. My sister didn't leave the car key, so I couldn't pick her up at the airport.  
 A. If my sister left the car key, I would pick her up at the airport.  
 B. If my sister had left the car key, I could pick her up at the airport.  
 C. If my sister had left the car key, I would have picked her up at the airport.  
 D. If my sister have left the car key, I would have picked her up at the airport.
4. He is riding a bus because he missed the last train.  
 A. If he hadn’t missed the last train, he wouldn't be riding a bus.  
 B. If he hadn't missed the last train, he wouldn't have been riding a bus.  
 C. If he didn't miss the last train, he wouldn't ride a bus.  
 D. If he didn't miss the last train, he wouldn't be riding a bus.
5. Without this treatment, that patient would have died.  
 A. If that patient didn't followed this treatment he would have died.  
 B. If that patient hadn’t undergone this treatment he would have not died.  
 C. If that patient had use this treatment he would have not died.  
 D. If that patient haven’t undergone this treatment he would have not died.
6. Without your help, I couldn't have finished it on time.  
 A. I couldn't finish it on time because you helped me.  
 B. I couldn't finish it on time though you helped me

- C. I could finish it on time because you helped me.  
D. You helped me finishing it on time.
7. They didn't follow the map so they got lost.  
A. They wouldn't get loss unless they had followed the map.  
B. If they had followed the map, they wouldn't have got lost.  
C. If they followed the map, they wouldn't get lost.  
D. They wouldn't have got lost unless they followed the map.
8. We won't get what we want if we don't unite.  
A. If we don't unite, we will get what we want.  
B. We won't get what we want if we unite.  
C. If we get what we want, we will unite.  
D. We won't get what we want unless we unite.
9. If they rise higher, they'll fall harder.  
A. The higher they rise, the more harder they'll fall.  
B. They fall harder because they rise high.  
C. The higher they rise, the harder they'll fall.  
D. They rise the higher, they'll fall the harder.
10. The only way to defend ourselves is vigilance (thận trọng).  
A. We defend ourselves by being vigilance.  
B. If we want to defend ourselves, vigilance is not necessary.  
C. But for vigilance, we can't defend ourselves.  
D. Vigilance is not the only way to defend ourselves.
11. Because the street was crowded with people, I couldn't drive fast.  
A. If the street weren't crowded with people, I could drive fast.  
B. If the street hadn't been crowded with people, I could have driven fast.  
C. If the street were crowded with people, I couldn't drive fast.  
D. If the street had been crowded with people, I couldn't have driven fast.
12. She was tired, so she didn't enjoy the party.  
A. If she were tired, she wouldn't enjoy the party.  
B. If she weren't tired, she would enjoy the party.  
C. If she had been tired, she wouldn't have enjoyed the party.  
D. If she hadn't been tired, she would have enjoyed the party.
13. Provide / your handwriting / legible / test scorer / accept / your answer.  
A. providing with your legible handwriting, every test scorer must accept your answer.  
B. providing your handwriting is legible, the test scorer does not accept your answer.  
C. provided for your legible handwriting, the test scorer has to accept your answer.  
D. provided that your handwriting is legible, your answer will be accepted by any test scorer.
14. Had I known more about computer programming, I would have worked for a computer company.  
A. I didn't know much about computer programming so I didn't work for a computer company.  
B. A better knowledge of computer programming will help me find a job in a computer company.  
C. I wish I knew more about computer programming and could work for a computer company.  
D. Knowing more about computer programming, I would find a job in a computer company.
15. You got lost because you didn't do what I told you.

- A. If you followed what I told you, you wouldn't get lost.  
 B. If you had followed my instructions, you wouldn't have got lost.  
 C. Unless you do what I told you, you will get lost.  
 D. You didn't get lost because you did what I told you.
16. If you / not rescued / boy, he would / drowned.  
 A. If you had not rescued the boy, he would have been drowned.  
 B. If you don't rescue the boy, he would have drowned.  
 C. If you don't rescuse the boy, he will be drowned.  
 D. If you had not rescued the boy, he would have drowned.
17. If farmers use / hybrid seeds, they would / larger crops.  
 A. If farmers used hybrid seeds, they would have larger crops.  
 B. If farmers used hybrid seeds, they will have larger crops.  
 C. If farmers use hybrid seeds, they would have larger crops.  
 D. If farmers had used hybrid seeds, they would have larger crops.
18. He / wish / watch / football match / last night.  
 A. He wished he had watched a football match last night.  
 B. he wished he had watched the football match last night  
 C. he wished he watched the football match last night.  
 D. He wished watching the football match last night.
19. Maria says she'd like to have been put in a higher class.  
 A. Maria wishes she will be put in a higher class.  
 B. Maria wishes that she had been put in a higher class.  
 C. Maria wishes she is put in a higher class.  
 D. Maria wishes she were put in a higher class.
20. I'd love to be in a secluded beach in Mexico.  
 A. I wish I would be in a secluded beach in Mexico.  
 B. I always want to be in a secluded beach in Mexico.  
 C. I wish I could be in a secluded beach in Mexico.  
 D. I wish I was in a secluded beach in Mexico
21. he / come / if / station / earlier / train / he / miss.  
 A. If he had come to the station earlier he would not have missed the train.  
 B. If he have come to the station earlier he would not have missed the train.  
 C. If he had came to the station earlier he would not have missed the train.  
 D. If' he had come to the station earlier he would have not missed the train.
22. If only I had not seen her.  
 A. I wish I had seen her  
 B. I wish I had not seen her  
 C. I have not seen her for ages  
 D. She wishes she had come to see me
23. I'm sorry that he won't accept the job he's been offered.  
 A. I wish he would accept the job he's been offered  
 B. I wish he had accept the job he's been offered  
 C. I wish he would have accepted the job he's been offered  
 D. I wish he will accept the job he's been offered
24. He kept it only because nobody else had wanted it.  
 A. He would have kept it if nobody else had wanted it  
 B. He would have kept it if anybody else wanted it

- C. He wouldn't have kept it if anybody else wanted it
- D. He wouldn't have kept it if anybody else had wanted it.

25. You may get cold on the way so take the coat.
- A. To take the coat you will get cold on the way.
  - B. In case you're cold on the way, you should take a coat.
  - C. If you didn't take a coat, you'd be cold on the way.
  - D. Only if you get cold can you take the coat.

**III. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. I wish I (know).....something about computers.
2. He ran as if life (depend).....on it.
3. If only it (be).....warm and sunny today. I'm fed up with snow and cold.
4. My neighbors always treat us as if we (be).....their servants.
5. I wish it (not rain).....heavily last Sunday.
6. I wish I ( be ).....a doctor when I grow up.
7. I feel as if my head (be).....on fire.
8. We request that she .....the window. (to open)
9. They demanded that he .....the room. (to leave)
10. I will ask that she .....me. (to accompany)
11. They recommended that he .....to Bermuda. (to fly)
12. The recommendation that she .....a holiday was carried out. (to take)
13. It is necessary that you .....able to come with us. (to be)
14. They asked that we .....standing. (to remain)
15. The requirement that he .....work will be hard to meet. (to find)

**IV. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. He appears to be running away from your fierce dog.  
=>It looks .....
2. I would love to be rich and famous.  
=>If only .....
3. I'd love to be in a secluded beach in Mexico.  
=>I wish .....
4. I really think you ought to acquire a few manners.  
=>It's high time .....
5. Would you mind not smoking here?  
=>I'd rather .....
6. Please don't say things like that.  
=>I wish you.....
7. I would prefer you deliver the sofa this afternoon.  
=>I'd rather .....
8. They advise her to eat less meat and fat to keep herself healthy.  
=>It is advisable that she .....
9. Naturally, a child had better respect his parents.  
=>It is natural that .....
10. He needs to come to the interview early.  
=>It is necessary that .....
11. She must find it important to take two medicines every day.  
=>It is important that .....



12. Every student must wear uniform. It is obligatory.

=>It is obligatory that.....

13. They recommended her to go to the best doctor in town.

=>They recommended that she .....

14. The man demanded to be told everything about the accident .

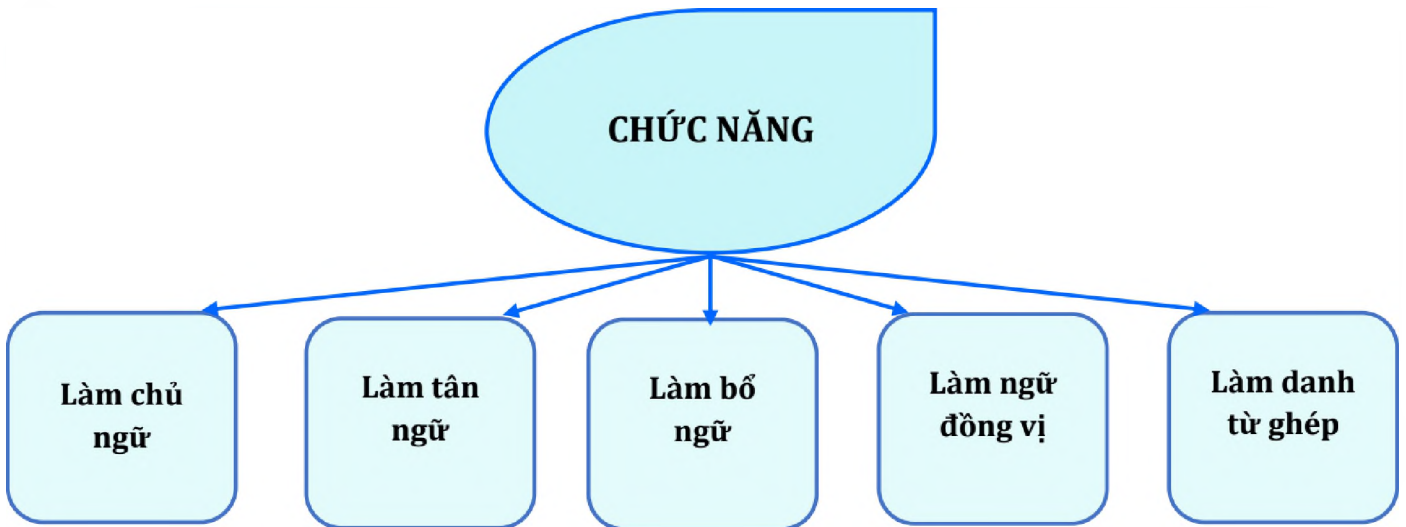
=>The man demanded that everything.....

15. I'm really sorry I didn't invite her to the party.

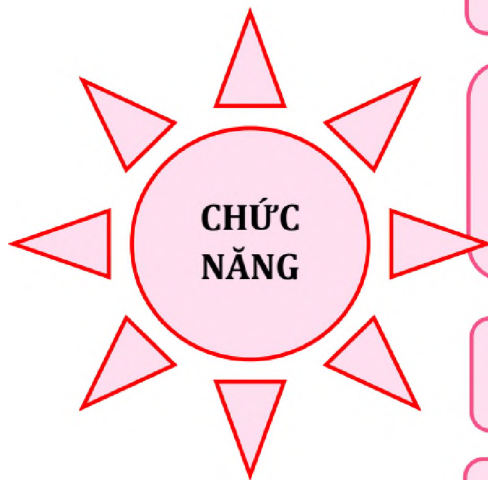
=>I really wish .....

I. CHỨC NĂNG CÁCH DÙNG DANH ĐỘNG TỪ/HIỆN TẠI PHÂN TỪ

GERUND ( DANH ĐỘNG TỪ )

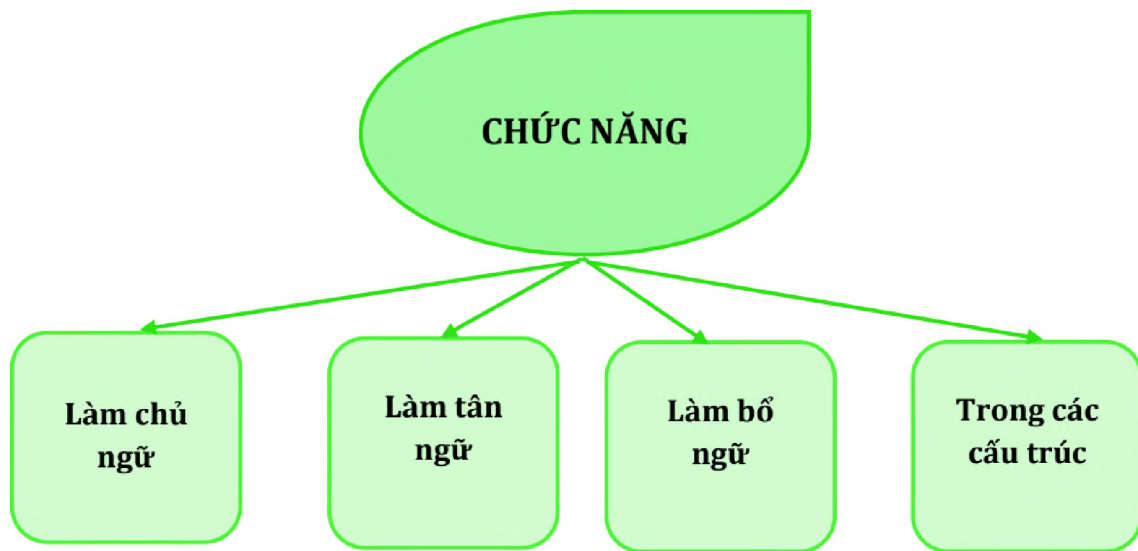


PRESENT PARTICIPLE ( HIỆN TẠI PHÂN TỪ )

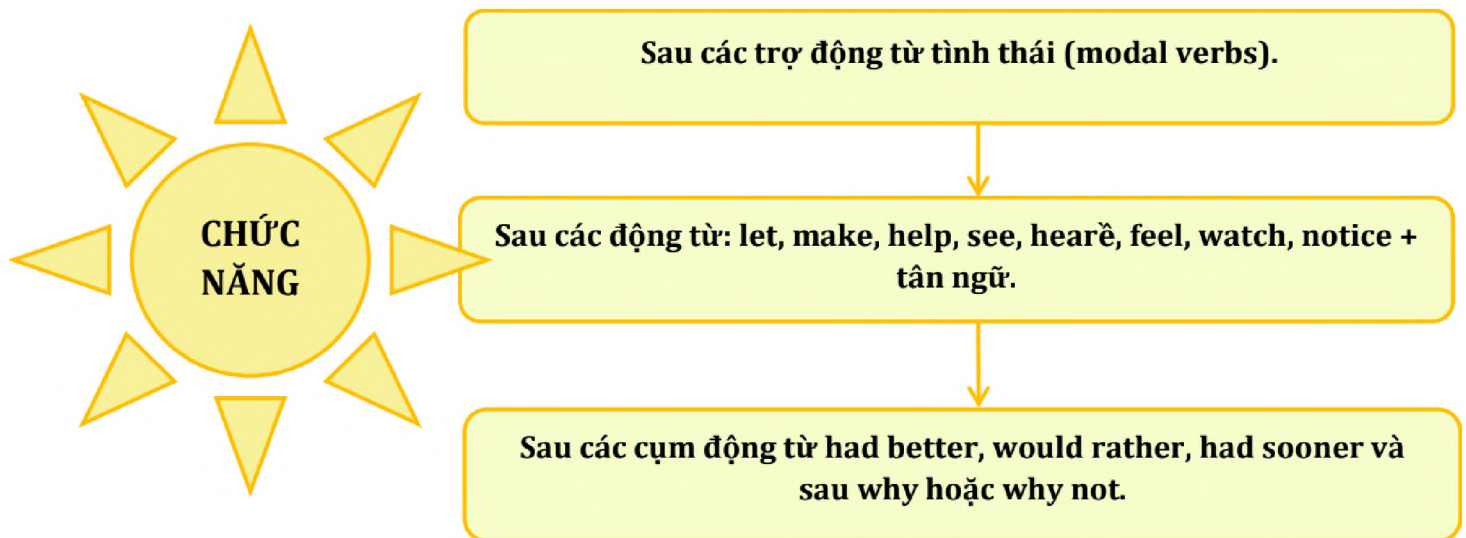


- Dùng trong các thì tiếp diễn: be + Present participle (V-ing)
- Dùng như một tính từ (mang nghĩa chủ động và thường miêu tả vật)
- Thay cho một mệnh đề: Mệnh đề độc lập trong câu ghép, Mệnh đề phụ trong câu, Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian, Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lí do: hai mệnh đề phải cùng chủ từ
- Cấu trúc câu: S + sit/ stand /lie/come /run (cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn) + present participle
- Cấu trúc: There + be + Noun + present participle
- Sau một số động từ trí giác (see, hear, smell, feel, taste, overhear...), catch, find, spend, waste

## II. CHỨC NĂNG CÁCH DÙNG ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU CÓ "TO" VÀ KHÔNG CÓ "TO" TO INFINITIVE VERB ( ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU CÓ TO )



### BARE INFINITIVE VERB ( ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU KHÔNG TO )



### III. BẢNG TÓM TẮT PHÂN LOẠI CÁC HÌNH THỨC CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ.

V-ING	TO-V	V1	V-ING/TO-V
1. Giới từ : in, on, at. 2. love , like , enjoy, prefer >< hate, dislike 3. start , begin, give up >< stop , finish 4. suggest 5. consider : xem xét 6. mind 7. imagine 8. avoid 9. risk 10. miss 11. practice 12. postpone 13. involve 14. admit 15. deny 16. quit = give up 17. keep 18. spend 19. waste 20. fancy 21. can't help 22. can't stand 23. can't bear 24. be busy 25. be worth 26. continue 27. It's no use 28. It's no good 29. have trouble 30. have difficulty 31. be / get used to 32. go 33. appreciate	1. agree 2. ask / told / warn 3. choose 4. decide 5. demand 6. expect 7. hope 8. manage 9. offer 10. plan 11. promise 12. refuse 13. seem 14. suppose 15. tell 16. want 17. tend 18. threaten 19. would like 20. would love 22. be able 23. wish 24. too....to 25. enough to 26. It + be + adj+To-V 27. It takes 28. Sau các nghi vấn từ <b>how , what , where...</b> 29. sau đại từ bất định Someone , something, anything.... 30. Câu bị động 31. only, first, last	1. Sau khiếm khuyết động từ can - could will - would have to - had to may - might must ought to 2. Sau V tri giác See Look Listen Notice Watch Observe Feel Taste Smell 3. Let Make + O Have Help => Bị động ta dùng " To-V" 4. had better would rather had sooner 5. do nothing but 6. cannot but	1.allow permit recommend + O + To-V advise encourage ----- allow permit recommend + V-ing advise encourage => <b>Be + V3/ed + To-V</b> ----- 2.Stop + V-ing : ngừng hẳn ( từ bỏ thói quen ) Stop + To-V : ngừng để làm việc khác 3.remember forget + <b>V-ing</b> regret ( diễn tả 1 hđộng đã xảy ra trong quá khứ ) ----- remember forget + <b>To-V</b> regret ( diễn tả 1 hđộng sắp xảy ra ) 4. <b>Try</b> + V-ing : thử Try + to V : cố gắng 5. <b>Consider</b> + V-ing: xem xét Consider + to V : quan tâm 6. <b>like</b> start + <b>V-ing / To-V</b> begin ( không thay đổi nghĩa )

# LỖI NÓI PHỤ HOẠ

## 1. Phụ họa khẳng định

Đi với TOO (mang nghĩa CŨNG VẬY)	
S + V....	(and) + S + am/is/are/ was /were + too (and) + S + do/does/did +too (and) + S + modals + too
My sister is a doctor I work two hours a day	I am too (tôi cũng vậy) She does too
Đi với SO (mang nghĩa CŨNG VẬY nhưng có đảo ngữ)	
S + V....	(and) + so + am/is/are/ was /were + S (and) + so + do/does/did +too + S (and) + so + modals + S
My sister is a doctor I work two hours a day I can sing	So am I (tôi cũng vậy) So does she So can he

## 2. Phụ họa phủ định

Đi với EITHER (mang nghĩa CŨNG KHÔNG)	
S + V(NOT)....	(and) + S + am/is/are/ was /were + NOT + either (and) + S + do/does/did +NOT + either (and) + S + modals + NOT + either
My sister isn't a nurse I doesn't work on sunday I can't dance	I am not either (tôi cũng không) She doesn't either He can't either
Đi với NEITHER (mang nghĩa CŨNG KHÔNG nhưng có đảo ngữ, không có NOT)	
S + V(NOT)....	(and) + neither + am/is/are/ was /were + S (and) + neither + do/does/did +too + S (and) + neither + modals + S
My sister isn't a nurse I doesn't work on sunday I can't dance	Neither am I (tôi cũng không) Neither does she Neither can he
Lưu ý: Trong câu có chứa "NEVER, NO, RARELY, SELDOM , HARDLY" => dùng phụ họa phủ định	

## IV. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG GERUND AND INFINITIVE VERBS

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She wasted much time.....her old pair of shoes.



- A. mend                      B. to mend                      C. mending                      D. to be mended
2. He regrets.....lazy last year. He lost his job.  
A. to be                      B. be                      C. been                      D. being
3. Willy denied.....a whole bag of chocolate chip cookies before lunch.  
A. eat                      B. to eat                      C. having eaten                      D. eaten
4. I was delighted .....my old friends again.  
A. to see                      B. seeing                      C. seen                      D. to be seen
5. We regret.....you that we cannot approve your suggestion.  
A. inform                      B. to inform                      C. informing                      D. informed
6. Couldn't help..... at his jokes.  
A. laugh                      B. laughing                      C. to laugh                      D. laughed
7. Tom offered .....Jane a ticket to the theater, but she refused to take it.  
A. to give                      B. give                      C. giving                      D. to be given
8. Those workers stopped.....their coffee because they felt tired of their new work.  
A. drink                      B. drank                      C. drinking                      D. to drink
9. He asked them.....  
A. help him                      B. should help him                      C. to help him                      D. help to him
10. Mr Minh advised my family..... leaving Vietnam.  
A. to think                      B. not to think                      C. against                      D. against to
11. I hope..... that woman again.  
A. to see                      B. of seeing                      C. seeing                      D. have seen
12. Have you ever considered.....a pharmacist?  
A. become                      B. becoming                      C. to become                      D. became
13. You had better..... at home until you feel better.  
A. staying                      B. stayed                      C. to stay                      D. stay
14. I remember.....my mother said the grass in the garden needed .....  
A. to hear; cutting                      B. hear; cut                      C. heard; to cut                      D. hearing; cutting
15. My teacher doesn't allow us .....while he is explaining the lesson.  
A. talk                      B. to talk                      C. talking                      D. talked
16. We have plenty of time. We needn't .....  
A. hurry                      B. to hurry                      C. hurrying                      D. hurried
17. I promised .....on time. I mustn't late.  
A. be; be                      B. to be; to be                      C. to be; be                      D. be; to be
18. My daughter sometimes practices \_\_\_\_\_ English with her friends after school.

- A. to speaking      B. to speak      C. speak      D. speaking
19. When Tommy started to learn French, he had a difficult time \_\_\_\_\_ the words correctly.  
A. pronounce      B. pronunciation      C. pronouncing      D. to pronounce
20. Most women expect \_\_\_\_\_ more help with the housework from their husbands.  
A. to get      B. getting      C. get      D. to getting
21. Your house needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. redecorated      B. redecorating      C. being redecorated      D. to redecorate
22. I can't read when I am traveling. It makes me \_\_\_\_\_ sick.  
A. feel      B. to feel      C. felt      D. feeling
23. There are many ways of \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves in a big city.  
A. enjoy      B. enjoying      C. enjoyment      D. to enjoy
24. She \_\_\_\_\_ him when he called her.  
A. pretended not hear      B. pretended she heard not  
C. pretended not to hear      D. did not pretend hear
25. Please ask the restaurant clientele..... in this area.  
A. don't smoke      B. not to smoke      C. not smoking      D. don't to smoke
26. I often go to work early to avoid..... in the rush hour.  
A. drive      B. to drive      C. driving      D. drove
27. Peter regrets not attending Mary's birthday party.  
A. Peter had attended Mary's birthday party and he had a lot of fun.  
B. Peter wishes he had attended Mary's birthday party.  
C. Peter is happy because he did not attend Mary's birthday party.  
D. Peter wishes he had not attended Mary's birthday party.
28. The examiners do not permit.....during the exam, so the students have..... until the allotted time is over.  
A. go/waiting      B. to go/waited      C. going/ to wait      D. going/ to be waiting
29. Sam always remembers..... in the garage so that the driveway is free for the other cars.  
A. parking      B. being parked      C. to park      D. to be parked
30. These workers were made..... so hard that they finally went on a strike.  
A. work      B. to work      C. working      D. worked
31. Could you please take this floppy disk to Mr. Young? I meant..... him..... it but I forget..... it to him.  
A. letting/to have/giving      B. to let/have/to give  
C. let/having/giving      D. to let/to have/giving

32. He \_\_\_ to America with his parents 3 months ago.  
 A. go                      B. went                      C. goes                      D. was going
33. The teacher told his students..... laughing.  
 A. stopped                      B. stopping                      C. stop                      D. to stop
34. I regret..... that the sight-seeing tour has been cancelled because of bad weather.  
 A. to tell you                      B. telling you                      C. to say you                      D. saying you
35. The doctor advised him..... and to take up some sport.  
 A. to stop smoke                      B. stop smoking  
 C. to stop smoking                      D. to stop to smoke
36. The children's mother warned them .....near the river.  
 A. not to go                      B. to not go                      C. not going                      D. don't go
37. Most of the participants can't help..... why the president spoke so angrily.  
 A. wonder                      B. wondering                      C. to wonder                      D. wondered
38. My friend forgot..... a book back to the library, so he had to pay a fine.  
 A. take                      B. to take                      C. taking                      D. B and C
39. Would you please remind her..... me tomorrow morning?  
 A. calling                      B. to call                      C. call                      D. A and B
40. I think it is not worth .....this machine.  
 A. to repair                      B. repairing                      C. for repairing                      D. repaired
41. You should consider..... this proposal. We promise..... as much help as possible.  
 A. to take/to provide                      B. to take/providing  
 C. taking/ to provide                      D. taking/ providing
42. Jane needs some money. She tried..... Harry but he couldn't help her.  
 A. to have asked                      B. ask                      C. to ask                      D. asking
43. I'm worried..... my final exam in statistics.  
 A. about failing                      B. to fail                      C. with failing                      D. to failure
44. I was enjoying my book but I stopped.....a program on TV.  
 A. reading to watch                      B. to read for watching  
 C. to read to watch                      D. to read to watching
45. Who is responsible..... the garbage – the husband or the wife?  
 A. to take out                      B. for take out                      C. for taking out                      D. with taking out
46. "How do I turn on the TV?" - "..... the button at the right."  
 A. From pushing                      B. By pushing                      C. You pushing                      D. To push
47. You're having a sore throat. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor.  
 A.to go                      B.go                      C.went                      D.going

48. "And that led to...to the United States thirty-five years ago."  
 A. us coming      B. our coming      C. come      D. us to come
49. I want \_\_\_\_\_ early tomorrow morning.  
 A. to leave      B. leaving      C. me leave      D. me leaving
50. Ann is interested in ..... young children.  
 A. teach      B. teaches      C. to teach      D. teaching
51. Please remember \_\_\_\_\_ this letter.  
 A. to post      B. post      C. posting      D. to have posted
52. We tried \_\_\_\_\_ the fire out but we were unsuccessful. We had to call the fire-brigade.  
 A. putting      B. put      C. to put      D. to have put
53. Someone must have taken my wallet. I clearly remember \_\_\_it by the window and now it has gone.  
 A. leave      B. leaving      C. to leave      D. to have left
54. Jane needed some money. She tried \_\_\_\_\_ Harry but he couldn't help her.  
 A. to have asked      B. ask      C. to ask      D. asking
55. I suggest \_\_\_\_\_ some more mathematical puzzles.  
 A. do      B. to do      C. doing      D. done
56. Have you ever considered \_\_\_\_\_ a pharmacist?  
 A. become      B. becoming      C. to become      D. became
57. My father wanted me \_\_\_\_\_ a pilot.  
 A. become      B. to become      C. becoming      D. became
58. Please wait a minute. My boss is busy \_\_\_\_\_ something.  
 A. write      B. writing      C. to write      D. to writing
59. My teacher doesn't allow us \_\_\_\_\_ while he is explaining the lesson.  
 A. talk      B. to talk      C. talking      D. talked
60. I promised \_\_\_\_\_ on time. I mustn't be late.  
 A. be      B. to be      C. being      D. am
61. Mary and I are looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
 A. of seeing      B. for seeing      C. to seeing      D. to see
62. The students are used to \_\_\_\_\_ in the school library.  
 A. working      B. work      C. to work      D. worked
63. Our room needs \_\_\_\_\_ up.  
 A. tidied      B. to tide      C. tidy      D. tidying
64. "Was the test long?". "Yes, John was the only one \_\_\_\_\_ it"  
 A. to finish      B. finishing      C. finished      D. finish

65. If he really doesn't feel like \_\_\_\_\_ now, I suggested that he should go out for some fresh air.  
 A. work                      B. to work                      C. worked                      D. working
66. Students stopped \_\_\_\_\_ noise when the teacher came in.  
 A. make                      B. to make                      C. making                      D. made
67. She couldn't bear \_\_\_\_\_ tears when she saw the film "Romeo and Juliet".  
 A. shed                      B. to shed                      C. shedding                      D. sheds
68. Ann likes \_\_\_\_\_ but she hates \_\_\_\_\_ up.  
 A. cook/washing              B. to cook/wash              C. cooking/washed              D. cooking/washing
69. I'd expected \_\_\_\_\_ weight on when I gave up smoking, but I didn't.  
 A. to put                      B. putting                      C. to putting                      D. put
70. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ to classical music.  
 A. listening                      B. to listen                      C. listens                      D. listen
71. I really regret \_\_\_\_\_ your feeling when I asked you such a silly question.  
 A. hurt                      B. to hurt                      C. hurting                      D. hurts
72. He'll try..... the same mistake again.  
 A. not make                      B. to not make                      C. not making                      D. not to make
73. Would you mind .....me a newspaper?  
 A. buy                      B. to buy                      C. buying                      D. bought
74. Would you like..... the next dance with me?  
 A. to have                      B. having                      C. has                      D. had
75. It is no use - .....no one ever gets out of here.  
 A. trying to escape              B. to try to escape              C. trying escaping              D. to try escaping
76. Did you remember \_\_\_\_\_ Ann? - Oh, no. I completely forgot it.  
 A. phone                      B. to phone                      C. phoning                      D. phoned
77. Does the city government intend \_\_\_\_\_ anything about pollution?  
 A. do                      B. to do                      C. doing                      D. did
78. Those shirts need \_\_\_\_\_ but you needn't \_\_\_\_\_ them now.  
 A. iron/iron                      B. to iron/to iron                      C. ironing/iron                      D. ironed/to iron
79. They finished \_\_\_\_\_ and then they wanted \_\_\_\_\_ out for pleasure.  
 A. learn/to go                      B. to learn/go                      C. learnt/goes                      D. learning/to go
80. I hope \_\_\_\_\_ that tiring work again.  
 A. not do                      B. not to do                      C. not doing                      D. to not do
81. They postponed \_\_\_\_\_ an Element School for the lack of finance.  
 A. built                      B. to build                      C. building                      D. builds



82. It's no use \_\_\_\_\_ him. He never allows anybody \_\_\_\_\_ him advice.  
 A. advise/give      B. to advise/to give      C. advising/giving      D. advising/to give
83. Are his ideas worth \_\_\_\_\_ to?  
 A. listen      B. to listen      C. listening      D. listened
84. He always avoids \_\_\_\_\_ me in the streets.  
 A. meet      B. to meet      C. met      D. meeting
85. My parents decided \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi because it was late.  
 A. take      B. to take      C. taking      D. took
86. Do you agree \_\_\_\_\_ me some money?  
 A. lend      B. to lend      C. lending      D. lent
87. Tom refuses \_\_\_\_\_ his address.  
 A. give      B. giving      C. to give      D. gave
88. The passengers asked her how \_\_\_\_\_ to the police station?  
 A. to get      B. getting      C. got      D. get
89. My friends arranged \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport in time.  
 A. meet      B. to meet      C. meeting      D. met
90. Do you plan \_\_\_\_\_ out or \_\_\_\_\_ at home at this weekend?  
 A. go/stay      B. to go/stay      C. going/stay      D. to go/staying
91. I dislike \_\_\_\_\_ in line.- So do I. That's why I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ at night when there are fewer people in the supermarket.  
 A. wait/shop      B. to wait/shopping      C. waiting/shopping      D. waiting/to shop
92. He continued \_\_\_\_\_ after his illness.  
 A. worked      B. to work      C. to working      D. working
93. My watch's hands keep \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. stopping      B. to stop      C. stopped      D. stop
94. My grandfather is used to \_\_\_\_\_ up early in the morning.  
 A. getting      B. to get      C. get      D. got
95. Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ her my message when you see her.  
 A. give      B. to give      C. giving      D. gave
96. I can't help \_\_\_\_\_ his opinions.  
 A. consider      B. to consider      C. considering      D. considered
97. You should try \_\_\_\_\_ any shirts you want to buy.  
 A. wear      B. to wear      C. wearing      D. wears
98. He used to fall asleep without \_\_\_\_\_ his shoes off.  
 A. take      B. to take      C. taking      D. taken

99. He spent many hours \_\_\_\_\_ to repair his car.  
 A. try                      B. to try                      C. trying                      D. tries
100. Mary agreed \_\_\_\_\_ to the circus with Ann.  
 A. went                      B. to go                      C. going                      D. goes

**Put the verbs into the right form.**

1. She doesn't allow (smoke).....in the house.
2. These boys often .....play) football at weekends.
3. I'm in a difficult situation. What do you advise me (do) .....
4. She didn't let me (read) .....the letter.
5. Finally, we were allowed (go) .....
6. He is learning (drive) .....
7. Carol's parents always encourage her (study) .....hard.
8. I always remember (turn) .....off all the lights before I leave my house.
9. He warned her (not touch) .....the wire.
10. Do stop (talk) ....., I'm trying (finish) .....a letter.
11. He told me (try) .....(come) .....early.
12. I'll remember (send) .....you a postcard when I reach London.
13. Don't forget (lock) .....the door before (go) .....to bed.
14. They don't have much money. They can't afford (buy) .....a new house.
15. I enjoy (write) .....picture postcards.
16. I don't want (eat) .....anything. I'm tired.
17. She refused (answer) .....any more questions.
18. The thief managed (break) .....the lock.
19. I dream about (build) .....a big house.
20. This evening I have arranged (go) .....to the theatre.
21. She doesn't mind (work) .....the night shift.
22. Sonia often wastes her time (chat).....with her friends.
23. He wanted (see) .....the house where the president was born.
24. Would you like to go (sail).....with me this weekend?
25. ( Tell) ..... me that she would never speak to me again , she picked up her stuff and stormed out of the house.
26. I regret (not/listen) .....to my father's advice. He was right.
27. She had to spend so much time (look).....after the baby that she hardly ever went out.
28. I caught him (climb).....through the kitchen window.
29. I would like him (go) ..... to a university but I can't make him go.
30. I didn't notice you (wave).....to me, so I didn't wave back.
31. I don't allow (smoke) ..... in my drawing-room.
32. He had a fight while (eat).....in the restaurant.
33. (not feel).....well, Sarah decided to lie down.
34. (finish).....the housework, she decided to take a rest.
35. It's a nice day. Does anyone fancy (make).....a tour?
36. She doesn't mind (work).....the night shift.
37. One of the boys admitted (break) .....the window.
38. When I was a little girl, I used to imagine (become) ..... a princess.
39. I've finished (cook)....., come and eat.
40. It's no use (wait) ..... for them.

41. We discussed (go).....to the cinema but in the end we stayed at home.
42. There are people who can't help (laugh) .....when seeing someone slip on a banana skin.
43. Is there anything here worth (buy) .....?
44. Jennifer practiced (pronounce).....the word until she sounded just like a native speaker
45. (Feel) ..... hungry, he went into the kitchen and opened the fridge.
46. My boss spends two hours a day ( travel) .....to work
47. (Swim) ..... is my favourite sport.
48. One of life's pleasure is (have) .....breakfast in bed.
49. (Whistle) ..... to himself, he walked down the road.
50. In spite of ( miss) ..... the train, we arrived on time.

**Complete these sentences so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.**

1. My father said I could use his car.  
--> My father allowed .....
2. I was surprised that it rained.  
--> I didn't expect .....
3. Don't stop him doing what he wants.  
--> Let him .....
4. Tim looks older when he wears glasses.  
--> Tim's glasses make .....
5. I think you should know the truth.  
--> I want you to know the truth.....
6. Don't let me forget to phone my sister.  
--> Remind me .....
7. At first I didn't want to apply for the job, but Sarah persuaded me.  
--> Sarah persuaded .....
8. My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police.  
--> My lawyer advised .....
9. I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says.  
--> I was warned .....
10. If you've got a car, you are able to get around more easily.  
--> Having .....
11. It isn't necessary to play football with my best friends today.  
-->You don't have .....
12. "Why don't we visit her parents next week?"  
-->You suggested .....
13. Thanh spends 3 hours a day doing the homework.  
--> It takes .....
- >Thanh wastes .....
14. Hanh said to him: "Remember to close all the window and turn off the lights before going out".  
-->Hanh reminded .....
15. Linh told him: "Don't forget to repair my bicycle".  
-->Linh told .....

**Complete these sentences so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence "using Perfect Participle"**

1. We switched off the lights before we went to bed.

- > Having .....
- 2. The boy asked his mother's permission and then went out to play.  
-> Having .....
- 3. As he had drunk too much, he didn't drive home himself.  
-> Having .....
- 4. We have done two tests today , so we are exhausted  
-> Having .....
- 5. She filled the washing machine and switched it on.  
-> Having .....
- 6. She had been to disco the night before and she overslept in the morning.  
-> Having .....
- 7. We had worked in the garden all day and were sunburned in the evening.  
-> Having .....
- 8. She had not slept for two days and therefore she wasn't able to concentrate.  
->Not having .....
- 9. Since I had not seen him for ages, I didn't recognize him.  
->Not having .....
- 10. I had not ridden a horse for a long time and I found it very difficult to keep in the saddle.  
->Not having .....

**Complete these sentences so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence " using perfect gerunds"**

- 1. David did his homework and they went to bed.  
→ After having .....
- 2. It is easy for anyone to learn how to cook.  
→ Learning .....
- 3. Tony had rescued the kids from the fire. People admired him for that.  
→ People admired .....
- 4. He had dumped lots of rubbish onto the beach. He denied it.  
→ He denied .....
- 5. After Ha had read some documents about Green Earth, she decided to join the organization.  
→ Having .....
- 6. I have seen him before. I remember that.  
→ I remember .....
- 7. You had saved the lives of hundreds of wild animals. Thank you for that.  
→ Thank you for having .....
- 8. They had hunted and killed many wild animals. Later they regretted what they had done.  
→ They regretted having .....
- 9. Since Mai had refused Nam's offer of a lift in his car, she had to walk home.  
→ Having refused .....
- 10. 'You've lied to us, the villagers said. The politician denied it.  
→ The politician denied having .....

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA NGUYÊN TẮC THÀNH LẬP.

1. Câu hỏi đuôi là gì ?

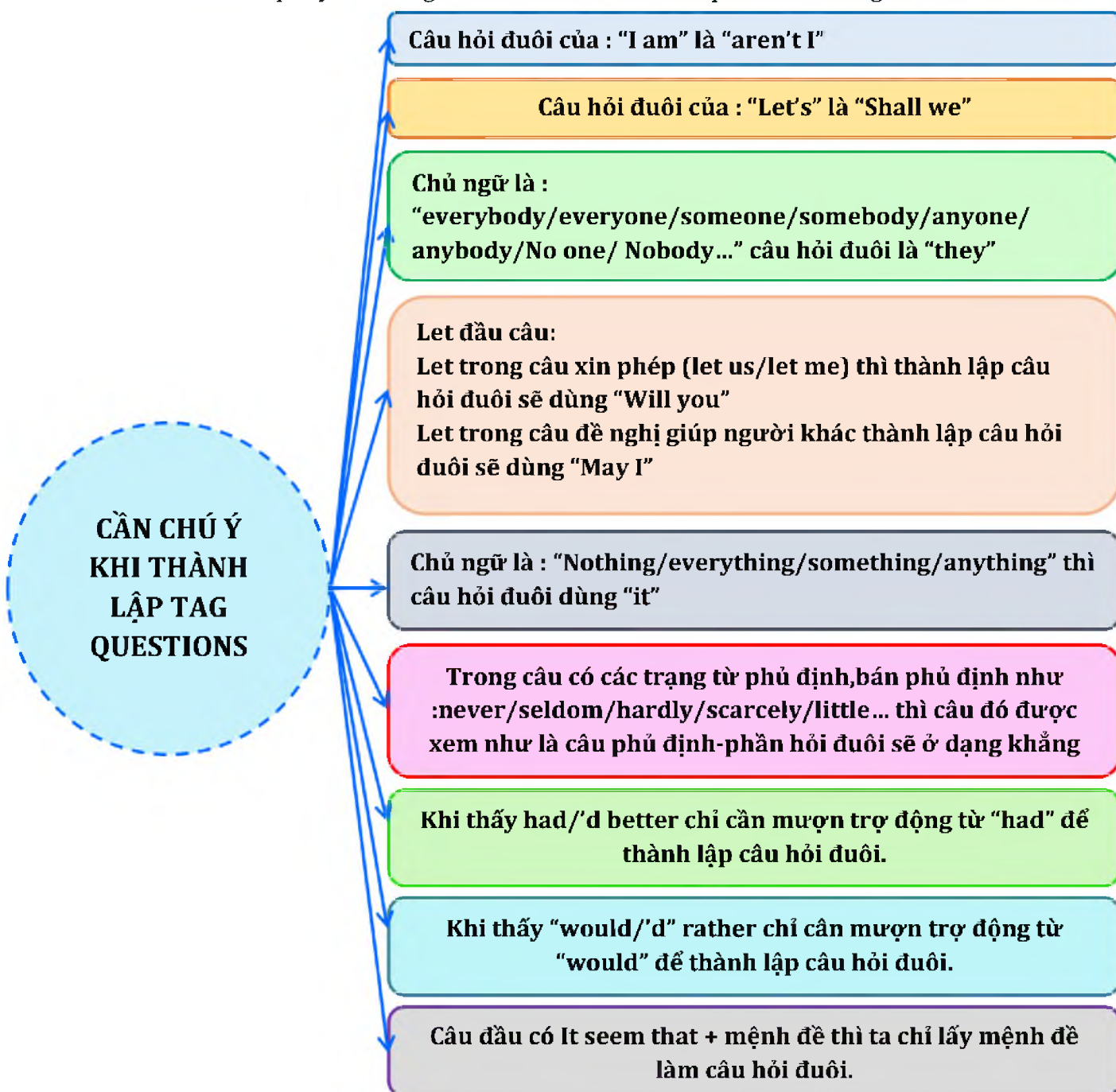
- Câu hỏi đuôi (tag question) là dạng câu hỏi rất hay được sử dụng trong tiếng Anh, đặc biệt là tiếng Anh giao tiếp. Câu hỏi đuôi là cấu hỏi ngắn ở cuối câu trần thuật.

Ví dụ: *She is learning English now, isn't she?* (Cô ấy đang học tiếng Anh bây giờ phải không?)

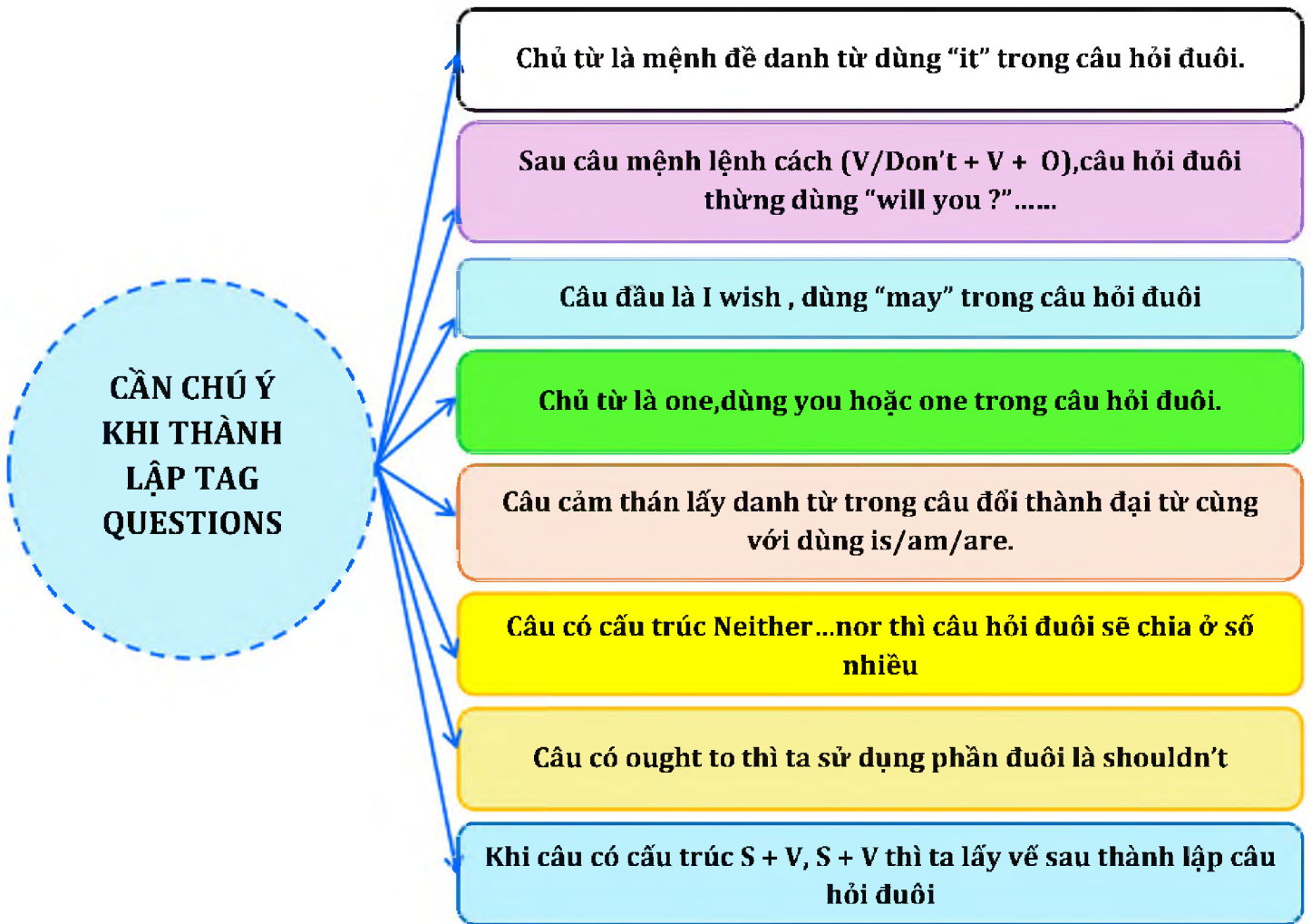
2. Cách để thành lập câu hỏi đuôi.

**Công thức chung: S + V + ..... , trợ động từ + S ( ĐẠI TỪ ) ?**

-Nếu câu nói trước dấu phẩy là khẳng định thì câu hỏi đuôi là phủ định và ngược lại.







**2.Tóm tắt cách thành lập câu hỏi đuôi.**

Statement	Tag questions
I am.....	aren't I ?
I am not.....	am I ?
<b>Động từ khiếm khuyết</b> S + can/could/should/will.....	Can't/couldn't/shouldn't/won't.....+ S ?
<b>Động từ thường</b> S + V1....., S + Vs/es....., S + V2/ed.....,	<b>Sử dụng trợ động từ: Do/does/did</b> Don't + S? Doesn't + S? Didn't + S?
S + have/has/had + V3/ed.....,	Haven't/hasn't/hadn't + S ?
S + is/are/was/were.....,	Isn't/aren't/wasn't/weren't + S?
S + used to + V.....,	Didn't + S ?
S +'d better/had better + V.....,	Hadn't + S?
S +'d rather/would rather/would like + V.....,	Would + S?
There + is/are/was/were.....,	Isn't/aren't/wasn't/weren't + S?
Let's + V.....,	Shall we+?
Chủ từ là : No one/nobody/anyone/anybody/ everyone/everybody/someone/somebody	.....+ they ?

Chủ từ là: <b>nothing/anything/something/Everything</b> .....	.....+ it?
Chủ từ là <b>this/that</b> .....	.....+ it?
Chủ từ là <b>these/those</b> .....	.....+ they ?
Trong câu có các từ phủ định: <b>no/none/without Neither/hardly/seldom/rarely/little/never/few.</b>	Câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định <b>không</b> có N'T
S + ought to.....,	Shouldn't + S?
<b>Câu mệnh lệnh</b>	<b>Will you?</b>

=> cấu trúc: " I + think/believe/suppose/...." + mệnh đề phụ thì ta dùng động từ trong mệnh đề phụ để xác định động từ cho câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: I think she will meet him, won't she?

Cũng mẫu cấu trúc này nhưng nếu chủ từ không phải là "I" thì dùng động từ chính trong câu (think/believe/suppose/...) để xác định động từ cho câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: She thinks he will come, doesn't she?

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG GERUND AND INFINITIVE VERBS

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- This is the second time she has been here, .....?
  - has she
  - hasn't she
  - isn't this
  - isn't it
- Tom knows Alice Reed, \_\_\_\_?
  - doesn't he
  - does he
  - is he
  - isn't he
- You've never been to Italy,.....?
  - haven't you
  - have you
  - been you
  - had you
- These books aren't yours, .....?
  - are these
  - aren't these
  - are they
  - aren't they
- No one died in the accident, .....?
  - didn't they
  - did he
  - didn't he
  - did they
- After all this time you'd think he'd have forgotten ..... ?
  - didn't you
  - wouldn't you
  - don't you
  - do you
- You may think you know the answer but you don't ..... ?
  - don't you
  - would you
  - wouldn't you
  - do you
- My friends and I are studying, .....?
  - aren't we
  - are we
  - are they
  - aren't they
- You thought the film was great,.....?
  - was it
  - wasn't it
  - didn't it
  - didn't you
- I don't suppose you like pineapples,.....?
  - do
  - do you
  - don't I
  - don't you
- This is the right DVD, \_\_\_\_?
  - isn't this
  - is this
  - isn't it
  - is it
- I'm not the only one, \_\_\_\_?
  - aren't I
  - am I
  - am not I
  - are not I
- Let's go out tonight, \_\_\_\_?
  - shall we
  - will we
  - could we
  - would we
- Don't forget to write to me soon, \_\_\_\_?
  - would you
  - could you
  - can you
  - will you

15. Nothing frightens you, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. does it                      B. doesn't it                      C. do they                      D. don't they
16. Don't leave anything behind, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do you                      B. don't you                      C. will you                      D. shall we
17. That isn't Bill driving, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. is it                      B. is that                      C. isn't that                      D. isn't it
18. Nobody likes the play, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do they                      B. don't they                      C. didn't they                      D. did they
19. The children can read English, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. can't they                      B. can they                      C. they can                      D. they can't
20. Your grandfather was a millionaire, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. was he                      B. is he                      C. wasn't he                      D. isn't he
21. I think the cities of tomorrow also need to consider the availability of open space, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do I                      B. don't I                      C. do they                      D. don't they
22. Somebody's just called my name, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. hasn't he                      B. didn't he                      C. haven't they                      D. have they
23. I suppose you don't like the course, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. don't I                      B. do I                      C. don't you                      D. do you
24. Everyone's going to be there, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. isn't he                      B. is he                      C. aren't they                      D. are they
25. We never enjoy our city break, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do we                      B. don't we                      C. have we                      D. haven't we
26. There will be more and more megacities in the world,.....?  
 A. will it                      B. won't it                      C. will there                      D. won't there
27. No one wants to live in a polluted city, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do they                      B. don't they                      C. does he                      D. doesn't he
28. I think city dwellers can enjoy an exciting nightlife, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. don't you think                      B. don't I                      C. can't they                      D. can they
29. There's hardly anything that can be done to reduce pollution, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. isn't there                      B. is there                      C. can it                      D. can't it
30. You have to wear uniform when going to work, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. haven't you                      B. have you                      C. do you                      D. don't you
31. We are supposed to submit the assignment by Friday, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. don't we                      B. are we                      C. aren't we                      D. do we
32. Put these flowers near the window, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. will you                      B. would you                      C. could you                      D. all are correct
33. None of the old people likes living in urban areas, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do them                      B. does he                      C. do they                      D. don't they
34. Neither of the locations was ideal for a new shopping mall, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. were they                      B. was it                      C. weren't they                      D. wasn't it
35. I believe nothing serious happened, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. did it                      B. didn't it                      C. do I                      D. don't I
36. You can make your own compost in a compost bin, \_\_\_\_ you?  
 A. can't                      B. hadn't                      C. couldn't                      D. don't
37. Let's find someone to generate new ideas, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. will you                      B. shall we                      C. can we                      D. didn't you

38. They were warned by a friend in the organization that their phone calls were being monitored, \_\_\_\_ they?  
 A. were                      B. did                      C. weren't                      D. didn't
39. Don't leave anything behind, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do you                      B. don't you                      C. will you                      D. shall we
40. That isn't Bill driving, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. is it                      B. is that                      C. isn't that                      D. isn't it
41. Nobody likes the play, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do they                      B. don't they                      C. didn't they                      D. did they
42. The children can read English, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. can't they                      B. can they                      C. they can                      D. they can't
43. Your grandfather was a millionaire, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. was he                      B. is he                      C. wasn't he                      D. isn't he
44. I think the cities of tomorrow also need to consider the availability of open space, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. do I                      B. don't I                      C. do they                      D. don't they
45. We will need new technologies to generate energy and use it in clean and safe ways, only from fully \_\_\_\_ sources.  
 A. replaced                      B. controlled                      C. renewable                      D. enduring
46. Across the globe, nations are preparing for water scarcity, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. are they                      B. aren't they                      C. will they                      D. won't they
47. This is your essay on smart cities by 2050, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. is this                      B. isn't this                      C. is it                      D. isn't it
48. Your brother's here, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. is he                      B. are he                      C. isn't he                      D. aren't he
49. That was Ann on the phone, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. was it                      B. was that                      C. wasn't that                      D. wasn't it
50. Tom didn't see her, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. did Tom                      B. did he                      C. do Tom                      D. does he
51. Mary wasn't angry, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. was she                      B. is she                      C. wasn't she                      D. was Mary
52. Susan doesn't like oysters, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. did she                      B. does she                      C. doesn't she                      D. she does
53. Nothing serious will be expected in the process of building our smart city, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. will it                      B. won't it                      C. will they                      D. won't they
54. I'm not old enough to understand the master plan of our city by 2050, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. am I                      B. am not I                      C. aren't I                      D. are you
55. Study after study has shown that nature improves human health and well-being, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. has it                      B. hasn't it                      C. doesn't it                      D. does it
56. We should call Rita, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. should we                      B. shouldn't we                      C. shall we                      D. should not we
57. Monkeys can't sing, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. can they                      B. can't they                      C. can it                      D. can't it
58. These books aren't yours, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. are these                      B. aren't these                      C. are they                      D. aren't they
59. That's Bod's, \_\_\_\_?  
 A. is that                      B. isn't that                      C. are they                      D. aren't they
60. No one died in the accident, \_\_\_\_? (British English)

- A. didn't they      B. did he      C. didn't he      D. did they?
61. I'm right, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. aren't I      B. amn't I      C. isn't I      D. not I am
62. They never came to class late, and.....  
A. neither did we      B. so did we      C. we did either      D. neither we did
63. My wife had never been to Hue, and \_\_\_\_\_ I.  
A. never have      B. so did we      C. we did either      D. neither we did
64. They are studying pronunciation with Mr. Brown, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. are they      B. aren't they      C. do they      D. don't they
65. She should have obeyed her parents, \_\_\_\_\_ she?  
A. should      B. should have      C. shouldn't have      D. shouldn't
66. My father doesn't speak Chinese, and \_\_\_\_\_  
A. my mother does neither      B. my mother doesn't too  
C. neither does my mother      D. so doesn't my mother
67. The air-hostess knows the time she has been here, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. does she      B. isn't it      C. doesn't she      D. did she'
68. This is the second time she has been here, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. has she      B. hasn't she      C. isn't this      D. isn't it
69. They must do as they are told, \_\_\_\_\_  
A. so must I      B. I must either      C. I do too      D. I am too
70. 'I don't like strong coffee' 'No, \_\_\_\_\_'  
A. I don't too      B. either don't I      C. me either      D. neither don't I
71. He hardly has anything nowadays, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. has he      B. doesn't he      C. does she      D. hasn't she
72. You've never been in Italy, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. haven't you      B. have you      C. been you      D. had you
73. Sally turned in her report, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. had she      B. did she      C. hadn't see      D. didn't she
74. You have a ticket to the game, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do you      B. haven't you      C. don't you      D. have you
75. No one is better cook than his mother, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. is she      B. isn't she      C. are they      D. aren't they
76. Do it right now, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. will you      B. shall you      C. do you      D. don't you
77. There are no easy ways to learn a foreign language, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. are they      B. are there      C. aren't they      D. aren't there
78. He seldom goes to the library, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't he      B. is he      C. does he      D. isn't he
79. Let's go for a long walk, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. will we      B. shall we      C. don't you      D. do you
80. I think he will join us, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't he      B. won't he      C. will he      D. don't I
81. The film is good, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. is it      B. are they      C. isn't it      D. aren't they
82. You are going to the party, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. is you      B. are you      C. aren't you      D. were you
83. He can speak English, \_\_\_\_\_?



- A. can he                      B. can't he                      C. can't him                      D. could he
84. You don't know him, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. do you                      B. don't you                      C. are you                      D. aren't you
85. Lan speaks Chinese very well, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. does she                      B. doesn't she                      C. is she                      D. was she
86. John has worked hard, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. does he                      B. did he                      C. has he                      D. hasn't he
87. They invited him to the party, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. do they                      B. don't they                      C. did they                      D. didn't they
88. They are leaving here tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. do they                      B. are they                      C. aren't they                      D. did they
89. I'm a bit late, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. am not I                      B. aren't you                      C. are you                      D. aren't I
90. No one is indifferent to praise, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. is one                      B. isn't one                      C. is he                      D. are they
91. Somebody has left these socks on the bathroom floor, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. have they                      B. haven't they                      C. has he                      D. hasn't he
92. James owns a restaurant, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. does he                      B. is he                      C. doesn't he                      D. didn't he
93. You aren't too busy to talk, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. are you                      B. have you                      C. aren't                      D. do you
94. The ticket to London doesn't cost a lot, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. do they                      B. does it                      C. is it                      D. isn't it
95. You don't need me any more, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. do I                      B. don't I                      C. do you                      D. don't you
96. Nobody knows who invited the wheel, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. do they                      B. don't they                      C. does it                      D. doesn't it
97. Harry was working in Bristol then, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. was Harry                      B. wasn't he                      C. was he                      D. didn't he
98. You'll be home before midnight, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. will you                      B. won't you                      C. are you                      D. won't you be
99. David is bringing some wine, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. is he                      B. isn't he                      C. is David                      D. isn't David
100. Don't leave anything behind, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. do you                      B. don't you                      C. will you                      D. shall we
101. That isn't Bill driving, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. is it                      B. is that                      C. isn't that                      D. isn't it
102. Nobody likes the play, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. do they                      B. don't they                      C. didn't they                      D. did they
103. The children can read English, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. can't they                      B. can they                      C. they can                      D. they can't
104. Your grandfather was a millionaire, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. was he                      B. is he                      C. wasn't he                      D. isn't he
105. Your brother's here, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. is he                      B. are he                      C. isn't he                      D. aren't he
106. That was Ann on the phone, \_\_\_\_\_?                      A. was it                      B. was that                      C. wasn't that                      D. wasn't it

107. Tom didn't see her, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. did Tom                      B. did he                      C. do Tom                      D. does he
108. Mary wasn't angry, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. was she                      B. is she                      C. wasn't she                      D. was Mary
109. Susan doesn't like oysters, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. did she                      B. does she                      C. doesn't she                      D. she does
110. Those cars are very expensive, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. are cars                      B. aren't they                      C. aren't cars                      D. are they
111. The cases of COVID 19 outside China have increased 13 fold, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. hasn't they                      B. haven't they                      C. will they                      D. don't they
112. What you have said is wrong, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. isn't it                      B. haven't you                      C. is it                      D. have you
113. COVID 19 can be characterized as a pandemic, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. can it                      B. can't it                      C. isn't it                      D. can't they
114. The coronavirus had already overwhelmed China, South Korea, Iran and Italy, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. hadn't it                      B. hasn't it                      C. didn't it                      D. wasn't it
115. Health authorities have activated their most serious response level, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. haven't it                      B. hadn't they                      C. have it                      D. haven't they
116. Your mother is cooking in the kitchen, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. isn't she                      B. doesn't she                      C. won't she                      D. is she
117. Chinese officials quickly shut down Wuhan market, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't it                      B. didn't they                      C. hadn't they                      D. do they
118. There are no easy ways to succeed, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. are there                      B. aren't there                      C. aren't they                      D. are they
119. No one is a better cook than my sister, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. aren't they                      B. is he                      C. are they                      D. is it
120. They'll buy a new apartment, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. will they                      B. won't they                      C. don't they                      D. will not they
121. This house is not safe, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. isn't this                      B. isn't it                      C. is it                      D. is this
122. Ba rarely goes out at night, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't he                      B. is he                      C. isn't he                      D. does he
123. Everybody looks tired, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't it                      B. don't they                      C. does it                      D. do they
124. I'm a bad man, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. am not I                      B. isn't I                      C. aren't I                      D. am I
125. I think she is a dentist, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. don't I                      B. isn't she                      C. do I                      D. is she
126. I don't think you are an engineer, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do I                      B. aren't you                      C. are you                      D. don't I
127. Let's turn off the lights before going out, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. shall we                      B. will you                      C. shan't we                      D. won't you
128. Don't be late, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. are you                      B. shall we                      C. do you                      D. will you
129. Someone wants a drink, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't it                      B. don't they                      C. do they                      D. doesn't he
130. Nobody phoned, \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. do they                      B. didn't they                      C. will she                      D. did they
131. I should keep silent, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. shouldn't I                      B. don't I                      C. should I                      D. do I
132. He mightn't get there in time, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. might he                      B. may he                      C. mightn't he                      D. mayn't he
133. Everything is fine, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. aren't they                      B. isn't it                      C. are they                      D. is it
134. I wish to study English, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. don't I                      B. do I                      C. may I                      D. mayn't I
135. What a nice dress, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. is it                      B. isn't it                      C. doesn't it                      D. does it
136. One can be one's master, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. can't you                      B. can't one                      C. can she                      D. A&B
137. You'd better stay at home, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. hadn't you                      B. had you                      C. don't you                      D. do you
138. You'd rather learn English, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. hadn't you                      B. would you                      C. had you                      D. wouldn't you
139. You don't believe Peter can do it, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do you                      B. can't he                      C. can he                      D. don't you
140. These are 3 oranges you bought yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. aren't they                      B. are they                      C. are these                      D. aren't these
141. He seldom helps her, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't he                      B. does he                      C. did he                      D. didn't he
142. They never go to the library with US, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do they                      B. did they                      C. don't they                      D. didn't they
143. Mary and Peter don't like English, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do they                      B. do Mary and Peter                      C. are they                      D. aren't they
144. I am not a liar, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. am I                      B. aren't I                      C. do I                      D. don't I
145. What you have just said is not true, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. is it                      B. isn't it                      C. haven't you                      D. has it
146. Lucy has been studying English for 4 years, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. has she                      B. is she                      C. hasn't she                      D. isn't she
147. It seems that you are telling me a lie, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. doesn't it                      B. does it                      C. aren't you                      D. are you
148. You need take a rest, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. don't you                      B. needn't you                      C. need you                      D. A&B
149. Let me take care of you, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. may I                      B. will I                      C. shall we                      D. don't I
150. The ticket to London doesn't cost a lot, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. does it                      B. isn't it                      C. is it                      D. doesn't it

**Add the tag questions to complete the sentences.**

1. She is collecting stickers, ..... ?
2. We often watch TV in the afternoon, ..... ?
3. You have cleaned your bike, ..... ?
4. John and Max don't like Maths, ..... ?
5. Peter played handball yesterday, ..... ?

6. They are going home from school, ..... ?
7. Mary didn't do her homework last Monday, ..... ?
8. He could have bought a new car, ..... ?
9. Kevin will come tonight, ..... ?
10. I'm clever, ..... ?
11. He's not coming, ..... ?
12. I'm not late, ..... ?
13. The bank lent him the money, ..... ?
14. You shouldn't do that, ..... ?
15. You don't take sugar in coffee, ..... ?
16. She looks tired, ..... ?
17. There's a cinema near the station, ..... ?
18. He arrived late, ..... ?
19. Nobody has arrived yet, ..... ?
20. It's time to go, ..... ?
21. I'm right, ..... ?
22. You had seen it before, ..... ?
23. Everybody looked so miserable, ..... ?
24. You wouldn't do that, ..... ?
25. He'll be there, ..... ?
26. Everybody will be there, ..... ?
27. She's had too much to do lately, ..... ?
28. It won't happen, ..... ?
29. They should be here soon, ..... ?
30. I'm not intruding, ..... ?
31. Nobody's got to leave early, ..... ?
32. That dog's very noisy, ..... ?
33. You have got to arrive before half past eight, ..... ?
34. They took it, ..... ?
35. That's the shop where you used to work, ..... ?
36. The book's a best-seller, ..... ?
37. You haven't got a sister, ..... ?
38. I'm in trouble, ..... ?
39. You would tell me if you knew, ..... ?
40. You'd rather not tell me, ..... ?
41. Lima is the capital of Peru, ..... ?
42. He'd better try harder, ..... ?
43. There's nothing on TV tonight, ..... ?
44. That's the guy who was on TV the other night, ..... ?
45. That's the guy that won the pools, ..... ?
46. She won't be here for another hour, ..... ?
47. Mr McGuinness is from Ireland, ..... ?
48. The car isn't in the garage, ..... ?
49. You are John, ..... ?
50. She went to the library yesterday, ..... ?
51. He didn't recognize me, ..... ?
52. Cars pollute the environment, ..... ?

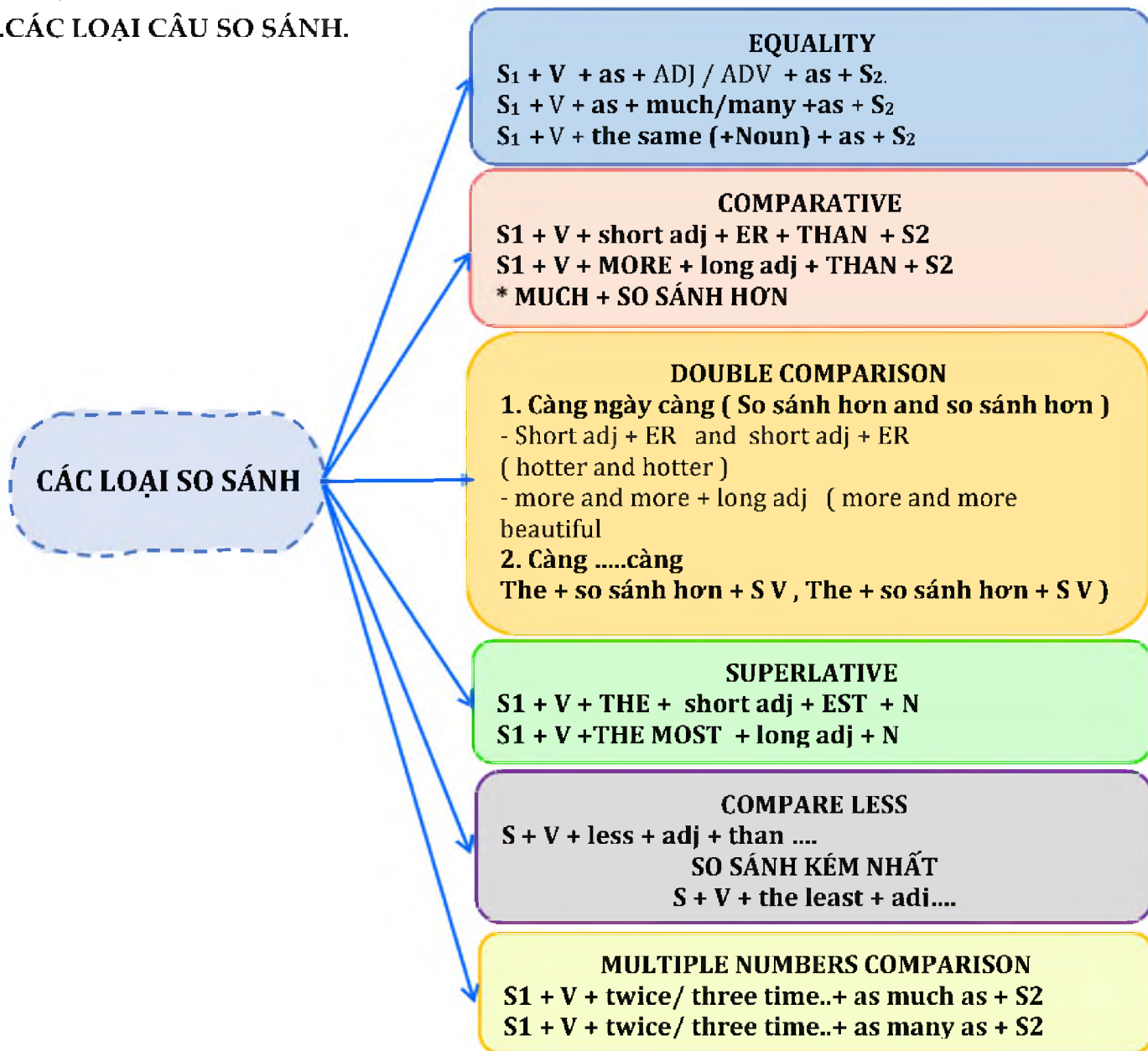
53. Mr. Pritchard has been to Scotland recently, ..... ?
54. The trip is very expensive, ..... ?
55. He won't tell her, ..... ?
56. He sometimes reads the newspaper, ..... ?
57. You are Indian, ..... ?
58. Peggy didn't use the pencil, ..... ?
59. Mary has answered the teacher's question, ..... ?
60. The boy is from Turkey, ..... ?
61. Sue wasn't listening, ..... ?
62. Andrew isn't sleeping, ..... ?
63. Tom and Maria will arrive at Heathrow, ..... ?
64. He's been to Texas, ..... ?
65. Dogs like meat, ..... ?
66. There are some apples left, ..... ?
67. I'm late, ..... ?
68. Let's go, ..... ?
69. Don't smoke, ..... ?
70. He does sing in the bathroom, ..... ?
71. He'll never know, ..... ?
72. I think, he's from India, ..... ?
73. Lovely day today, ..... ?
74. She is collecting stickers, ..... ?
75. We often watch TV in the afternoon, ..... ?
76. You have cleaned your bike, ..... ?
77. John and Max don't like Maths, ..... ?
78. Peter played handball yesterday, ..... ?
79. They are going home from school, ..... ?
80. Mary didn't do her homework last Monday, ..... ?
81. He could have bought a new car, ..... ?
82. Kevin will come tonight, ..... ?
83. I'm clever, ..... ?
84. Murat gets up late, ..... ?
85. You didn't go to school yesterday, ..... ?
86. I am not a nurse, ..... ?
87. She doesn't cook well, ..... ?
88. You can speak English, ..... ?
89. I am your best friend, ..... ?
90. The sun is shining, ..... ?
91. They haven't seen him for ages, ..... ?
92. She visited her grandmother, ..... ?
93. Susan and Peter arrived late yesterday, ..... ?
94. She wasn't there, ..... ?
95. Sheila has gone to the supermarket, ..... ?
96. I will help you, ..... ?
97. You shouldn't do that, ..... ?
98. The thief was arrested yesterday, ..... ?
99. The computer is broken, ..... ?



100. You didn't do homework yesterday, .....

A. SỰ SO SÁNH.

I. CÁC LOẠI CÂU SO SÁNH.



**THỂ NÀO LÀ TÍNH TỪ NGẮN, TÍNH TỪ DÀI**

(Ngắn) : 1 âm tiết ( hot, cold ) hoặc 2 âm tận cùng là y, er, et, ow

(Dài) : từ 2 âm trở lên

✓ Cách chuyển các tính từ/ trạng từ sang dạng so sánh hơn/ so sánh nhất:

- Thêm " er" / "est" vào tính từ/trạng từ có một hoặc hai âm tiết.
- Dùng " more/most + adj/adv" có ba âm tiết trở lên.
- Dùng " more + tính từ kết thúc bằng các tiếp vĩ ngữ : " ed, ful, ing, ish, ous"
- Gấp đôi phụ âm cuối của tính từ một âm tiết kết thúc bằng 1 phụ âm đơn( trừ w, x, z) và đứng trước một nguyên âm đơn.
- Khi tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng kết thúc bằng một phụ âm "y" thì ta đổi "y" => " i" và thêm " er" / "est"
- Khi adj có 2 âm tiết là "er, y, le, et và ow" => thêm "er/est" như adj/adv 1 âm tiết.

## CÁC TRƯỜNG HỢP NGOẠI LỆ

### Adj/adv

1. good/well
2. bad/badly
3. many/much
4. little
5. far
6. near
7. late
8. old

### So sánh hơn

- better
- worse
- more
- less
- farther
- Further
- nearer
- later
- older

### So sánh nhất

- best
- worst
- most
- least
- farthest (về khoảng cách)
- furthest (về thời gian)
- nearest (về khoảng cách)
- next (về thứ tự)
- latest (về thời gian)
- last (về thứ tự)
- oldest (về tuổi tác)
- eldest (về cấp bậc hơn là tuổi tác)

## ADJ tận cùng bằng "ED" và "ING"

ADJ -ED ( chỉ cảm xúc , trạng thái của con người )	ADJ -ING ( mô tả tính chất , đặc điểm sự vật )
Ex: Jane is bored because her job is boring Ex: The news was shocking Ex: We were shocked when we heard the news	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. surprised (ngạc nhiên, sốc)</li> <li>2. disappointed (vỡ mộng, thất vọng)</li> <li>3. tired (mệt mỏi, kiệt sức)</li> <li>4. fascinated (thờ ơ, Enchanted)</li> <li>5. amused (ngạc nhiên, vui vẻ)</li> <li>6. astonished (ngạc nhiên, sốc)</li> <li>7. shocked (sốc, sốc)</li> <li>8. disgusted (kinh tởm)</li> <li>9. embarrassed (xấu hổ, bối rối)</li> <li>10. confused (hoang mang, nhầm lẫn)</li> <li>11. terrified (chết lạng, sợ hãi)</li> <li>12. frightened (sợ hãi, chết lạng)</li> <li>13. depressed (trầm cảm, bị áp bức)</li> <li>14. worried (lo lắng, lo lắng)</li> <li>15. annoyed (bực mình, khó chịu)</li> <li>16. satisfied (mãn, hài lòng)</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Surprising (tuyệt vời, bất ngờ)</li> <li>2. Disappointing (thất vọng)</li> <li>3. Tiring (tẻ nhạt, mệt mỏi)</li> <li>4. Fascinating (duyên dáng, quyến rũ)</li> <li>5. Amusing (funny, funny)</li> <li>6. Astonishing (tuyệt vời, tuyệt vời)</li> <li>7. Shocking (một khủng khiếp, gây sốc)</li> <li>8. Disgusting (kinh tởm, xấu xí)</li> <li>9. Embarrassing (vụng về, nhút nhát)</li> <li>10. Confusing (bối rối, không chắc chắn)</li> <li>11. Terrifying (đáng sợ, đáng sợ)</li> <li>12. Frightening (đáng sợ, khủng khiếp)</li> <li>13. Depressing (buồn, buồn tẻ)</li> <li>14. Worrying (lo lắng, tình cảm)</li> <li>15. Annoying (xâm nhập, gây phiền nhiễu)</li> <li>16. Satisfying (thú vị)</li> </ol>

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG SỰ SO SÁNH

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. I don't work so hard \_\_\_\_\_ my father.

A. so

B. as

C. than

D. more

2. It was ..... day of the year.  
A. the colder                      B. the coldest                      C. coldest                      D. colder
3. He drives ..... his brother.  
A. more careful than                      B. more carefully  
C. more carefully than                      D. as careful as
4. Robert does not have \_\_\_\_\_ Peter does.  
A. money more than                      B. as many money as  
C. more money as                      D. as much money as
5. The Mekong Delta is \_\_\_\_\_ deltas in Vietnam.  
A. the largest of the two                      B. one of the two largest  
C. the more larger of the two                      D. one of the two larger
6. My bedroom is ..... room in my house.  
A. tidier than                      B. the tidiest                      C. the most tidy                      D. more tidier
7. Hotels have developed.....restaurants.  
A. as rapidly as                      B. so rapidly as                      C. as rapidly that                      D. as rapidly than
8. Computers are regarded as.....tools today.  
A. much modern than                      B. the most modern  
C. modern as                      D. more modern
9. My sister dances ..... than me.  
A. gooder                      B. weller                      C. better                      D. more good
10. My new sofa is ..... than the old one.  
A. more comfortable                      B. comfortably  
C. more comfortable                      D. comfortable
11. The rooms in Graduate Towers are.....Patterson Hall.  
A. larger than                      B. larger than that of  
C. larger than those in                      D. larger than in
12. He did the test ..... I did.  
A. as bad as                      B. badder than                      C. more badly than                      D. worse than
13. You can take.....books as you want.  
A. as many                      B. as much                      C. so much                      D. too many
14. He finished the test.....of all.  
A. quickly                      B. the most quickly                      C. most quickly                      D. more quickly
15. Tom is ..... than David.  
A. handsome                      B. the more handsome  
C. more handsome                      D. the most handsome
16. She sings ..... among the singers I have known.  
A. the most beautiful                      B. the more beautiful  
C. the most beautifully                      D. the more beautifully
17. The Duke of Westminster is.....in Britain.  
A. second richest person                      B. the richest second person  
C. the second richest person                      D. the richest the second
18. She runs ..... in my class.  
A. the slowest                      B. the most slow                      C. the slowly                      D. the most slowly
19. Her office is ..... away than mine.  
A. father                      B. more far                      C. farther                      D. farer
20. She is ..... singer I've ever met.  
A. worse                      B. bad                      C. the worst                      D. badly

21. English is thought to be ..... than Math.  
A. harder                      B. the more hard                      C. hardest                      D. the hardest
22. Jupiter is ..... planet in the solar system.  
A. the biggest                      B. the bigger                      C. bigger                      D. biggest
23. There are some things Americans would change, and \_\_\_\_ thing people would change is their education.  
A. the biggest                      B. a big                      C. the                      D. a bigger
24. Cultural diversity makes our country \_\_\_\_ by making it a \_\_\_\_ place in which to live.  
A. rich - more interesting                      B. richest - most interesting  
C. richer - most interesting                      D. richer - more interesting
25. These days, in India, there are \_\_\_\_ married couples who live on their own than before.  
A. more                      B. many                      C. less                      D. little
26. In some countries in the Middle East, people stand \_\_\_\_ to each other than those in North America in a conversation.  
A. most closely                      B. more closely                      C. closer                      D. closest
27. Wedding ceremonies are \_\_\_\_ now than they used to be in the past.  
A. less complicated                      B. the most complicated  
C. as complicated                      D. the least complicated
28. It's much \_\_\_\_ to celebrate a small and cozy wedding to save money.  
A. best                      B. better                      C. the best                      D. the better
29. In some Asian families, parents tend to have far \_\_\_\_ control over their children than those in some American families.  
A. the most                      B. the more                      C. more                      D. most
30. This is \_\_\_\_ wedding party I've ever attended.  
A. the more memorable                      B. more memorable  
C. the most memorable                      D. most memorable
31. Chocolates and flowers are by far \_\_\_\_ presents for mothers on Mother's Day in the UK.  
A. more popular                      B. the more popular                      C. less popular                      D. the most popular
32. Chuseok is one of \_\_\_\_ celebrations in the Korean calendar when Koreans give thanks to nature.  
A. the most important                      B. the more important  
C. the less important                      D. more important
33. The more polite you appear to be, \_\_\_\_ your partner will be.  
A. the happiest                      B. the happier                      C. the most happily                      D. the more happily
34. Of the two bridesmaids, Lisa turned out to be \_\_\_\_.  
A. the most charming                      B. the least charming  
C. more charming                      D. the more charming
35. The Korean are \_\_\_\_ than the American in addressing their bosses.  
A. more formal                      B. formal                      C. most formal                      D. the most formal
36. There are \_\_\_\_ occasions for giving gifts in modern societies than before.  
A. less                      B. more                      C. the least                      D. the most
37. June has become \_\_\_\_ month for weddings in many countries when the symbolic flowers, roses, usually bloom.  
A. more popular                      B. less popular                      C. the most popular                      D. the least popular
38. Before doing something important, Vietnamese people always try to choose \_\_\_\_ time for it.  
A. better                      B. less good                      C. the least good                      D. the best
39. \_\_\_\_\_ you study for these exams, \_\_\_\_\_ you will do.



- A. The harder / the better  
C. The hardest / the best
40. My neighbor is driving me mad! It seems that \_\_\_\_\_ it is at night, \_\_\_\_\_ he plays his music!  
A. the less / the more loud  
C. the more late / the more loudlier
41. Thanks to the progress of science and technology, our lives have become \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. more and more good  
C. the more and more good
42. Pork is \_\_\_\_\_ it used to.  
A. twice as expensive as  
C. twice more than expensive
43. It gets \_\_\_\_\_ when the winter is coming.  
A. cold and cold  
C. colder and colder
44. The more she worked, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the less she achieved  
B. she did not achieving enough
45. Vietnam becomes.....to foreign tourists.  
A. most and most attractive  
B. the more attractive
46. The sooner, the.....  
A. better  
B. best
47. ....the worse I seem to feel.  
A. When I take more medicine  
B. The more medicine I take
48. The final will be..... the midterm.  
A. alike  
B. like
49. ....I get to know her, the more I like her.  
A. For more  
B. More
50. He eats with chopsticks.....the Chinese.  
A. such  
B. as if
51. This shirt and that one.....  
A. alike  
B. are alike
52. I want to buy some shoes.....the ones you have on.  
A. like  
B. are like
53. Mary and her mother do not.....  
A. alike  
B. look like
54. These two girls.....that I can't tell them apart.  
A. are so alike  
B. are so like
55. ....the horse tried to free itself from the restraint,.....it became.  
A. The more/the tighter  
C. The more/tighter
56. Many endangered species are moving \_\_\_\_ to extinction, and we are losing our precious places.  
A. close and close  
C. closer and closer
57. We need to do this \_\_\_\_ than we are at the moment.
- B. The more / the much  
D. The more hard / the more good,  
B. the less / less  
D. the later / the louder  
B. better and better  
D. gooder and gooder  
B. twice expensive more than  
D. more expensive than twice  
B. the coldest and coldest  
D. more and more cold  
C. she did not achieve enough  
D. she was achieving less  
C. much and more attractive  
D. more and more attractive  
C. good  
D. more good  
C. Taking more of the medicine  
D. More medicine taken  
C. same  
D. similar  
C. The more  
D. The most  
C. like  
D. as  
C. as alike as  
D. the same  
C. are alike  
D. likely  
C. look alike  
D. like  
C. are too alike  
D. alike enough  
B. The most/the tighter  
D. More/tighter  
B. closely and closely  
D. more closely and closely

- A. quickly                      B. the quickest                      C. more quickly                      D. most quickly
58. The more carefully humans mind their daily activities, \_\_\_\_ on the environment.  
 A. the less harmful impact have they                      B. the less harmful impact they have  
 C. the less impact harmful they have                      D. the less harmful they have impact
59. Growth is of very immediate environmental concern because \_\_\_\_ the more pollutants we throw out into the atmosphere.  
 A. the more the world economy grows                      B. the more economy the world grows  
 C. the more grows the world economy                      D. the more the world grows economy
60. Governments should take measures to protect wildlife, or more and more animals will become endangered.  
 A. The sooner governments take measures to protect wildlife, the fewer animals will become endangered.  
 B. Because more governments take measures to protect wildlife, fewer animals will become endangered.  
 C. The more measures governments take to protect wildlife, the fewer animals will become endangered.  
 D. Governments take measures to protect wildlife, so that fewer animals will become endangered.
61. Looking after a kitten is \_\_\_\_ more difficult than I thought it would be.  
 A. far                      B. farther                      C. further                      D. father
62. Living in a big city isn't \_\_\_\_ interesting as I thought it would be.  
 A. less                      B. most                      C. more                      D. as
63. It has been a really bad journey, but I think the \_\_\_\_ is behind us.  
 A. good                      B. better                      C. worst                      D. worse
64. He arrived \_\_\_\_ than anyone else, so he had to wait more than an hour.  
 A. earlier                      B. more early                      C. early                      D. earliest
65. The meal was a bit \_\_\_\_ expensive than we expected, but it was very nice.  
 A. least                      B. less                      C. more                      D. most
66. I've never eaten such a strange thing \_\_\_\_ this before.  
 A. similar                      B. as                      C. same                      D. look like
67. Joe is more hard-working than his brother.  
 A. Joe is not as hard-working as his brother.  
 B. Joe's brother is not as hard-working as he is.  
 C. Joe is less hard-working than his brother.  
 D. Joe's brother is more hard-working than he is.
68. Many teenagers like facebooking more than doing sport.  
 A. Many teenagers like doing sport as much as Facebooking.  
 B. Many teenagers don't like Facebooking as much as doing sport,  
 C. Many teenagers like doing sport more than Facebooking.  
 D. Many teenagers don't like doing sport as much as Facebooking.
69. Paul likes reading comic books more than watching cartoons.  
 A. Paul doesn't like watching cartoons as much as reading comic books.  
 B. Paul likes watching cartoons as much as reading comic books.  
 C. Paul likes watching cartoons more than reading comic books.  
 D. Paul doesn't like reading comic books as much as watching cartoons.
70. I like reading books more than surfing the Internet.  
 A. I like surfing the Internet more than reading book.

- B. I like reading book less than surfing the Internet.  
 C. I don't like reading book as much as surfing the Internet.  
 D. I don't like surfing the Internet as much as reading books.
71. My father likes reading newspaper more than watching TV.  
 A. My father doesn't like reading newspaper as much as watching TV.  
 B. My father likes watching TV as much as reading newspaper.  
 C. My father doesn't like watching TV as much as reading newspaper.  
 D. My father likes watching TV more than reading newspaper.
72. In Vietnam, football is more popular than basketball.  
 A. In Vietnam, basketball is not as popular as football.  
 B. In Vietnam, basketball is more popular than football.  
 C. In Vietnam, football is not as popular as basketball.  
 D. In Vietnam, football is as popular as basketball.
73. My boss works better when he's pressed for time.  
 A. The more time my boss has, the better he works.  
 B. The less time my boss has, he works better.  
 C. The less time my boss has, the better he works.  
 D. The less time my boss has, he works the better.
74. Derek is quite a bit more adventurous than his sister, Annabelle.  
 A. Annabelle is considerable more adventurous than her brother, Derek.  
 B. Annabelle isn't as nearly adventurous as her brother, Derek.  
 C. Derek isn't so nearly adventurous as his sister, Annabelle.  
 D. Annabelle isn't nearly as adventurous as her brother, Derek.
75. The likelihood of suffering a heart attack rises as one becomes increasingly obese.  
 A. Anyone who is obese is likely to experience a heart attack at any time.  
 B. Obesity results in only a slight increase in the probability of having a heart attack.  
 C. The more obese one is, the higher the chances for a heart attack become.  
 D. Heart attacks are happening more and more often, and most of the sufferers are obese.
76. The American are less formal in addressing their bosses than the South Korean.  
 A. The South Korean are less formal in addressing their bosses than the American.  
 B. Both the American and the South Korean have the same formality in addressing their bosses.  
 C. The South Korean are more informal in addressing their bosses than the American.  
 D. The South Korean are more formal in addressing their bosses than the American.
77. Nothing is more precious than happiness and health.  
 A. Happiness and health are the most precious things.  
 B. Happiness is more precious than health.  
 C. Health is more precious than happiness.  
 D. Happiness and health are more and more precious.
78. I've never seen such a nice bouquet of wedding flowers.  
 A. This bouquet of wedding flowers is the nicest that I've ever made.  
 B. This is the nicest bouquet of wedding flowers that I've ever seen.  
 C. I've never seen the nicest bouquet of wedding flowers so far.  
 D. Nothing I've seen is nicer than this bouquet of wedding flowers.
79. Ice-hockey is one of the most popular sports in Russia.  
 A. In Russia, ice-hockey is more popular than any other sports.  
 B. In Russia, no sport is more popular than ice-hockey.

- C. In Russia, no sport is less popular than ice-hockey.  
D. In Russia, one of the most popular sports is ice-hockey.
80. Tet holiday is the most interesting Vietnamese traditional festival that he's ever attended.  
A. Tet holiday is more interesting than the Vietnamese traditional festival that he's ever attended.  
B. He has never attended a more interesting Vietnamese traditional festival than Tet holiday.  
C. He has attended many interesting Vietnamese traditional festival including Tet holiday.  
D. Tet holiday is one of the most interesting Vietnamese traditional festival he's ever attended.
81. There are more superstitious beliefs in Eastern countries than in Western ones.  
A. Western countries don't have fewer superstitious beliefs than Eastern ones.  
B. Eastern countries have more superstitious beliefs than Western ones.  
C. Eastern and Western countries have many more superstitious beliefs.  
D. More superstitious beliefs exist in Western countries than in Eastern ones.
82. Pho (rice noodles) is believed to be the most typical food in Viet Nam.  
A. It is believed that Pho (rice noodles) is the most typical food in Viet Nam.  
B. A more typical food than Pho (rice noodles) is believed in Viet Nam.  
C. I believe that Viet Nam has the most typical food like Pho (rice noodles).  
D. No food in Viet Nam is less typical than Pho (rice noodles).
83. I have never read a better book about cultural diversity than I have ever read.  
A. This book is a good book about cultural diversity I have ever read.  
B. This is the best book about cultural diversity I have ever read.  
C. This book is as good as the one about cultural diversity I have ever read.  
D. The book about cultural diversity I have ever read isn't better than this one.
84. Lee talks to people more politely than Ben.  
A. Ben doesn't talk to people as politely as Lee.  
B. Ben doesn't talk to people politely as Lee.  
C. Ben doesn't talk to people more politely than Lee.  
D. Ben doesn't talk to people less politely than Lee.
85. No student in my class can run as fast as Jack.  
A. Jack is faster than no student in my class.  
B. Jack is the fastest runner in my class.  
C. All students in my class don't run faster than Jack.  
D. No student in my class runs fast as Jack.
86. This question is harder than the last one.  
A. The last question is not difficult.  
B. This question is the most difficult one.  
C. The last question is difficult but this one is more difficult.  
D. This question is hard but the last one is not.
87. As Elton John became more famous, it was more difficult for him to avoid reporters.  
A. The most famous Elton John became, the more difficult for him to avoid reporters.  
B. The more famous Elton John became, the more difficult it was for him to avoid reporters.  
C. The more famous Elton John had become, the more difficult for him to avoid reporters.  
D. The more Elton John became famous, the more difficult for him to avoid reporters.
88. We cut down many forests. The Earth becomes hot.  
A. The more forests we cut down, the hotter the Earth becomes.  
B. The more we cut down forests, the hotter the Earth becomes.  
C. The more forests we cut down, the Earth becomes hotter.

D. The more we cut down forests, the Earth becomes hotter.

89. As he earned more money, Mike bought more clothes.

A. When Mike earned a lot of money, he bought more and more clothes.

B. The more money Mike earned, the better clothes he bought.

C. The more money Mike earned, the best clothes he bought.

D. The more money Mike earned, the more clothes he bought.

90. Jupiter is bigger than all the other planets in the solar system.

A. No other planets in the solar system is as big as Jupiter.

B. Jupiter is the biggest planet in the solar system.

C. All other planets in the solar system are not so big that Jupiter.

D. Among the planets in the solar system, Jupiter is the biggest of all.

## II. Use the correct form of adjectives and adverbs in blanks.

1. My Tam is one of (popular) .....singers in my country.

2. People today aren't very polite. In the past they were (polite).....

3. Health and happiness are (important).....than money.

4. Today, English is the (international).....of languages.

5. Dogs are intelligent but not (intelligent) .....chimpanzees.

6. Daisy studies as (good).....as David.

7. The teacher speaks English (fluently).....than we do.

8. My mother has a soft voice, but my teacher's voice is (soft).....than my mother's.

9. The weather this summer is even (hot).....than last summer.

10. Lucy is clever, but Carol is (clever).....than Lucy.

11. Being a firefighter is (dangerous) .....than being a builder.

12. They live in a (big) .....house, but Fred lives in a (big) .....one.

13. The red shirt is better but it's (expensive) .....than the white one.

14. This is (exciting) .....film I've ever seen.

15. He is (clever) .....student in my group.

16. Your voice is ( bad ) .....than mine.

17. He is the (happy).....in his family.

18. England isn't (mountainous country) .....Scotland.

19. Reykjavik is the world's (northern) .....capital city.

20. Sumo wrestlers must be (heavy) .....athletes in the world.

21. The company expanded rapidly. It grew ..... all the time (big)

22. Cathy got .....in her job. In the end she left. (bored)

23. My bags seemed to get .....as I carried them. (heavy)

24. As I waited for my interview, I became .....(nervous)

25. Heath care is becoming .....(expensive)

## III. Rewrite the following sentences with "COMPARISONS"

1. This is the most delicious cake I've ever tasted.

=> I've .....

2. I've never met any more dependable person than George.

=> George is.....

3. There isn't anybody as kind-hearted as your mother.

=> Your mother is.....

4. There is no better teacher in this school than Mr John.

=> Mr John is.....

5. Have you got any bigger than that one?



- => Is this..... ?
6. My house is bigger than your house.  
=> Your house is.....
  7. The black car is cheaper than the red car.  
=> The red car.....
  8. This film is more interesting than that one.  
=> That film is.....
  9. My kitchen is smaller than yours.  
=> Your kitchen.....
  10. My grandmother is older than every one in my family.  
=> My grandmother is the.....
  11. No one in my class is as tall as Tam.  
=> Tam is the\_.....
  12. I can't cook as well as my mother.  
=> My mother can cook.....
  13. He does not play tennis as well as Jack.  
=> Jack can.....
  14. I did not spend as much money as you.  
=> You spent.....
  15. I don't think this book is expensive as it is.  
=> This book is.....
  16. He is the tallest boy in his class.  
=> No one in.....
  17. This is the most interesting film of all.  
=> No other films are.....
  18. No cars in the world are more expensive than Japanese ones.  
=> Japanese cars.....
  19. This exercise is easier than that one.  
=> That exercise is not.....
  20. He drives more carefully than Jack does.  
=> Jack.....

**IV. Rewrite these sentences, using the + comparative...the + comparative**

1. When you get near to the Equator, the temperature becomes high.  
→ The \_\_\_\_\_
2. If she stays in England a long time, her English will be very good.  
→ The \_\_\_\_\_
3. You write fast, your writing becomes illegible.  
→ The \_\_\_\_\_
4. The value of a picture depends on how famous the artist is.  
→ The \_\_\_\_\_
5. I don't spend much time with my family because I work so hard.  
→ The \_\_\_\_\_
6. How much you sweat depends on how hot you get.  
→ The \_\_\_\_\_
7. The idea becomes less attractive as I think about it more.  
→ The \_\_\_\_\_
8. It's hard to concentrate when you are tired.

→ The \_\_\_\_\_

9. The service of a hotel depends on how expensive it is.

→ The \_\_\_\_\_

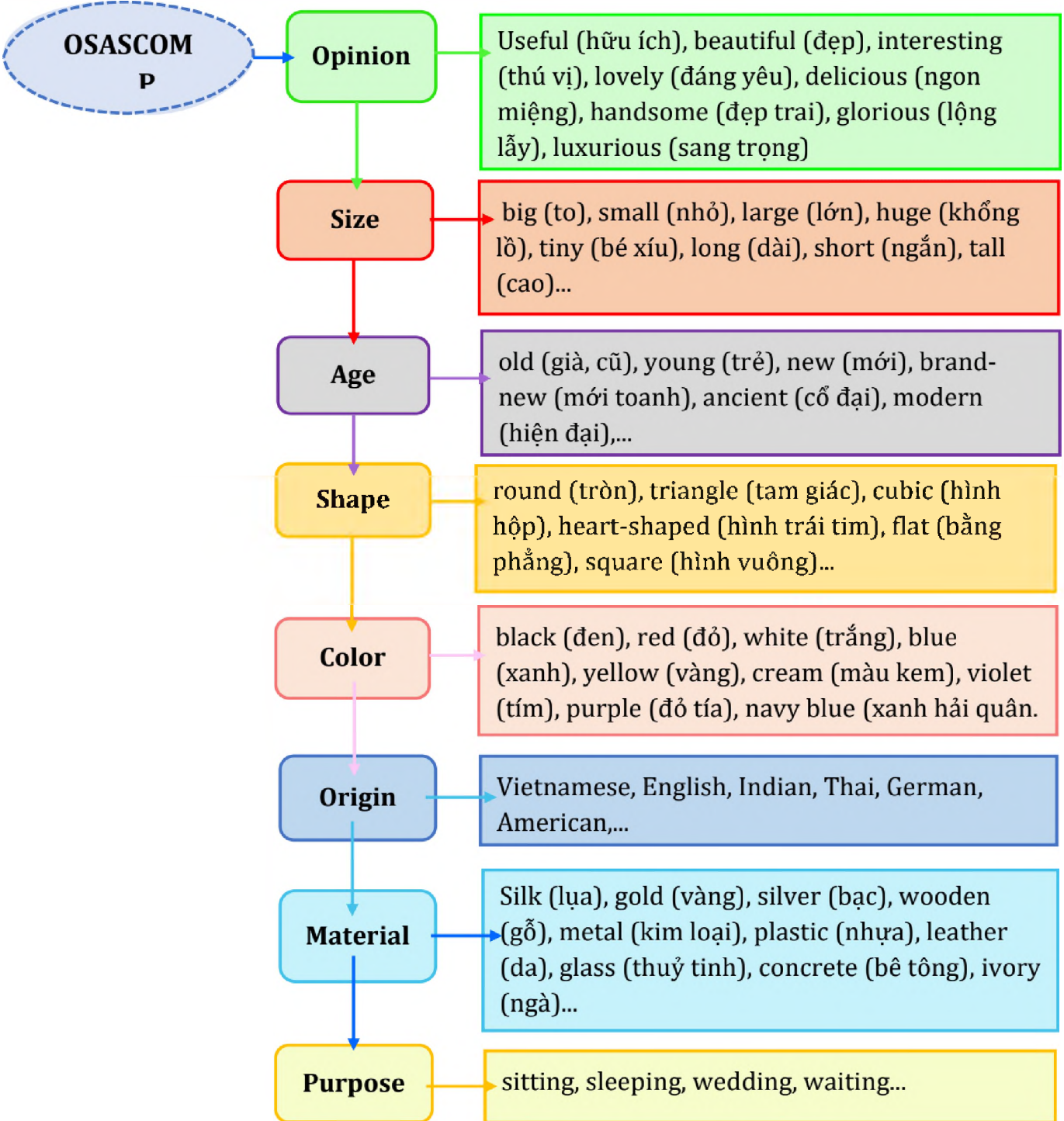
10. The crowd became increasingly angry at the long delay.

→ The \_\_\_\_\_

## B. TRẬT TỰ CỦA TÍNH TỪ

- Khi dùng từ hai tính từ trở lên để miêu tả cho một danh từ, nếu các tính từ cùng loại thì ta phân cách chúng bằng dấu phẩy, còn nếu khác loại thì ta xếp chúng cạnh nhau.

- Trật tự các tính từ được quy định theo thứ tự sau: **"Ông sáu ăn súp của ông mập phì."**



## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG TRẬT TỰ CỦA TÍNH TỪ

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. At first sight I met her. I was impressed with her \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. big beautiful round black eyes                      B. beautiful black big round eyes  
C. beautiful big round black eyes                      D. beautiful round big black eyes
2. This is a picture of a \_\_\_\_\_ bus.  
A. red bright London                                      B. bright red London  
C. London bright red                                      D. London red bright
3. There are some \_\_\_\_\_ pictures in this newspaper.  
A. white interesting computer-generated new  
B. computer-generated white interesting new  
C. interesting new white computer-generated  
D. new interesting computer-generated white
4. During the winter I like having a \_\_\_\_\_ house.  
A. pretty small red wooden                              B. wooden pretty small red  
C. small pretty red wooden                              D. red wooden pretty small
5. I would like to have \_\_\_\_\_ sports shoes to run in the park.  
A. grey medium leather comfortable                      B. comfortable medium grey leather  
C. comfortable leather grey medium                      D. medium leather comfortable grey
6. My sister lives in a \_\_\_\_\_ apartment.  
A. nice wooden new                                      B. new nice wooden  
C. nice new wooden                                      D. wooden nice new
7. His brother presented her a \_\_\_\_\_ clock.  
A. oval nice Japanese digital                              B. nice oval digital Japanese  
C. digital oval Japanese nice                              D. digital Japanese oval nice
8. My father has a \_\_\_\_\_ box.  
A. old small black Turkish                              B. small old Turkish black  
C. small old black Turkish                              D. small Turkish old black
9. She is good at creating \_\_\_\_\_ paintings.  
A. interesting Vietnamese new square                      B. square Vietnamese new interesting  
C. Vietnamese interesting square new                      D. interesting square new Vietnamese
10. My mother would like to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ bag.  
A. big plastic blue Russian                              B. big Russian blue plastic  
C. big blue Russian plastic                              D. Russian plastic big blue
11. They take their \_\_\_\_\_ children to the park every day.  
A. lovely African small young                              B. African small young lovely  
C. small young lovely African                              D. young lovely African small
12. At first sight I met her. I was impressed with her \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. big beautiful round black eyes                      B. beautiful black big round eyes  
C. beautiful big round black eyes                      D. beautiful round big black eyes
13. Lara goes to a \_\_\_\_\_ temple every week.  
A. great big ancient Buddhist                              B. Buddhist great big ancient  
C. ancient great big Buddhist                              D. big great ancient Buddhist
14. There are some \_\_\_\_\_ pictures in this newspaper.  
A. white interesting computer-generated new  
B. computer-generated white interesting new  
C. interesting new white computer-generated

- D. new interesting computer-generated white
15. She is doing extremely well in her \_\_\_\_\_ graduate course.  
 A. intensive one -year English  
 B. one -year English intensive  
 C. intensive English one-year  
 D. English intensive one-year
16. During the winter I like having a \_\_\_\_\_ house.  
 A. pretty small red wooden  
 B. wooden pretty small red  
 C. small pretty red wooden  
 D. red wooden pretty small
17. I would like to have \_\_\_\_\_ sports shoes to run in the park.  
 A. grey medium leather comfortable  
 B. comfortable medium grey leather  
 C. comfortable leather grey medium  
 D. medium leather comfortable grey
18. They say he's a \_\_\_\_\_ student for his age.  
 A. tall mature brilliant  
 B. mature brilliant tall  
 C. brilliant tall mature  
 D. tall brilliant mature
19. The speaker is a \_\_\_\_\_ professor.  
 A. old short Spanish kind  
 B. kind short old Spanish  
 C. Spanish kind old short  
 D. kind Spanish short old
20. My sister lives in a \_\_\_\_\_ apartment.  
 A. nice wooden new  
 B. new nice wooden  
 C. nice new wooden  
 D. wooden nice new
21. My cousin bought a \_\_\_\_\_ bowl.  
 A. blue ancient lovely small  
 B. lovely blue small ancient  
 C. small blue ancient lovely  
 D. lovely small ancient blue
22. They cook a \_\_\_\_\_ meal for their children.  
 A. delicious big traditional Vietnamese  
 B. Vietnamese delicious big traditional  
 C. traditional delicious big Vietnamese  
 D. big delicious traditional Vietnamese
23. They are trying to build a \_\_\_\_\_ house.  
 A. four-bedroom elegant modern Italian  
 B. modern elegant four-bedroom Italian  
 C. Italian elegant four-bedroom modern  
 D. elegant four-bedroom modern Italian
24. His brother presented her a \_\_\_\_\_ clock.  
 A. oval nice Japanese digital  
 B. nice oval digital Japanese  
 C. digital oval Japanese nice  
 D. digital Japanese oval nice
25. The old man owns a \_\_\_\_\_ coffee table.  
 A. French beautiful round old  
 B. beautiful French old round  
 C. old round beautiful French  
 D. beautiful old round French
26. My father has a \_\_\_\_\_ box.  
 A. old small black Turkish  
 B. small old Turkish black  
 C. small old black Turkish  
 D. small Turkish old black
27. Jack's father bought him a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ bike as a birthday gift.  
 A. blue Japanese expensive  
 B. expensive Japanese blue  
 C. Japanese expensive blue  
 D. expensive blue Japanese
28. She is good at creating \_\_\_\_\_ paintings.  
 A. interesting Vietnamese new square  
 B. square Vietnamese new interesting  
 C. Vietnamese interesting square new  
 D. interesting square new Vietnamese
29. My mother would like to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ bag.  
 A. big plastic blue Russian  
 B. big Russian blue plastic  
 C. big blue Russian plastic  
 D. Russian plastic big blue
30. We went for a two-week cruise on a \_\_\_\_\_ ocean liner.

- A. incredible brand-new, huge Italian
- B. incredible, huge, brand-new Italian
- C. Italian incredible, brand-new, huge
- D. brand-new incredible, huge Italian

31. I bought a pair of \_\_\_\_\_ boots.

- A. new, nice, red rain
- B. nice new red rain
- C. red nice new rain
- D. nice red new rain

32. My dad was thrilled with his gift of \_\_\_\_\_ bowties for his clown act.

- A. three squirting new nice big polka-dotted
- B. three polka-dotted nice new squirting
- C. three nice big new polka-dotted squirting
- D. three new nice squirting big polka-dotted

33. Please put the marbles into that \_\_\_\_\_ box.

- A. round little old red
- B. little old round red
- C. little old red round
- D. little round old red

34. I was surprised to receive a \_\_\_\_\_ puppy for my birthday.

- A. little, cute, eight-week-old golden retriever
- B. cute eight-week-old little golden retriever
- C. cute little eight-week-old golden retriever
- D. eight-week-old golden retriever , little, cute

35. Our work uniform consists of black pants, black shoes, and a \_\_\_\_\_ shirt.

- A. yellow baggy big polo
- B. big baggy yellow polo
- C. baggy yellow big polo
- D. yellow polo baggy big

**II.Reorder the words to make sentence.**

1. wedding/ dress/ she/ long/ wore/ white/ a.

→ She .....

2. woman/ English/ is/an/ young/ intelligent/ it.

→ It .....

3. is/ bag/ this/ sleeping/ black/ a/ new.

→ This .....

4. pink/ he/ house/ bought/ big/ beautiful/ a.

→ He .....

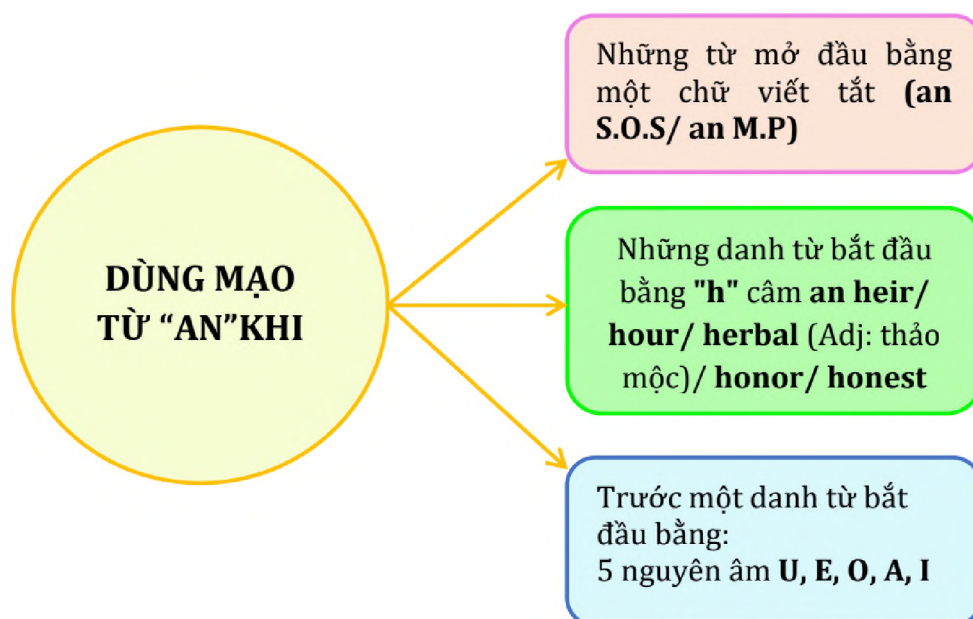
5. gave/ wallet/ him/ she/ brown/ small/ leather/ a.

→ She .....



I. CÁCH DÙNG MẠO TỪ A/AN/THE.

1. Indefinite articles :A/ AN dùng trước danh từ số ít , đếm được => có nghĩa là “ một”



## 2. Definite article :THE Dùng trước 1 danh từ đã được xác định, hoặc nhắc đến lần thứ 2

**Vật duy nhất trong vũ trụ :** The earth, the moon, the sun, the sky, the sea, the stars, the equator

**1. Dùng trước tên các đại dương, sông ngòi, biển, vịnh và các hồ (ở sn)**

**Ex:** The Red Sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the Persian Gulf, the Great Lakes, the Netherlands ( Hà Lan )

**2. Trước tên các dãy núi**

**Ex:** The Hoang Lien Son Mountains

**3. Trước tên các nước có hai từ trở lên (ngoại trừ Great Britain)** Ex: The United States, The United Kingdom

**4. Trước tên các nước được coi là một quần đảo hoặc một quần đảo**

**Ex:** The Philipines, The Hawaii

**5. The + tên vùng nổi tiếng**

**Ex:** The Sahara desert

**Nhạc cụ: play the piano , play the violin, on the radio**

**Các lực lượng: the army, the police**

**The + schools, the colleges, the universities + of + danh từ riêng**

**Ex:** The University of Florida

**- So sánh nhất**

**- The + adj = Ns**

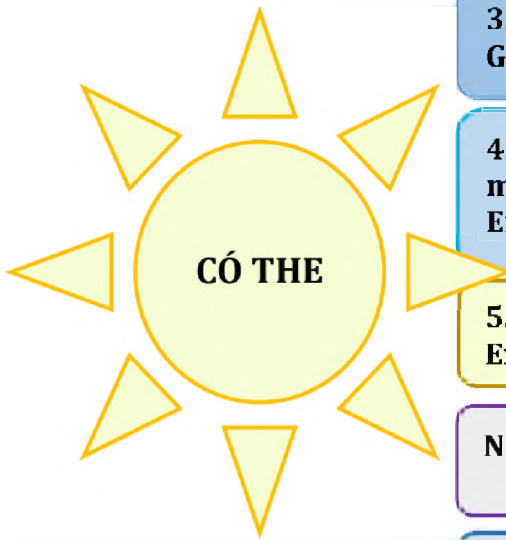
**- The + số thứ tự + N**

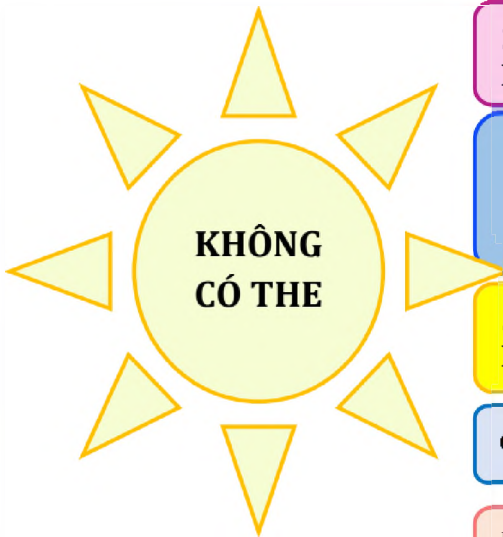
**Ex:** The third chapter

**- The + tên họ số nhiều**

**Ex:** The Smiths

**In the 1990s, in the summer, in the morning, the**





**in 2000, in June, On Friday, at night, during Christmas**

**Trước các danh từ trừu tượng**

Ex: freedom, happiness, independence, honesty

**1. Trước tên một hồ :**

Ex: Hoang Kiem lake

**2. Trước tên một ngọn núi :**

Ex: Mount Vesuvius

**3. Trước tên các nước có 1 từ:**

Ex: Laos, Vietnam

**4. Trước tên các nước bắt đầu bằng "New" hoặc chỉ hướng**

Ex: New Zealand, North Korean

**5. Trước tên hành tinh, chòm sao**

Ex: Venus, Mars

**6. Tỉnh, thành phố, quận , huyện**

**Môn thể thao: play football, play sports, play music**

**Trước tên các môn học: physics, maths**

**On foot, by bus, by car**

- N đi với số đếm: chapter three

- bữa ăn , món ăn : breakfast, dinner, lunch, rice, fish.

- màu sắc, vật liệu

Ex: red, white, steel, iron

- Các loại bệnh : Cold

- Khi DT có tính từ hoặc đại từ sở hữu

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG MẠO TỬ

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Tom sat down on.....chair nearest.....door.

A. a - a

B. a - the

C. the - a

D. the - the

2. Would you rather live in.....town or in.....country?  
 A. a-a                      B. a-the                      C. the-a                      D. the-the
3. I tried to park my car but.....was too small.  
 A. space                      B. spaces                      C. a space                      D. the space
4. "Did you have.....nice holiday?" - "Yes, it was.....best holiday I've ever had."  
 A. a - a                      B. a - the                      C. the -a                      D. the - the
5. I lay down on.....ground and looked up at                      sky.  
 A. a - a                      B. a - the                      C. the - a                      D. the - the
6. Yesterday I met.....who said he knew you.  
 A. the men                      B. man                      C. a man                      D. one man
7. Don't drive into that street. It is.....one-way street.  
 A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
8. Sir Humphrey has been.....MP for five years.  
 A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
9. I think everyone wants to make friends with John. He is.....honest person.  
 A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
10. We are looking for \_\_\_\_\_ place to spend \_\_\_\_\_ night.  
 A. the/the                      B. a/the                      C. a/a                      D. the/a
11. Please turn off \_\_\_\_\_ lights when you leave \_\_\_\_\_ room.  
 A. the/the                      B. a/a                      C. the/a                      D. a/the
12. We are looking for people with \_\_\_\_\_ experience.  
 A. the                      B. a                      C. an                      D. x
13. I am on night duty. When you go to \_\_\_\_\_ bed, I go to \_\_\_\_\_ work.  
 A. a/x                      B. a/the                      C. the/x                      D. x/x
14. My neighbor is.....photographer; let's ask him for.....advice about color film.  
 A. a - Ø                      B. the - the                      C. a - the                      D. the - an
15. Because of electronic publishing,.....will disappear in the next 25 years.  
 A. a book                      B. book                      C. the books                      D. books
16. Socially, Dan was a gregarious person who enjoyed.....of others enormously.  
 A. the company                      B. company                      C. a company                      D. the companies
17. The research may make it possible for people to live for.....of years.  
 A. a hundred                      B. a hundreds                      C. the hundred                      D. hundreds
18. Not every student is aware of.....of the English language.  
 A. importance                      B. an importance                      C. its importance                      D. the importance
19. Did you read.....news about the Sukhoi Superjet crash in Indonesia?  
 A. a                      B. the                      C. some                      D. Ø
20. Where do you keep.....knives and forks?  
 A. the                      B. some                      C. a                      D. Ø
21. After he left.....University of Massachusetts, he went to.....Indiana State University.  
 A. the - Ø                      B. the - the                      C. Ø - the                      D. Ø - Ø
22. In most.....developed countries, up to 50% of.....population enters higher education at some time in their lives.  
 A.the - Ø                      B. Ø - Ø                      C.the - a                      D. Ø - the
23. Would you pass me \_\_\_\_\_ salt, please?

- A. a                      B. the                      C. an                      D. x
24. Can you show me \_\_\_\_\_ way to \_\_\_\_\_ station?  
A. the/the                B. a/a                      C. the/a                      D. a/the
25. She has read \_\_\_\_\_ interesting book.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. x
26. You'll get \_\_\_\_\_ shock if you touch \_\_\_\_\_ live wire with that screwdriver.  
A. an/the                B. x/the                      C. a/a                      D. an/the
27. Mr. Smith is \_\_\_\_\_ old customer and \_\_\_\_\_ honest man.  
A. An/the                B. the/an                      C. an/an                      D. the/the
28. \_\_\_\_\_ youngest boy has just started going to \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
A. a/x                      B. x/the                      C. an/x                      D. the/x
29. Do you go to \_\_\_\_\_ prison to visit him?  
A. the                      B. a                      C. x                      D. an
30. \_\_\_\_\_ eldest boy is at \_\_\_\_\_ college.  
A. a/the                      B. the/x                      C. x/ a                      D. an/x
31. Are you going away next week? No, \_\_\_\_\_ week after next.  
A. an                      B. a                      C. the                      D. x
32. Would you like to hear \_\_\_\_\_ story about \_\_\_\_\_ English scientist?  
A. an/the                B. the/the                      C. a/the                      D. a/ an
33. There'll always be a conflict between \_\_\_\_\_ old and \_\_\_\_\_ young.  
A. the/the                B. an/a                      C. an/the                      D. the/a
34. There was \_\_\_\_\_ collision at \_\_\_\_\_ corner.  
A. the/a                      B. an/the                      C. a/the                      D. the/the
35. My mother thinks that this is \_\_\_\_\_ expensive shop.  
A. the                      B. an                      C. a                      D. x
36. Like many women, she loves \_\_\_\_\_ parties and \_\_\_\_\_ gifts.  
A. the/ a                      B. a/the                      C. a/a                      D. x/x
37. She works seven days \_\_\_\_\_ week.  
A. a                      B. the                      C. an                      D. x
38. My mother goes to work in \_\_\_\_\_ morning.  
A. a                      B. x                      C. the                      D. an
39. ....non-verbal language is ..... important aspect of interpersonal communication.  
A. Ø - an                B. A - the                      C. The - Ø                      D. The - a
40. He spent part of.....afternoon telling them .....news he could not tell them by.....telephone.  
A. the - the - Ø                B. an - Ø - the                      C. an - the - the                      D. the - Ø - the
41. He teaches.....piano and .....violin.  
A. the - the                B. a - the                      C. the - a                      D. Ø - Ø
42. Those men are paid by.....  
A. an hour                B. hour                      C. every hour                      D. the hour
43. ....Professor Johns, ..... man whose new drug everyone is talking about refused.....interview.  
A. Ø - the - an                B. Ø - a - the                      C. The - a - the                      D. The - a - an
44. There isn't.....airport near where I live. .... nearest airport is 70 miles away.  
A. an-A                      B. an-The                      C. the-A                      D. the - The



45. John is \_\_\_\_\_ most hard-working student I've ever known.  
A. the                      B. Ø                      C. a                      D. an
46. We moved to the countryside because we wanted to be close to \_\_\_\_\_ nature.  
A. a                      B. the                      C. an                      D. Ø
47. The pace of \_\_\_\_\_ life is much slower in the country than in the city.  
A. an                      B. a                      C. Ø                      D. the
48. I have left my book in \_\_\_\_\_ kitchen and I would like you to get it for me.  
A. the                      B. a                      C. Ø                      D. an
49. Reports are coming in of a major oil spill in \_\_\_\_\_ Mediterranean.  
A. an                      B. Ø                      C. the                      D. a
50. Is it acceptable to touch \_\_\_\_\_ person on \_\_\_\_\_ shoulder in a conversation?  
A. a - the                      B. the - a                      C. the - the                      D. a - a

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. Donald Trump is \_\_\_\_\_ President of \_\_\_\_\_ United States.  
A. the/ the                      B. a/ 0                      C. the/ 0                      D. the/ an
2. I need \_\_\_\_\_ new cell phone. I'm going to the electronics store to pick one out today.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
3. I want to have \_\_\_\_\_ apple for \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.  
A. a-the                      B. an - Ø                      C. the - Ø                      D. Ø - Ø
4. Quick! Someone called the police. I need \_\_\_\_\_ help right now.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
5. All she wanted was a place where she could live without \_\_\_\_\_ fear.  
A. Ø                      B. a                      C. the                      D. an
6. It takes not only \_\_\_\_\_ talent, but also \_\_\_\_\_ hard work to succeed in a career.  
A. Ø - Ø                      B. Ø - the                      C. the - Ø                      D. an - the
7. It is estimated that about 640 million women remain illiterate in \_\_\_\_\_ world,  
A. the-the                      B. the - Ø                      C. a - Ø                      D. a - the
8. It is estimated that only 1,000 pandas remain in \_\_\_\_\_ wild.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
9. I won't be home for \_\_\_\_\_ dinner this evening. I'm meeting some friends after \_\_\_\_\_ work and we're going to \_\_\_\_\_ cinema.  
A. Ø - the - Ø                      B. The - Ø - Ø                      C. Ø - Ø - the                      D. Ø - the - the
10. My brother hopes to travel around the world \_\_\_\_\_ next summer.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
11. Our planned visit to \_\_\_\_\_ United Kingdom fell through because we were unable to get the visas.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
12. Of all the world's major oceans, \_\_\_\_\_ Arctic Ocean is the shallowest.  
A. an                      B. the                      C. a                      D. Ø
13. A recent survey has shown that \_\_\_\_\_ increasing number of men are willing to share the housework with their wives.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. some
14. Housewives find it easier to do domestic chores thanks to \_\_\_\_\_ invention of labor-saving devices.  
A. the                      B. a                      C. an                      D. some

15. First our team should identify \_\_\_\_\_ specific need in the community and then carry out a project to address that need.  
A. an                      B. Ø                      C. a                      D. the
16. When I leave school, I plan to go to \_\_\_\_\_ university.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
17. \_\_\_\_\_ tennis is my favorite sport. I play once or twice \_\_\_\_\_ week if I can, but I'm not very good player.  
A. A - Ø - the              B. Ø - a - the              C. Ø - the - a              D. Ø - a - a
18. A dictionary is \_\_\_\_\_ important tool in learning language.  
A. the                      B. an                      C. a                      D. Ø
19. Last night there was \_\_\_\_\_ bird singing outside my house.  
A. a                      B. Ø                      C. an                      D. the
20. James visited \_\_\_\_\_ State Hermitage Museum, \_\_\_\_\_ famous tourist attraction in St. Petersburg.  
A. Ø - the                      B. Ø - a                      C. a - the                      D. the - a
21. One third of \_\_\_\_\_ world's population consumes two thirds of \_\_\_\_\_ world's sources.  
A. a - the                      B. the - Ø                      C. the - the                      D. the - a
22. Human beings are \_\_\_\_\_ greatest threat to the survival of endangered species.  
A. Ø                      B. an                      C. the                      D. a
23. We called an ambulance as soon as we realised that he seemed to be having \_\_\_\_\_ heart attack.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. no article
24. According to FAO, Vietnam is \_\_\_\_\_ second largest coffee producer in the world after Brazil.  
A. an                      B. a                      C. the                      D. Ø
25. The excursion is \_\_\_\_\_ unique opportunity to discover \_\_\_\_\_ wild in its natural beauty.  
A. an - Ø                      B. a - the                      C. the - the                      D. an - the
26. \_\_\_\_\_ colleges and universities are the main institutions that provide \_\_\_\_\_ tertiary education.  
A. Ø - Ø                      B. The - Ø                      C. The - the                      D. Ø - the
27. Africa has always had a large migratory population because of war and \_\_\_\_\_ famine.  
A. a                      B. an                      C. the                      D. Ø
28. The man grew up in \_\_\_\_\_ orphanage in \_\_\_\_\_ United Kingdom.  
A. the/ an                      B. an/ the                      C. an/ an                      D. the/ Ø
29. "Did you have \_\_\_\_\_ nice holiday?" - "Yes, it was \_\_\_\_\_ best holiday I have ever had."  
A. a - the                      B. the - the                      C. the - a                      D. a - a
30. She is a very talented girl. You should listen to her playing \_\_\_\_\_ violin.  
A. a                      B. the                      C. Ø                      D. an
31. Being Life's only black photographer put him in \_\_\_\_\_ unusual position when Parks set out to cover the civil rights movement.  
A. Ø/an                      B. the/ an                      C. Ø / the                      D. an/an
32. There are two cars in the yard, a yellow car and a blue one. My car is \_\_\_\_\_ yellow one.  
A. a                      B. x                      C. an                      D. the
33. Reports are coming in of a major oil spill in \_\_\_\_\_ Mediterranean.  
A. a                      B. the                      C. an                      D. Ø
34. More and more investors are pouring \_\_\_\_\_ money into food and beverage start-ups.  
A. an                      B. the                      C. a                      D. Ø

35. Whatever we expect from \_\_\_\_\_ future, it is noted that progress has never moved in straight lines.  
A. a                                      B. an                                      C. the                                      D. some
36. Can you give me \_\_\_\_\_ little more information about the hotel?  
A. a                                      B. an                                      C. the                                      D. Ø
37. Janet ran into one of her old friends on her way \_\_\_\_\_ home from Paris.  
A. a                                      B. an                                      C. the                                      D. Ø
38. \_\_\_\_\_ university is an institution of higher education and research, which grants academic degrees.  
A. A                                      B. An                                      C. The                                      D. Some
39. You will find the image of an Asian fire dragon on \_\_\_\_\_ ninth page.  
A. this                                      B. Ø                                      C. an                                      D. the
40. Is Mr. Smith going to have \_\_\_\_\_ X-ray check tomorrow morning?  
A. Ø                                      B. a                                      C. an                                      D. the
41. Lisa loves listening to music while David is interested in playing \_\_\_\_\_ piano.  
A. a                                      B. the                                      C. Ø                                      D. an
42. \_\_\_\_\_ Statue of Liberty was a gift of \_\_\_\_\_ friendship from France to the United States.  
A. the - Ø                                      B. the - the                                      C. Ø - Ø                                      D. the - a
43. There are only a few seats left for \_\_\_\_\_ tonight's musical at \_\_\_\_\_ university.  
A. a - Ø                                      B. the - a                                      C. Ø - the                                      D. the - the
44. It is said that scientists made an expedition to Mars during \_\_\_\_\_ 1990s.  
A. the                                      B. Ø                                      C. a                                      D. an
45. My father is on night duty. When we go to \_\_\_\_\_ bed, my father goes to \_\_\_\_\_ work.  
A. the - Ø                                      B. Ø - Ø                                      C. a - Ø                                      D. Ø - the
46. \_\_\_\_\_ money you lent me is not enough to buy \_\_\_\_\_ laptop.  
A. the - a                                      B. Ø - a                                      C. the - Ø                                      D. Ø - Ø
47. My aunt Jessica is in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital, so I went to visit her last night.  
A. the                                      B. the                                      C. an                                      D. Ø
48. Do you live in \_\_\_\_\_ capital city of Vietnam.  
A. an                                      B. the                                      C. the                                      D. Ø
49. Thirty-three centuries ago at Karnak, in ancient Egypt, on \_\_\_\_\_ east bank of the Nile \_\_\_\_\_ great temple arose.  
A. Ø - some                                      B. an - Ø                                      C. any-the                                      D. the - a
50. There is \_\_\_\_\_ umbrella in \_\_\_\_\_ corner of the house.  
A. Ø - a                                      B. an - Ø                                      C. an - the                                      D. a - the

### III. Fill in the blank with a suitable word (a/an/the/x(no articles))

- My sister often goes to ..... church by ..... bus.
- Mel's mother is in ..... hospital, so we went to visit her last night.
- Rita is studying ..... English and ..... Maths this semester.
- Do you know ..... man who is waiting for the bus over there?
- Please give me ..... cup of ..... coffee with ..... cream and ..... sugar.
- ..... big books which are on ..... table are for my history class.
- My ..... car is four years old, and it still runs well.
- There are only ..... few seats for tonight's musical.
- ..... chair that you are sitting in is broken.
- The Civil War was fought in ..... United States between 1861 and 1865.
- We went by ..... train to the west of England.

12. ....people who live in .....Scotland are called the Scots.
13. This house is very nice. Has it got .....garden?
14. There isn't .....airport near where I live. ....nearest airport is 70 miles away.
15. Did you have .....nice holiday? Yes, It was.....best holiday I've ever had.
16. Mai always plays .....piano whenever she has free time.
17. My daughter was born on .....fifth of January.
18. Yesterday I went to ..... school by ..... bus because my bike had been broken down.
19. It takes me .....hour to finish my work.
20. She used to have .....cat and.....dog but .....dog died.
21. English is spoken all over .....world.
22. ....deaf are unable to hear anything.
23. I like studying ..... Maths best.
24. People all over the world like ..... football.
25. .... tea is produced in Thai Nguyen.
26. I wish today were on.....Sunday.
27. I often have .....breakfast at 6:00 pm and ..... lunch at 11:00 pm.
28. She gave me .....apple and gave Lan 2 .....apples.
29. ....Smiths are going to Halong Bay next summer.
30. If I won the lottery, first I would buy .....piece of land in the country.
31. This morning I bought a newspaper and.....magazine. ....newspaper is in my bag but I. don't know where I put .....magazine.
32. ....Wayle is .....small river that cuts across .....park near my house.
33. Maria comes from .....United States. She is .....American girl.
34. The boy said: " .....Moon is bigger than .....Earth."
35. I bought .....car last week. ....car is over there.
36. I need .....few apples but .....lot of sugar.
37. Where is .....nearest shop? There is one at .....end of this street.
38. There are 2 cars parked outside: .....blue one and .....grey one. ....blue one belongs to my neighbours and I don't know who .....owner of .....grey one is.
39. My friends live in .....old house in .....small village. There is .....beautiful garden behind .....house. I would like to have .....garden like that.
40. What did you eat for.....breakfast this morning?
41. John and Mary went to.....school yesterday and then studied in .....library before returning home.
42. On our trip to ..... Spain, we crossed .....Atlantic Ocean.
43. Rita plays .....violin and her sister plays .....guitar.
44. ....farmers who are working hard on their land almost get nothing for their lifetime.
45. David played.....basketball and.....baseball at .....Boy's club this year.
46. The political science class is taking .....trip to ..... France in ..... Spring.
47. Last night there was .....bird singing outside my house.
48. She would like to enjoy .....Sun rising, so she often gets up early.
49. He is .....honest person.
50. My father went to .....sea when he was 14.

I. VỊ TRÍ CHỨC NĂNG CÁCH THÀNH LẬP TỪ LOẠI.

1. Vị trí, chức năng và dấu hiệu nhận biết từ loại

DANH TỪ(NOUN)	
Vị trí của danh từ trong câu.	
1. Chủ ngữ của câu (đầu câu, đầu mệnh đề)	<u>Maths</u> is the subject I like best
2. Sau tính từ (good, beautiful..), Sau tính từ sở hữu (my, your, his, her,..). Cụm danh từ: a/ an the + (adv) + adj + N.	She is a good <u>teacher</u> . His <u>father</u> works in hospital.
3. Làm tân ngữ, sau động từ	I like <u>English</u> . We are <u>students</u> .
4. Sau "enough" (enough +N)	He didn't have enough <u>money</u> to buy that car.
5. Sau các mạo từ (a, an, the) Đại từ chỉ định (this, that, these, those); Lượng từ (each, no, any, a few, a little,..)	She is a <u>teacher</u> . This <u>book</u> is an interesting book. I have a little <u>money</u> to go to the movie.
6. Sau giới từ: in, on, of, with, under, at...	Thanh is good at <u>literature</u> .
Dấu hiệu nhận biết danh từ	
-ion (distribution), -ment (development), -er (teacher) , -or (actor), -ant (accountant), -age (marriage), -ship (friendship), -sm (enthusiasm), -ity (ability), -ness (happiness), -dom (freedom), -ist (terrorist), -ian (physician), -hood (childhood), -ance (importance), -ence (dependence), -ety (society), -ty (honesty)	
TÍNH TỪ(ADJECTIVE)	
Vị trí của tính từ trong câu	
1. Trước danh từ: (a/an/the) + (adv) + adj + N	My Tam is a <u>famous</u> singer.
2. Sau động từ liên kết: be/ seem/ appear/ feel/ taste/ look/ keep/get/ keep/ make (sb) + adj	Tom seems <u>tired</u> now The homework keeps me <u>busy</u> all the time
3. Sau "too": S+ be/ seem/look..+ too +adj..	Coffee seems too <u>hot</u> for me to drink.
4. Trước "enough": S + be + adj + enough..	She is <u>tall</u> enough to play volleyball.
5. Trong cấu trúc: so + adj + that	The weather was so <u>bad</u> that we decided to stay at home
6. Dùng dưới các dạng so sánh	Meat is more <u>expensive</u> than fish.
7. Dùng trong câu cảm thán: How + adj +S+V! What + (a/an) + adj +N!	How <u>intelligent</u> she is! What a <u>beautiful</u> girl!
Dấu hiệu nhận biết tính từ	
-ful (helpful), -less (homeless), -ly (friendly), -al (national), -ble (acceptable), -ive (active), -ous (famous), -ish (selfish), -y (foggy), -like (childlike), -ic (scientific), -ed (bored), -ing (interesting), -ary (necessary), -ant (important), -ent (different)	
TRẠNG TỪ	
Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu	
1. Trước động từ thường giữa trợ động từ và	They <u>seldom</u> get up early in the morning.



<b>động từ thường (đặc biệt là các trạng từ chỉ tần suất: always, usually,...)</b>	I have <u>recently</u> finished my homework. I don't <u>usually</u> go to school late.
<b>2. Trước tính từ: be/ feel/look.. + adv + adj</b>	She is <u>very</u> nice. He looks <u>extremely</u> unwell.
<b>3. Sau "too": V(thường) + too + adv !</b>	The teacher speaks too <u>quickly</u> .
<b>4. Trước "enough": V(thường) + adv + enough</b>	The teacher speaks <u>slowly</u> enough for us to understand.
<b>5. Trong cấu trúc : V(thường) + so + adv + that</b>	Jack drove so <u>fast</u> that he caused an accident.
<b>6. Đứng cuối câu (trạng từ thời gian)</b>	I finished my essay <u>last week</u> .
<b>7. Thường đứng 1 mình ở đầu câu/ giữa câu và cách các thành phần khác của câu bằng dấu “,”</b>	<u>Last summer</u> I came back my home country. Its raining <u>hard</u> . Tom, <u>however</u> , goes to school.

### Dấu hiệu nhận biết trạng từ:

**Adv = adj + ly** (beautifully, usefully, carefully, strongly, badly)

**Ngoại lệ:** Một số từ có đuôi “ly” nhưng là tính từ: **daily:** hàng ngày, **early:** sớm; **elderly:** già, lớn tuổi; **friendly:** thân thiện, **likely:** có khả năng sẽ xảy ra; **costly** = đắt đỏ; **lively** = sinh động, **lonely** lẻ loi, **lovely** = đáng yêu, **manly** = nam tính; **silly** = ngớ ngẩn; **ugly** = xấu xí; **unlikely:** không có khả năng xảy ra; **monthly:** hàng tháng; **weekly:** hàng tuần, **brotherly** = như anh em; **comely** = duyên dáng; **goodly** = có duyên; **homely** = giản dị, **lowly** = hèn mọn, **masterly** = tài giỏi; **scholarly** uyên bác; **shapely** = dáng đẹp, **timely** = đúng lúc; **unseemly** = không phù hợp.

### ĐỘNG TỪ

#### Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu

<b>1. Thường đứng sau chủ ngữ</b>	Lam Anh <u>plays</u> volleyball everyday.
<b>2. Đứng sau trạng từ chỉ tần suất</b>	I usually <u>get up</u> late.

#### Dấu hiệu nhận biết động từ

-ate (compensate), -ain (maintain); -flect (reflect), -flict (inflict); -spect (respect), -scrib (describe), -ceive (deceive), -fy (modify), -isel-ize (realize), -ude (include), -ide (devide), **dus** (evade), -tend (extend),...

### 2. Các bước làm bài tập cấu tạo từ

**Khi lựa đáp án đúng cho bài tập cấu tạo từ ta cần chú ý những điểm sau:**

- 1.xác định từ loại của từ cần tìm (dựa theo vị trí của từ trong câu)
2. Danh từ cần tìm số ít hay số nhiều
- 3.Động từ trong câu chia ở thì nào, theo chủ ngữ số ít hay số nhiều
4. Đáp án cần tìm có nghĩa khẳng định (positive) hay phủ định (negative)
- 5.Nếu đáp án cần tìm là danh từ thì xác định đó là danh từ chỉ người, vật hay sự vật cần cân nhắc về nghĩa trong câu với những từ có cùng từ loại

**Ví dụ minh họa: Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:**

**Ví dụ minh họa 1:** There are small..... between British and American English.

- A. differences                      B. different                      C. difference                      D. differently

Tính - danh; động - trạng

- “small” là tính từ nên từ cần tìm là danh từ để đảm bảo quy tắc “tính-danh”

- there are + danh từ số nhiều

=>Đáp án A

**Ví dụ minh họa 2:** The new dress makes you more .....

- A. beauty                      B. beautiful                      C. beautifully                      D. beautify

So sánh hơn của tính từ/ trạng từ

- "make" là động từ nổi nên ta chọn tính từ: make sb + adj (make me happy/ crazy)

=>Đáp án B

### 3. Phương thức cấu tạo từ

#### 3.1. Từ ghép

##### 1. Danh từ ghép

###### Danh từ + danh từ

- a tennis club: câu lạc bộ quần vợt
- a phone bill: hóa đơn điện thoại
- a train journey: chuyến đi bằng tàu hỏa

###### Danh động từ + danh từ

- a swimming pool: bể bơi
- a sleeping bag: túi ngủ
- washing powder: bột giặt

###### Tính từ + danh từ

- a greenhouse: nhà kính
- a blackboard: bảng viết
- quicksilver: thủy ngân
- a black sheep: kẻ hư hỏng

**Lưu ý:** Trong cấu tạo "danh từ + danh từ, danh từ đi trước thường có dạng số ít nhưng cũng có trường hợp ở dạng số nhiều:

- a vegetable garden (vườn rau)
- an eye test (kiểm tra mắt)
- a sports shop (cửa hàng bán đồ thể thao)
- a goods train (tàu chở hàng)

##### 2. Tính từ ghép

###### Danh từ + tính từ

- duty-free (miễn thuế)
- noteworthy (đáng chú ý)
- nationwide (khắp nước)
- blood-thirsty (khát máu)

###### Danh từ + phân từ

- handmade (làm bằng tay)
- time-consuming (tốn thời gian)
- breath-talking (đáng kính ngạc)
- heart-broken (đau khổ)

###### Trạng từ + phân từ

- ill-equipped (trang bị kém)
- outspoken (thẳng thẳng)
- well-behaved (lễ phép)
- high-sounding (huênh hoang)

###### Tính từ + phân từ

- easy-going (thoải mái)
- middle-ranking (bậc trung).
- good-looking (xinh xắn)
- beautiful-sounding (nghe hay)

###### Tính từ + danh từ kết hợp với tận cùng -ed

- old-fashioned (lỗi thời)
- fair-skinned (da trắng)
- absent-minded (đãng trí)
- artistic-minded (có óc thẩm mỹ).

**Lưu ý:** Tính từ ghép có thể được viết thành:

###### Một từ duy nhất:

- life + long => lifelong (cả đời)
- home + sick => homesick (nhớ nhà)

###### Hai từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:

- after + school # after-school (sau giờ học)
- back + up – back-up/ backup (giúp đỡ)

###### Nhiều từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:

- a ten-year-old boy (cậu bé lên mười)
- a two-hour-long test (bài kiểm tra kéo dài 2 giờ)

### 3.2. Thay đổi phụ tử (affixation)

#### - Tiền tố phủ định của tính từ

Tiền tố phủ định	Ví dụ
<b>im-</b> (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu bằng m hoặc p)	immature, impatient
<b>ir-</b> (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu bằng r)	irreplaceable, irregular
<b>il-</b> (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu bằng l )	illegal, illegible, illiterate
<b>in-</b>	inconvenient, inedible
<b>dis-</b>	disloyal, dissimilar
<b>un-</b>	uncomfortable, unsuccessful

**Lưu ý:** - Đối với các tiền tố **in-**, **im-**, ngoài ý nghĩa phủ định chúng còn mang nghĩa “bên trong, vào trong” .

E.g. internal, income, import..

- Các tiền tố **un-**, **dis-** còn được dùng để thành lập từ trái nghĩa của động từ: tie/untie, appear/disappear.. hoặc đảo ngược hành động của động từ: disbelieve, disconnect, dislike, disqualify, unbend, undo, undress, unfold, unload, unlock, unwrap.

#### - Một số tiền tố khác trong tiếng Anh

Tiền tố	Ý nghĩa	Ví dụ
<b>anti-</b>	chống lại	anti-war, antisocial
<b>auto-</b>	tự động	auto-pilot, autography
<b>bi-</b>	hai, hai lần	bicycle, bilingual
<b>ex-</b>	trước đây	ex-wife, ex-smoker
<b>micro-</b>	nhỏ bé	microwave, microscopic
<b>mis-</b>	tồi tệ, sai	misunderstand, misinform
<b>mono-</b>	một, đơn lẻ	monotone, monologue
<b>multi-</b>	nhều	multi-national, multi-purpose
<b>over-</b>	nhều, quá mức	overdo, overtired, overeat
<b>post-</b>	sau	postwar, postgraduate
<b>pre-</b>	trước	pre-war, pre-judge
<b>pro-</b>	tán thành, ủng hộ	pro-government, pro-revolutionary
<b>pseudo-</b>	giả	pseudo-scientific
<b>re~</b>	lần nữa, trở lại	retype, reread, rewind
<b>semi-</b>	phân nửa	semi-final, semicircular
<b>sub-</b>	bên dưới	subway, subdivision
<b>under-</b>	thiếu, không đủ	underworked, undercooked

#### - Hậu tố tạo tính từ

<b>-y:</b>	bushy, dirty, hairy
<b>-ic:</b>	atomic, economic, poetic
<b>-al:</b>	cultural, agricultural, environmental
<b>-ical:</b>	biological, grammatical
<b>-fill:</b>	painful, hopeful, careful
<b>-less:</b>	painless, hopeless, careless
<b>-able:</b>	loveable, washable, breakable

<b>-ive:</b>	productive, active
<b>-ous:</b>	poisonous, outrageous

### - Hậu tố tạo danh từ

Hậu tố	Ý nghĩa	Ví dụ
<b>-er</b> <b>-or</b>	- chỉ người thực hiện một hành động - ta còn dùng hậu tố này cho rất nhiều động từ để hình thành danh từ	writer, painter, worker, actor, operator
<b>-er/-or</b>	-dùng chỉ vật thực hiện một công việc nhất định	pencil-sharpener, grater, bottle-opener, projector
<b>-ee</b>	- chỉ người nhận hoặc trải qua một hành động nào đó	employee, payee
<b>-tion</b> <b>-sion</b> <b>-ion</b>	- dùng để hình thành danh từ từ động từ	complication admission donation
<b>-ment</b>	- chỉ hành động hoặc kết quả	Bombardment, development
<b>-ist</b> <b>-ism</b>	- chỉ người - chỉ hoạt động hoặc hệ tư tưởng (hai hậu tố này dùng cho chính trị, niềm tin và hệ tư tưởng hoặc ý thức hệ của con người)	Buddhist, Marxist, Buddhism, communism
<b>-ist</b>	- còn dùng để chỉ người chơi một loại nhạc cụ, chuyên gia một lĩnh vực..	guitarist, violinist, pianist, economist, biologist
<b>-ness</b>	- dùng để hình thành danh từ từ tính từ	goodness, readiness, forgetfulness, happiness, sadness, weakness
<b>-hood</b>	- chỉ trạng thái hoặc phẩm chất	childhood, falsehood
<b>-ship</b>	- chỉ trạng thái, phẩm chất, tình trạng, khả năng hoặc nhóm	friendship, citizenship, musicianship, membership

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG TỪ LOẠI

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- He won't be.....until he's upset everyone in the office.  
A. contented      B. contenting      C. contents      D. contentedly
- The nationalists are very eager to..... their customs and language.  
A. conservation      B. conserve      C. conservationist      D. conservative
- Here, the .....high-income workers that invest the most in the riskiest funds, and they will not likely need the minimum pension guarantee.  
A. well-educated      B. education      C. educational      D. educate
- These steps aren't..... proven to prevent DVT, but they're common sense.  
A. science      B. scientific      C. scientist      D. scientifically
- She left a large sum of money in her will to.....a wildlife sanctuary.  
A. found      B. founded      C. foundation      D. founder
- The report criticized boardroom fat cats who.....themselves huge pay increases.  
A. awarded      B. award      C. awarding      D. awardee
- The settlers began to move inland and.....the river valleys.  
A. populous      B. populate      C. population      D. popularly



8. The air was abuzz with military helicopters, airlifting .....people and equipment.  
A. injuries                      B. injuring                      C. injured                      D. injury
9. There's a growing.....that this country can no longer afford to be a nuclear power.  
A. recognition                      B. recognize                      C. recognizing                      D. recognized
10. Opencast coal mining is among the most environmentally.....activities carried out in Wales.  
A. destroyed                      B. destructive                      C. destruction                      D. destroyer
11. Acting is ..... you've got to really push yourself if you want to succeed.  
A. compete                      B. competition                      C. competitive                      D. competitors
12. Job insecurity seems to be increasing across most of Western Europe, the United States and other parts of the .....world.  
A. development                      B. developer                      C. developing                      D. developed
13. The booklist at the end of the chapter contains some.....reading on the subject.  
A. introduce                      B. introduction                      C. introductory                      D. introduced
14. Until 1986 most companies would not even allow women to take the exams, but such blatant..... is now disappearing.  
A. discriminates                      B. discrimination                      C. discriminating                      D. discriminated
15. She is very clever,.....but do you think she has the right personality for the job?  
A. admit                      B. admitted                      C. admittedly                      D. admission
16. Five hundred troops were sent in, more as a.....gesture than as a real threat.  
A. symbolic                      B. symbolize                      C. symbol                      D. symbolizes
17. In her essay, she.....the whole era as a period of radical change.  
A. character                      B. characteristic                      C. characterized                      D. characterizes
18. ....repetitive movements can cause inflammation of the joint.  
A. Long                      B. Prolonged                      C. Prolongation                      D. Length
19. Students were asked which task represented the greatest.....challenge.  
A. intelligent                      B. intellect                      C. intellectual                      D. intelligence
20. High levels of..... have been found in the groundwater, causing concerns about possible health risks to nearby neighborhoods.  
A. contamination                      B. contaminated                      C. contaminants                      D. contaminates
21. Although they did not agree with the plan, they did not .....their opposition to it.  
A. relate                      B. relationship                      C. relative                      D. related
22. It would be wrong to discriminate against a candidate because of their sexual.....  
(=the sex of the people they are sexually attracted to).  
A. preferential                      B. preference                      C. preferable                      D. preferably
23. .... for government posts are always thoroughly investigated before being admitted  
A. Applicants                      B. Applicable                      C. Apply                      D. Applications
24. Estimates of the amount of money needed to decontaminate the heavily polluted chemical installations.....  
A. variety                      B. various                      C. vary                      D. varied
25. The temple is still an example of well- ..... traditional Vietnamese architecture.  
A. preserved                      B. preservation                      C. preservative                      D. preserver
26. His.....with the project began when he was on (a) secondment from NASA to the European Space Agency.  
A. involve                      B. involves                      C. involvement                      D. involved
27. People in Italy are more.....of children in public places than in Britain.  
A. tolerate                      B. tolerant                      C. toleration                      D. tolerable



28. Her health is what matters..... the cost of the treatment is of secondary  
 A. importance      B. important      C. importantly      D. import
29. Many species of plants and animals are threatened with.....atened with (=being destroyed so that they no longer exist).  
 A. extinctiveness      B. extinctly      C. extinct      D. extinction
30. The.....ability of the whale is thought to be highly developed.  
 A. communication      B. communicative      C. communicating      D. communicable
31. The children squealed in.....when they saw all the presents under the Christmas tree.  
 A. delight      B. delighted      C. delights      D. delighting
32. Hyperactive children often have poor.....and require very little sleep.  
 A. concentrates      B. concentration      C. concentrated      D. concentrative
33. The terrorists have chosen to play a..... game with the civilian population.  
 A. dead      B. dying      C. death      D. deadly
34. She swallowed her....., saying, "That's OK, it doesn't matter."  
 A. disappointed      B. disappointingly      C. disappointment      D. disappoints
35. Differences over these issues narrowed during the.....talks.  
 A. preparation      B. prepare      C. preparatory      D. prepared
36. WTO members are committed to delivering a mutually.....trade liberalization.  
 A. advantage      B. disadvantage      C. advantageously      D. advantageous
37. Women's groups are concerned about the high levels of medical..... during childbirth.  
 A. intervening      B. intervened      C. intervenes      D. intervention
38. An Olympic gold medal is the only thing that has evaded her in her .....career.  
 A. remarkably      B. remarked      C. remarkable      D. remarks
39. How the massive stones were brought here from hundreds of miles away remains..... .  
 A. mystery      B. a mystery      C. a mysterious      D. mysteries
40. An increasing number of tests are available for detecting foetal..... .  
 A. normalities      B. abnormalities      C. normal      D. abnormal
41. The.....was a misrepresentation of the truth and bore little resemblance to actual events.  
 A. documents      B. documentary      C. documentarily      D. documented
42. She was accused of stalking the actress by repeatedly calling her and sending..... letters over the past few months.  
 A. threat      B. threaten      C. threatening      D. threatened
43. Humans, he argues, are amoral and what guides them is not any sense of morality but an instinct for ..... .  
 A. survival      B. survive      C. survivor      D. survived
44. You risk being judged .....by some listeners whenever you give a presentation.  
 A. adversity      B. adversary      C. adversely      D. adverse
45. State officials are encouraging more farmers to become ..... as organic growers.  
 A. certificate      B. certify      C. certificates      D. certified
46. We have been appointed sole UK..... of a number of Hungarian wines.  
 A. distribute      B. distribution      C. distributing      D. distributor
47. New legislation does little to solve the state's.....problems and puts other crucial services at risk.  
 A. transportation      B. transport      C. transportable      D. transported
48. Fifty people have.....been injured in an explosion at the plastics factory  
 A. report      B. reported      C. reportedly      D. reporter

49. It was thought that he'd committed the crime but there wasn't..... convict him.  
 A. sufficiency      B. sufficiently      C. suffice      D. sufficient
50. The water's only knee-....., so we'll be able to get across the river easily.  
 A. depth      B. deeply      C. deep      D. deepen
51. A / an \_\_\_\_\_ species is a population of an organism which is at risk of becoming extinct.  
 a. dangerous      b. endanger      c. endangered      d. endangerment
52. Almost half of turtles and tortoises are known to be threatened with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. extinct      b. extinction      c. extinctive      d. extinctly
53. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ the pool to 1.8 meter.  
 a. deep      b. depth      c. deepen      d. deeply
54. The referee had no hesitation in awarding the visiting team a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. penalty      b. penalize      c. penal      d. penalization
55. The referee's \_\_\_\_\_ is the most important in any sport competition.  
 a. decide      b. decisive      c. decision      d. decider
56. Johnny used to be one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ athletes in my country.  
 a. succeed      b. success      c. successful      d. successfully
57. The success of the 22nd SEA Games had a great contribution of many \_\_\_\_\_ volunteers.  
 a. support      b. supporter      c. supportive      d. supportively
58. He was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he could not even say a word.  
 a. nerve      b. nerves      c. nervous      d. nervously
59. I am really \_\_\_\_\_ in the way he talks, but the way he behaves.  
 a. interest      b. interested      c. interesting      d. interestingly
60. Thanks to labor-saving devices, women have more time to take part in \_\_\_\_\_ activities.  
 a. society      b. social      c. socially      d. socialize
61. Are there any .....between Vietnamese and American culture?  
 A. differences      B. different      C. differently      D. differential
62. Some people are concerned with physical..... when choosing a wife or husband.  
 A. attractive      B. attraction      C. attractiveness      D. attractively
63. What could be more .....than a wedding on a tropical island?  
 A. romance      B. romantic      C. romanticize      D. romanticism
64. In my hometown, many people still believe in.....marriage.  
 A. contract      B. contractual      C. contracts      D. contracting
65. Though their performance was not perfect yet, the students held the audience's .....until the end.  
 A. attentive      B. attention      C. attentively      D. attentional
66. Both Asian and Western students seem .....about how to answer the questionnaire of the survey.  
 A. confusedly      B. confused      C. confusing      D. confusion
67. She was .....unaware of the embarrassing situation due to her different cultural background.  
 A. complete      B. completed      C. completing      D. completely
68. They started, as .....gatherings but they have become increasingly formalized in the last few years.  
 A. informal      B. informally      C. informalize      D. informality
69. Children who are isolated and lonely seem to have poor language and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. communicate      B. communication      C. communicative      D. communicator
70. There is a wide range of \_\_\_\_\_ in the education system of the USA.

- A. select                      B. selective                      C. selected                      D. selection
71. Despite his....., he succeeded in learning foreign language.  
A. disables                      B. disabled                      C. disability                      D. disable
72. My sister has talent in.....and she has won many prizes.  
A. photographic                      B. photogenic                      C. photograph                      D. photography
73. I tried to know the.....of my new house as much as possible.  
A. surround                      B. surrounded                      C. surrounds                      D. surroundings
74. The..... in the war should be taken care of.  
A. injuring                      B. injure                      C. injures                      D. injured
75. Miss Hoa is very.....She goes to church every morning.  
A. religious                      B. religiously                      C. religion                      D. region
76. Some designers have.....the Aodai by printing lines of poetry on it.  
A. modernized                      B. modernize                      C. modern                      D. modernly
77. Our school has many well-..... teachers.  
A. qualified                      B. qualify                      C. quality                      D. qualification
78. I saw your school's.....in today's edition of the Viet Nam News.  
A. advertiser                      B. advertisement                      C. advertising                      D. advertise
79. If you want to .....your English, we can help you.  
A. improve                      B. improving                      C. improved                      D. improvement
80. The restaurant has excellent.....for serving some of the finest food.  
A. repute                      B. reputed                      C. reputation                      D. reputable
81. If we go to the Brisbane Institute of English in Australia, we can practice speaking English with.....speakers.  
A. nation                      B. national                      C. native                      D. natively
82. She thinks chatting on the Internet is time .....  
A. consuming                      B. consume                      C. consumer                      D. consumption
83. The next stage in the development of television is.....TV.  
A. interact                      B. interaction                      C. interactive                      D. interactively
84. Can you tell me who .....this kind of machine?  
A. to invent                      B. invent                      C. invention                      D. invented
85. We are talking about the preservation of.....resources.  
A. nature                      B. natural                      C. naturally                      D. naturalize
86. Everyone must take part in.....deforestation.  
A. preventing                      B. prevent                      C. prevention                      D. preventive
87. The air in the city is very.....  
A. pollute                      B. polluted                      C. pollution                      D. pollutant
88. She has.....provided a picnic lunch for us.  
A. kind                      B. unkind                      C. kindly                      D. kindness
89. We'll make this beach clean and .....again.  
A. beauty                      B. beautiful                      C. beautifully                      D. beautify
90. A large number of inhabitants have made..... on how to protect the environment.  
A. suggestive                      B. suggest                      C. suggestion                      D. suggestible
91. I was very..... that you won that first prize.  
A. amazed                      B. amaze                      C. amazement                      D. amazing
92. I want to see the.....of environment from the local authority.  
A. protect                      B. protected                      C. protecting                      D. protection

93. If people stop using dynamite for fishing, a lot of sea creatures will be well.....
- A. preserve                      B. preservation                      C. preserved                      D. preservative
94. Scientists are looking for an .....way to reduce energy consumption.
- A. effect                      B. effecting                      C. effective                      D. effectively
95. The.....Christmas dinner consists of roast turkey with potatoes and vegetables.
- A. tradition                      B. traditional                      C. traditionally                      D. traditionalist
96. An old.....of my father showed me round the city during my stay there.
- A. acquaintance                      B. acquainted                      C. acquaint                      D. acquainting
97. The story about UFOs caught the.....of the whole class.
- A. imagine                      B. imaginative                      C. imaginatively                      D. imagination
98. Most of films are produced for.....
- A. entertain                      B. entertainment                      C. entertained                      D. entertaining
99. I'm.....that people have spoiled this area.
- A. disappoint                      B. disappointment                      C. disappointing                      D. disappointed
100. Tam has a big.....of foreign coins.
- A. collector                      B. collection                      C. collecting                      D. collective

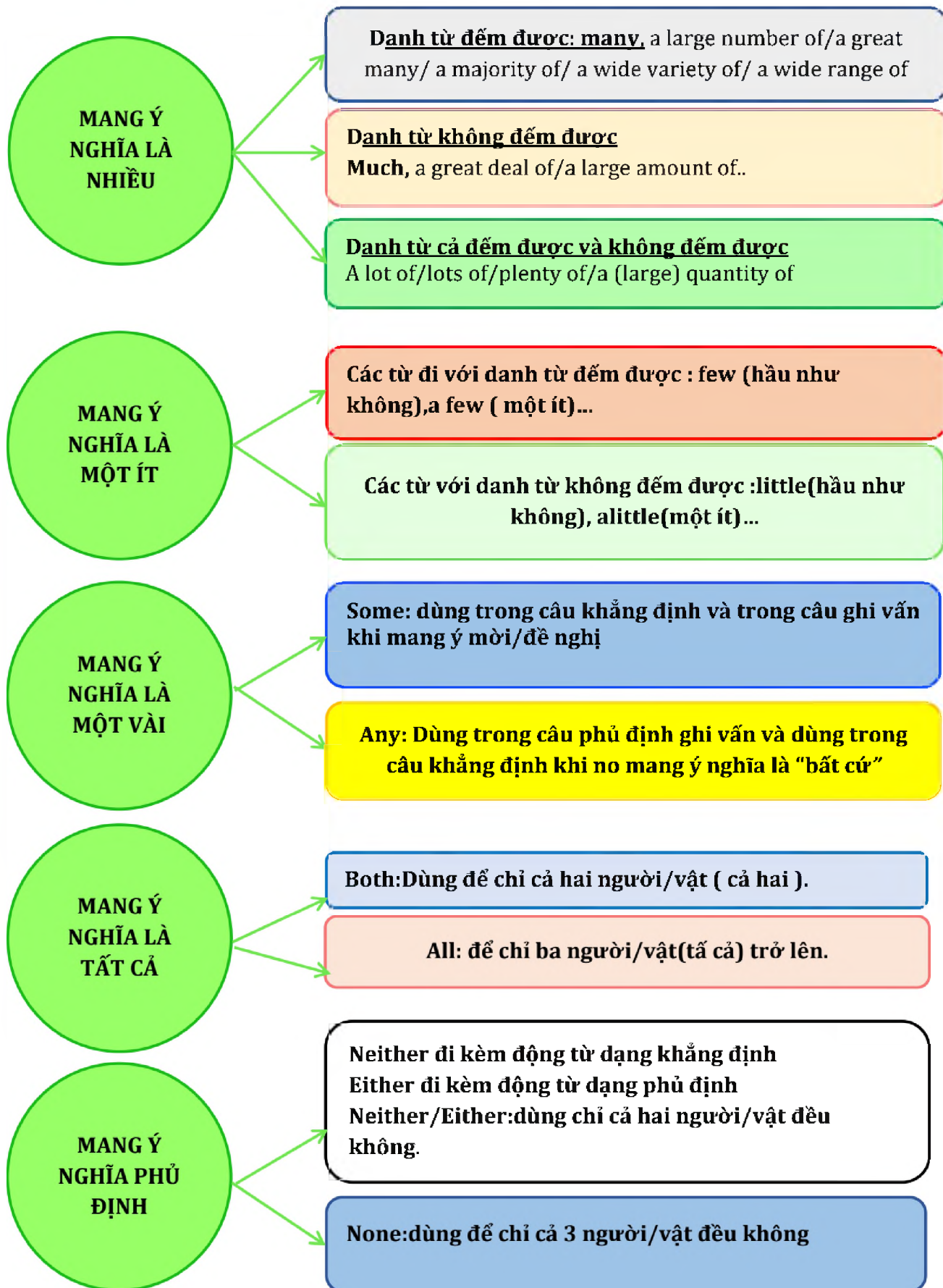
**II. Use the correct form of the word given in each sentence**

1. Administrative staff may be \_\_\_\_\_ through increased automation and efficiency. (SKILL)
2. The changes are \_\_\_\_\_, and will not produce a noticeable effect for 15 to 20 years. (INSIDE)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ students could understand easily what the teacher explained to them. (BRAIN)
4. Once a person has attained \_\_\_\_\_ status in the eyes of the world, it is very hard to break it. (TYPE)
5. Fatigue and boredom combine to cause \_\_\_\_\_ - one of the biggest reasons people quit. (BURN)
6. The figure of total group \_\_\_\_\_ exactly balances out with the total income. (GO)
7. The religious conservatives are not \_\_\_\_\_ of the West and its values. (AMOUR)
8. The manifesto is long-winded, \_\_\_\_\_ and often ambiguous or poorly drafted. (REPEAT)
9. He mistrusted ravishment by charm, spiritual appeal, force, wit or other \_\_\_\_\_. (BLAND)
10. She has written a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ account of the modern art world. (SEE)
11. Lisette came back from holiday in New York with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ asymmetric haircut. (TREND)
12. He tends to adopt a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ manner when talking to young women. (DESCEND)
13. The motive behind such words is austere rather than \_\_\_\_\_. (SNOB)
14. Then Alvin endured a long, \_\_\_\_\_ wait for a flight back to New York late that night. (SPIRIT)
15. Berlusconi was \_\_\_\_\_ by Travaglio's claim that he had colluded with the Mafia. (RAGE)
16. They were enraged at the \_\_\_\_\_ of a policeman accused of murder. (ACQUIT)
17. His cartoons \_\_\_\_\_ lampooned the leading politicians of his time. (MERCY)
18. We are disappointed by her approaching this matter so \_\_\_\_\_. (AMATEUR)
19. It was sheer \_\_\_\_\_ to try to drive through the mountains in that thunderstorm. (SANE)
20. He is a totally \_\_\_\_\_ person who deliberately defies all standards. (MORAL)
21. They have a duty to set the record straight, otherwise they are conniving at \_\_\_\_\_. (FALSE)
22. She did not reply, but sat with crimson cheeks and \_\_\_\_\_ eyes. (CAST)
23. The national orchestra gave a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ performance of classic music. (ELECTRIC)
24. His lack of qualifications was taken as a sign of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ youth. (SPEND)
25. After the Soviet Union \_\_\_\_\_ in 1991, the protests escalated into war. (INTEGRATE)
26. The children were \_\_\_\_\_ at the thought of going to the seaside on holiday. (JOY)
27. It's one of the most difficult problems \_\_\_\_\_ our modern way of life. (SET)
28. It was announced that the times were \_\_\_\_\_ and subject to confirmation.(PROVIDE)





I. CÁCH SỬ DỤNG TỪ CHỈ SỐ LƯỢNG.



MANG Ý NGHĨA LÀ HẦU HẾT

Most (hầu hết,hầu như) dùng trước danh từ không xác định

Mostly( chủ yếu là ) dùng như một trạng từ

Almost (gần như) dùng như một trạng từ bổ trợ cho động từ,tính từ,danh từ

MANG Ý NGHĨA LÀ MỖI/MỌI

Each/Every:dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít  
Every dùng với danh từ số nhiều khi có số lượng cụ thể

TỪ CHỈ SỐ LƯỢNG

OTHER

- Others được sử dụng như đại từ.

- Other + ones

- Other + danh từ số nhiều

- Other + danh từ không đếm được.

Sự khác nhau giữa THE OTHER - THE OTHERS:  
- The other: cái còn lại trong hai cái, hoặc người còn lại trong hai người,...  
- The others: những cái còn lại hoặc những người còn lại trong một nhóm có nhiều thứ hoặc nhiều người.

ANOTHER

- Another được sử dụng như đại từ

- Another + số đếm + danh từ số nhiều

- Another + one

- Another + N ít

Phân biệt "other" và "others":  
- Theo sau "other" thường là một danh từ hoặc đại từ.  
- Mặt khác "others", bản thân nó là một đại từ và theo sau nó không có bất kì một danh từ nào cả.

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG TỪ CHỈ SỐ LƯỢNG

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- There is very..... salt in the jar. Buy some more when you go to the market.  
A. little                      B. a little                      C. few                      D. a few
- James told us that he had visited \_\_\_\_\_ places of interest in Viet Nam before.  
A. a little                      B. a few                      C. a great deal of                      D. a little of
- Disney's latest production looks likely to be their\_\_\_ successful ever.  
A. most                      B. mostly                      C. almost                      D. the most
- You have got to bring \_\_\_\_\_water along because there is \_\_\_\_\_or no water there for you to get.  
A. lots of / few                      B. much / a little                      C. a lot of / little                      D. many / little
- Although the composition is quite good, there are \_\_\_\_\_ minor mistakes in it.  
A. little                      B. a little                      C. few                      D. a few
- I had so \_\_\_\_\_ coffee that I almost couldn't sleep last night.  
A. many                      B. more                      C. much                      D. a lot of
- Though the weather is getting worse and the climate has been changing a great deal, \_\_\_\_\_ people are aware of the problem.  
A. a little                      B. a few                      C. little                      D. few
- Most artists find it \_\_\_ impossible to make a living from art alone.  
A. the most                      B. most                      C. almost                      D. most of
- The teacher gave us \_\_\_\_\_ homework to do for the weekend.  
A. any                      B. many                      C. several                      D. some
- There hasn't been \_\_\_\_\_ rain in this area since last month.  
A. some                      B. several                      C. no                      D. any
- \_\_\_\_\_ rice is grown in the Mekong Delta in Viet Nam.  
A. Many of                      B. A lot                      C. A great deal of                      D. Several of
- \_\_\_\_\_cheese is made from cow's milk.  
A. Most                      B. Some                      C. Much                      D. More
- They knew.....about him but they said they didn't.  
A. much                      B. many                      C. little                      D. few
- He was always coming up with new ideas,.....were absolutely impracticable.  
A. most of whom                      B. that                      C. most of which                      D. most of that
- Kevin has read \_\_\_\_\_ books on English literature, and he finds them really interesting.  
A. any                      B. several                      C. a little                      D. a great deal of
- \_\_\_\_\_ the students in this class come from poor and large families.  
A. Most                      B. Many                      C. A great deal of                      D. Most of
- \_\_\_\_\_ people are waiting for help and support after the dreadful storm.  
A. A large number of                      B. A great deal of  
C. A lot                      D. Most of
- \_\_\_\_\_my friends live abroad.  
A. Many                      B. Some                      C. Much                      D. Most of
- The forces were unequal. They were....., we were.....  
A. many/few                      B. much/little                      C. few/much                      D. little/much
- The sun shines over 800 hours during May, June, and July and on \_\_\_days temperatures rise above 90 degree Fahrenheit.  
A. most                      B. mostly                      C. almost                      D. the most

21. They 've \_\_\_ no confidence that they can use the new scanner properly.  
A. most                      B. the most                      C. almost                      D. most of
22. His paintings are \_\_\_ photographic in their color and accuracy.  
A. the most                      B. most                      C. mostly                      D. almost
23. There wasn't ..... snow last night.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. few                      D. a large number of
24. ....the students in my class enjoy taking part in social activities.  
A. Most of                      B. Most                      C. Many                      D. The number of
25. He's always busy. He has ..... time to relax.  
A. much                      B. little                      C. a little                      D. plenty of
26. She put so ..... salt in the soup that she couldn't have it. It was too salty.  
A. many                      B. little                      C. much                      D. a little
27. He made too ..... mistakes in his writing.  
A. a few                      B. much                      C. many                      D. a number of
28. How ..... students are there in your class?  
A. little                      B. few                      C. much                      D. many
29. I feel sorry for her. She has ..... friends.  
A. many                      B. a few                      C. few                      D. a great deal of
30. I spent ..... my spare time gardening last year.  
A. most of                      B. most                      C. many of                      D. a large number of
31. He doesn't have so ..... friends as I think.  
A. much                      B. a great deal of                      C. many                      D. a large number of
32. There was so ..... traffic that it took me an hour to get home.  
A. a lot of                      B. little                      C. much                      D. many
33. Learning a language needs ..... patience.  
A. a few                      B. much                      C. many                      D. little
34. .... the shops in the city center close at 5.30.  
A. Many                      B. Much of                      C. Some                      D. Most of
35. We had a boring holiday. ....the time we lay on the beach.  
A. Most                      B. Much                      C. Most of                      D. Many of
36. With only..... hope, Harry didn't know how to keep going another day.  
A. little                      B. a little                      C. few                      D. a few
37. How ..... money have you got?  
A. many                      B. much                      C. a lot of                      D. a great deal of
38. There was very ..... food at the party but I didn't eat anything.  
A. little                      B. much                      C. many                      D. a lot of
39. I think..... you are very tired after your long journey.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. many of                      D. much of
40. We didn't take ..... photographs when we were on holiday.  
A. much                      B. a lot of                      C. many of                      D. a great deal of
41. There isn't ..... shampoo in the bathroom.  
A. any                      B. some                      C. little                      D. few
42. Would you like ..... tea?  
A. some                      B. many                      C. a few                      D. any
43. He had so ..... things to do.  
A. many                      B. a lot of                      C. much                      D. little
44. The mixture looks rather dry. Maybe you should add ..... water.

- A. a few                      B. few                      C. a little                      D. little
45. We're having a big party. We've invited ..... friends.  
A. a lot of                      B. much                      C. many of                      D. no
46. Could I try ..... wine?  
A. a little                      B. a few                      C. little                      D. few
47. .... my students are familiar with this kind of school activities.  
A. Most                      B. Most of                      C. A few                      D. few
48. He had spent ..... time writing an essay about his childhood.  
A. a large number of                      B. a great deal of                      C. a few                      D. many
49. How..... furniture do you think there is?  
A. many                      B. much                      C. few                      D. a lot of
50. Why don't you take a break? Would you like ..... coffee?  
A. few                      B. some                      C. many                      D. much
51. He drank..... wine last night and gets sick now.  
A. too many                      B. too much                      C. few of                      D. a large number of
52. Give me ..... examples, please!  
A. a few                      B. a little                      C. few                      D. little
53. Is there ..... water in the glass?  
A. any                      B. some                      C. many                      D. lots of
54. Peter doesn't want ..... to do.  
A. something                      B. anything                      C. nothing                      D. everything
55. Can you speak French? - Yes,.....  
A. a few                      B. few                      C. a little                      D. little
56. Thank you very ..... for your help.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. a lot of                      D. little
57. He is very rich. He has ..... money in the bank.  
A. a great deal of                      B. many                      C. a large number of                      D. few
58. She put too ..... sugar in the coffee. It became so sweet that I couldn't drink it.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. few                      D. little
59. I have got ..... homework to do.  
A. many                      B. few                      C. a lot of                      D. a large number of
60. She has talked too .....  
A. much                      B. many                      C. few                      D. a great deal
61. He made very ..... mistakes.  
A. much                      B. many                      C. little                      D. a number of
62. They know ..... about what to do.  
A. many                      B. few                      C. little                      D. the number of
63. .... children are ill-prepared for employment.  
A. Much                      B. Most                      C. A little                      D. Most of
64. Would you like ..... champagne to drink?  
A. some                      B. few                      C. a few                      D. many
65. When I studied Shakespeare, I thought his plays were ..... boring.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. few                      D. a few
66. .... of the students are good today.  
A. Most                      B. Much                      C. A little                      D. Very
67. There were too .....different nationalities in my class and we had to speak English.  
A. a lot of                      B. much                      C. some                      D. many



68. I don't know ..... about English literature.  
A. many                      B. much                      C. a few                      D. little
69. At the beginning, everybody spoke English very quickly, and I couldn't understand ....., but now things are easier.  
A. much                      B. many                      C. a great deal of                      D. a lot of
70. I have \_\_\_\_\_ money, not enough to buy groceries.  
A. a lot of                      B. little                      C. any                      D. many
71. I have \_\_\_\_\_ money, enough to buy a ticket.  
A. a lot of                      B. little                      C. many                      D. a little
72. She has \_\_\_\_\_ books, not enough for references.  
A. few                      B. a few                      C. many                      D. little
73. She has \_\_\_\_\_ books, enough to read.  
A. many                      B. few                      C. a few                      D. a little
74. There \_\_\_\_\_ traffic on the street at rush hours.  
A. are too many                      B. is too much                      C. are too alot                      D. are too little
75. He bought \_\_\_\_\_ furniture for her new apartment which she has bought recently.  
A. many                      B. few                      C. much                      D. a few
76. \_\_\_\_\_ the people I work with are very friendly.  
A. some                      B. some of                      C. a little of                      D. a few
77. \_\_\_\_\_ these money is mine.  
A. some                      B. a few of                      C. many                      D. none of
78. We didn't spend \_\_\_\_\_ money  
A. many                      B. some                      C. much                      D. a few
79. There are \_\_\_\_\_ people there.  
A. too many                      B. too a little                      C. too much                      D. too little
80. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ people in this neighbourhood.  
A. much                      B. a little                      C. many                      D. little
81. We must be quick. There is \_\_\_\_\_ time left.  
A. much                      B. many                      C. a lot of                      D. little
82. Let's go and have a drink we have \_\_\_\_\_ time left.  
A. much                      B. a little                      C. a lot of                      D. little
83. There are four books on the table . \_\_\_\_\_ has a different colour.  
A. Every                      B. Each                      C. Many                      D. Some
84. He has two bookstores. One is in Thac Mo. \_\_\_\_\_ is in Phuoc Binh  
A. other                      B. the others                      C. another                      D. the other
85. \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant is expensive.  
A. some                      B. either                      C. neither                      D. any
86. Did you take \_\_\_\_\_ photographs when you were on holiday.  
A. some                      B. either                      C. much                      D. many
87. We 'll hurry We haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ time left.  
A. some                      B. many                      C. much                      D. any
88. We didn't buy \_\_\_\_\_ flowers yesterday.  
A. some                      B. many                      C. much                      D. any
89. There \_\_\_\_\_ at the door.  
A. is somebody                      B. is anybody                      C. is everybody                      D. isn't nobody
90. She went out without \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
A. any                      B. many                      C. much                      D. some

91. There are \_\_\_\_\_ in the hall.  
A. somebody      B. anybody      C. everybody      D. some people
92. I'm not hungry. I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ to eat.  
A. everything      B. anything      C. something      D. nothing
93. She didn't take \_\_\_\_\_ money with her.  
A. any      B. many      C. much      D. A and C are right
94. Has \_\_\_\_\_ body seen my bags?  
A. somebody      B. any person      C. anybody      D. some people
95. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_ sugar please.  
A. any      B. some      C. much      D. little
96. Let me know if you need \_\_\_\_\_ help.  
A. any      B. many      C. some      D. A and B are right
97. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ relatives in these strange place.  
A. any      B. some      C. a little      D. much
98. You can't see much of a country in a week.  
A. much of      B. some of      C. a lot of      D. many of
99. I won't pass the exam. I have missed many of my lessons  
A. some of      B. much of      C. many of      D. a lot of
100. He got \_\_\_\_\_ men friends, but he doesn't know \_\_\_\_\_ women.  
A. lots of/ many      B. much/ many      C. many / many      D. many/ much
101. She pays a visit to her parents \_\_\_\_\_ other day.  
A. each      B. every      C. most      D. either
102. The house is small. However, there are \_\_\_\_\_ rooms for my family.  
A. much      B. little      C. a few      D. few
103. I need \_\_\_\_\_ sugar to make this cake.  
A. many      B. few      C. lots      D. a little
104. My mother has spent \_\_\_\_\_ money on this handbag.  
A. a lot of      B. many      C. few      D. lots
105. This is a very boring place to live because there's \_\_\_\_\_ to do.  
A. lots of      B. many      C. any      D. little
106. There was hardly \_\_\_\_\_ food left by the time we got there.  
A. any      B. some      C. few      D. plenty of
107. She used \_\_\_\_\_ chalk to write on the board.  
A. many      B. few      C. some      D. any
108. \_\_\_\_\_ and every one of the flowers has its own colour and smell.  
A. Each      B. Every      C. Both      D. Almost
109. "How many potatoes do you want?" "Oh, just a \_\_\_\_\_, please."  
A. much      B. few      C. many      D. little
110. The grass received so \_\_\_\_\_ water that it turned brown in the heat.  
A. many      B. few      C. little      D. much
111. The Smiths had so \_\_\_\_\_ children that they formed their own baseball team.  
A. many      B. much      C. little      D. few
112. Just think, in \_\_\_\_\_ three months it'll be summer again.  
A. most      B. another      C. other      D. every
113. He has finished \_\_\_\_\_ the exercises in this book.  
A. most      B. mostly      C. most of      D. almost
114. \_\_\_\_\_ students in my class like watching football.

- A. Most of                      B. Most                      C. Almost                      D. Mostly
115. We were bitten by mosquitoes \_\_\_\_\_ every night.  
A. most                      B. almost                      C. mostly                      D. most of
116. \_\_\_\_\_ all the passengers on the ferry were French.  
A. Almost                      B. Every                      C. Most                      D. Mostly
117. We've got two TVs, but \_\_\_\_\_ works properly.  
A. either                      B. neither                      C. none                      D. both
118. \_\_\_\_\_ of these restaurants are expensive.  
A. Both                      B. Either                      C. Neither                      D. Each
119. We tried lots of hotel. of them had any rooms.  
A. No                      B. None                      C. Neither                      D. Either
120. \_\_\_\_\_ of the companies supports a local charity.  
A. Each                      B. All                      C. Most                      D. Half
121. \_\_\_\_\_ my mother nor my aunt likes going shopping.  
A. Either                      B. Most                      C. Neither                      D. Both
122. \_\_\_\_\_ of us wants to remind about that accident.  
A. Either                      B. Both                      C. Most                      D. Neither
123. "She doesn't want to criticize Laura"- " \_\_\_\_\_ do I."  
A. Neither                      B. Either                      C. So                      D. Too
124. I want some cake, but there was \_\_\_\_\_ left.  
A. either                      B. some                      C. none                      D. both
125. Have you read \_\_\_\_\_ of these books?  
A. any                      B. lot                      C. some                      D. every
126. \_\_\_\_\_ of this money is yours, and half is mine.  
A. Any                      B. Half                      C. Some                      D. Another
127. \_\_\_\_\_ all of my children have visited this pagoda.  
A. Almost                      B. Most                      C. A great deal                      D. A wide variety of
128. She has given me \_\_\_\_\_ three books.  
A. others                      B. another                      C. the other                      D. other
129. You shouldn't expect \_\_\_\_\_ to do your work for you  
A. others                      B. another                      C. the other                      D. the others
130. I have two brothers. One is a doctor, \_\_\_\_\_ is a singer.  
A. others                      B. another                      C. the others                      D. the other
131. I'm not surprised he's feeling ill - he was eating one ice cream after \_\_\_\_\_!  
A. the other                      B. another                      C. others                      D. the others
132. She goes to English class every \_\_\_\_\_ day.  
A. another                      B. the other                      C. other                      D. others
133. He studied \_\_\_\_\_ English and French.  
A. either                      B. neither                      C. or                      D. both
134. They have two children, \_\_\_\_\_ of whom live abroad.  
A. both                      B. all                      C. most                      D. none
135. We had bought three pairs of shoes. of them are cheap.  
A. No                      B. None                      C. Neither                      D. Either
136. Park Hang Seo, who is the head coach of the Vietnam national football team, is a new idol of \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
A. much                      B. a geat deal of                      C. many                      D. both
137. I'm thinking of traveling to either Argentina \_\_\_\_\_ Brazil.

- A. or                      B. nor                      C. and                      D.all
138. I have \_\_\_\_\_ things I want to talk to you about.  
A. a great deal of      B. a large amount of      C. a number of      D. a great many of
139. She has spent \_\_\_\_\_ of time in Europe.  
A. a great deal      B. much      C. the number      D.each
140. Nowadays, cyberbullying has been receiving \_\_\_\_\_ public attention.  
A. few      B. much      C. many      D. plenty
141. \_\_\_\_\_ article in this newspaper is very interesting.  
A. Both      B. Few      C. All      D. Every
142. The plan has been opposed by schools, businesses and \_\_\_\_\_ local organizations.  
A. another      B. the other      C.other      D.others
143. There's \_\_\_\_\_ in the drawer - I took everything out  
A. something      B. nothing      C. eveything      D. Anything
144. She's a bit worried about moving to a big city where she won't know \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. anybody      B. somebody      C. anybody      D.nobody
145. She planted \_\_\_\_\_ trees in the garden.  
A. lots      B. plenty      C. lots of      D. a wide range
146. The man was waiting on \_\_\_\_\_ side of the street.  
A. other      B. the other      C. another      D. others
147. We all got wet in the rain because \_\_\_\_\_ had an umbrella.  
A. some      B. no      C. none      D. most
148. I don't think \_\_\_\_\_ desk will fit into this classroom.  
A. another      B. others      C.other      D. the others
149. "Which song will you sing?" - " \_\_\_\_\_ song you want."  
A. no      B. not      C. any      D. None
150. I found one earring - do you know where \_\_\_\_\_ one is?  
A. another      B. the others      C. the other      D. others

**II.Put in ("Almost", "Almost All", "Most of", a few, few, a little, little, much, many, some, any)(one word only)**

1. She isn't very popular. She has..... friends.
2. Ann is very busy these days. She has .....free time.
3. Did you take .....photographs when you were on holiday?
4. I'm not very busy today. I haven't got .....to do.
5. This is a very modern city. There are .....old buildings.
6. The weather has been very dry recently. We've had .....rain.
7. "Do you know Rome?" "No, I haven't been there for .....years."
8. Gary is very busy with his job. He has ..... time for other things.
9. Listen carefully. I'm going to give you .....advice.
10. Do you mind if I ask you .....questions?
11. It's not a very interesting place to visit, so.....tourists come here.
12. I don't think Jill would be a good teacher. She's got .....patience.
13. "Would you like milk in your coffee?" "Yes, ....."
14. This is a very boring place to live. There's .....to do.
15. "Have you ever been to Paris?" "Yes, I've been there .....times."
16. ....people in the world want to lead a better life.
17. ....junior high students in Japan and Korea have to study hard to pass high school examinations.

18. I like summer .....the time, but August is really too hot!
19. I .....had a bad accident yesterday. I have to drive more carefully.
20. The cat .....scratched my leg, but I shooed it away.
21. Are .....Americans English speakers?
22. I learned .....my English by watching movies and listening to music.
23. We had .....arrived in the city when it started to snow.
24. "Did .....you remember to bring extra water for our hike today?"
25. Something terrible happened! I was flying in a plane and it .....crashed!
26. The postman doesn't often come here. We receive .....letters.
27. The snow was getting quite deep. I had .....hope of getting home that night.
28. A: I'm having .....trouble fixing this shelf.  
B: Oh, dear. Can I help you?
29. I shall be away for .....days from tomorrow.
30. Tony is a keen golfer, but unfortunately he has .....ability.



**I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG ( THÀNH LẬP BỊ ĐỘNG Ở CÁC THÌ )**

**1. Câu bị động là gì ?**

- **Câu bị động** là loại câu được sử dụng khi chúng ta muốn nhấn mạnh vào bản thân một hành động, chủ thể thực hiện hành động hay tác nhân gây ra hành động dù là ai hay vật gì đó không quá quan trọng.

Điều kiện để có thể biến đổi một câu từ chủ động sang câu bị động là động từ trong câu chủ động phải là ngoại động từ (Transitive Verb).

**Transitive Verb**

Ngoại động từ diễn tả hành động tác động trực tiếp lên người hoặc vật, nó luôn được theo sau bởi một tân ngữ. Nếu thiếu tân ngữ, câu sẽ không hoàn chỉnh.

Ví dụ: He bought a bunch of flowers. (Anh ta mua một bó hoa hồng.)

(Ngoại động từ luôn cần thêm yếu tố bên ngoài là một danh từ hay đại từ theo sau để hoàn tất nghĩa của câu. Trong câu trên, chúng ta không thể nói "He bought" rồi ngừng lại. Danh từ đi theo ngay sau ngoại động từ được gọi là tân ngữ.)

**Ngoại động từ có dạng: S + V + O....**

**Intransitive Verb**

Nội động từ diễn tả hành động dừng lại với người nói hay người thực hiện nó. Nội động từ không cần có tân ngữ trực tiếp đi kèm theo. Nếu có tân ngữ thì phải có giới từ đi trước; tân ngữ này được gọi là tân ngữ của giới từ (prepositional object), không phải là tân ngữ trực tiếp.

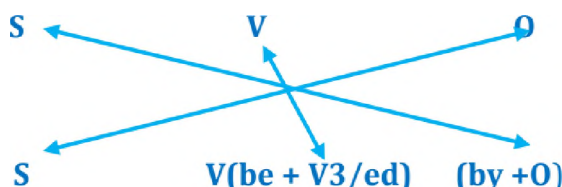
Ví dụ: He has just left. (Anh ta vừa đi rồi.)  
We were at home last night. (Chúng tôi ở nhà tối qua.)

**Nội động từ có dạng : S + V/ S + V + A**

**2. Quy tắc chuyển đổi từ chủ động sang bị động.**

Để chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động, cần nắm chắc các bước chuyển sau:

- + Bước 1: Xác định tân ngữ trong câu chủ động (tân ngữ đứng sau động từ chính của câu).
- + Bước 2: Lấy tân ngữ của câu chủ động xuống làm chủ ngữ của câu bị động.
- + Bước 3: Động từ ở câu bị động chia giống thì với động từ ở câu chủ động, theo công thức (BE + VP2).
- + Bước 4: Đặt "by" trước chủ ngữ của câu chủ động rồi đặt chúng xuống cuối câu bị động hoặc trước trạng từ thời gian.



+ Nếu chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động là: people, everyone, someone, anyone, no one, ... thì được bỏ đi trong câu bị động.

+ Nếu chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động là: I, you, we, they, he, she thì có thể bỏ đi trong câu bị động nếu ta không muốn đề cập tới chủ thể gây ra hành động.

+ Nếu chủ ngữ của câu chủ động là người hoặc vật trực tiếp gây ra hành động thì dùng "by" nhưng gián tiếp gây ra hành động thì dùng "with".

### 3. Bảng công thức các thì ở thể bị động.

TENSES	ACTIVE VOICES	PASSIVE VOICES
1. Present simple tense (hiện tại đơn)	S + Vs/es	S + am/is/are + V3/ed
2. Past simple tense (quá khứ đơn)	S + Ved/2	S + was/were + V3/ed
3. Present continuous tense (hiện tại tiếp diễn)	S + am/is/are + V-ing	S + am/is/are + being + V3/ed
4. Past continuous tense (quá khứ tiếp diễn)	S + was/were + V-ing	S + was/were + being + V3/ed
5. Present perfect tense (hiện tại hoàn thành)	S + have/has + V3/ed	S + have/has + been + V3/ed
6. Past perfect tense (quá khứ hoàn thành)	S + had + V3/ed	S + had + been + V3/ed
7. Simple future tense (tương lai đơn)	S + Will + V(bare)	S + will + be + V3/ed
8. near future tense (tương lai gần)	S + am/is/are + going to + V(bare)	S + am/is/are + going to + be + V3/ed
9. Modal verbs (động từ khuyết thiếu)	S + modal verbs + V(bare)	S + modal verbs + be + V3/ed

## II. CẤU TRÚC BỊ ĐỘNG ĐẶC BIỆT.

### SPECIAL PASSIVE STRUCTURES

#### BỊ ĐỘNG CỦA CÂU HỎI

Để chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động của câu hỏi, ta làm theo các bước sau:

- Bước 1: Chuyển từ câu hỏi sang câu khẳng định.

Ví dụ: Did you buy the shirt two days ago? → You bought the shirt two days ago.

- Bước 2: Chuyển câu khẳng định trên sang câu bị động.

Ví dụ: You bought the shirt two days ago. → The shirt was bought two days ago.

- Bước 3: Chuyển câu bị động trên về dạng nghi vấn bằng cách chuyển từ ngay sau chủ ngữ lên trước chủ ngữ.

Ví dụ: The shirt was bought two days ago. → Was the shirt bought two days ago?

#### BỊ ĐỘNG KÉP VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ CHỈ QUAN ĐIỂM

Active ( chủ động)	Passive ( bị động)
S1 + V1 + (that) + S2 + V2	It+be(thì của V1)+ V3/ed( V1)+ that+S2+ V2
(Know/think/Believe/report/say) Gợi ý các nhóm cùng bậc thì. HTĐ - HTĐ                      HTĐ - HTTT HTĐ - TLĐ                      QKĐ - QKĐ QKĐ - QKTD	S2+be(thì của V1)+V3/ed( V1)+ to V (cùng thì)
Gợi ý các nhóm khác bậc thì. HTĐ - QKĐ                      HTĐ - HTHT QKĐ - QKHT	S2+be(thì của V1)+V3/ed( V1)+to have V3/ed (khác thì)
Hoặc hiểu cách chính xác hơn	Ex: They <b>think</b> that she is innocent => It is thought that she is innocent => She is thought <b>to be</b> innocent

-Nếu hành động ở mệnh đề 2 xảy ra trước hành động trong mệnh đề nhất  
=> **Ta dùng : to have + V3/ed**

-Nếu hành động ở mệnh đề 2 xảy ra đồng thời với hành động trong mệnh đề nhất

-Nếu hành động ở mệnh đề 2 xảy ra sau hành động trong mệnh đề nhất  
=> **Ta dùng : to + V1**

**Ex:**The rumored he was living there  
=> It was rumored that he was living there  
=> He was rumored to be living there

### BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI TO-V

**a. S + V + TO + V + O**

Câu chủ động: **S+V + TO + V + O**

Câu bị động: → **S + V + TO BE + VP2**

**They began to plant rubber trees long ago.**  
→ Rubber trees began to be planted long ago.

**b. S + V+O1 + TO + V + O2**

\* Nếu S = O2 thì ta có công thức sau:

Câu chủ động: **S + V + O1 + TO + V + O2**

Câu bị động: → **S + V + TO BE + VP2 + BY + O1**

Nếu S ≠ O2 thì ta có công thức sau:

Câu chủ động: **S+V+O1 + TO + V + O2**

Câu bị động: → **S + V + O2+TO BE + VP2+BY + O1**

**He expected his family to pick him up at the airport.**  
→ He expected to be picked up at the airport by his family.

**He expected someone to repair his computer.**  
→ He expected his computer to be repaired.

### BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI V-ING

**a. Nếu S= O2 thì ta có công thức sau:**

Câu chủ động: **S + V + O1 + V-ING + O2**

Câu bị động: → **S + V + BEING + VP2 + BY + O1**

**He likes people speaking well of him.**  
→ He likes being spoken well of.

**b. Nếu S ≠ O2 thì ta có công thức sau:**

Câu chủ động: **S + V + O1 + V-ING + O2**

Câu bị động: → **S + V + O2+ BEING + VP2 + BY + O1**

**He hates non-professional people criticizing his work.**  
→ He hates his work being criticized by non-professional people.

### CAUSATIVE ( THỂ NHỜ BẢO )Have / has / had / Get / got

Khi diễn tả một hành động mà chúng ta không tự làm lấy, mà để người khác làm, chúng ta dùng cấu trúc:

Dạng chủ động: **S + HAVE + SB + V(bare) or S + GET + SB + TO V(bare)**

Dạng bị động: **S + HAVE/GET + ST + VP2**

**- The painter finished my father's portrait yesterday.**

→ My father had the painter finish his portrait yesterday.

→ My father had his portrait finished by the painter yesterday

### BỊ ĐỘNG CHỈ GIÁC QUAN( see/hear/smell/feel/taste/watch/notice/make/help....)

**a. Dạng 1**

Câu chủ động: **S + V + O + V(bare)**

Câu bị động: → **S + be + Vp2 + to + V(bare)**

**I saw him pass my house.**  
→ He was seen to pass my house.

**b. Dạng 2**

Câu chủ động: **S + V + O + V-ing**

**I saw him passing my house.**  
→ He was seen passing my house.

Câu bị động: →S + be + Vp2 + V -ing	
<b>BỊ ĐỘNG 2 TÂN NGỮ</b>	
<b>Active : S + V + O1 + O2</b> <b>Passive : S + be + V3/ed + O2 + (by O)</b> <b>Passive : S + be + V3/ed + to/for + O1 + ( by O)</b> <b>Notes: Các động từ thường đi với giới từ</b> <b>"to"</b> give/hand/lend/offer/send/show /pay/promise/read/throw/wish/owe... <b>"for"</b> : buy/do/get/leave/make/order/save/spare...	<b>Ex: The student gave me a book</b> => I was given a book by the student => A book was given to me by the student
<b>CÂU MỆNH LỆNH</b>	
Câu chủ động: <b>V/DON'T + V + O</b> Câu bị động: →S + SHOULD/ MUST + (NOT) + BE + VP2 LET/DON'T LET + O + BE + VP2	
<b>MỘT SỐ CẤU TRÚC BỊ ĐỘNG KHÁC</b>	
<b>a. Bị động với cấu trúc câu "It's one's duty to V" (bổn phận là)</b> Câu chủ động: <b>IT'S + ONE'S DUTY + TO + V</b> Câu bị động: →S + BE + SUPPOSED + TO + V	<b>It's everyone's duty to keep the environment clean</b> →Everyone is supposed to keep the environment dean.
<b>b. Bị động với cấu trúc câu 'It's (im)possible to V' (không/có thể làm gì)</b> Câu chủ động: <b>It + is/was + (im)possible + to V + O</b> Câu bị động: →S + can/could + (not) + be + Vp2	<b>It is possible to type the letter now.</b> →The letter can be typed now. <b>It was impossible to start the machine by electricity then.</b> →The machine couldn't be started by electricity then
<b>c. Bị động với 7 động từ đặc biệt</b> Các động từ: <b>suggest, require, request, order, demand, insist(on), recommend.</b> Câu chủ động: <b>S + suggest/ recommend/ order/ require... + that + S + V(bare) + O</b> Câu bị động: <b>It +(be) + suggested/ recommended/ ordered/ required...+that+O+should+be +Vp2</b>	<b>He suggested that we organize a warm party.</b> →It was suggested that a warm party should be organized.
<b>d. Bị động của động từ NEED</b> <b>Công thức:</b> Câu chủ động: <b>Sb + need + to V</b> Câu bị động: <b>St + need + V-ing = St + need + to be + Vp2</b>	<b>She needs to type the report</b> →The report needs typing/to be typed.

### III. THỰC HÀNH

#### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG BỊ ĐỘNG CÁC THÌ VÀ BỊ ĐỘNG ĐẶC BIỆT

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.



1. I'll have the boys \_\_\_\_\_ the chairs.  
a. paint                      b. to paint                      c. painted                      d. painting
2. Have these flowers \_\_\_\_\_ to her office, please.  
a. taken                      b. taking                      c. take                      d. to take
3. Lisa had the roof \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
a. repair                      b. repaired                      c. to repair                      d. repairing
4. The students got the librarian \_\_\_\_\_ books for them.  
a. buy                      b. to buy                      c. bought                      d. buying
5. He had a portrait \_\_\_\_\_ as a birthday present for his daughter.  
A. painting                      B. paint                      C. painted                      D. to be painted
6. Her watch needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. repairing                      B. to be repaired                      C. repaired                      D. A and B
7. His car needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. be fixed                      B. fixing                      C. to be fixing                      D. fixed
8. We got our mail \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
A. been delivered                      B. delivered                      C. delivering                      D. to deliver
9. Your house needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. redecorated                      B. redecorating                      C. being redecorated                      D. to redecorate
10. I'll get Minh \_\_\_\_\_ this for you.  
A. do                      B. done                      C. did                      D. to do
11. That book \_\_\_\_\_ by a famous author.  
A. wrote                      B. was written                      C. is writing                      D. has written
12. Food \_\_\_\_\_ direct to the market by trucks.  
A. delivered                      B. deliver                      C. can be delivered                      D. delivers
13. The house has \_\_\_\_\_ after the fire.  
A. to rebuild                      B. to be rebuilt                      C. to be rebuild                      D. rebuilt
14. All the homework \_\_\_\_\_ at home.  
A. should do                      B. should done                      C. should be done                      D. should be doing
15. The application form \_\_\_\_\_ to the university before May 31st.  
A. must send                      B. sent                      C. must be send                      D. must be sent
16. Traffic rules \_\_\_\_\_ strictly.  
A. followed                      B. must followed                      C. must be followed                      D. must follow
17. Today, many serious childhood diseases \_\_\_\_\_ by early immunization.  
A. are preventing                      B. can prevent                      C. prevent                      D. can be prevented
18. We're late. The film \_\_\_\_\_ by the time we get to the cinema.  
A. will already start                      B. will be already started  
C. will already have started                      D. will be starting
19. I still can not believe it. My bicycle \_\_\_\_\_ some minutes ago.  
A. was stolen                      B. was stealing                      C. stolen                      D. stole
20. Many U.S automobiles \_\_\_\_\_ in Detroit, Michigan.  
A. manufacture                      B. have manufactured  
C. are manufactured                      D. are manufacturing
21. Dynamite \_\_\_\_\_ by Alfred Bernard Nobel.  
A. have been invented                      B. invented  
C. was invented                      D. was being invented
22. It \_\_\_\_\_ that the strike will end soon.  
A. is expected                      B. expected                      C. are expected                      D. was expected



23. My shirt \_\_\_\_\_ by my sister on my last birthday.  
 A. gave                      B. was given                      C. had been given                      D. was being given
24. The castle \_\_\_\_\_ in the 16th century.  
 A. built                      B. has built                      C. was built                      D. had built
25. A lot of pesticide residue can \_\_\_\_\_ unwashed produce.  
 A. find                      B. found                      C. be finding                      D. be found
26. This tree \_\_\_\_\_ by our grandfather over 40 years ago.  
 A. grew                      B. has grown                      C. is grown                      D. was grown
27. The story I've just read \_\_\_\_\_ Agatha Christie.  
 A. was written                      B. was written by                      C. was written from                      D. wrote by
28. Gold \_\_\_\_\_ in California in the 19th century.  
 A. was discovered                      B. has been discovered  
 C. was discover                      D. they discover
29. Beethoven's Fifth Symphony \_\_\_\_\_ next weekend  
 A. is going to be performed                      B. has been performed  
 C. will be performing                      D. will have perform
30. \_\_\_\_\_ yet?  
 A. Have the letters been typed                      B. Have been the letters typed  
 C. Have the letters typed                      D. Had the letters typed
31. The windows \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
 A. were cleaned                      B. was cleaned                      C. cleaned                      D. had cleaned
32. The house \_\_\_\_\_ six decades ago.  
 A. was built                      B. was building                      C. will be built                      D. was to be built
33. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that many people are homeless after the floods.  
 A. was reported                      B. reports                      C. reported                      D. reporting
34. He was said \_\_\_\_\_ this building.  
 A. designing                      B. to have designed                      C. to design                      D. designed
35. Some film stars \_\_\_\_\_ difficult to work with.  
 A. are said be                      B. are said to be                      C. say to be                      D. said to be
36. It \_\_\_\_\_ that learning English is easy.  
 A. are said                      B. said                      C. is said                      D. is sayed
37. John .....a respectful and obedient student.  
 a. said to be                      b. is said                      c. is said being                      d. is said to be
38. It .....it is parents' responsibility to take good care of their children.  
 a. commonly says that                      b. commonly to be said that  
 c. is commonly said that                      d. is commonly saying
39. More than ten victims ..... missing in the storm last week  
 a. are reported to be                      b. are reported to have been  
 c. are reporting to have been                      d. are reporting to be
40. It ..... that learning a foreign language ..... a lot of time.  
 a. says/ is take                      b. is saying / has been taken  
 c. is said/ takes                      d. was said/ was taken
41. People think that Steve stole the money.  
 A. Steve is thought to have stolen the money.  
 B. It was thought that Steve stole the money.  
 C. People are thought that Steve stole the money.  
 D. People think that the money is stolen.

42. We are going to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. have our house be decorated                      B. get our house being redecorated  
C. have our house redecorated                      D. have our house to be decorated
43. Can't we do something about the situation?-"Something..... right now."
- A. is doing                      B. is done                      C. is being done                      D. has been doing
44. The Great Wall of China..... by Chinese Emperors over 2500 years ago.
- A. is built                      B. was built                      C. has been built                      D. was being built
45. Today, many serious childhood diseases..... by early immunization.
- A. are preventing                      B. prevent                      C. can prevent                      D. can be prevented
46. "When can I have my car back?"-"I think it will..... late this afternoon."
- A. finish                      B. be finished                      C. have finished                      D. be finish
47. Many people..... homeless by the fire last week.
- A. made                      B. having been made                      C. were made                      D. had made
48. When I passed the bridge this morning, it.....
- A. was still repairing                      B. was still being repaired  
C. was still been repaired                      D. has still being repaired
49. How many cars..... throughout the world in one year?
- A. make and sell                      B. made and sold                      C. are made and sold                      D. been made and sold
50. Every one looked at the flag while the national anthem.....
- A. is sung                      B. is being sung                      C. has been sung                      D. was being sung
51. ....yet?
- A. Has the report been written                      C. Did the report write  
B. Has the report written                      D. Was the report written
52. ....last year?
- A. Did this tractor buy                      C. Has this tractor bought  
B. Was this tractor bought                      D. Has this tractor been bought
53. How do people make carpets?
- A. How are carpets made?                      C. How do carpets made?  
B. How do carpets make?                      D. How are carpets make?
54. They..... at work.
- A. allow not to be worn jeans                      C. are not allowed to wear jeans  
B. are not allowed being wear jeans                      D. do not allowed wearing jeans
55. "What a beautiful dress you are wearing"-"Thanks, it\_\_\_\_especially for me by a French tailor."
- A. is made                      B. has made                      C. made                      D. was made
56. Over 1500 new houses \_\_\_\_\_ each year. Last year, 1720 new houses \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. were built/ were built                      B. are built/ were built  
C. are building / were built                      D. were built/ were being built
57. Vitamin C.....by the human body. It gets into blood stream quickly.
- A. absorbs easily                      B. is easily absorbing                      C. is easily absorbed                      D. absorbed easily
58. The new computer system \_\_\_\_\_ next month.
- A. is be installed                      B. is being installed  
C. is been installed                      D. is being installed by people
59. He was said \_\_\_\_\_ this building.
- A. designing                      B. to have designed                      C. to designs                      D. designed
60. She left home in 1993 and \_\_\_\_\_ since then.

- A. hasn't seen      B. didn't see      C. hasn't been seen      D. wasn't seen
61. References \_\_\_\_\_ in the examination room.  
A. not are used      B. is not used      C. didn't used      D. are not used
62. How did that window.....?  
A. get broken      B. broke      C. got broken      D. broken
63. "We are having a party at the weekend." -"Great! Who \_\_\_\_\_?"  
A. will being invited      B. is going to invite  
C. is going to be invited      D. will invite
64. Some film stars.....difficult to work with.  
A. are said be      B. are said to be      C. say to be      D. said to be
65. This church was said \_\_\_\_\_ in the 19th century.  
A. to build      B. to be built      C. to have been built      D. being built
66. The two climbers were injured.....falling rocks.  
A. by      B. with      C. through      D. from
67. Two tablets \_\_\_\_\_ twice a day to have you recover from the illness quickly.  
A. must take      B. must be taken      C. must have taken      D. must be taking
68. The bill includes service.  
A. Service is included by the bill.      C. Service included in the bill.  
B. Service is included in the bill.      D. Service is in the bill.
69. I am going to have my car \_\_\_\_\_  
A. service      B. to be serviced      C. serviced      D. servicing
70. Many theories on the earth's existence.....  
A. have been proposed      B. proposed  
C. it has been proposed      D. they proposed
71. He is known to have bought some precious things stolen from that ancient tomb.  
A. People knew that he bought      C. It was known that he has bought  
B. They knew that he has bought      D. They know that he bought.
72. Ted \_\_\_\_\_ by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.  
A. got sting      B. got stung      C. get stung      D. gets stung
73. Something.....immediately to prevent teenagers from.....in factories and mines.  
A. should be done/being exploited      B. we should do/exploiting  
C. should do/be exploited      D. should have done/exploited
74. You should \_\_\_\_ a professional to check your house for earthquake damage.  
A. have      B. get      C. make      D. take
75. I spoke to Victor last night and he said he \_\_\_\_ while he was on holiday.  
A. got stolen his phone      B. had his phone stolen  
C. had stolen his phone      D. was got his phone stolen
76. Why don't you \_\_\_\_ when you install this new electric gadget?  
A. get Aaron help      B. have Aaron help  
C. have Aaron helped      D. have got Aaron help
77. As soon as Dad \_\_\_\_\_, we can leave.  
A. got the car to start      B. has got the car started  
C. got started the car      D. was got starting the car
78. My teeth were little yellow, so I \_\_\_\_\_ by the dentist.  
A. had cleaned them      B. had them cleaned  
C. have them cleaned      D. was cleaned them
79. Our teacher wants our lessons \_\_\_\_\_ carefully.

- A. to prepare      B. to be prepared      C. prepared      D. being prepared
80. We were made \_\_\_\_\_ hard when we were at school.  
A. to study      B. study      C. studying      D. studied
81. Her fiance is said \_\_\_\_\_ from Harvard University five years ago.  
A. having graduated      B. to have graduated  
C. being graduated      D. to be graduated
82. As a small boy, he used to \_\_\_\_\_ alone in the house for an hour or two.  
A. being left      B. leaving      C. be left      D. leave
83. Ann hoped \_\_\_\_\_ to join the private club. She could make important business contact here.  
A. being invited      B. to invite      C. to be invited      D. inviting
84. Everyone likes \_\_\_\_\_ when they have got some success.  
A. to be congratulated      B. being congratulated  
C. to be congratulating      D. to congratulate
85. Her watch needs \_\_\_\_\_  
A. repairing      B. to be repaired      C. repaired      D. A and B
86. I'll get Minh \_\_\_\_\_ this for you.  
A. do      B. done      C. did      D. to do
87. It is suggested that all the strict rules \_\_\_\_\_ by employees.  
A. obey      B. are obeyed      C. be obeyed      D. should obey
88. We had the roof of our house \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
A. repaired      B. repair      C. repairing      D. to repair
89. The photos \_\_\_\_\_ in a London studio last week.  
A. were taken      B. have taken      C. was taken      D. have been taken
90. When the boy \_\_\_\_\_ the car he was badly injured.  
A. is hit by      B. was hit by      C. hit      D. was hitting
91. People believe that he finished with it.  
A. It is believed that he finished with it.  
B. He is believed to have finished with  
C. People is believed he finished with it.  
D. Both A and B are correct.
92. People don't use this road very often.  
A. This road is not used very often.      B. Not very often this road is not used.  
C. This road very often is not used.      D. This road not very often is used.
93. Somebody accused me of stealing money.  
A. I was accused by somebody of stealing money.  
B. I was accused of stealing money.  
C. I was accused of stealing money by somebody.  
D. I was accused stealing money.
94. They report that over 200,000 people were killed in the tsunami.  
A. Over 200,000 people are reported to have been killed in the tsunami.  
B. Over 200,000 people are reported to be killed in the tsunami.  
C. Over 200,000 people are reported to have killed in the tsunami.  
D. Over 200,000 people are reported to kill in the tsunami.
95. They are building a new highway around the city.  
A. A new highway is being built around the city.  
B. A new highway is being built around the city by them.

- C. A new highway around the city is being built.  
D. Around the city a new highway is being built.
96. They have built a new hospital near the airport.  
A. A new hospital has been built near the airport by them.  
B. A new hospital near the airport has been built.  
C. A new hospital has been built near the airport.  
D. Near the airport a new hospital has been.
97. People should send their complaints to the head office.  
A. Complaints should be sent to the head office.  
B. Complaints should be sent to the head office by people.  
C. Their complaints should be sent to the head office by people.  
D. Their complaints to the head office should be sent.
98. They had to postpone the meeting because of illness.  
A. The meeting had to be postponed because of illness.  
B. The meeting had to because of illness be postponed.  
C. The meeting had to be postponed by them because of illness.  
D. The meeting because of illness had to be postponed..
99. Somebody might have stolen your car.  
A. Somebody might have been stolen your car.  
B. Your car might be stolen.  
C. Your car might have been stolen by somebody.  
D. Your car might have been stolen.
100. They are going to hold next year's congress in San Francisco.  
A. Congress is going to be held next year in San Francisco.  
B. Congress in San Francisco is going to be held next year.  
C. Next year's congress is going to be held by them held next year.  
D. Next year's congress is going to be held in San Francisco.
101. They have changed the date of the meeting.  
A. The date of the meeting has been changed.  
B. The date of the meeting has been changed by they.  
C. The meeting has been changed the date.  
D. The date of the meeting has changed.
102. Brian told me that somebody had attacked him in the street.  
A I was told by Brian that somebody had attacked him in the street.  
B. I was told by Brian that he had been attacked in the street.  
C. Brain told me to have been attacked in the street.  
D. Brian told me that he had been attacked in the street.
103. People believe that hundreds of homeless children are living on the streets.  
A. It is believed that hundreds of homeless children are living on the streets.  
B. Hundreds of homeless children are believed to be living on the streets.  
C. Hundreds of homeless children believe to be living on the streets.  
D. A & B are correct.
104. People believe that hundreds of homeless children are living on the streets.  
A. It is believed that hundreds of homeless children are living on the streets.  
B. Hundreds of homeless children are believed to be living on the streets.  
C. Hundreds of homeless children believe to be living on the streets.  
D. A & B are correct



105. They believe that the thieves got in through the kitchen window.
- A. The thieves are believed to have got in through the kitchen window.
  - B. The thieves are believed to get in through the kitchen window.
  - C. They believe the thieves got in through the kitchen window.
  - D. They believe the thieves have got in through the kitchen window
106. Someone has just cleaned the floor.
- A. The floor has just been cleaned
  - B. The floor has been just cleaned
  - C. The floor is said to be cleaned.
  - D. All are correct.
107. It is believed that the man escaped in a stolen car.
- A. The man is believed to be escaped in a stolen car.
  - B. The man is believed to have escaped in a stolen car.
  - C. The man was believed to have escaped in a stolen car.
  - D. They believed that the man escaped in a stolen car.
108. "It was thought that the building had been destroyed" means \_\_\_\_.
- A. The building was thought had been destroyed.
  - B. The building was thought to have been destroyed.
  - C. The building thought to be destroyed.
  - D. They have destroyed the building.
109. Mr. Pike is repairing the refrigerator at the moment
- A. The refrigerator is being repaired at the moment by Mr. Pike
  - B. The refrigerator repaired by Mr. Pike at the moment
  - C. The refrigerator is being repaired by Mr. Pike at the moment
  - D. The refrigerator is being repairing by Mr. Pike at the moment
110. People have discovered a new source of energy
- A. A new source of energy has discovered
  - B. A new source of energy was discovered
  - C. A new source of energy has been discovered
  - D. A new source of energy has be discovered
111. They think that the prisoner escaped by climbing over the wall.
- A. The prisoner is thought to escape by climbing over the wall.
  - B. The prisoner is thought escaped by climbing over the wall.
  - C. The prisoner is thought having escaped by climbing over the wall.
  - D. The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over the wall.
112. Somebody will call Mr. Watson tonight.
- A. Mr. Watson will call somebody tonight.
  - B. Mr. Watson will be call tonight.
  - C. Mr. Watson tonight will call somebody.
  - D. Mr. Watson will be called tonight.
113. People believe that 13 is an unlucky number.
- A. It was believed that 13 is an unlucky number.
  - C. 13 is believed an unlucky number.
  - B. That 13 is an unlucky number is believed.
  - D. It is believed that 13 is an unlucky number
114. It is believed that the man escaped in a stolen car.
- A. The man is believed to escaped in a stolen car.

- B. The man is believed to have escaped in a stolen car.  
 C. The man is believed to escaped in a stolen car.  
 D. They believed that the man stole the car.
- 115.** People have translated this book into many languages .  
 a. This book have translated into many languages .  
 b. This book has been translate by people into many languages .  
 c. This book was translated into many languages .  
 d. This book has been translated into many languages .
- 116.** People believe that there will be severe earthquakes and tidal waves next year.  
 A.It is believed that severe earthquakes and tidal waves will have happened next year.  
 B.It is our belief that their will be severe earthquakes and tidal waves next year.  
 C.It is believed that there will be severe earthquakes and tidal waves next year.  
 D.Our belief is that there will be severe earthquakes and tidal waves next year.
- 117.** Many people think Steve stole the money.  
 A . Steve is thought to have stolen the money.  
 B . Many people think the money is stolen by Steve.  
 C . It was not Steve who stole the money.  
 D . Money is thought to be stolen by Steve.
- 118.** It is said that two men were arrested after the explosion.  
 A. People said two men be arrested after the explosion.  
 B. Two men are said to be arrested after the explosion.  
 C. Two men are said to have been arrested after the explosion.  
 D. Two men were said to be arrested after the explosion.
- 119.** People say that these villagers are hospitable.  
 A. These villagers are not hospitable as they say.  
 B. These villagers are said not to be hospitable.  
 C. It is said that these villagers are not hospitable.  
 D. It is said that these villagers are hospitable.
- 120.** They have built a new hospital near the airport.  
 A. A new hospital near the airport has been built.  
 B. A new hospital has been built near the airport.  
 C. A new hospital has been built near the airport by them.  
 D. Near the airport a new hospital has been.
- 121.** The doctor told him not to talk during the meditation.  
 A. He has been told by the doctor not to talk during the meditation.  
 B. He was told by the doctor not to talk during the meditation.  
 C. He was being told by the doctor not to talk during the meditation.  
 D. He is told by the doctor not to talk during the meditation.
- 122.** You should take care when working on electrical equipment.  
 A. Care should be taken when you are working on electrical equipment.  
 B. Care should be taken when working on electrical equipment.  
 C. Electrical equipment should be taken care when working on.  
 D. Electrical equipment should be taken care when you are working on.
- 123.** People seem to recognize the structure the most attractive.  
 A. The structure is seemed to recognize the most attractive.  
 B. The structure seems to be recognized the most attractive.  
 C. The structure is seemed to be recognized the most attractive.

D. It is seemed to recognize the structure most attractive.

124. The old man treated the little boy badly.

- A. The little boy was treated by the old man badly.
- B. The little boy was badly treated by the old man.
- C. The little boy badly was treated by the old man.
- D. The little boy was treated badly by the old man.

125. They report that the explorers were lost when climbing up the mount in a heavy storm.

- A. It was reported that the explorers were lost....
- C. The explorers are reported to have been lost...
- B. It reported that the explorers were lost...
- D. The explorers are reported to be lost...

126. People say that neither side wanted war.

- A. It was said that neither side wanted war
- B. Neither side is said to want war.
- C. Neither side was said to have wanted war.
- D. Neither side is said to have wanted war

127. We will send you the results as soon as they are ready.

- A. You will be sent the results as soon as they are ready.
- B. You will be sent the results as soon as they are ready by us.
- C. The results will be sent you by us as soon as they are ready.
- D. The results will be sent you as soon as they are ready by us.

128. Brian told me that somebody had attacked him in the street.

- A. I was told by Brian that somebody had attacked him in the street.
- B. I was told by Brian that he had been attacked in the street.
- C. Brian told me to have been attacked in the street.
- D. Brian told me that he had been attacked in the street.

129. They say that many people are homeless after the earthquake.

- A. They say many people to have been homeless after the tsunami.
- B. They say many people to be homeless after the tsunami.
- C. Many people are said to have been homeless after the tsunami.
- D. Many people are said to be homeless after the tsunami.

130. We'll have to find a new secretary soon.

- A. A new secretary has to be found soon.
- B. A new secretary must be found soon.
- C. A new secretary is found soon.
- D. A new secretary will have to be found soon.

## II. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động các thì )

1. My father waters this flower every morning.

=> This flower.....

2. John invited Fiona to his birthday party last night.

=> Fiona.....

3. Her mother is preparing the dinner in the kitchen.

=> The dinner.....

4. We should clean our teeth twice a day.

=> Our teeth.....

5. Our teachers have explained the English grammar.

=> The English grammar.....

6. Some drunk drivers caused the accident in this city.  
=> The accident.....
7. Tom will visit his parents next month.  
=> Tom's parents.....
8. The manager didn't phone the secretary this morning.  
=> The secretary.....
9. Did Mary this beautiful dress?  
=> Was this.....
10. I won't hang these old pictures in the living room.  
=> These old.....
11. The German didn't build this factory during the Second World War.  
=> This factory.....
12. The Greens are going to paint this house and these cars for Christmas Day.  
=> This house and these cars.....
13. Ann had fed the cats before she went to the cinema.  
=> The cats.....
14. The students have discussed the pollution problems since last week.  
=> The pollution problems.....
15. Have the thieves stolen the most valuable painting in the national museum?  
=> Has the most.....
16. Some people will interview the new president on TV.  
=> The new president.....
17. How many languages do they speak in Canada?  
=> How many.....
18. Are you going to repair those shoes?.....  
=> Are those.....
19. He has broken his nose in a football match.  
=> His nose.....
20. Have you finished the above sentences?  
=> Have above.....

**III. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động các động từ tường thuật )**

1. They think that he has died a natural death.  
=> He.....
2. Some people believe that 13 is an unlucky number.  
=> 13.....
3. They say that John is the brightest student in class.  
=> John.....
4. They reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.  
=> The President.....
5. I knew that they had told him of the meeting.  
=> They.....
6. They declared that she won the competition.  
=> She.....
7. They rumored the man was still living.  
=> The man.....
8. People think that Jack London's life and writing's represent the American love of adventure.  
=> Jack London's life and writing.....

9. They reported that the troops were coming.

=> The troops.....

10. People believed that the earth stood still.

=> The earth.....

**IV. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động thể nhờ bảo)**

1. I had my nephew paint the gate last week.

=> I had.....

2. She will have Peter wash her car tomorrow.

=> She will.....

3. They have her tell the story again.

=> They have.....

4. John gets his sister to clean his shirt.

=> John gets.....

5. Anne had had a friend type her composition.

=> Anne has.....

6. Rick will have a barber cut his hair.

=> Rick will .....

7. I will get the dressmaker to make a new dress.

=> I will get.....

8. He had a mechanic repair his car.

=> He had.....

9. She often gets the technician to maintain the heater.

=> She often gets.....

10. They had the police arrest the shoplifter.

=> They had.....

11. Are you going to have the shoemaker repair your shoes?

=> Are you going to have.....

12. I must have the dentist check my teeth.

=> I must have.....

13. She will have a veterinary surgeon examine her dog.

=> She will have.....

14. We had a man take this photograph when we were on holiday last summer.

=> We had.....

15. The Greens had a carpet cleaner clean their carpet.

=> The Greens had.....

**V. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động 2 tân ngữ)**

1. They paid me a lot of money to do the job.

=> I was paid.....

2. The teacher gave each of us two exercise books.

=> Each of us.....

3. Someone will tell him that news.

=> He will.....

4. They have sent enough money to those poor boys.

=> Those poor.....

5. They have given the women in most countries in the world the right to vote.

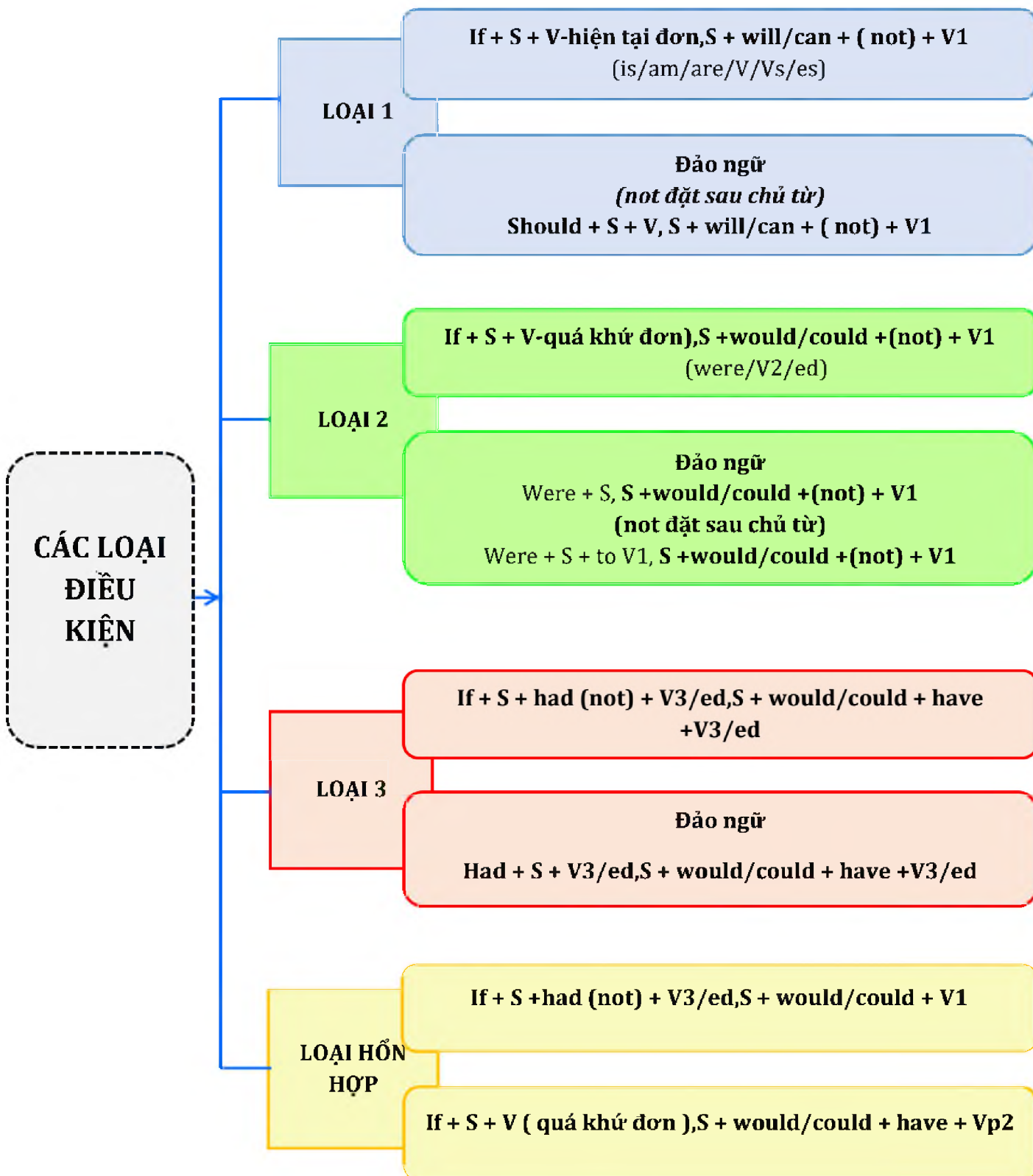
=> The women.....

**VI. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động động từ chỉ giác quan)**



1. I have heard her sing this song several times.  
=> She has been heard.....
2. People saw him steal your car.  
=> He was seen.....
3. The teacher is watching the work.  
=> The work is.....
4. He won't let you do that silly thing again.  
=> You won't be let.....
5. People don't make the children work hard.  
=> The children are made.....
6. They made him work all day.  
=> He was made.....
7. The detective saw the woman putting the jewelry in her bag.  
=> The woman was seen.....
8. The terrorists made the hostages lie down.  
=> The hostages were made.....
9. Police advise drivers to use an alternative route.  
=> Drivers are advised.....
10. She helps me to do all these difficult exercises.  
=> I am helped.....

I. CÁC LOẠI CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN



## II. MỘT SỐ CÁCH ĐIỂN ĐẠT CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN KHÁC.

MỘT SỐ CÁCH ĐIỂN ĐẠT CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN KHÁC	
<b>1. Unless</b>	<p><b>Unless = if... not</b> (trừ phi)</p> <p>- Nếu mệnh đề "If" có "not", ta thế "Unless" vào vị trí của "If" và bỏ "not", về kia giữ nguyên. .</p> <p><b>Eg: If you don't speak loudly, he won't hear</b> → Unless you speak loudly, he won't hear</p> <p>Nếu mệnh đề "If" không có "not", ta vẫn thế "Unless" vào vị trí của "If" nhưng thêm hoặc bớt "not" ở mệnh đề sau.</p> <p><b>Eg: If you give me money, I won't kill you.</b> → Unless you give me money, I will kill you.</p>
<b>3. In case</b>	<p><b>In case + mệnh đề, ....</b> (Phòng khi)</p> <p><b>Eg: In case we stay longer, take some more money.</b></p>
<b>4. Should</b>	<p><b>If + S + should +V, mệnh đề.</b> (diễn tả 1 sự việc khó có thể xảy ra)</p> <p><b>Eg: If you should see Ann, could you ask her to call me?</b></p>
<b>5. Happen to V</b>	<p><b>If+Shappen to +V, mệnh đề.</b> (nhấn mạnh sự tình cờ cơ hội của 1 sự việc)</p> <p><b>Eg: If you happen to see Helen, could you ask her to call me?</b></p>
<b>6. If + adjective</b>	<p><b>If+ tính từ, mệnh đề.</b></p> <p><b>Eg: If necessary, you can take a taxi.</b></p>
<b>7. Were to V</b>	<p><b>S + were + to V,...</b> (diễn tả 1 cảnh tượng tượng ở tương lai/ đề nghị lịch sự)</p> <p><b>Eg: If the government were to cut V.A.T, prices would fall.</b></p> <p>Lưu ý: Công thức này không áp dụng cho các động từ chỉ tình trạng như: know, like, remember, understand...</p>
<b>8. Without/ But for</b>	<p><b>Without But for (nếu không có ...) Without/ But for + danh từ, mệnh đề.</b> (thay thế cho cấu trúc "IF... NOT").</p> <p>- <b>If it werent for + danh từ, mệnh đề.</b> (= ĐKL2)</p> <p>- <b>If it hadn't been for + danh từ, mệnh đề.</b> ( ĐKL3 )</p> <p><b>Eg: If you hadn't helped us, we would have been in trouble.</b> → But for your help, we would have been in trouble.</p> <p><b>Eg: If it were not for Jim, this company would be in a mess.</b> → Without Jim, this company would be in a mess.</p>
<b>9. Supposing/ Suppose</b>	<p><b>Supposing/ suppose</b> (giả sử)</p> <p><b>Eg: Supposing you won the football match, what would you do?</b></p>
<b>10. Otherwise</b>	<p><b>Otherwise</b> (nếu không thì) .</p> <p><b>Otherwise + real condition :</b> (điều kiện có thể thực hiện được)</p> <p><b>Eg: We must be back before midnight, otherwise I will be locked out.</b></p> <p><b>Otherwise + unreal condition :</b> (điều kiện không thể thực hiện được)</p>

	+ <b>Hiện tại:</b> He supports her finance, otherwise she couldn't conduct these surveys + <b>Quá khứ:</b> I used a computer, otherwise I wouldn't have finished this report.
<b>11. Provided/ as long as</b>	<b>Provided that/ providing that = as long as/ so long as = on condition that + mệnh đề, mệnh đề (miên là)</b> <b>Eg: You can go home late provided that you do the homework.</b>
<b>12. Wish/ If only</b>	<b>If only/ S wish + S+V(quá khứ) (ước ngược với hiện tại)</b> <b>Eg: If only I had today off.</b> <b>If only/ S wish + S + V(quá khứ hoàn thành) (ước ngược với quá khứ)</b> <b>Eg: They wish that they hadn't spent \$500.</b>
<b>13. It's time</b>	<b>It's (high/ about) time + S + V(quá khứ) (đã đến lúc phải làm gì)</b> <b>Eg: It's time we did our homework.</b>
<b>14. Would rather</b>	<b>S + would rather + S + V(quá khứ) (muốn ai đó làm gì)</b> <b>Eg: I'd rather you didn't smoke here.</b>

### III. THỰC HÀNH

#### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN VÀ ĐIỀU KIỆN HỖN HỢP

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- ..... we find new sources, we will soon run out of energy.  
A. If                      B. When                      C. Unless                      D. Only
- Do you think there should be less conflict in the world if all people..... the same language?  
A. speak                      B. spoke                      C. will speak                      D. had spoken
- We would save thousands of lives if ..... the remedy for the flu.  
A. we find out                      B. we found                      C. we will find                      D. we had not found out
- You can smoke here..... you leave a window open to let the smoke out.  
A. whether                      B. unless                      C. as long as                      D. until
- George won't lend you any money..... you promise to pay him back.  
A. providing                      B. unless                      C. provided                      D. as long as
- If I were 5 years younger, I would ..... that job.  
A. apply to                      B. apply for                      C. apply into                      D. apply in
- If you inherited a million pounds, what..... with the money?  
A. do you do                      B. will you do                      C. would you do                      D. are you going to do
- If you..... as I told you, you..... in such predicament now.  
A. did/would not be                      B. had done/had not been  
C. do/would not be                      D. had done/would not be
- \_\_\_\_\_, he would have been able to pass the exam.  
A. If he had been studied more                      B. Had he studied more  
C. If he studied more                      D. If he studies more
- According to some historians, if Napoleon had not invaded Russia, he \_\_\_\_\_ the rest of the world.







1. If Lucy's car.....down, she would be here by now.  
A. didn't break      B. hadn't broken      C. wouldn't have broken      D. doesn't break
2. If I had listened to my parents, I.....at this job now.  
A. don't have to work      B. am not working  
C. wouldn't be working      D. wouldn't have worked
3. If he.....as honest as you believe, he wouldn't have done that.  
A. would be      B. were      C. have been      D. would have been
4. If you.....to my advice in the first place, you wouldn't be in this mess right now.  
A. listen      B. had listened      C. will listen      D. listened
5. If I had taken his advice, I.....rich now.  
A. would have been      B. would be      C. am      D. will be
6. If you hadn't lost the pieces, we.....a game of chess.  
A. couldn't have had      B. can't have  
C. may have      D. could have
7. If you had taken my advice, you.....in such difficulties now.  
A. wouldn't have been      B. hadn't been  
C. wouldn't be      D. won't be
8. If Jack had tried hard the last season,  
A. he will now be in the national team  
B. he has never been in time for the match  
C. he would now be in the national team  
D. he is never in time for the match
9. ....of economic cycles been helpful in predicting turning points in cycles, they would have been used more consistently.  
A. Psychological theories      B. Psychological theories have  
C. Had psychological theories      D. Psychological have theories
10. "I'm surprised no one tried to help Mary." ".....us sooner, we might have been able to do something."  
A. Having asked      B. Asking      C. Had she asked      D. She had asked.
11. ...., we would have to put off the visit to the Marble Mountains.  
A. Did it rain tomorrow      B. Should it rain tomorrow  
C. Were it to rain tomorrow      D. Had it rained tomorrow
12. ....any employee be ill, they must call the office to inform their head of department.  
A. Were      B. Should      C. Had      D. If
13. ....advised on what and how to prepare for the interview, he might have got the job.  
A. If he had      B. Unless he had been      C. Had he been      D. Were he to be
14. ....you to be offered that job, would you have to move to another city?  
A. Should      B. Were      C. Had      D. Provided that
15. "What would you do in my place?" "Were.....treated like that, I would complain to the manager."  
A. I to had been      B. I to be      C. I have been      D. to I be
16. ....you to be offered that job, would you have to move to another city?  
A. Provided that      B. Should      C. Were      D. Had
17. ....the government fall, the stock market will crash.  
A. Had      B. Provided      C. In case      D. Should
18. ....we invested in telecommunication industry, we would be rich by now.  
A. Were      B. Should      C. Will      D. Had



- A. Supposing that  
C. If only
- B. On condition that
- D. Providing that
36. ....a person is good at his job, it shouldn't matter what he or she wears.  
A. In case                      B. On condition that                      C. Unless                      D. As long as
37. What would you buy provided.....the money?  
A. had you                      B. have you                      C. you had                      D. you would have
38. But for his help, she.....  
A. wouldn't have failed                      B. would have failed  
C. has failed                      D. has not failed
39. But for his help, I.....  
A. should not have succeeded                      B. had not succeeded  
C. did not succeed                      D. would succeed
40. Take your money with you.....  
A. in case you'll see any good souvenirs to buy  
B. unless you see any good souvenirs to buy  
C. in case you see any good souvenirs to buy  
D. provided that you'll see any good souvenirs to buy .
41. Suppose flights.....on that day, which other day could we go?  
A. are fully booked                      B. will be fully booked  
C. would be fully booked                      D. have been fully booked
42. ....the storm, the ship could have reached its destination on time.  
A. In case of                      B. In spite of                      C. Because of                      D. But for
43. She will be ill.....  
A. unless she takes a few days' rest                      B. provided she takes a few days' rest  
C. in case she takes a few days' rest                      D. if she takes a few days' rest
44. ....without animals and plants?  
A. What would life on earth be like                      B. How would life on earth be for  
C. What will life on earth be like                      D. How will life on earth be like
45. ....heat from the sun there would be no life on earth.  
A. Except                      B. Without                      C. If there is no                      D. Despite
46. I won't lend you this money .....you promise to pay it back.  
A. if                      B. unless                      C. or                      D. or else
47. Provided that he.....the car, we.....able to drive to the country.  
A. services - are                      B. services - will be                      C. will service - will be                      D. services - would be
48. Without your help, we.....in such a short time.  
A. will not do it                      B. did not do it                      C. cannot have done it                      D. wouldn't have done it
49. But for his help, I.....  
A. would not have succeeded                      B. had not succeeded  
C. did not succeed                      D. have not succeeded
50. I didn't know you were asleep. Otherwise, I.....so much noise when I came in.  
A. didn't make                      B. wouldn't have made  
C. won't make                      D. don't make

**III. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.**

1. But for your carelessness, you could have been a partner in the firm.  
A. If it hadn't been your carelessness, you could have been a partner in the firm

- B. Your carelessness was the only thing to prevent being a partner in the firm  
 C. It was your carelessness that made you impossible to be a partner in the firm  
 D. You could have been a partner in the firm, but you were so careless.
2. Without skilful surgery he would not have survived the operation.  
 A. With skilful surgery, he would have survived the operation.  
 B. Had it not been for skilful surgery, he would have survived the operation  
 C. But for skilful surgery, he would not have survived the operation.  
 D. He wouldn't have survived the operation if he hadn't skilful surgery.
3. We could not handle the situation without you.  
 A. You didn't help us handle the situation.  
 B. If you had not helped us, we could not have handled the situation.  
 C. If you did not help us, we could not handle the situation.  
 D. We will handle the situation if you help.
4. Unless you have tickets you can't come in.  
 A. You can't come in provided that you have tickets.  
 B. You can come in provided that you have tickets.  
 C. If you didn't have tickets, you couldn't come in.  
 D. Unless you don't have tickets, you can come in.
5. I didn't speak to Anita because I didn't see her.  
 A. If I saw Anita, I would speak to her.  
 B. If I had seen Anita, I would have spoken to her.  
 C. Although I spoke to Anita, I didn't see her.  
 D. I saw Anita so that I could speak to her.
6. Unless I had seen him doing it, I wouldn't have accused him.  
 A. I could accuse him because I saw him doing it.  
 B. I didn't see him doing it, so I couldn't accuse him.  
 C. I accused him, but I didn't see him doing it.  
 D. He was accused though I didn't see him doing it.
7. If you had arrived, you would have had the chance of meeting the chairman.  
 A. You hadn't arrived so you hadn't had the chance of meeting the chairman.  
 B. You didn't have the chance of meeting the chairman because you didn't arrive.  
 C. If you arrived, you would have had the chance of meeting the chairman.  
 D. You don't arrive so you don't have the chance of meeting the chairman.
8. Had we left any later, we would have missed the train.  
 A. We left too late to catch the train.  
 B. The train left late.  
 C. We almost missed the train.  
 D. Because the train was late we had no trouble catching it.
9. I can't sign the paper until I read it all carefully.  
 A. I won't sign the paper unless I have read it carefully.  
 B. I am not allowed to read the paper before I sign it.  
 C. The paper is not read until I am allowed to sign it.  
 D. It is impossible to sign the paper while you are reading it.
10. Alice would be happier if she won the first prize.  
 A. Alice doesn't win the first prize.  
 B. Alice is trying to win the first prize.  
 C. Alice is dreaming about winning the first prize.



- D. Alice won the first prize once.
11. If your flight is delayed, call me from the airport.
- A. Call me only if your flight is delayed.
  - B. Don't call me until you arrive at the airport.
  - C. Give me a ring if your flight was delayed.
  - D. Give me a ring if your flight is delayed.
12. But for two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.
- A. If I didn't make these two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.
  - B. I would have got full marks for the test if there hadn't been these two minor mistakes.
  - C. Had I made two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.
  - D. If the mistakes hadn't been minor, I could have got full marks for the test.
13. Tigers are under threat of extinction and something must be done quickly.
- A. Nothing is done and tigers are in danger of extinction.
  - B. Tigers would have become extinct if nothing had been done
  - C. Tigers will become extinct unless something is done quickly.
  - D. Although something must be done quickly, tigers are in danger of extinction.
14. Get in touch with me as soon as possible if you change your mind about the trip.
- A. Should you change your mind about the trip, contact me as soon as possible.
  - B. If you changed your mind about the trip, get in touch with me as soon as possible.
  - C. You would call me whether you changed your mind about the trip.
  - D. Having changed your mind about the trip, you should get in touch with me soon.
15. If it hadn't been for the goalkeeper, our team would have lost.
- A. Our team didn't lose the game thanks to the goalkeeper.
  - B. Our team lost the match because of the goalkeeper.
  - C. Without the goalkeeper, our team could have won.
  - D. If the goalkeeper didn't play well, our team would have lost.
16. The driver survived the car crash because he was wearing the seatbelt when the accident happened.
- A. The accident occurred because the driver was trying to wear the seatbelt while driving.
  - B. When the car crashed, the driver was going to wear the seatbelt.
  - C. The driver would not have survived if he hadn't worn the seatbelt.
  - D. The driver didn't wear the seatbelt until the accident happened.
17. If I had known about their wedding plan earlier, I would have been able to make time to attend the reception party.
- A. I knew their wedding would be planned earlier so I made some time to attend the reception party.
  - B. I wish I had known their wedding plan earlier so that I could arrange time to attend the reception party.
  - C. I don't know their wedding plan earlier so I can't make time to attend the reception party.
  - D. When I knew their wedding party, it was too late to attend the reception party.
18. If Janet was here, we would not have to worry about accommodation.
- A. Janet was not here, so nobody could arrange accommodation for us.
  - B. We wouldn't be worried about accommodation with Janet here.
  - C. Janet is not here and she is very worried about accommodation.
  - D. We often rely on Janet for accommodation arrangements.
19. I didn't know you were coming, so I didn't wait for you.
- A. If I had known you were coming, I would wait for you.

- B. I would have waited for you if I knew you were coming.  
C. Had I known you were coming, I would have waited for you.  
D. If you had known you had been coming, I would have waited for you.
20. My friends rang me at the office because they didn't know that I was away.  
A. If my friends rang me at the office, they knew that I was away.  
B. My friends didn't ring me because they knew that I was away.  
C. Had my friends known that I was away, they wouldn't have rung me at the office.  
D. Were my friends not to ring me, they knew that I was away.
21. Please let me know if you wish to keep the books any longer.  
A. If you should wish to keep the books any longer, please let me know.  
B. Should you wish to keep the books any longer, please let me know.  
C. Should you wish keep the books any longer, please let me know.  
D. Wish you to keep the books any longer, please let me know.
22. If there had been fewer people in the queue, we would have waited.  
A. There were too many people in the queue that we decided not to wait.  
B. There were such many people in the queue that we decided not to wait  
C. There was such many people in the queue that we decided not to wait.  
D. There were so many people in the queue that we decided not to wait.
23. It's my opinion that you should take more exercises.  
A. If I were you, you would take more exercises.  
B. If I were you, I would take more exercises.  
C. Had I been you, I would take more exercises.  
D. If I were you, I will take more exercises.
24. Kara will turn James, down if he asks her to marry him.  
A. Kara has indicated that she would not marry James even if he asked her to.  
B. Kara will marry James, but only if he asks her to.  
C. Should James make a marriage proposal to Kara, he will be rejected.  
D. James should have better sense than to ask Kara to marry him.
25. I see no reason to change my clothes so long as they are not excessive dirty.  
A. I will have to change my clothes if they get any less clean than they currently are.  
B. If my clothes were a bit dirty, then probably I would think about changing them.  
C. It is illogical to change my clothes when they are not actually dirty.  
D. Provided my clothes are not very dirty, I do not think it necessary to change them.
26. Had the advertisement for our product been better, more people would have bought it.  
A. Not many people bought our product because it was so bad.  
B. Our product was of better quality so that more people would buy it.  
C. Fewer people bought our product due to its bad quality.  
D. Since our advertisement for our product was so bad, fewer people bought it.
27. If I hadn't had so much work to do, I would have gone to the movies.  
A. I never go to the movies if I have work to do.  
B. I would go to the movies when I had done so much work.  
C. A lot of work couldn't prevent me from going to the movies.  
D. Because I had to do so much work, I couldn't go to the movies.
28. If it hadn't been for his carelessness, we would have finished the work.  
A. He was careless because he hadn't finished the work.  
B. If he was careful, we would finish the work.  
C. If he had been more careful, we would have completed the work.

- D. Because he wasn't careless, we didn't finish the work.
29. If I were in your shoes, I would let him go.
- A. I suggest that you let him go.
  - B. I was wearing your shoes and would like to let him go.
  - C. I advise you to wear your shoes and let him go.
  - D. I would like to be in your shoes, so you could let him go.
30. I've always regretted not having learned English at school.
- A. I wish I had learned English at school.
  - B. I've always wished I hadn't learned English at school.
  - C. If I had learned English at school, I would have regretted.
  - D. I didn't learn English when I was at school, I would have regretted.
31. This conference wouldn't have been possible without your organization.
- A. Had you not organized this conference, it wouldn't be possible.
  - B. Your organization made it possible for this conference to take place.
  - C. But for your organization, this conference would have been possible.
  - D. If you didn't organize, this conference wouldn't have taken place.
32. Thanks to his support, I was able to finish the project.
- A. If there weren't his support, I wasn't able to finish the project.
  - B. Had it not been for his support, I wouldn't have been able to finish the project.
  - C. Unless he had helped me, I would have been able to finish the project.
  - D. If it were not for his support, I wouldn't be able to finish the project.
33. At no time did the two sides look likely to reach an agreement.
- A. The two sides had no time to reach an agreement.
  - B. The two sides never looked likely to reach an agreement.
  - C. If the two sides had had time, they would have reached an agreement.
  - D. The two sides never look like each other.
34. It was only because I owed Bill a favor that I agreed to help him.
- A. I agreed to do Bill a favor by helping him.
  - B. I only agreed to help Bill because I owed him some money.
  - C. If I hadn't owed Bill a favor, I wouldn't have agreed to help him.
  - D. I agreed to help Bill only as a favor.
35. She is so busy that she can't come to the party.
- A. If she were not so busy, she must come to the party.
  - B. If she were not so busy, she need to come to the party.
  - C. If she were not so busy, she could come to the party.
  - D. If she were not so busy, she should come to the party.
36. We couldn't have managed our business successfully without my father's money.
- A. Hadn't it been for my father's money, we couldn't have managed our business successfully.
  - B. We could have managed our business successfully with my father's money.
  - C. If we could manage our business successfully, my father would give us his money.
  - D. If we couldn't have managed our business successfully, we would have had my father's money.
37. But for his father's early retirement, Richard would not have taken over the family business.
- A. Richard's father didn't want him to take over the family business despite his retirement.
  - B. His father retired early, but he still ran the family business.
  - C. Richard only took over the family business because his father decided to retire early.
  - D. Richard didn't take over the family business because his father didn't retire.

38. If my brother had worn warm clothes, he would not have caught a cold.
- A. My brother did not wear warm clothes, but he did not catch a cold.
  - B. My brother wore warm clothes, so he did not catch a cold
  - C. My brother wore warm clothes, but he caught a cold.
  - D. My brother did not wear warn clothes, so he caught a cold.
39. If you had gone to class yesterday, you would understand what the teacher is saying at the moment.
- A. What the teacher was saying was not comprehensible to you because you didn't go to class yesterday.
  - B. You were not here yesterday, so you didn't understand what the teacher was saying.
  - C. You were not here yesterday, so you don't understand what the teacher is saying at the moment.
  - D. You went to class yesterday and now understand what the teacher is saying at the moment.
40. You should take a torch because the car might break down at night.
- A. If the car breaks down at night, you should take a torch.
  - B. If the car will break down at night, you should take a torch.
  - C. In case the car breaks down at night, you should take a torch.
  - D. In case the car will break down at night, you should take a torch.
41. Without transportation, our modern society would not exist.
- A. Our modern society will not exist without having traffic.
  - B. Our modern society does not exist if there is no transportation.
  - C. If transportation no longer exists, our modern society will not either.
  - D. If there were no transportation, our modern society would not exist.
42. Work hard or you will fail the exam.
- A. You will fail the exam if you work hard.
  - B. If you work hard, you won't pass the exam.
  - C. You won't fail the exam if you don't work hard.
  - D. If you don't work hard, you will fail the exam.
43. I can't understand him because he speaks so quickly.
- a. If he spoke so quickly, I'd understand him.
  - b. If he speaks so quickly, I can understand him.
  - c. If he didn't speak so quickly, I'd understand him.
  - d. If he didn't speak so quickly, I understood him.
44. I regret going to bed so late last night.
- A. I wish I hadn't gone to bed so late last night.
  - B. I wish I had gone to bed so late last night.
  - C. I wish I went to bed so late last night.
  - D. I wish I didn't go to bed so late last night.
45. We did not visit the museum because we had no time.
- A. If we have time, we will visit the museum.
  - B. If we had time, we would visit the museum.
  - C. If we had had time, we would have visited the museum.
  - D. If we had had time, we will visit the museum.
46. It's a pity that you didn't tell us about this.
- A. I wish you told us about this.
  - B. I wish you would tell us about this.
  - C. I wish you had told us about this.
  - D. I wish you have told us about this.
47. Julia couldn't pass the driving test because she was so nervous.



- A. Julia could pass the driving test if she hadn't been so nervous.
- B. Julia could pass the driving test if she wasn't very nervous.
- C. Julia could have passed the driving test if she hadn't been so nervous.
- D. Julia will pass the driving test if she wasn't so nervous.

48. She is too busy to come to the party.

- A. If she was not so busy she must come to the party.
- B. If she was not so busy she could come to the party.
- C. If she was not so busy she needs to come to the party.
- D. If she was not so busy she should come to the party.

49. She was careless. A fire broke out in the kitchen.

- A. If she were careless, a fire broke out in the kitchen.
- B. If she had been careful, a fire broke out in the kitchen.
- C. If she had been careless, a fire would have broken out in the kitchen.
- D. If she had been careful, a fire would not have broken out in the kitchen.

50. Men can't fly because they don't have wings .

- A. If men have wings , they will fly .
- B. If men could fly , they would have wings .
- C. Men couldn't fly unless they had wings .
- D. Men could fly if they had wings .

**IV. Put the verbs into the correct form.**

1. If you (not/go).....to bed late every night, you wouldn't be tired all the time.
2. Anne got to the bus-stop in time. If she (miss) .....the bus, she would have been late for school.
3. If I (have) .....a lot of money, I will travel around the world.
4. I (not/buy) .....that coat if I were you.
5. If the weather is nice tomorrow, she (go) .....on a picnic.
6. If I were her, I (not/marry) .....him.
7. I'd have sent you a letter if I (have) .....your address.
8. We would buy that house if it (not/be) ..... so small.
9. If you (not/have).....that last drink, you (not/have) .....the accident.
10. I (take) .....the laptop back to the shop if you (not know) .....how to fix it.
11. If I (need) .....money to buy a dictionary, you (lend) .....me some?
12. If you (not pass) .....the exam, would you take it again?
13. Give the book to Jane if you (read) .....it.
14. If you hadn't lost our flight tickets, we (be) .....on our way to the Caribbean now.
15. If you (have) .....dinner right now, I'll come back later.
16. I'm homeless. If I (have) .....money now, I (buy) .....a big house.
17. If we (set).....off earlier, we wouldn't be in this traffic jam now.
18. If she were sensible, she (not/ask).....that question, by which she offended him so much.
19. If you (pour).....oil on water, it (float).....
20. We lost the match. If you (play) .....for us, we (win) .....

**V. Rewrite the conditional sentences for the following situations.**

1. Phong doesn't have enough money so he can't travel abroad.  
→If .....
2. I don't drive too close to the animals on safari. They don't get scared.  
→If .....
3. Tom doesn't have a passport. He can't travel abroad.



- If .....
4. I didn't buy it because I didn't have enough money.  
→If .....
5. Tourists throw litter in the river. The water is polluted.  
→If .....
6. I can't swim, so I'm not going scuba - diving with you.  
→If .....
7. There was a test yesterday. I didn't know that, so I didn't study for it.  
→If .....
8. These students do not work hard. They can't pass the exam.  
→If .....
9. If you are not careful, you will cut yourself with that knife.  
→ Unless .....
10. If we had more rain, our crops would be better.  
→ Unless .....
11. The crop would have been ruined if the flood had risen higher.  
→ Unless .....
12. Keep silent or you will wake the baby up.  
→ Unless .....
13. If she had lent me money, she wouldn't have lost it.  
→ As long as .....
14. If I were you, I'd accept the job.  
→ Were .....
15. If he hadn't helped me, I couldn't have overcome the difficulty.  
→ Had .....
16. She doesn't live in London because she doesn't know anyone there  
→She'd .....
17. I can't live in the country because I can't find a job there  
→I'd .....
18. I don't have a spare ticket. I can't take you to the concert  
→If I .....
19. The schoolchildren sowed some seeds, but they forgot to water them so they didn't grow.  
→If the children .....
20. They don't understand the problem. They won't find a solution  
→If they .....
21. He sits around too much. He isn't fit.  
→If he .....
22. Carol didn't answer the phone because she was studying..  
→If Carol .....
23. Rita is exhausted today because she didn't get any sleep last night.  
→If Rita .....
24. She's very thin; perhaps that's why she feels cold so much.  
→If she .....
25. He never polishes his shoes, so he never looks smart  
→If he .....
26. He can't park near his office; that's why he doesn't come by car  
→If he .....

27. My house is guarded by two big dogs. That's the only reason it isn't broken into every night  
→If my house .....
28. The flats are not clearly numbered, so it is very difficult to find anyone.  
→If the flats .....
29. I don't know her e-mail address, so I can't tell you  
→If I .....
30. She works in the evening. She has no time to play with her children  
→If she .....

### I. CÁC BƯỚC CHUYỂN TỪ CÂU TRỰC TIẾP SANG CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

#### 1. Các bước chuyển đổi từ câu trực tiếp sang gián tiếp

**Bước 1:** Thay đổi chủ ngữ, đại từ, tân ngữ, tính từ sở hữu

**Bước 2:** Lùi thì của động từ

**Bước 3:** Thay đổi các trạng từ chỉ không gian và thời gian

#### 2. Cách lùi thì của động từ

<b>Hiện tại đơn</b> (S+ V(s/es))	<b>Quá khứ đơn</b> (S + V(ed/ cột 2))
<b>Quá khứ đơn</b> (S+V(ed/ cột 2))	<b>Quá khứ hoàn thành</b> (S + had + VP2)
<b>Hiện tại hoàn thành</b> (S + have/ has + VP2)	
<b>Quá khứ hoàn thành</b> (S + had + VP2)	
<b>Hiện tại tiếp diễn</b> (S + is/ are/ am + V-ing)	<b>Quá khứ tiếp diễn</b> (S + was/ were + V-ing)
<b>Quá khứ tiếp diễn</b> (S + was/ were + V-ing)	<b>Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn</b> (S + had + been + V-ing)
<b>Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn</b> (S + have/ has + been + V-ing)	
<b>Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn</b> (S + had + been + V-ing)	

**Others:** Will => would, Can => could, May => might, Must/ have to => had to,

Shall => should, Is/ are/ am going to => was/ were going to.

➤ **Lưu ý:** không dùng dấu ngoặc kép, dấu chấm hỏi, dấu chấm than, dấu hai chấm trong lời nói tường thuật

#### 3. Cách chuyển các trạng từ chỉ không gian và thời gian

here => there, now => then,	today => that day
ago => before,	tomorrow => the next day / the following day,
the day after tomorrow => in two day's time/ two days after,	last week => the previous week/ the week before,
yesterday => the day before/ the previous day,	next week => the following week, the next week
last year/ night => the previous year/	the day before yesterday => two day before,

night/ week, the year/ night/ week before		
<b>4. Cách thay đổi chủ ngữ, tân ngữ, tính từ và đại từ sở hữu</b>		
	<b>Câu trực tiếp</b>	<b>Câu gián tiếp</b>
<b>Chủ ngữ</b>	I	he/she
	we	they
	you	they/ I/he/ she
<b>Tân ngữ</b>	me	Him/her
	us	them
	you	Them/me/him/her
<b>Tính từ sở hữu</b>	my	Her/his
	our	their
	your	Their/my/his/her
<b>Đại từ sở hữu</b>	mine	His/hers
	ours	theirs
	yours	Theirs/mine.his.hers
<b>Đại từ chỉ định</b>	this	that
	these	those

## II. CÁC LOẠI CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT

### 1. Câu gián tiếp dạng câu kể.



S + (said/ said to O/ told O) + that + S + V ( lùi xuống 1 thì ) + adv  
**Ex: "Please wait for me here, Mary." Tom said**  
 -> Tom told Mary to wait for him there.

### 2. Câu gián tiếp dạng câu hỏi.

#### a. Câu hỏi Yes/No.



S + asked + ( O ) + wondered+( if / whether ) + S+ V ( lùi thì )  
 wanted to know  
**Ex: Do you love me?**  
 -> He asked me if I loved him.

#### b. Câu hỏi có từ để hỏi (Wh- words)



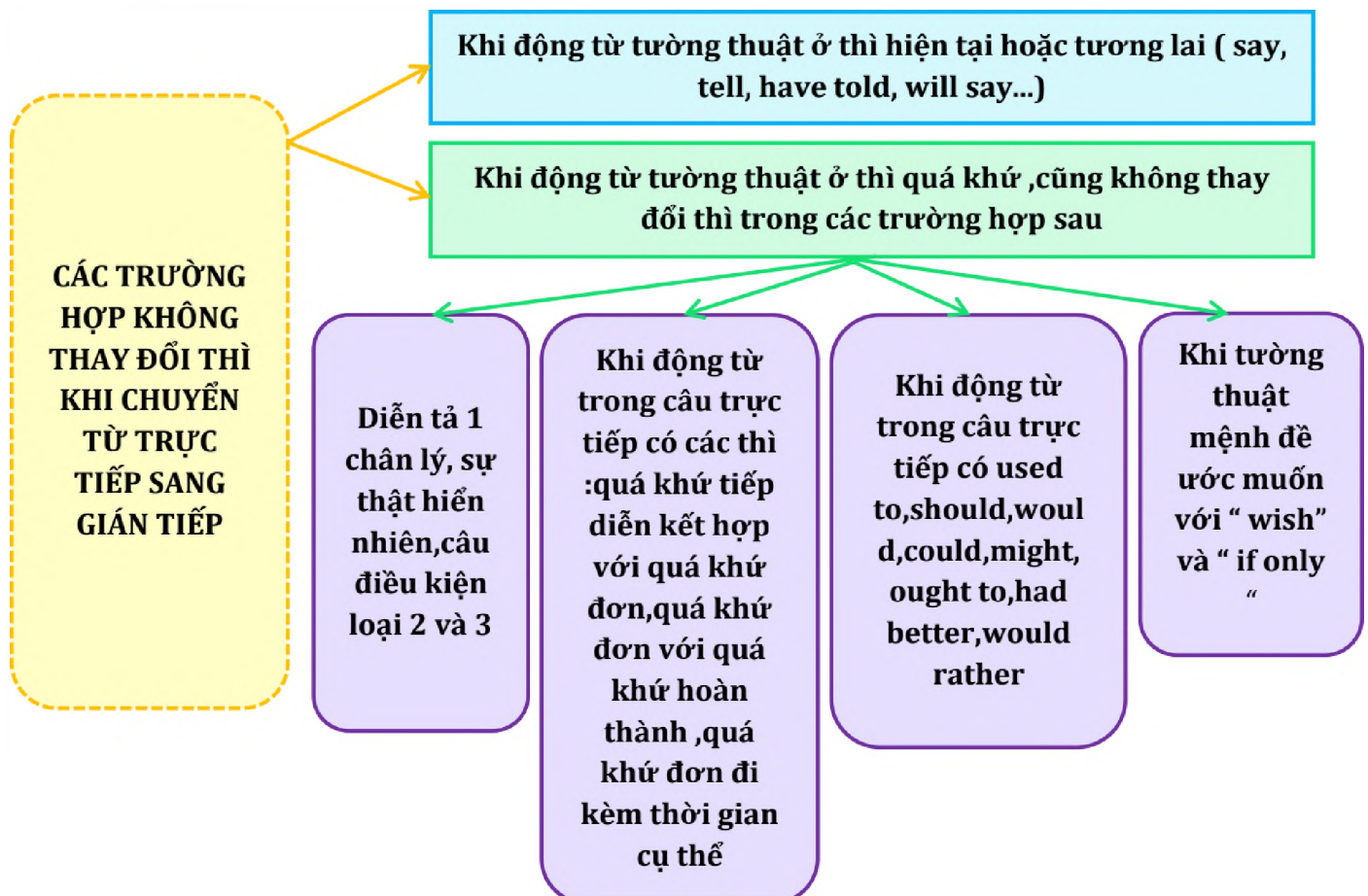
S + asked + ( O ) + wondered+( Wh- ) + S+ V ( lùi thì )  
 wanted to know  
**Ex: Where is the Post Office, please?**  
 -> She asked me where the Post Office was.

## 2. Câu gián tiếp dạng câu mệnh lệnh/yêu cầu (With gerund and infinitive)

**Yêu cầu :** asked + O + to-V  
**Mời :** invited + O + To-V  
**Khuyên :** advised + O + To-V  
**Nhắc nhở :** reminded + O + To-V  
**Ra lệnh :** ordred + O + To-V  
**Đồng ý :** agreed + To-V  
**Hứa :** promised + To-V  
**Khuyến khích :** encouraged + O + To-V  
**Cảnh báo :** warned + O + To-V  
**Muốn :** wanted + O + To-V  
**Từ chối :** refused + to V  
**Mong đợi :** hoped + to V  
**Yêu cầu :** demaded + to V  
**Quyết định :** decided + to V  
**Đe dọa :** threatened + to V  
**Xung phong :** offered + To V  
**Mệnh lệnh :** commanded + O + To V  
**Giới thiệu :** Recommended + O + to V  
**Chỉ dẫn :** instructed + O + To V  
**Thuyết phục :** persuded + O + To V

**Cám ơn :** S + thanked + O + for V-ing  
**Xin lỗi :** S + apologized ( to O ) + for V-ing  
**Buộc tội :** S + accused + O + of V-ing  
**Chúc mừng :** S + congratulated + O + on V-ing  
**Cảnh báo :** S + warned + O + against + V-ing  
**Ngăn ngừa :** S + stopped / prevented + O + from V-ing  
**Đề nghị :** S + suggested + V-ing  
                   S + suggested that + S + ( should ) + V  
**Khăng khăng :** S + insisted + on/upon + V-ing  
**Phủ nhận :** S + denied + V-ing  
**Thừa nhận :** admitted + Ving  
                   admitted + having + V3/ed  
**Đổ lỗi :** Blamed + O + for V-ing  
**Hối hận :** regreted + Ving  
**Mơ về :** dreamed of + Ving  
**Phản đối :** objected to + Ving  
**Than phiền :** complained about + Ving  
**Nghĩ về :** thought of + V3/ed  
**Mong mỏi đến :** looking forward to + Ving  
**Thú nhận :** confessed to + Ving  
**Chỉ trích ai đó :** criticized/reproach + O + for Ving  
**Tha Thứ cho ai :** forgive + O + for + Ving

## III. CÁC TRƯỜNG HỢP KHÔNG THAY ĐỔI THÌ TRONG CÂU GIÁN TIẾP.





### III. THỰC HÀNH

#### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT

1. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- "I'm a big fan of U23." Derek said. - Derek said he \_\_\_\_ a big fan of U23.  
A. was                      B. has been                      C. were                      D. had been
- "The dog ate my homework!" said Ivan. - Ivan said the dog his homework.  
A. was eating              B. has eaten                      C. ate                      D. had eaten
- "At one o'clock, I was having lunch," said Molly. - Molly said she \_\_\_\_ lunch at one o'clock.  
A. had been having      B. has had                      C. is having                      D. has been having
- "You'll get wet without an umbrella," Dad said. - Dad said I \_\_\_\_ wet without an umbrella.  
A. will be getting      B. got                      C. would be getting      D. would get
- "Please don't leave your dirty football boots in the hall," Mum said to Doug.  
Mum told Doug \_\_\_\_ dirty football boots in the hall.  
A. that he doesn't leave his                      B. not to leave his  
C. not to leave your                      D. don't leave his
- "Could you tell us where you were at six o'clock?" the police officer asked Barry.  
The police officer asked Barry \_\_\_\_ had been at six o'clock.  
A. telling him where you                      B. where he tells him he  
C. to tell him where you                      D. to tell him where he
- "Could I have your e-mail address?" I asked Mariella. - I asked Mariella \_\_\_\_ e-mail address.  
A. to give me her      B. give me your                      C. give me her                      D. gave me your
- "Can I have a new Xbox for my birthday?" I asked my mum.  
I asked my mum \_\_\_\_ a new Xbox for my birthday.  
A. that she gets me      B. get me                      C. to get me                      D. if she could have me
- "You can sit here," the stewardess said. - The stewardess said \_\_\_\_.  
A. you can sit here      B. I could sit here                      C. I could sit there                      D. you could sit there
- "Anna left here an hour ago," she said. - She told me that \_\_\_\_.  
A. Anna had left here an hour ago                      B. Anna had left there an hour ago  
C. Anna had left here an hour before                      D. Anna had left there an hour before
- "I don't want anything to eat now," he said. - He said \_\_\_\_.  
A. he doesn't want anything to eat now                      B. he didn't want anything to eat then  
C. I didn't want anything to eat then                      D. I didn't want anything to eat now
- "I've only had this new bicycle since yesterday," Karen said. - Karen said that \_\_\_\_.  
A. I had only had this new bicycle since yesterday  
B. he had only had that new bicycle since the day before  
C. I had only had this new bicycle since the day before  
D. he's only had that new bicycle since the day before
- "Don't waste water, Mum said to Mary. - Mum told Mary \_\_\_\_.  
A. that she doesn't waste water                      B. to waste water  
C. don't waste water                      D. not to waste water
- The shop assistant finally agreed \_\_\_\_ a full refund.  
A. giving me                      B. to give me                      C. give to me                      D. to me to give
- Bill asked me why \_\_\_\_ to go shopping with me.  
A. I hadn't invited him                      B. hadn't I invited him





- C. Peter advised Mary not to write her CV.  
D. Peter wanted Mary to help with the CV.
3. He received a letter saying that his application has been rejected.  
A. The letter he received said that his application had been rejected.  
B. His application has been rejected by the letter he received.  
C. It is said in the letter he received that his application has been rejected.  
D. That his application has been rejected is why he received with the letter.
4. "Your application must be submitted before the end of the month," said the secretary to applicants.  
A. The secretary told the applicants not to submit their application before the end of the month.  
B. The secretary said that the application had to be submitted before the end of the month.  
C. The secretary asked that the applicants submit their application before the end of the month.  
D. The secretary reminded the applicants to submit their applications before the end of the month.
5. "Have your seat, please," said the interviewer to him.  
A. The interviewer invited him to sit down.  
B. The interviewer offers him a post.  
C. The interviewer asked him where his seat was.  
D. The interviewer left him a seat.
6. "Never leave any gap unfilled in your application form," the student consultant said.  
A. The student consultant said he never left any gap unfilled in his application form.  
B. The student consultant advised the students not to leave any gap unfilled in their application form.  
C. The student consultant told the students to leave any gap unfilled in their application form.  
D. The student consultant helped the students leave gap unfilled in their application form.
7. "You should learn about the company before you come for the interview," said the teacher to class.  
A. The teacher suggested that the students learn about the company before coming for the interview.  
B. The teacher asked the students to learn about the company before coming for the interview.  
C. The teacher requested that the students learn about the company before coming for the interview.  
D. The teacher warned the students to learn about the company before coming for the interview.
8. John said "You had better not lend them any money, Daisy".  
A. John said Daisy not to lend them any money.  
B. John advised Daisy should not lend any money.  
C. John said to Daisy not lend them any money.  
D. John advised Daisy not to lend them any money.
9. "I'm sorry I have to leave so early", he said.  
A. He apologized for having to leave early.  
B. He apologized to have to leave early.  
C. He apologized that he has to leave early  
D. He apologized to have left early.
10. "Can I borrow your pen please, Sam?", said Gillian.  
A. Gillian asked Sam if she can borrow his pen.

- B. Gillian asked Sam if she could borrow his pen.  
 C. Gillian asked Sam she can borrow his pen.  
 D. Gillian asked Sam she could borrow his pen.
11. "Where did you go last night, Nam?", said Hoa  
 A. Hoa said to Nam where had he gone the night before.  
 B. Hoa said to Nam where he had gone the night before.  
 C. Hoa told Nam where he had gone last night.  
 D. Hoa asked Nam where he had gone the night before.
12. "What were you doing last night, Mr. John?" The police asked.  
 A. The police asked what were you doing last night, Mr. John.  
 B. The police asked Mr. John what he had been doing the night before.  
 C. The police asked Mr. John what had he been done the night before.  
 D. The police asked Mr. John what he had done the night before.
13. "Are you fond of watching television?", Miss Ngân said to Mr. Bình.  
 A. Miss Ngân told Mr. Bình if he is fond of watching television.  
 B. Miss Ngân asked Mr. Bình if he was fond of watching television.  
 C. Miss Ngân invited Mr. Bình to be fond of watching television.  
 D. Miss Ngân suggested Mr. Bình to watching television
14. "Will Mary be here for five days?, Tom asked Thu.  
 A. Tom asked Thu will Mary be here for five days.  
 B. Tom asked Thu how long would Mary be there.  
 C. Tom asked Thu whether Mary would be there for five days or not.  
 D. Tom asked Thu how long Mary would be there.
15. "Where are you going Nam?", Lan asked.  
 A. Lan asked Nam where he was going.  
 B. Lan asked Nam where he is going.  
 C. Lan asked Nam where to go.  
 D. Lan asked Nam where you were going.
16. "Where does your father work?", the teacher asked me.  
 A. The teacher asked me where your father worked.  
 B. The teacher asked me where my father worked.  
 C. The teacher asked me where did my father work.  
 D. The teacher asked me where did my father work.
17. "How far is it from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu?", a tourist asked.  
 A. A tourist asked how far is it from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu.  
 B. A tourist asked how far it is from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu.  
 C. A tourist asked how far was it from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu.  
 D. A tourist asked how far it was from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu.
18. "How many people are there in your family?", he asked Lan.  
 A. He asked Lan how many people are there in my family.  
 B. He asked Lan how many people there are in my family.  
 C. He asked Lan how many people there were in her family.  
 D. He asked Lan how many people were there in her family.
19. "How long will you stay in England?", Tâm's friends asked him.  
 A. Tâm's friends asked him how long will he stay in England.  
 B. Tâm's friends asked him how long he will stay in England.  
 C. Tâm's friends asked him how long he would stay in England.



- D. Tâm's friends asked him how long would he stay in England.
20. "We are very tired.", they said.  
A. They said we were very tired.  
B. They said they were very tired.  
C. They said we are very tired.  
D. They said they are very tired.
21. "His sister said, "I don't buy this book. "  
A. His sister said I don't buy this book.  
B. His sister said she didn't buy this book.  
C. His sister said I didn't buy that book.  
D. His sister said she didn't buy that book.
22. They said, "We have to try our best to win the match. "  
A. They said we have to try our best to win the match.  
B. They said we have to try their best to win the match.  
C. They said they had to try their best to win the match.  
D. They said they had to try our best to win the match.
23. She said to Nam: "Come into my office, please. "  
A. She told Nam to come into her office.  
B. She told Nam to come into my office.  
C. She said Nam come into her office, please.  
D. She said Nam come into my office, please.
24. The traffic policeman said, "Show me your driving license, please. "  
A. The traffic policeman asked to show me your driving license, please.  
B. The traffic policeman suggested to show him your driving license.  
C. The traffic policeman suggested showing him my driving license.  
D. The traffic policeman asked to show me his driving license.
25. Mrs. Jackson said to Alice, "Could you give me a hand, please"  
A. Mrs. Jackson said Alice if she could give her a hand.  
B. Mrs. Jackson told Alice to give her a hand.  
C. Mrs. Jackson asked to Alice to give her a hand.  
D. Mrs. Jackson cursed Alice if she could give her a hand.
26. Nam said to the taxi driver, "Please turn left at the first traffic light. "  
A. Nam asked the taxi driver please turn left at the first traffic light.  
B. Nam said the taxi driver to turn left at the first traffic light.  
C. Nam asked the taxi driver turning left at the first traffic light.  
D. Nam told the taxi driver to turn left at the first traffic light.
27. The police said, "Don't touch anything in the room. "  
A. The police commanded us not to touch anything in the room.  
B. The police advised to not touch anything in the room.  
C. The police said not touch anything in the room.  
D. The police asked not touching anything in the room.
28. "Would you like to have dinner with me?", Miss Hoa said to me  
A. Miss Hoa asked me if would I like to have dinner with her?  
B. Miss Hoa suggested me if I would like to have dinner with her or not.  
C. Miss Hoa told me to like to have dinner with her or not.  
D. Miss Hoa invited me to have dinner with her.
29. "You should stay in bed", I said to him.

- A. I said him he should stay in bed.  
 B. I advised him to stay in bed.  
 C. I prayed him to stay in bed.  
 D. I ordered him you should stay in bed.
30. My mother told me "You should visit your grandmother tomorrow"  
 A. My mother told me I should visit your grandmother tomorrow.  
 B. My mother invited me to visit my grandmother tomorrow.  
 C. My mother advised me to visit my grandmother the day after.  
 D. My mother urged me visiting my grandmother the next day.
31. "I will expect to see you next Wednesday", said Mary to her boy friend.  
 A. Mary sai to her boy friend she would expect to see you the following Wednesday.  
 B. Mary promised her boy friend that she would expect to see you the following Wednesday.  
 C. Mary expected to see her boy friend the following Wednesday.  
 D. Mary told boy her friend that she would expect to see him the next Wednesday.
32. "Do you enjoy reading books?", Phong asked Peter.  
 A. Phong asked Peter if he enjoyed reading books.  
 B. Phong asked Peter whether he enjoys reading books or not.  
 C. Phong asked Peter if he enjoyed reading books or not.  
 D. Phong asked Peter whether did he enjoy reading books.
33. "Does she like sports?", Hoa asked Lan.  
 A. Hoa asked Lan whether she liked sports or not.  
 B. Hoa asked Lan if she liked sports or not.  
 C. Hoa asked Lan whether did she like sports.  
 D. Hoa asked Lan if did she like sports.
34. "I am sorry I didn't wait for you," Mary said to John.  
 A. Mary apologized for not waiting for John.  
 B. Mary insisted on not waiting for John.  
 C. Mary sorry for not waiting for John.  
 D. Mary denied not waiting for John
35. "Let's stay here until the storm has passed!", someone said.  
 A. Someone said that let them stay there until storm had passed.  
 B. Someone told me to stay there until the storm has passed.  
 C. Someone suggested staying there until the storm had passed.  
 D. Someone asked whether we stayed there until the storm has passed.
36. "I'm sorry I forgot your birthday", Harry told Mary.  
 A. Harry said sorry to Mary for forgetting her birthday.  
 B. Harry felt sorry to forget Mary's birthday.  
 C. Harry apologized to Mary for having forgotten her birthday.  
 D. Harry really felt a pity not to remember Mary's birthday.
37. "I won't be home this evening because I have to work late," Mike said. - Mike said that \_\_\_\_.  
 A. I wouldn't be home this evening because I had to work late  
 B. he wouldn't be home this evening because he had to work late  
 C. he won't be home this evening because he has to work late  
 D. he wouldn't be home that evening because he had to work late
38. "You'd better stay at home during this time" he said to Lan.  
 A. He ordered Lan to stay at home during that time.  
 B. He warmed Lan against staying at home during that time.

- C. He advised Lan to stay at home during that time.  
D. He thanked Lan for staying at home during that time.
39. "What have you done to my laptop, Jane?" asked Tom.  
A. Tom asked Jane what had she done to his laptop.  
B. Tom asked Jane what has she done to his laptop.  
C. Tom asked Jane what she had done to his laptop.  
D. Tom asked Jane what she has done to his laptop.
40. "When did you start practising yoga?" asked Tom.  
A. Tom wanted to know when I had started practising yoga.  
B. Tom wanted to know when had I started practising yoga.  
C. Tom wanted to know when did I start practising yoga.  
D. Tom wanted to know when I was starting practising yoga.
41. "Why didn't you attend the meeting, Mary?" Tom asked.  
A. Tom asked Mary why didn't she attend the meeting.  
B. Tom asked Mary why she hadn't attended the meeting.  
C. Tom asked Mary why hadn't she attended the meeting.  
D. Tom asked Mary why she wasn't attending the meeting.
42. "How long have you lived here, Lucy?" asked Jack.  
A. Jack asked Lucy how long did she live here.  
B. Jack asked Lucy how long had she lived there.  
C. Jack asked Lucy how long she lived here.  
D. Jack asked Lucy how long she had lived there.
43. "You had better see a doctor if the sore throat does not clear up," she said to me.  
A. She reminded me of seeing a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.  
B. She ordered me to see a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.  
C. She insisted that I see a doctor unless the sore throat did not clear up.  
D. She suggested that I see a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.
44. "Why don't we go out for dinner tonight?" said Jim.  
A. Jim suggested going out for dinner that night.  
B. Jim refused to go out for dinner that night.  
C. Jim denied going out for dinner that night.  
D. Jim promised to go out for dinner that night.
45. "You got an A in Chemistry. Congratulations!" Peter said to his classmate.  
A. Peter encouraged his classmate to get an A in Chemistry.  
B. Peter persuaded his classmate to get an A in Chemistry.  
C. Peter insisted on getting an A in Chemistry for his classmate.  
D. Peter congratulated his classmate on getting an A in Chemistry.
46. "No, I won't go to work at the weekend," said Sally.  
A. Sally refused to go to work at the weekend.  
B. Sally promised to go to work at the weekend.  
C. Sally apologized for not going to work at the weekend.  
D. Sally regretted not going to work at the weekend.
47. "We will not leave until we see the manager," said the customers.  
A. The customers promised to leave before they saw the manager.  
B. The customers refused to leave until they saw the manager.  
C. The customers agreed to leave before they saw the manager.  
D. The customers decided to leave because they did not see the manager.

48. "Why don't we go camping at the weekend?" he said.
- A. He denied going camping at the weekend.
  - B. He suggested going camping at the weekend.
  - C. He objected to going camping at the weekend.
  - D. He apologized for going camping at the weekend.
49. "I didn't give John the money," said Mary.
- A. Mary denied giving John the money.
  - B. Mary admitted giving John the money.
  - C. Mary suggested giving John the money.
  - D. Mary remembered giving John the money.
50. "Would you like to go to the show with me?" Anna said to Bella.
- A. Anna reminded Bella to go to the show with her.
  - B. Anna persuaded Bella to go to the show with her.
  - C. Anna encouraged Bella to go to the show with her.
  - D. Anna invited Bella to go to the show with her.
51. "You should take better care of your health," said Tom's mother.
- A. Tom's mother promised to take better care of his health.
  - B. Tom's mother ordered him to take better care of his health.
  - C. Tom's mother required him to take better care of his health.
  - D. Tom's mother advised him to take better care of his health.
52. "Don't forget to submit your assignments by Thursday," said the teacher to the students.
- A. The teacher reminded the students to submit their assignments by Thursday.
  - B. The teacher allowed the students to submit their assignments by Thursday.
  - C. The teacher ordered the students to submit their assignments by Thursday.
  - D. The teacher encouraged the students to submit their assignments by Thursday.
53. "I'm sorry I haven't finished the assignment," Fiona said.
- A. Fiona denied having finished the assignment.
  - B. Fiona regretted having finished the assignment.
  - C. Fiona refused to finish the assignment.
  - D. Fiona apologised for not finishing the assignment.
54. "I'll call you as soon as I arrive at the airport," he said to me.
- A. He objected to calling me as soon as he arrived at the airport.
  - B. He promised to call me as soon as he arrived at the airport.
  - C. He denied calling me as soon as he arrived at the airport.
  - D. He reminded me to call him as soon as he arrived at the airport.
55. "What are you going to do after school, Anne?" Kevin asked.
- A. Kevin asked Anne what was she going to do after school.
  - B. Kevin asked Anne what she was going to do after school.
  - C. Kevin wanted to know what Anne would do after school.
  - D. Kevin wanted to know what would Anne do after school.
56. He said: "I'm sorry I didn't reply to the letter."
- A. He apologized for not to reply to the letter.
  - B. He apologized for not to replying to the letter.
  - C. He apologized for didn't reply to the letter.
  - D. He apologized for not replying to the letter.
57. "It can't be Mike who leaked the document, it might be Tom." said our manager.
- A. Our manager suspected Tom of having leaked the document not Mike.

- B. Our manager blamed Tom for having leaked the document instead of Mike.  
 C. Our manager showed his uncertainty about who leaked the document: Mike or Tom.  
 D. Our manager made it clear that Tom was the one who leaked the document, not Mike.
58. "Tom, please don't tell anyone my new telephone number." said Jane.  
 A. Jane told Tom please don't tell anyone my new telephone number.  
 B. Jane asked Tom not to tell anyone her new telephone number.  
 C. Jane said to Tom not to tell anyone her new telephone number, please.  
 D. Jane wanted Tom didn't tell anyone my new telephone number.
59. "You broke my glasses," said the woman to me.  
 A. The woman insisted on breaking her glasses.  
 B. The woman advised me to break her glasses.  
 C. The woman told me to break her glasses.  
 D. The woman blamed me for breaking her glasses.
60. The doctor said, "You really ought to rest for a few days, Jasmine."  
 A. Jasmine's doctor insisted that she should rest for a few days.  
 B. The doctor suggested that Jasmine should take a short rest.  
 C. The doctor strongly advised Jasmine to take a few days' rest.  
 D. It is the doctor's recommendation that Jasmine rested shortly.
61. "Don't forget to go to the supermarket after work!" he said.  
 A. He told me that I shouldn't forget to go to the supermarket after work.  
 B. He requested me not to forget to go to the supermarket after work.  
 C. He reminded me to go to the supermarket after work.  
 D. He asked me no to forget to go to the supermarket after work
62. "If I were you, I would do morning exercise regularly." said John.  
 A. John asked me to do morning exercise regularly.  
 B. John prevented me from doing morning exercise regularly.  
 C. John advised me to do morning exercise regularly.  
 D. John congratulated me on doing morning exercise regularly.
63. "Don't leave the house until I get back, John " his sister said.  
 A. John's sister told him to leave the house when she got back.  
 B. John's sister told him not to go out until she gets back.  
 C. John's sister told him not to leave the house until she got back.  
 D. John's sister told him to stay at home till she got back.
64. Mary said: "I am sure that you broke my vase, Jim".  
 A. Mary accused Jim of having broken her vase.  
 B. Mary said she knew that Jim broke her vase.  
 C. Mary asked Jim of having broken her vase.  
 D. Mary told Jim to break the vase.
65. "Shall I carry the suitcase for you, Mary?" said John.  
 A. John offered Mary to carry the suitcase for Mary.  
 B. John offered to carry the suitcase for Mary.  
 C. John offered carrying the suitcase for Mary.  
 D. John offered Mary if he should carry the suitcase for her.
66. "I was not there at the time," he said.  
 A. He denied to have been there at the time.  
 B. He denied that he had not been there at the time.  
 C. He denied to be there at the time.



- D. He denied having been there at the time.
67. "Leave my house now or I'll call the police!" shouted the lady to the man.
- A. The lady threatened to call the police if the man didn't leave her house.
  - B. The lady said that she would call the police if the man didn't leave her house.
  - C. The lady told the man that she would call the police if he didn't leave her house.
  - D. The lady informed the man that she would call the police if he didn't leave her house.
68. "You did a great job! I'm proud of your achievement," said the woman to her grandchild.
- A. The woman said that her grandchild's job was great and she was so proud of his work achievement.
  - B. The woman told her grandchild that she was proud of his achievement at work.
  - C. The woman told her grandchild to do a great job so that she could be proud of his achievement.
  - D. The woman complimented her grandchild on his achievement.
69. "I will let you know the answer by the end of this week," Tim said to Jane.
- A. Tim suggested giving Jane the answer by the end of the week.
  - B. Tim promised to give Jane the answer by the end of the week.
  - C. Tim insisted on letting Jane know the answer by the end of the week.
  - D. Tim offered to give Jane the answer by the end of the week.
70. "John, why don't you go on a picnic with me next weekend?" said Janet.
- A. Janet suggested John went on a picnic with her the next weekend.
  - B. Janet suggested John go on a picnic with her the next weekend.
  - C. Janet suggested John should go on a picnic with her next weekend.
  - D. Janet suggested John to go on a picnic with her next weekend.
71. "Don't come home late, Jenny, it's dangerous!" her father said.
- A. Jenny's father told her not to go home late and it was dangerous.
  - B. Jenny's father told her not to go home late because it was dangerous.
  - C. Jenny's father advised her to go home early.
  - D. Jenny's father asked her not to go home late because it may be dangerous.
72. His wife said to him: "Write to me as often as you can".
- A. His wife told him to write to her as often as he can.
  - B. His wife told him to write to her as often as he could.
  - C. His wife told him to write to her as often as he could.
  - D. His wife told him to write to her as often as he can.
73. "Would you like some coffee?" Peter asked me.
- A. Peter asked me if I liked coffee.
  - B. Peter offered to give me some coffee.
  - C. Peter asked me to make him some coffee.
  - D. Peter, do you like some coffee?
74. "Sure, I'll lend you my car this afternoon," Paul said to me.
- A. Paul asked me to lend him my car.
  - B. Paul refused to lend me his car.
  - C. Paul suggested lending me his car.
  - D. Paul agreed to lend me his car.
75. Our teacher said, "The Second World War broke out in 1939".
- A. Our teacher told us that the Second World War had broken out in 1939.
  - B. Our teacher told that the Second World War had broken out in 1939.
  - C. Our teacher said that the Second World War broke out in 1939.

- D. Our teacher said us that the Second World War had broken out in 1939.
76. Charles said, "I saw Jack at a party a few months ago and he seemed fine."  
A. Charles said he had seen Jack at a party a few months before and he had seemed fine.  
B. Charles said I saw Jack at a party a few months before and he seemed fine.  
C. Charles said he had seen Jack at a pally a few months before and he seemed fine.  
D. Charles said he saw Jack at a party a few months before and he seemed fine.
77. "I will let you know the answer by the end of this week," Tom said to Janet.  
A. Tom promised to give Janet the answer by the end of the week.  
B. Tom insisted on letting Janet know the answer by the end of the week.  
C. Tom offered to give Janet the answer by the end of this week.  
D. Tom suggested giving Janet the answer by the end of the week.
78. My friend told me, "If I were you, I would not smoke so much."  
A. My friend prohibited me from smoking so much.  
B. My friend warned me against smoking so much.  
C. My friend advised me not to smoke so much.  
D. My friend suggested not smoking so much.
79. "I wasn't in the shop when the robbery happened," the suspect exclaimed.  
A. The suspect said that he was in the shop when the robbery had happened.  
B. The suspect denied having been in the shop when the robbery took place.  
C. The suspect said he wished he was in the shop when the robbers came.  
D. The suspect said he didn't see any robbers in the shop.
80. Alfred said to John, "I didn't use your computer! Someone else did, not me."  
A. Alfred told John that he hadn't used his computer, saying that someone else had.  
B. Alfred denied having used John's computer, saying that someone else had.  
C. Alfred refused to use John's computer, saying that someone else had.  
D. Alfred said to John that he hadn't used his computer, saying that someone else had.
81. The teacher gave us permission to leave the room.  
A. "You must leave the room," the teacher told us.  
B. "You ought to leave the room," the teacher told us.  
C. "I give you permission leaving the room," the teacher told us.  
D. "You may leave the room," the teacher told us.
82. "Why didn't you send me the brochure?" Mr. William asked the agent.  
A. Mr. William asked the agent why she didn't send him the brochure.  
B. Mr. William asked the agent to send him the brochure.  
C. Mr. William asked the agent not to send him the brochure.  
D. Mr. William asked the agent why she had not sent him the brochure.
83. "Why don't you reply to the President's offer right now?" said Mary to her husband.  
A. Mary suggested that her husband should reply to the President's offer without delay.  
B. Mary told her husband to reply to the President's offer right now.  
C. Mary ordered her husband to reply to the President's offer right now.  
D. Mary wondered why her husband didn't reply to the President's offer then.
84. "No, no, you really must stay a bit longer!" said the boys.  
A. The boys denied my staying a bit longer.  
B. The boys refused to let me stay a bit longer.  
C. The boys didn't agree to let stay a bit longer.  
D. The boys insisted on my staying a bit longer.
85. "Why don't you ask your parents for advice?" said Tom.

- A. Tom wanted to know the reason why I don't ask my parents for advice.  
B. Tom advised me asking my parents for advice.  
C. Tom suggested that I ask my parents for advice.  
D. Tom said to me to ask my parents for advice.
86. "Why don't you get your hair cut, Gavin?" said Adam.  
A. Adam advised Gavin to cut his hair.  
B. Gavin was suggested to have a haircut.  
C. It was suggestible that Adam get Gavin's haircut.  
D. Adam suggested that Gavin should have his haircut.
87. The doctor said, "You really ought to rest for a few days, Janet."  
A. Janet's doctor insisted that she should rest for a few days.  
B. The doctor suggested that Janet should rest for a few days.  
C. It is the doctor's recommendation that Janet rested shortly.  
D. The doctor strongly advised Janet to take a few days' rest.
88. "I'll return it tomorrow," said Sarah.  
A. Sarah offered to return it the following day.  
B. Sarah said she would return it tomorrow.  
C. Sarah agreed to come back the following day.  
D. Sarah promised to return it the following day.
89. The suspect denied having been present at the bank when the robbery took place.  
A. The suspect said that he was not present at the bank when the robbery took place.  
B. The suspect refused to be present at the bank when the robbery took place.  
C. The suspect refused to say where he was when the robbery took place.  
D. The suspect confirmed that he was around the bank at the time of the robbery.
90. "If I were you, I would never turn the television up late at night," the man told his daughter.  
A. The man ordered his daughter not to turn the television up when it's late at night.  
B. The man wished his daughter didn't turn the television up late at night.  
C. The man advised his daughter not to turn the television up when it's late at night.  
D. The man said if he was his daughter, he would turn the television down at night.
91. "I'll pay back the money, Gloria," said Ivan.  
A. Ivan suggested paying back the money to Gloria.  
B. Ivan promised to pay back Gloria's money.  
C. Ivan apologized to Gloria for borrowing her money.  
D. Ivan offered to pay back Gloria the money back.
92. Tom told his girlfriend, "Let me tell him if you can't".  
A. Tom volunteered to tell him if his girlfriend couldn't.  
B. Tom advised his girlfriend to tell him if you couldn't.  
C. Tom suggested that I should tell him if his girlfriend couldn't.  
D. Tom asked his girlfriend to tell him if you couldn't.
93. "You're always making terrible mistakes," said the teacher.  
A. The teacher asked his students why they always made terrible mistakes,  
B. The teacher realized that his students always made terrible mistakes.  
C. The teacher complained about his students making terrible mistakes.  
D. The teacher made his students not always make terrible mistakes.
94. "Why I haven't thought of this before," Dung said to himself.  
A. Dung advised himself not to have thought of that before.  
B. Dung suggested himself not thinking of that before.

- C. Dung said that why he hadn't thought of that before.  
 D. Dung wondered why he hadn't thought of that before.
95. "I claim that you took my money," she said to the housekeeper.  
 A. She insisted on the housekeeper taking her money.  
 B. She admitted the housekeeper having taken her money.  
 C. She warned the housekeeper against taking her money.  
 D. She accused the housekeeper of having taken her money.
96. "No, I didn't tell Jim our plan," said Tom.  
 A. Tom refused to tell Jim their plan.  
 B. Tom denied having told Jim their plan.  
 C. Tom denied to tell Jim their plan.  
 D. Tom didn't agree to tell Jim their plan.
97. Trust me! Do not invest all your money in one business," said Adam.  
 A. Adam ordered me to invest all my money in one business.  
 B. Adam persuaded me not to invest all my money in one business.  
 C. Adam offered to help me to invest all my money in one business.  
 D. Adam encouraged me to invest all my money in one business.
98. "If I were in your shoes, I would try to finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment," said the professor to his research student.  
 A. The professor advised his research student to try to finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment.  
 B. The professor complained that his research student didn't finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment.  
 C. The professor told his research student that he wished he could finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment.  
 D. The professor regretted that his research student didn't try to finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment.
99. "Would you like to have lunch with me on Sunday?" he said to me.  
 A. He invited me to have lunch with him on Sunday.  
 B. He offered me to have lunch with him on Sunday.  
 C. He suggested me to have lunch with him on Sunday.  
 D. He reminded me to have lunch with him on Sunday.
100. "You'd better apologize for being late," said my mother.  
 A. My mother advised me to apologize for being late.  
 B. My mother suggested me to apologize for being late.  
 C. My mother suggested apologizing for being late.  
 D. My mother warned me to apologize for being late.

**III. Rewrite the following sentences in Reported Speech (Statements/Questions)**

1. Nam said: "I am told to be at school before 7 o'clock".  
 → .....
2. Thu said: "All the students will have a meeting next week".  
 → .....
3. Phong said: "My parents are very proud of my good marks".

→ .....

4. The teacher said: "All the homework must be done carefully".

→ .....

5. Her father said to her: "You can go to the movie with your friend".

→ .....

6. "Do you enjoy reading?", Phong asked Peter.

→ .....

7. "Do your sister and brother go to the same school?", she asked Nam.

→ .....

8. "Are there any oranges in the fridge?", she asked her mom.

→ .....

9. "Were you reading this book at 8 o'clock last Sunday?", she asked Ba.

→ .....

10. "Will it rain tomorrow morning?", he asked his friend.

→ .....

11. "Where does your father work?" the teacher asked me.

→ .....

12. "How many people are there in your family?" she asked Lan.

→ .....

13. Tam's friend asked him: "How long will you stay in England?"

→ .....

14. The teacher said to Lien: "What's your hobby?"

→ .....

15. "How do you go to the airport?" his friend asked him.

→ .....

16. "I wish I hadn't gone to the party last night" she said.

→ .....

17. "The Earth moves around the Sun", my teacher said.

→ .....

18. Peter said: "I want to tell you the news. You must be surprised"

→ .....



19. The woman said: "When I was walking on the pavement, a strange man stopped and asked me the way to the nearest bank."

→ .....

20. "How many lessons are you going to learn next month?", he asked me.

→ .....

**IV. Rewrite the following sentences in Reported Speech (Conditional in reported speech)**

1. He said, "If I catch the plane, I'll be home by five."

→ .....

2. He said, "If I had a permit, I could get a job."

→ .....

3. "If she had loved Tom," he said, "she wouldn't have left him."

→ .....

4. He said, "If you have time what will you do?"

→ .....

5. She said, "If you want to lose weight, you must eat less bread."

→ .....

6. He said, "If I had a map, I would lend it to you."

→ .....

7. He said, "If I had known that you were coming, I would have met you t the airport."

→ .....

8. He wondered, "If the baby is the girl what will they call her?"

→ .....

9. He said, "If I lived near my office, I'd be in time for work."

→ .....

10. She said, "If you feel ill, why don't you go to bed?"

→ .....

**V. Rewrite the following sentences in Reported Speech (Reported speech with gerund and infinitives)**

1. "Why don't we organize an English competition for our students?" said Ms Lien.

=> Ms Lien suggested .....

2. "I'm sorry I'm late," said Mr Thanh.

=> Mr Thanh apologized .....

3. "Me? No, I didn't take Sue's calculator," Said Bob.

- =>Bob denied .....
4. "You took my pencil," said David to Henry.  
=>accused .....
5. "I must see the manager," he cried.  
=>He insisted .....
6. "If you wanted to take my bike, you should have asked me first," said Mike to his brother.  
=>Mike criticized .....
7. "You won the scholarship. Congratulation!" Mary told me.  
=>Mary congratulated .....
8. "It was kind of you to help me with my homework," Lan said to Hoa.  
=>Lan thanked .....
9. "Turn off the computer. You are not allowed to play game now," Dick's mother said to him.  
=>Dick's mother prevented .....
10. "I'm sorry that I broke the glass," said Peter.  
=>Peter apologized .....
11. "Let's invite Mr. Brown to the party next weekend," he said.  
=>He suggested .....
12. "You stole the jewels," the inspector said to him.  
=>The inspector accused .....
13. "I only borrowed your car for some hours," the man said.  
=>The man admitted .....
14. "I'm sorry I damaged your tape recorder, Mike," said Bob.  
=>Bob apologized .....
15. "It's nice of you to invite me to lunch," Bob said to John.  
=>Bob thanked .....
16. "Remember to write to me soon," she said to me.  
=>She reminded .....
17. "You'd better spend more time learning to write," I said to the boy.  
=>I advised .....
18. "Would you like to have dinner with us tonight?" Mike said to Linda.  
=>Mike invited .....
19. "Please, please turn off the T.V, John," said Tom.  
=>Tom begged .....
20. "Don't lean your bicycles against my windows, boys," said the shopkeeper.  
=>The shopkeeper warned .....
21. "Open the safe," the robber said to the bank clerk.  
=>The robber ordered .....
22. "Leave this space clean, David," she said.  
=>She told .....
23. "Shall I open the window for you, Edna?" he said.  
=>He offered .....

24. "I'll wait for you. I promise," he said to me.

=>He promised .....

25. "Would you like to come with me?" John said to Mary.

=>John invited .....

26. "Don't forget to take the holiday," Mark said to me.

=>Mark reminded me .....

27. "You should take a holiday," Jane said to David.

=>Jane advised .....

28. "I thought you took a holiday last summer," Tom said to Sophia.

=>John expected Sophia .....

29. "Taking a holiday would be a good idea," George said.

=>George proposed .....

30. "You really must take a holiday, Linda," Jim said.

=>Jim told .....

### I. CÁCH SỬ DỤNG ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ

ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ KHÔNG DẤU PHẪY		
N chỉ người	who / that	V
N chỉ người	whom / who / that	S + V
N chỉ người và vật	that	S + V
N chỉ vật	which / that	V / S V
N chỉ người / vật	whose	N + S V

TRẠNG TỪ QUAN HỆ TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ KHÔNG DẤU PHẪY		
Thời gian	when = in, on, at + which	S V
Nơi chốn	where = in, on, at + which	S V
Lý do	why = for which	S V

⇒ **THAT**: thay thế cho WHO/ WHOM/ WHICH trong MĐQH không dấu phẩy

TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐẶT DẤU PHẪY TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ	
- Danh từ riêng (Viết hoa) : Mary, Peter	- this, that, these, those + N(s) : This book ...
- Tính từ sở hữu + N : my, his, her....., your + N	- Sở hữu cách ( N's N ) : Hoa's book

### PHẢI DÙNG "THAT" KHI

- Hình thức so sánh nhất ( the most , the adj-est )
- Đi sau các từ: **only, the first, the last**
- Danh từ chỉ người và vật
- Sau các đại từ **bất định**, đại từ **phủ định**, đại từ chỉ **số lượng**: no one, nobody, something, somebody, all, some, any, little, none.
- Cấu trúc câu **chẻ** It is/was.....that.....

**Chú ý** : Không dùng "THAT" khi có dấu phẩy và sau giới từ.

### II PHƯƠNG PHÁP LÀM BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM VỀ " WHO / WHOM / WHICH/ WHOSE..."

#### .CẦN CHÚ Ý KHI LÀM BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM

- N chỉ người thường tận cùng bằng gốc " or, er, ist, ian"
- N chỉ vật thường tận cùng bằng gốc " ion, ment, .."
- Phía sau là N thường dùng " Whose"
- (Một số N thường gặp như: car, son, daughter, book, houses, mother, father, brother, parents)
- Nơi chốn dùng " where" , thời gian dùng " when" , lý do = " why"
- So sánh nhất ( the most ..., the + adj-est) dùng " That"

### III. NỐI 2 CÂU DÙNG ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ (Đầu câu là Người dùng Who giữa và cuối dùng Whom)

PHƯƠNG PHÁP NỐI CÂU DÙNG ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ	
Cách thức áp dụng	Ví dụ minh họa
<b>Bước 1:</b> Xác định 2 từ giống ở câu 1 và câu 2 . <b>Câu 1 :</b> Xác định từ giống	Ex : Mary is a good teacher. I saw her last week Ta thấy "Mary" là tên riêng nên ta dùng dấu

<p>Xem có dùng dấu “,” không</p> <p><b>Câu 2:</b> Thay từ giống bằng :</p> <p>“who / whom = người”</p> <p>“which = vật”</p> <p>“where= nơi chốn”</p> <p>“when= t.gian”</p> <p>“whose = sở hữu”</p>	<p><b>phấy</b></p> <p>Do từ giống câu 2 nằm ở giữa câu nên ta dùng “Whom” thay cho vị trí đó .</p>
<b>Bước 2:</b> Dem “ Who/ which..” ra đầu câu 2	Mary is a good teacher.Whom I saw last week
<b>Bước 3:</b> Dem cả câu 2 đặt sau từ giống ở câu 1 và ghi phần còn lại câu 1 ( nếu có ).	Mary, whom I saw last week, is a good teacher

#### IV.GIỚI TỪ TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

##### Vị trí đúng trong mệnh đề quan hệ có giới từ

- Giới từ đứng trước đại từ quan hệ hoặc giới từ đứng sau động từ.
- Lưu ý: Giới từ không đứng trước đại từ quan hệ “ who và that”
- Ex1 : She is the woman **about whom** I told you  
She is the woman **who/whom/ that** I told you **about**.
- Khi giới từ là thành phần của cụm động từ thì không thể đem giới từ ra trước “**whom, which, whose**”
- Giới từ “ **WITHOUT**”không được đặt sau động từ mà phải đặt trước đại từ quan hệ.
- Ex2: Did you find the world which you were **looking up** ?  
NOT : \_\_\_\_the world up which you were looking ?
- Ex3: The woman **without whom** I can't live is Jane  
NOT : The woman whom can't live without is Jane

#### V.RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

Khi **động từ** trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể **chủ động**  
**+ am/is/are/was/were + V-ing**  
**+V1/Vs/es**  
**+V2/ed**  
**+has/have + V3/ed**  
 => Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ trợ động từ nếu có, **Động từ chính => V-ing**  
 E.g: That man, **who is standing** over there, is my best friend.  
 => That man, **standing** over there, is my best friend

Khi **động từ** trong ,mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể **bị động**  
**+am/is/are/was/were + V3/ed**  
**+have/has + been + V3/ed**  
 => Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ trợ động từ nếu có, **Động từ chính => V-3/ED**  
 E.g: The boy **who was injured** in the accident was taken to the hospital  
 =>The boy **injured** in the accident was taken to the hospital

Khi đại từ quan hệ làm chủ ngữ đứng sau  
**“first/last/second/only/next/one/ dạng so sánh nhất hoặc để chỉ mục đích, sự cho phép => Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ trợ động từ nếu có**  
**Động từ chính => To-V( chủ động)**  
**Động từ chính => to be V3/ed ( bị động)**  
 E.g: He was the last man **who left** the burning building.  
 => He was the last man **to leave** the burning building.





**Rút gọn mệnh đề bằng cụm danh từ có dạng: S + Be + N /cụm N/cụm giới từ**

=> Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ be

E.g: Football,**which is** a popular sport,ivery good for health.

=> Football, a popular sport,ivery good for health.

**Mệnh đề quan hệ chứa tobe và tính từ/cụm tính từ**

=> Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ be giữ nguyên tính từ phía sau

E.g:My grandmother,**who is** old and sick,never goes out of the house.

=> My grandmother, old and sick,never goes out of the house.

## VI.THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

I.Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- That's my friend, \_\_\_\_\_ comes from Japan.  
A. which                      B. who                      C. whom                      D. where.
- The plants which \_\_\_\_\_ in the living room need a lot of water.  
A. are                      B. be                      C. is                      D. was
- She's the woman \_\_\_\_\_ sister looks after the baby for us.  
A. who                      B. which                      C. that's                      D. whose
- That's the doctor for \_\_\_\_\_,Cliff works.  
A. that                      B. which                      C. whom                      D. whose
- Marie, \_\_\_\_\_ I met at the party, called me last night.  
A. that                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose
- I remember Alice, \_\_\_\_\_ rode the bus to school with.  
A. I                      B. whom I                      C. which I                      D. who
- I used to enjoy the summer, \_\_\_\_\_ we had a big family picnic.  
A. where                      B. when                      C. which                      D. that
- Tell me about the city \_\_\_\_\_ you grew up  
A. that                      B. where                      C. which                      D. x
- Anna found the book that \_\_\_\_\_ wanted at the bookshop.  
A. X                      B. where                      C. she                      D. which
- Please remember to take back to the library all the books \_\_\_\_\_ are due this week  
A. X                      B. that                      C. when                      D. they
- I have two sisters. \_\_\_\_\_ are doctors.  
A. both of which                      B. who both                      C. both of whom                      D. whom both
- Mexico City, \_\_\_\_\_ is the fastest growing city in the world , has a population of over 10 million.  
A. what                      B. which                      C. that                      D. where
- We visited the church \_\_\_\_\_ in the 19th century.  
A. was built                      B. which built                      C. building                      D. built
- Ms Young, to \_\_\_\_\_ many of her students are writing, is living happily and peacefully in Canada.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. that                      D. whose
15. That is the place \_\_\_\_\_ We visited last year.  
A. where                      B. which                      C. what                      D. when
16. Mr Smith, \_\_\_\_\_ a retired teacher, does volunteer work at the hospital.  
A. that                      B. whom                      C. who                      D. Ø
17. I want to know the reason \_\_\_\_\_ he told you last night.  
A. Why                      B. which                      C. where                      D. when
18. the girl \_\_\_\_\_ is our neighbor.  
A. talks to the lady over there                      C. was talking to the lady over there  
B. is talking to the lady over there                      D. talking to the lady over there
19. This is the best play \_\_\_\_\_ I have ever seen. The  
A. which                      B. what                      C. whom                      D. that
20. I know a nearby restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ has seafood.  
A. that                      B. who                      C. where                      D. whose
21. Taj Mahal \_\_\_\_\_ by Shah Janhan for his wife, is thought to be one of the great architectural wonders of the world.  
A. being built                      B. was built                      C. which was built                      D. been built
22. London is the city \_\_\_\_\_ I have visited several times.  
A. in which                      B. where                      C. in that                      D. which
23. Why do you always believe in everything \_\_\_\_\_ he says?  
A. who                      B. which                      C. when                      D. that
24. The young man.....was released after the court was found innocent of all the charges against him.  
A. who                      B. who he                      C. which                      D. whose
25. Is that the same film.....we watched last year?  
A. when                      B. which                      C. why                      D. who
26. The girl.....I borrowed the dictionary asked me to use it carefully.  
A. whose                      B. from whom                      C. from whose                      D. whom
27. The pollution .....they were talking is getting worse.  
A. that                      B. about which                      C. which                      D. whom
28. Robert Riva, an Italian player .....used to play for Cremonese, now coaches the Reigate under 11's football team.  
A. when                      B. which                      C. where                      D. who
29. When I was at school, there was a girl in my class .....skin was so sensitive that she couldn't expose her skin to the sun even with cream on.  
A. where                      B. whose                      C. whom                      D. that
30. Unfortunately, the friend with .....I intended to go on holiday to Side is ill, so I'll have to cancel my trip.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. where                      D. that
31. The new stadium, .....will be completed next year, will seat 30,000 spectators.  
A. what                      B. where                      C. when                      D. which
32. Blenheim Palace, .....Churchill was born, is now open to the public.  
A. when                      B. where                      C. which                      D. whose
33. The man.....I introduced you to last night may be the next president of the university.  
A. which                      B. whom                      C. whose                      D. why
34. Cathy is trustworthy. She's a person upon .....you can always depend.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. that                      D. ∅
35. Your career should focus on a field in.....you are genuinely interested.  
A. which                      B. what                      C. that                      D. ∅
36. People.....outlook on life is optimistic are usually happy people.  
A. whose                      B. whom                      C. that                      D. which
37. The girl .....dress you admire has been working for an export company since she left school.  
A. who                      B. what                      C. whose                      D. whom
38. One of the people arrested was Mary Arundel,.....is a member of the local council.  
A. that                      B. who                      C. whom                      D. ∅
39. The Titanic, .....Gsank in 1922, was supposed to be unsinkable.  
A. whose                      B. that                      C. which                      D. who
40. The Newspaper is owned by the Mearson Group, \_\_\_\_\_chairman is Sir James Bex.  
A. which                      B. that                      C. who                      D. whose
41. Genghis Khan, .....name means "very mighty ruler", was a Mongol emperor in the Middle Ages.  
A. whom                      B. whose                      C. who                      D. how
42. She has two brothers, .....are engineer.  
A. whom both                      B. both who                      C. both of whom                      D. both whom
43. Extinction means a situation .....a plant, an animal or a way of life stops existing.  
A. to which                      B. for which                      C. on which                      D. in which
44. The party, .....I was the guest of honor, was extremely enjoyable.  
A. at that                      B. at which                      C. to that                      D. to which
45. Ann has a lot of books, .....she has never read.  
A. most of that                      B. most of these                      C. most of which                      D. which most of them
46. We have just visited disadvantaged children in an orphanage.....in Bac Ninh Province.  
A. located                      B. locating                      C. which locates                      D. to locate
47. An endangered species is a species .....population is so small that it is in danger of becoming extinct.  
A. whose                      B. which                      C. what                      D. who
48. Pumpkin seeds, .....protein and iron, are a popular snack.  
A. that                      B. provide                      C. which                      D. which provide
49. He lives in a small town.....  
A. Where is called Taunton                      B. which is called Taunton  
C. is called Taunton                      D. that called Taunton
50. The scientists .....on this project try to find the solutions to air pollution.  
A. working                      B. worked                      C. are working                      D. who working
51. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ is our neighbor.  
A. talks to the lady over there                      C. was talking to the lady over there  
B. is talking to the lady over there                      D. talking to the lady over there
52. She didn't tell me the reason \_\_\_\_\_ she came late.  
A. when                      B. for which                      C. for why                      D. both B and C
53. This is the best play \_\_\_\_\_ I have ever seen.  
A. which                      B. what                      C. whom                      D. that

54. Taj Mahal, \_\_\_\_\_ by Shah Janhan for his wife, is thought to be one of the great architectural wonders of the world.  
A. building                      B. to build                      C. built                      D. to be built
55. More than a mile of roadway has been blocked with trees, stones and other debris, \_\_\_\_\_ the explosion.  
A. causing                      B. caused by                      C. which caused by                      D. which caused
56. I have a message for people \_\_\_\_\_ by the traffic chaos.  
A. to delay                      B. who delay                      C. delayed                      D. who delaying
57. Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex is the 8th World Heritage in Viet Nam \_\_\_\_\_ by UNESCO.  
A. to be recognised                      B. to recognise                      C. recognising                      D. recognised
58. Tom was the last \_\_\_\_\_ the classroom yesterday.  
A. to leave                      B. leaving                      C. left                      D. leaves
59. The palace \_\_\_\_\_ many centuries ago remains practically intact.  
A. building                      B. to build                      C. built                      D. people build
60. Many of the pictures \_\_\_\_\_ from outer space are presently on display in the public library  
A. sending                      B. sent                      C. which sent                      D. which is sending

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. The man \_\_\_\_\_, is the secretary.  
A. which you have just spoken                      B. whose you have just spoken  
C. to whom you have just spoken                      D. to who you have just spoken
2. It is the village where you \_\_\_\_\_, isn't it?  
A. used to living                      B. used to live                      C. use to live                      D. use living
3. We stayed at the Royal Hotel, \_\_\_\_\_ Peter recommended to us.  
A. that                      B. which                      C. where                      D. whom
4. He is believed \_\_\_\_\_ by terrorists two months ago.  
A. was killed                      B. to be killed                      C. being killed                      D. had been killed
5. The weather is expected \_\_\_\_\_ good tomorrow.  
A. will be                      B. to be                      C. is                      D. being
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is expected that the strike will end soon.  
A. It                      B. That                      C. This                      D. There
7. The police report that four people \_\_\_\_\_ in the accident.  
A. to be injured                      B. to have been injured                      C. are injured                      D. were injured
8. That's my friend, \_\_\_\_\_ comes from Japan.  
A. which                      B. who                      C. whom                      D. where.
9. The plants which \_\_\_\_\_ in the living room need a lot of water.  
A. are                      B. be                      C. is                      D. was
10. She's the woman \_\_\_\_\_ sister looks after the baby for us.  
A. who                      B. which                      C. that's                      D. whose
11. That's the doctor for \_\_\_\_\_ Cliff works.  
A. that                      B. which                      C. whom                      D. whose
12. Marie, \_\_\_\_\_ I met at the party, called me last night.  
A. that                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose
13. I remember Alice, \_\_\_\_\_ rode the bus to school with.  
A. I                      B. whom I                      C. which I                      D. who
14. I used to enjoy the summer, \_\_\_\_\_ we had a big family picnic.  
A. where                      B. when                      C. which                      D. that

15. Tell me about the city \_\_\_\_\_ you grew up.  
A. that                      B. where                      C. which                      D.  $\emptyset$
16. Anna found the book that \_\_\_\_\_ wanted at the bookshop.  
A.  $\emptyset$                       B. where                      C. she                      D. which
17. Please remember to take back to the library all the books \_\_\_\_\_ are due this week.  
A.  $\emptyset$                       B. that                      C. when                      D. they
18. The students are reading some books \_\_\_\_\_ are on disasters.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose
19. The children \_\_\_\_\_ are playing in the yard are Mr Brown's nephews.  
A. whom                      B. that                      C. which                      D. where
20. They are reading the newspapers \_\_\_\_\_ have just been published  
A. who                      B. which                      C. when                      D. whom
21. Hoa and her dog \_\_\_\_\_ are standing over there go to the park.  
A. that                      B. who                      C. whom                      D. which
22. My father will fly to Ha Noi, \_\_\_\_\_ is the capital city of Vietnam.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. where
23. My classmates dislike postcards \_\_\_\_\_ show rough sea and cloud sky  
A. who                      B. which                      C. where                      D. when
24. Neil Armstrong, \_\_\_\_\_ was the first man walking on the moon, is an American.  
A. who                      B. which                      C. whom                      D. that
25. They called their friends, \_\_\_\_\_ have lived in the city for a long time  
A. who                      B. which                      C. whose                      D. that
26. They ran out of the house \_\_\_\_\_ almost collapsed after the strong wind  
A. who                      B. whose                      C. which                      D. where
27. She often plays the music \_\_\_\_\_ was composed by Chopin.  
A. who                      B. that                      C. which                      D. B&C are correct
28. Dr. Sales is the person \_\_\_\_\_  
A. I don't have much confidence.  
B. in whom I don't have much confidence  
C. whom I don't have much confidence in him  
D. in that I don't have much confidence
29. What was the name of the horse \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. it won the race.                      B. which won the race.  
C. who won the race.                      D. whom won the race.
30. The old man \_\_\_\_\_ you wanted to see was away on holiday yesterday.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C.  $\emptyset$                       D. All are correct
31. Miss Lien, \_\_\_\_\_ sings very well, is my English teacher.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. whose                      D. which
32. Everything \_\_\_\_\_ he said was true.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. that
33. Where is the cheese \_\_\_\_\_ was in the fridge?  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. whose                      D. which
34. We'd like to travel to a city \_\_\_\_\_ there is a lot of sightseeing.  
A. which                      B. when                      C. where                      D. that
35. He is the singer about \_\_\_\_\_ I often tell you.  
A. that                      B. who                      C. whom                      D. him
36. The concert \_\_\_\_\_ I listened last weekend was boring.



- A. to that                      B. to which                      C. about which                      D. for which
37. That's the girl to \_\_\_\_ my brother got engaged.  
A. which                      B. who                      C. whom                      D. her
38. I like the village \_\_\_\_ I used to live.  
A. in that                      B. in where                      C. which                      D. in which
39. I don't know the reason \_\_\_\_ she hasn't talked to me recently.  
A. on which                      B. for which                      C. of which                      D. about which
40. The little girl \_\_\_\_ I borrowed this pen has gone.  
A. at whom                      B. for whom                      C. to whom                      D. from whom
41. The speech \_\_\_\_ we listened last night was information.  
A. to which                      B. which to                      C. to that                      D. that
42. The boy to \_\_\_\_ I lent some money is poor.  
A. that                      B. who                      C. whom                      D. B and C
43. The knife \_\_\_\_ we cut bread is very sharp.  
A. with that                      B. which                      C. with which                      D. that
44. The authority gathered those villagers \_\_\_\_ they explained the importance of forests.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. to whom                      D. to that
45. I'm working on a firm \_\_\_\_ main office is in London  
A. which                      B. that                      C. whose                      D. A & B
46. The company \_\_\_\_ employs five hundred people makes video recorders  
A. who                      B. that                      C. whom                      D. whose
47. My boss \_\_\_\_ work takes him to a lot of different countries, has decided he needs an assistant in London.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose
48. Stop him. He's the man \_\_\_\_ stole my wallet.  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose
49. The man \_\_\_\_ I saw last week said something totally differently.  
A. which                      B. whom                      C. that                      D. whose
50. The students \_\_\_\_ for the train are good ones.  
A. waited                      B. waiting                      C. which is waiting                      D. to wait
51. This is the seventh person \_\_\_\_ late.  
A. coming                      B. to come                      C. come                      D. all are correct
52. Is that the button \_\_\_\_.  
A. that presses                      B. which you pressed                      C. pressing                      D. you are pressed
53. They have invented a television set \_\_\_\_ as small as a watch.  
A. which is                      B. is                      C. who is                      D. whose
54. The work \_\_\_\_ increases a lot when the boss is away is always interesting.  
A. which                      B. whose                      C. that                      D. A & C
55. The book \_\_\_\_ by Jack, is very famous.  
A. which written                      B. written                      C. was written                      D. writing
56. He is only one boy \_\_\_\_ in this game.  
A. who participating                      B. participated                      C. to participate                      D. who participate.
57. I was introduced to a man \_\_\_\_ brother is my teacher.  
A. which                      B. whose                      C. that                      D. whom
58. Swimming is the sport \_\_\_\_ you move through water in a horizontal position using the arms and legs.

- A. which                      B. who                      C. that                      D. A&C

59. The United States consists of fifty states, \_\_\_\_\_ has its own government.  
 A. they each                      B. each of which                      C. hence each                      D. each of that
60. It was The World Cup \_\_\_\_\_ in Korea and Japan.  
 A. which was held                      B. that were held                      C. that was held                      D. that held

**III. Fill in each blank with a suitable relative pronoun or a relative adverb.**

1. Drama in schools is particularly good for students for.....English is a second language.
2. He did not tell me the reason .....he break up with me.
3. He came to the party wearing only a pair of shorts and a T-shirt,.....was a stupid thing to do.
4. The girls and the flowers.....he painted were vivid.
5. He's marrying a girl .....\_family don't seem to like him.
6. The men .....lives next-door are English.
7. The dictionary .....you gave me is very good.
8. The police are looking for the thief .....got into my house last night.
9. The woman.....daughter was crying tried to calm her down.
10. The postman .....works in the village is very old.
11. The family .....car was stolen last week is the Smiths.
12. The cowboy .....is wearing a red shirt looks very funny.
13. A bus is a big car .....carries lots of people.
14. The volunteers, .....enthusiasm was obvious, finished the work quickly.
15. The chocolate .....you like comes from the United States.
16. I have lost the necklace .....my mother gave me on my birthday.
17. A burglar is someone .....breaks into a house and steals things.
18. Buses .....go to the airport run every half hour.
19. He wore a mask .....made him look like Mickey Mouse.
20. He arrived with a friend .....waited outside in the car.
21. The man .....mobile was ringing did not know what to do.
22. The car .....the robbers escaped in was a BMW.
23. The engineers .....designed the building received an award.
24. I gave you a book .....had many pictures.
25. I don't like the boy.....Sue is going out with.
26. Did you see the beautiful dress .....she wore yesterday.
27. The man .....she is going to marry is very rich.
28. The girl .....recited the poem is my niece.
29. The townspeople, .....pride in their community is well- known, raised enough money to build a new town hall.
30. The newspaper to .....we subscribe is delivered regularly.

**IV. Combine These Pairs Of Sentences Using Relative Pronouns**

1. The first boy has just moved. He knows the truth.  
 → The first boy .....
2. I don't remember the man. You said you met him at the canteen last week.  
 → I don't remember the man .....
3. The only thing is how to go home. It make me worried.  
 → The only thing .....
4. The most beautiful girl lives city. I like her long hair very much.  
 → The most beautiful girl .....
5. He was Tom. I met him at the bar yesterday.

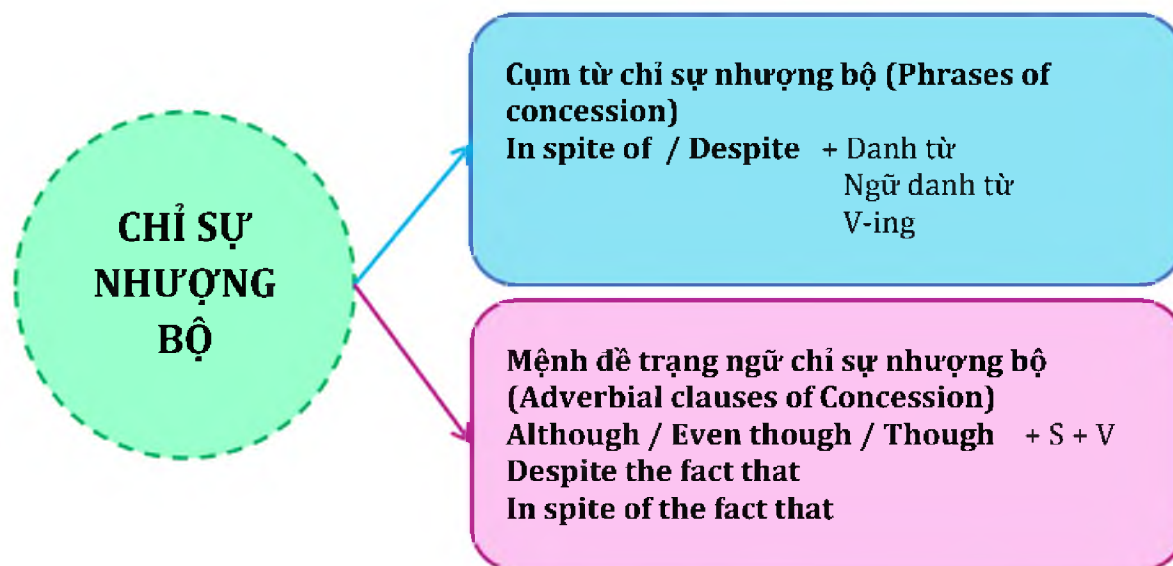
- The man .....
- 6. The children often go swimming on Sundays. They have much free time then.
- The children often .....
- 7. They are looking for the man and his dog. They have lost the way in the forest.
- They're looking for the man .....
- 8. The tree has lovely flowers. The tree stands near the gate of my house.
- The tree .....
- 9. My wife wants you to come to dinner. You were speaking to my wife
- My wife .....
- 10. The last man has just returned from the farm. I want to talk to him at once.
- I want to talk to the last man.....
- 11. The students will be awarded the present. The students' reports are very valuable.
- The students .....
- 12. The book was a lovely story. I was reading it yesterday.
- The book .....
- 13. The botanist will never forget the day. He found a strange plant on that day.
- The botanist will never .....
- 14. Someone is phoning you. He looked for you three hours ago.
- The person .....
- 15. The man works for my father's company. The man's daughter is fond of dancing.
- The man .....

**V. Rewrite the relative clauses by using phrases.**

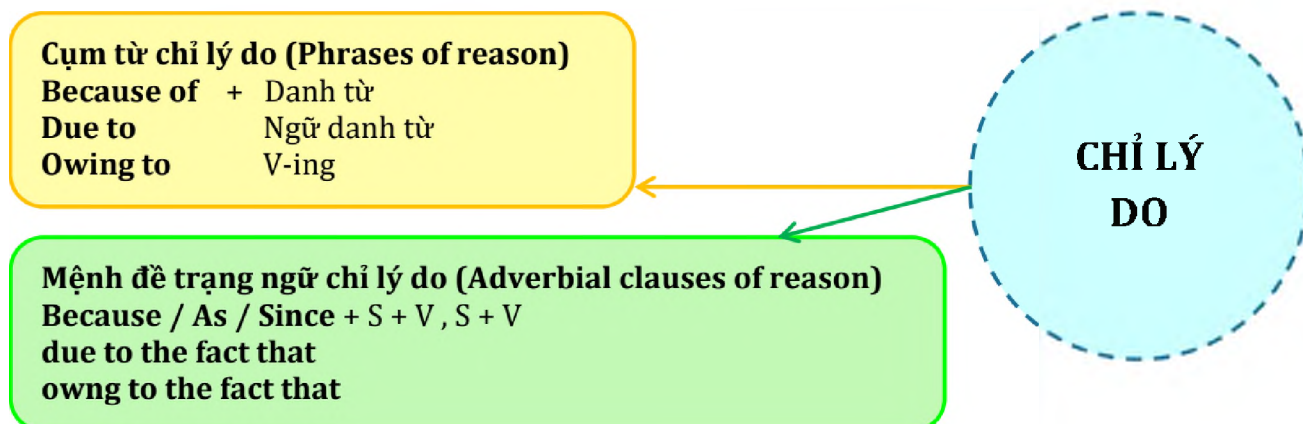
- 1. The man who is standing there is a clown.  
.....
- 2. The envelop which lies on the table has no stamp on it.  
.....
- 3. Benzene, which was discovered by Faraday, became the starting point in the manufacture of many dyes, perfumes and explosives.  
.....
- 4. My grandmother, who is old and sick, never goes out of the house.  
.....
- 5. The student don't know how to do exercise which were given by the teacher yesterday.  
.....
- 6. The diagrams which were made by young Faraday were sent to Sir Humphry Davy at the end of 1812.  
.....
- 7. The gentleman who lives next door to me is a well-known orator.  
.....
- 8. All the astronauts who are orbiting the earth in space capsules are weightless.  
.....
- 9. All students don't hand in their papers will fail in the exam.  
.....
- 10. I saw many houses that were destroyed by the storm.  
.....
- 11. The street which leads to the school is very wide.  
.....

- 12. The system which is used here is very successful.  
.....
- 13. John, who teaches my son, is my neighbor.  
.....
- 14. Trains which leave from this station take an hour to get to London.  
.....
- 15. The candidates who are sitting for the exam are all from Vietnam.  
.....
- 16. We are driving on the road which was built in 1980.  
.....
- 17. Customers who complain about the service should see the manager.  
.....
- 18. The city which was destroyed during the war has now been rebuilt.  
.....
- 19. My brother, who met you yesterday, works for a big firm.  
.....
- 20. The vegetable which are sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.  
.....

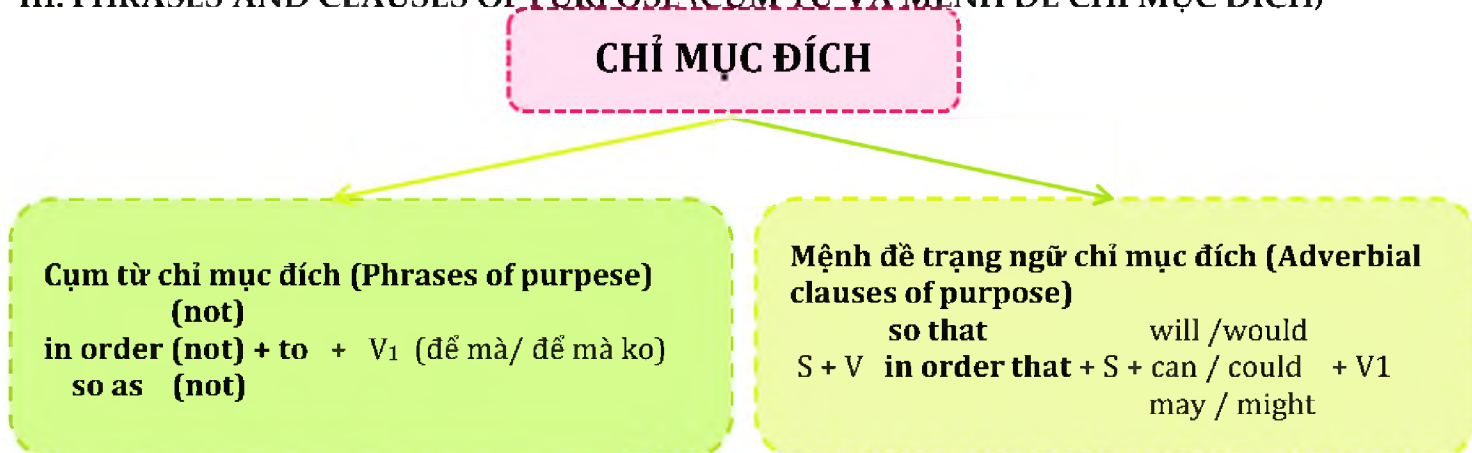
I. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ NHƯỢNG BỘ (ALTHOUGH/ IN SPITE OF)



II. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ LÝ DO ( BECAUSE / BECAUSE OF...): BỞI VÌ



III. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH)



**Lưu ý:** Nếu chủ ngữ của mệnh đề chính và mệnh đề chỉ mục đích khác nhau ta không được dùng cụm từ chỉ mục đích (phrase of purpose).



#### IV. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ



**a) too....to: quá ...không thể**

S + V + **too** + adj / adv + To-V

S + V + too + adj / adv + for O + To-V

**b) enough : đủ....để**

S + be + **adj** + enough + ( for O ) + to V1

S + V + **enough** + N + ( for O ) + to V1



**a) so....that**

S + V + so + adj / adv + that + S + V

S + V + **so** + **adj** + a + Nít + that + S + V

S + V + **so** + **many** / **few** + **Nhiều** + that + S + V

S + V + **so** + **much** / **little** + **N kđđ** + that + S + V

**b) such...that**

S + V + **such** + a / an + **adj** + Nít + that + S + V

S + V + **such** + **adj** + N nhiều + **that** + S + V

S + V + **such** + **adj** + N kđđ + **that** + S + V

No matter + who/ what/ when/ where/ why/ how (adj, adv) + S + V Whatever (+ N) + S + V

Adj / adv + as / though + S + V

However + Adj / Adv + S + V

Despite = in spite of + NP

Although / though / eventhough + Clause

## V. CLAUSES OF MANNER WITH (MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ THỂ CÁCH)

### AS, AS IF & AS THOUGH (NHƯ LÀ), (NHƯ THỂ LÀ)

#### 1. Điều không có thật ở hiện tại

**S + V + as if/ as though + S + V2/Ved**

Lưu ý: "were" có thể dùng cho tất cả các chủ từ ở MĐ giả định.

Ex1: She dresses as if she was/were an actress.

Ex2: He talks as though he knew where she was.

#### 2. Điều không có thật ở quá khứ

**S + V<sub>qk</sub> + as if/ as though + S + had + V3/ved**

Ex: He talked about New York as though he had been there before.

### WOULD RATHER (MONG MUỐN RẰNG)

#### 1. Giả thiết ở HT hoặc TL:

**S1 + would rather that + S2 + V2/ed**

Ex1: Mary's husband doesn't work in the same office as she does.

=> Mary would rather that her husband worked in the same office as she does.

#### 2. Giả thiết ở Quá Khứ:

**S1 + would rather that + S2 + had + V3/V-ed**

Ex2: Her husband didn't go to the office yesterday.

=> She would rather that her husband had gone to the office yesterday.

### IT'S TIME/IT'S HIGH TIME(ĐÃ TOI LÚC)

#### 1. It's time/ It's high time + S + V(past simple

Ex1: He should call me on the phone.

=> It's time he called me on the phone

Ex2: We must start working now.

#### 2. It's time/ It's high time + (for O) + to-V

=> It's high time we started working now.

## VI. NOMINAL CLAUSES (MỆNH ĐỀ DANH NGỮ)

- **Định nghĩa** : Mệnh đề danh ngữ có chức năng như một danh từ, có nghĩa là nó có thể là một chủ ngữ, đối tượng bổ sung trong một câu. Nó bắt đầu với các từ: "that," "who," "which," "when," "where," "whether - "why," "how."

E.g. We loved **what we saw at Ho Chi Minh museum**. (Chúng tôi yêu những gì chúng tôi thấy tại bảo tàng Ho Chi Minh).

- **Đặc điểm, chức năng và cách thành lập mệnh đề danh ngữ**

<b>Đặc điểm</b>	<p>Thường bắt đầu bằng:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>Whether/ if</b> : có hay không</li> <li>- <b>Who, whom, when, what, where, whose, how, whatever, whoever,...</b> các từ để hỏi, dùng với nét nghĩa ám chỉ, bổ sung ý nghĩa</li> <li>- <b>That</b> : là, sự thật là, việc, rằng</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Làm chủ ngữ trong câu : <b>Where/ when/ why/ what/ that...+ S + V+ V (số ít)</b> <b>Whoever is responsible for this needs to be careful.</b> <b>That she comes late surprises me.</b></li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Làm tân ngữ sau động từ <b>S + V + what/ where/ when/ why/ that.....+ S + V.</b> I don't know <b>what she wants</b>. They think <b>that they are wrong</b>.</li> </ul>

<p><b>Chức năng</b></p>	<p>- Làm tân ngữ sau giới từ S + V/ be + .....+ giới từ + <b>where/ what/ when/ why/ that....</b>+ S + V. Their decision depends on <b>what they think</b>. He is interested in <b>how we could do that</b>.</p> <p>- Làm bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ S+ be + <b>what/ where/ when/ why/ that....</b>+ S + V The problem is <b>where you are now</b>. The main point of the speech is <b>why people should do the morning exercise</b>.</p> <p>- Làm bổ ngữ cho tính từ S + be + adj + <b>that</b> + S + V He is disappointed <b>that he didn't get good marks as he expected</b>. John was surprised <b>that Marry failed the exam</b>.</p>
<p><b>Cách thành lập</b></p>	<p>- Chuyển câu trần thuật sang mệnh đề danh ngữ, dùng <b>that</b>. - Chuyển câu hỏi <b>Yes/ No</b> dùng <b>if/ whether</b>. - Chuyển câu hỏi dùng từ để hỏi bằng cách dùng từ để hỏi và đằng sau là câu trần thuật.</p>
<p><b>Rút gọn mệnh đề danh ngữ</b></p>	<p>- Đưa động từ về dạng <b>V-ing</b> (khi động từ chính được theo sau bởi V-ing), thường áp dụng với mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng <b>that</b>. <b>S + V1 + Nominal clause (S + V2 +.....) = S + V1 + V2-ing + .....</b> Carol likes <b>that she is appreciated</b> in the competition. = Carol likes <b>being appreciated</b> in the competition.</p> <p>- Đưa động từ về dạng <b>to V</b> thường áp dụng với mệnh đề danh từ bắt đầu bằng các từ để hỏi: <b>S+ V1+ Nominal clause (S + V2 +...)=S+ V1 + Wh-word + to V2+...</b> He doesn't want to think about <b>what he is responsible for</b>. = He doesn't want to think about <b>what to be responsible for</b>.</p> <p><b>Lưu ý: Điều kiện để rút gọn một mệnh đề danh ngữ:</b> - Mệnh đề danh ngữ đóng vai trò tân ngữ. - Mệnh đề danh ngữ có chủ ngữ và chủ ngữ trùng với chủ ngữ chính của câu.</p>
<p><b>Lưu ý</b></p>	<p>- Khi dùng "<b>whether</b>" ta có thể thêm "<b>or not</b>". I don't know <b>whether</b> he believes in me <b>or not</b>.</p> <p>- Động từ trong mệnh đề danh ngữ là nội động từ dùng <b>what</b> (cái gì, điều gì), còn là ngoại động ta dùng <b>that</b> (việc rằng) <b>That</b> she did not pass the TOEFL is obvious at this point. <b>What</b> he wants to say makes me nervous. He doesn't remember <b>what</b> happened at the accident. I know <b>that</b> John has talked to Jun.</p>

## VII. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- I moved to the front of the room \_\_\_\_\_ I could see better.  
A. so as to                      B. in order to                      C. to                      D. so that
- \_\_\_\_\_ he likes chocolate, he tries not to eat it.  
A. As                      B. Though                      C. Since                      D. Despite
- Mary hurried.....she was late.  
A. because of                      B. because                      C. despite                      D. Although
- The boy tiptoed into the room \_\_\_\_\_ wake everybody up.  
A. so as to                      B. in order that                      C. so as not to                      D. in order to
- .....he has started many times, the engine couldn't start.  
A. Because of                      B. Because                      C. Despite                      D. Although
- Last night we came to the show late \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic was terrible.  
A. although                      B. despite                      C. and                      D. because
- The classroom \_\_\_\_\_ when the teacher arrived.  
A. was being cleaned                      B. is cleaned  
C. was cleaning                      D. was cleaned
- .....he has started many times, the engine couldn't start.  
A. because of                      B. because                      C. despite                      D. Although
- He turned out the light \_\_\_\_\_ waste electricity.  
A. not                      B. without                      C. so that not                      D. in order not to
- The thieves wore gloves so as to avoid leaving any fingerprints.  
A. The thieves wore gloves so as to not leave any fingerprints.  
B. The thieves wore gloves so that not leave any fingerprints.  
C. The thieves wore gloves in order not to leave any fingerprints.  
D. The thieves wore gloves in order to not leave any fingerprints.
- I am lighting the fire so that the house \_\_\_\_\_ be warm when they return.  
A. would                      B. wouldn't                      C. will                      D. won't
- .....their lateness, their teacher let them stand outside the classroom.  
A. Because of                      B. Because                      C. Despite                      D. Although
- In spite of not speaking French, Mike decided to settle in Paris.  
A. Eventhough Mike didn't speak French, but he decided to settle in Paris.  
B. Mike decided to settle in Paris despite he didn't speak French.  
C. Mike decided to settle in Paris though the fact that not speaking French.  
D. Although Mike didn't speak French, he decided to settle in Paris.
- Mary worked hard \_\_\_\_\_ pass the examination.  
A. as so to                      B. so as to                      C. so that to                      D. in order not to
- Mr Ba was late for the meeting though he took a taxi.  
A. Even though taking a taxi, Mr Ba was late for the meeting.  
B. In spite of taking a taxi, but Mr Ba was late for the meeting.  
C. Mr Ba was late for the meeting despite the fact he took a taxi.  
D. Mr Ba was late for the meeting although having taken a taxi.
- .....the daughter sickness, they decides to delay their holiday.  
A. Because of                      B. Because                      C. Despite                      D. Although
- Although he was \_\_\_\_\_, he agreed to play tennis with me.



A. exhausting      B. exhausted      C. exhaustion      D. exhaustive

18. We came to the meeting on time though the traffic was heavy.  
A. Despite the traffic was heavy; we came to the meeting on time.  
B. In spite of the heavy traffic, we came to the meeting on time.  
C. Even though the heavy traffic, we came to the meeting on time.  
D. Although the traffic was heavy, but we came to the meeting on time.
19. The coffee was too hot for me to drink.  
A. The coffee is so hot that I can't drink it.  
B. The coffee is so hot that I can't drink.  
C. The coffee was so hot that I couldn't drink.  
D. The coffee was so hot that I couldn't drink it.
20. Although she is rich, she can't afford to buy the car.  
A. She doesn't have enough money to buy the car she likes.  
B. The car is too expensive for her to buy.  
C. Rich as she is, she can't afford to buy the car.  
D. She wants to buy the car but it costs a lot.
21. Although Sue felt tired, she stayed up late talking to Jill.  
A. Despite feeling tired, Sue stayed up late talking to Jill.  
B. In spite feeling tired, Sue stayed up late talking to Jill.  
C. Sue wouldn't feel tired despite staying up late talking to Jill.  
D. Sue stayed up late talking to Jill. As a result, she was tired.
22. He hurried so that he \_\_\_\_\_ miss the train.  
A. won't      B. doesn't      C. didn't      D. wouldn't
23. He didn't pass the exam \_\_\_\_\_ he made many mistakes in his writing.  
A. in spite of      B. because of      C. because      D. although
24. Our visit to Japan was delayed \_\_\_\_\_ my wife's illness.  
A. because      B. because of      C. in spite of      D. although
25. \_\_\_\_\_ he had enough money, he bought a new car.  
A. In spite of      B. Although      C. Because of      D. Because
26. \_\_\_\_\_ she was very hard working, she hardly earned enough to support her family.  
A. In spite of      B. Because      C. Because of      D. Although
27. \_\_\_\_\_ her absence from the school yesterday, she couldn't understand the lesson.  
A. Despite      B. Because      C. Because of      D. As
28. \_\_\_\_\_ his lack of time, he watches football every night.  
A. Although      B. Because of      C. In spite of      D. Because
29. \_\_\_\_\_ I told the absolute truth, no one would believe me.  
A. Even though      B. In spite of      C. Since      D. As
30. My mother is always complaining \_\_\_\_\_ the untidiness of my room.  
A. because      B. because of      C. since      D. as
31. I didn't get the job \_\_\_\_\_ I had all the necessary qualifications  
A. because      B. because of      C. although      D. despite
32. Mrs. Harrisons is \_\_\_\_\_ he owns many places.  
A. so a rich man that      B. such an rich man that  
C. such a rich man that      D. that so rich a man
33. He had to explain the lesson very clearly \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. in order that his student to understand it      B. so that his students could understand it  
C. so as his students to understand it      D. so that his students to understand it



34. We have to start early \_\_\_\_\_ we won't be late  
 A. so that                      B. so as to                      C. because                      D. although
35. The schoolboys are in hurry \_\_\_\_\_ they will not be late for school  
 A. so as to                      B. to                      C. in order that                      D. for
36. We set off early \_\_\_\_\_ we wouldn't get stuck in the traffic  
 A. although                      B. so that                      C. because                      D. in case
37. Many people don't want to live in big cities \_\_\_\_\_ big cities are often heavily polluted  
 A. but                      B. because                      C. and                      D. though
38. Polar bears are in danger of going extinct \_\_\_\_\_ climate change.  
 A. because of                      B. although                      C. because                      D. despite
39. \_\_\_\_\_ his poor English, he managed to communicate his problem very clearly.  
 A. Because                      B. Even though                      C. Because of                      D. In spite of
40. The second-hand car Patrick bought was almost new \_\_\_\_\_ it was made in the 1995s.  
 A. or                      B. because                      C. although                      D. however
41. \_\_\_\_\_ my father is old, he still goes jogging.  
 A. although                      B. Since                      C. Despite                      D. In spite of
42. \_\_\_\_\_ the rain, we postpone our picnic.  
 A. because                      B. because of                      C. although                      D. In spite of
43. \_\_\_\_\_ it was raining heavily, he went out without a raincoat.  
 A. in spite                      B. in spite of                      C. However                      D. although
44. \_\_\_\_\_ the wet weather, the football match went ahead.  
 A. In spite of                      B. Although                      C. Though                      D. However
45. We can not see the road \_\_\_\_\_ the fog.  
 A. because                      B. although                      C. because of                      D. in spite of
46. These boys were punished \_\_\_\_\_ they went to school late.  
 A. because                      B. because of                      C. even though                      D. in spite of
47. I can't ride my bicycle \_\_\_\_\_ there isn't any air in one of the tires.  
 A. despite                      B. because                      C. although                      D. but
48. "I spoke slowly. The foreigner could understand me." means  
 A. I spoke slowly so that the foreigner could understand me.  
 B. I spoke slowly in order to the foreigner could understand me.  
 C. I spoke slowly that the foreigner could understand me.  
 D. I spoke slowly to make the foreigner could understand me.
49. The development of wildlife habitat reserves is a good conservation measure \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. to prevent endangered species                      B. to feed endangered species  
 C. to benefit from endangered species                      D. to save endangered species
50. He had to explain the lesson very clearly.....  
 A. in order that his student to understand it                      B. so that his students could understand it  
 C. so as his students to understand it                      D. so that his students to understand it
51. Despite the bad weather, people travel by air.  
 A. Even though the weather is bad, people travel by air.  
 B. Because the weather is bad, people travel by air.  
 C. In spite of people travel by air, the weather is bad.  
 D. Although the bad weather, people travel by air.
52. They were talking in whispers.....nobody could hear them.  
 A. in order to                      B. so that                      C. in order that                      D. B and C are correct

53. She went to the library in order that she could borrow some books.  
 A. She went to the library so as to borrow some books.  
 B. She went to the library to borrow some books  
 C. She went to the library so that she could borrow some books  
 D. all are correct
54. \_\_\_\_\_ having the best qualifications among all the applicants, Justin was not offered the job.  
 A. Although                      B. While                      C. In spite of                      D. Despite of
55. \_\_\_\_\_ the internet is very popular, many older people do not know how to use it.  
 A. However                      B. Nevertheless                      C. Even though                      D. Despite
56. \_\_\_\_\_ he wasn't feeling very well, David was determined to take part in the inter-university athletics meet.  
 A. Although                      B. While                      C. Where as                      D. yet
57. Young as he is, he has a big fortune.  
 A. Although he is young, he has a big fortune.  
 B. He has a big fortune because he is young.  
 C. He is not only young but also has a big fortune.  
 D. When he is young, he has a big fortune.
58. \_\_\_\_\_ what Megan prepared for the job interview, she didn't pass it.  
 A. Despite of                      B. In spite of                      C. Though                      D. However
59. Bruce was not praised \_\_\_\_\_ he was a hard worker.  
 A. despite                      B. in spite of                      C. although                      D. no matter how
60. It looks like they are going to succeed \_\_\_\_\_ their present difficulties.  
 A. despite                      B. although                      C. in spite                      D. even though
61. Mary usually goes to parties. She likes meeting people and crowded places \_\_\_\_\_ she is rather shy.  
 A. in spite of                      B. even though                      C. on the contrary                      D. in other words
62. \_\_\_\_\_, he has continued to work on his thesis.  
 A. Although all these problems                      B. Even though there are problems  
 C. Despite of all these problems                      D. In spite of there are problems
63. She hid the present \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. so that the children wouldn't find it                      B. in order to the children not to find it  
 C. for the children not find it                      D. in order that the children not to find it
64. In spite of \_\_\_\_\_, he was determined to finish his work.  
 A. was seriously ill                      B. be seriously ill                      C. his serious illness                      D. he was seriously ill
65. \_\_\_\_\_ some German and British management styles are similar, there are many differences between them.  
 A. In spite                      B. In spite of                      C. Although                      D. Despite
66. I could not eat \_\_\_\_\_ I was very hungry.  
 A. even though                      B. in spite                      C. despite                      D. despite of
67. "I tried to study English well. I wanted to get a good job." means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. I tried to study English well so that I can get a good job  
 B. I tried to study English well in order that I can get a good job  
 C. I tried to study English well to get a good job  
 D. I try to study English well in order that I can get a good job
68. In spite \_\_\_\_\_, the baseball game was not cancelled.  
 A. the rain                      B. of the rain                      C. it was raining                      D. there was a rain
69. \_\_\_\_\_ he had enough money, he refused to buy a new car.

- A. In spite                      B. In spite of                      C. Despite                      D. Although
70. \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.  
A. Despite being tired                      B. Although to be tired  
C. In spite being tired                      D. Despite tired
71. The children slept well despite \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. it was noise                      B. the noise                      C. of the noise                      D. noisy
72. "We preserve natural resources. We can use them in the future." means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. We preserve natural resources so that we can use them in the future  
B. We preserve natural resources so as to we can use them in the future  
C. We preserve natural resources in order to we can use them in the future  
D. We preserve natural resources for fear that we can use them in the future
73. She left him \_\_\_\_\_ she still loved him.  
A. even if                      B. even though                      C. in spite of                      D. despite
74. \_\_\_\_\_ her lack of hard work, she was promoted.  
A. In spite                      B. Even though                      C. In spite of                      D. Despite of
75. \_\_\_\_\_ they are brothers, they do not look alike.  
A. Although                      B. Even                      C. Despite                      D. In spite of
76. Our new neighbors are quite nice \_\_\_\_\_ they are sometimes talkative.  
A. despite                      B. in spite of                      C. though                      D. as though
77. The teacher was explaining the lesson slowly and clearly \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to make his students to understand it  
B. in order that his students can understand it  
C. so as to that his students could understand it  
D. so that his students could understand it
78. \_\_\_\_\_ of the difficulty, they managed to climb to the top of the mountain.  
A. In spite                      B. Despite                      C. But                      D. Although
79. \_\_\_\_\_, he could not finish the job.  
A. As hard as he work                      B. Despite he worked hard  
C. Though he worked hard                      D. Although hard work
80. He went to work \_\_\_\_\_ his headache.  
A. despite                      B. although                      C. because                      D. because of
81. He was playing very softly \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ disturb anyone.  
A. in order that / couldn't                      B. so that / can't  
C. so that / could                      D. so/ can
82. Despite the fact that \_\_\_\_\_, we enjoyed our trip.  
A. the weather is bad                      B. it is a bad weather  
C. the bad weather                      D. the weather was bad
83. Julie failed the exam \_\_\_\_\_ of working very hard.  
A. despite                      B. in spite                      C. even if                      D. though
84. Tom went to work despite \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that he did not feel very well                      B. of the fact not feeling well  
C. he did not feel very well                      D. not feeling very well
85. The burglar cut the telephone wires \_\_\_\_\_ call the police.  
A. so that he can                      B. in order that I could  
C. for fear that I                      D. for me not to
86. Though \_\_\_\_\_, they are good friends.  
A. their sometimes quarrel                      B. to have a quarrel sometimes

- C. they sometimes have a quarrel  
D. of having a quarrel sometimes
87. Despite \_\_\_\_\_, we arrived on time.  
A. the traffic  
B. of the traffic  
C. there was heavy traffic  
D. of there was heavy traffic
88. \_\_\_\_\_ it was very cold, she did not put on her coat.  
A. In case  
B. But  
C. Even if  
D. Although
89. The manufacturers have made the taps of their new gas cooker very stiff \_\_\_\_\_ young children not to be able to turn them on.  
A. so that  
B. in order that they wanted  
C. for fear that  
D. for
90. \_\_\_\_\_ rain or snow, there are always more than fifty thousand fans at the football games.  
A. Despite  
B. Although  
C. Despite of  
D. Because
91. \_\_\_\_\_ it was so cold, he went out without an overcoat.  
A. If  
B. Since  
C. Although  
D. Because
92. We understood him \_\_\_\_\_ he spoke very fast.  
A. because of  
B. though  
C. in spite of  
D. despite
93. \_\_\_\_\_ all my warnings, he tried to fix the computer himself.  
A. Because  
B. Because of  
C. Although  
D. In spite of
94. Hans finished school \_\_\_\_\_ his leg injury.  
A. because of  
B. despite  
C. though  
D. because
95. I try to do my homework \_\_\_\_\_ the noise  
A. because of  
B. although  
C. despite of  
D. in spite of
96. \_\_\_\_\_ it rained heavily, we enjoyed our holiday.  
A. Because of  
B. Because  
C. Despite  
D. Though
97. \_\_\_\_\_ having little money, they are happy.  
A. Despite  
B. Because of  
C. Although  
D. Because
98. \_\_\_\_\_ she was not well, she still went to work.  
A. Because  
B. Because of  
C. Although  
D. In spite of
99. We are going to have a picnic \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.  
A. because  
B. despite  
C. although  
D. because of
100. \_\_\_\_\_ his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.  
A. Because of  
B. Because  
C. Though  
D. Despite

**II. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. The boys stood on the desks . They wanted to get a better view. (so as to)  
⇒ The .....
2. We learn English. We want to have better communication with other people. (so that)  
⇒ We learn .....
3. We lower the volume . We don't want to bother our neighbours. (in order that)  
⇒ We lower .....
4. He opened the lion's cage. He intended to feed the lion. (to)  
⇒ He opened .....
5. Mary often goes home as soon as the class is over. She doesn't want her mother to wait for her. (so that)  
⇒ Mary often .....
6. Tom gets up early. He doesn't want to be late for school. (in order not to)  
⇒ Tom gets .....

7. You should walk slowly. Your sister can follow you. (so that)  
⇒ You should walk .....
8. They did their job well. They hoped the boss would increase their salary. (in order that)  
⇒ They did their job .....
9. We turned on the lights. We didn't want to waste electricity (so as not to)  
⇒ We turned on .....
10. She wasn't wearing the coat although it was quite cold.  
⇒ In spite of .....
11. Because Hoa was rich, she could buy that house.  
⇒ Because of .....
12. Although I didn't speak the language, I managed to make myself understand.  
⇒ In spite of .....
13. Although he was disappointed, he tried to smile.  
⇒ No matter .....
14. His father asked him to stay at home because he was sick.  
⇒ Because of .....
15. Although his English was good, he wasn't chosen.  
⇒ However .....
16. Even though I admire his courage, I think he is foolish.  
⇒ Much as .....
17. However friendly he seems, he's not to be trusted.  
⇒ Friendly as .....
18. Come and sit down, whoever you are.  
⇒ It doesn't matter .....
19. You do any job, you should do it devotedly.  
⇒ Whatever .....
20. Although she was ill, she went to school.  
⇒ In spite of .....
21. He didn't come because he was sick.  
⇒ He .....because of .....
22. She didn't eat much though she was hungry.  
⇒ Despite .....
23. The train was late because the fog was thick.  
⇒ Because of .....
24. Although Lan was tired, she did all her homework carefully  
⇒ Despite .....
25. Mary went to bed early because she felt tired.  
⇒ Because of .....
26. She didn't go to the circus with Betty because she had a bad cold.  
⇒ Because of .....
27. John succeeded in his exam because he worked hard.  
⇒ Because of .....
28. She stayed at home because her mother was sick.  
⇒ Because of .....
29. I like him because his father is kind to me.  
⇒ Because of .....
30. Although English grammar is difficult, we like to study it.



⇒ In spite .....

## BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ THỂ CÁCH VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ DANH NGỮ

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- \_\_\_\_\_ becoming extinct is of great concern to zoologists.  
A. That giant pandas are  
pandas  
C. Giant pandas are  
D. Giant panda's  
B. Are giant
- \_\_\_\_\_ in large quantities is not necessarily an indication of its quality.  
A. A product is sold  
C. That a product is sold  
B. It is a product sold  
D. A product sells
- The people at the party were worried about Janet because no one was aware \_\_\_\_\_ she had gone.  
A. where that  
B. of where  
C. of the place  
D. the place
- I talked to Bob two weeks ago. I thought he wanted to know about my cat, but I misunderstood him. He asked me where....., not my cat.  
A. is my hat  
B. my hat was  
C. my hat is  
D. was my hat
- "The people in the apartment upstairs must have a lot of children".  
"I don't know how many....., but it sounds they have a dozen".  
A. children do they have  
B. do they have children  
C. children they have  
D. they have children
- Do you know.....? I have no idea.  
A. how many years the earth is  
B. how old the earth is  
C. how long is the earth  
D. how much time has been the earth
- "There's too much noise in this room. I can't understand what....." - "Neither can I."  
A. is the professor saying  
B. is saying the professor  
C. that the professor is saying  
D. the professor is saying
- When I was little, my father gave me some advice. He said.....talk to strangers.  
A. I shouldn't  
B. that shouldn't  
C. don't  
D. that I don't
- "I didn't expect Ann's husband to be here at the opera with her"  
"I'm surprised, too. Ann must have insisted that.....with her"  
A. he come  
B. he comes  
C. he came  
D. he had come
- "Ms. Wright, can you give me a little extra help typing some letters tonight?"  
"Sorry, I can't. The boss has an urgent report for me to write. She demanded that it...on her desk by 5 P.M. today."  
A. was  
B. will be  
C. is  
D. be
- "Did you tell Carol where.....us this evening?"  
"Yes, I did. I can't understand why she is late"  
A. should she meet  
B. she to meet  
C. she meets  
D. to meet
- A fortune-teller predicted .....inherit a lot of money before the end of the year.  
A. that I would  
B. that I  
C. what I will  
D. what I
- "Bill Frazer seems like a good person for the job, but we don't know why he left his last job"  
"I know why. He told me.....a serious policy disagreement with his boss last January"  
A. if he'd had  
B. he'd had  
C. what he'd had  
D. that what he had
- "Is it true that you fell asleep in class yesterday and began to snore?"

- “Unfortunately, yes. \_\_\_\_\_ is unbelievable! I’m very embarrassed”
- A. That I could do such a thing it                      B. that I could do such a thing  
C. I could do such a thing it                              D. I could do such a thing
15. “Officer, can you tell me how to get to Springfield?”  
“Sure, what part of Springfield.....to go to?”  
A. do you want      B. you want                      C. that you want                      D. where you want
16. “Is it true.....the law says there is no smoking in restaurants in this city?”  
“Yes. That law was passed last year.”  
A. that what                      B. what                      C. if                      D. that
17. No one knows when and where.....  
A. was she going      B. did she come from      C. she work                      D. she was born
18. A scientific observer of wildlife must note every detail of how.....in their environment: their eating and sleeping habits, their social relationships, and their method of self-protection.  
A. do animals live      B. live animals                      C. do live animals                      D. animals live
19. The mystery movie was clever and suspenseful. The audience couldn’t guess.....committed the murder until the surprise ending.  
A. who he                      B. who had                      C. that who                      D. that
20. How do you like your new school? Tell me.....  
A. who in your class is                      B. who your class is in  
C. who is in your class                      D. your class who is in it
21. “What do you recommend.....about this tax problem?”  
“I strongly suggest that we consult an expert as soon as possible”  
A. do we do                      B. we will do                      C. we do                      D. should we do
22. The college does not grant degrees simply to.....pays the cost of tuition; the student must satisfy the academic requirements.  
A. whoever                      B. who                      C. whomever                      D. whoever that
23. “What are you going to buy in this store?”  
“Nothing. ....want is much too expensive.”  
A. That I                      B. What I                      C. That what I                      D. what do I
24. “Does anybody know.....on the ground?” - “Your guess is as good as mine”  
A. how long this plane will be                      B. how long will be this plane  
C. how long will this plane be                      D. that how long this plane will be
25. “This restaurant is very expensive”  
“It is, but order.....want. Your birthday is a very special occasion.”  
A. what is it you      B. what do you                      C. whatever you                      D. whatever you do
26. Why did Beth ask you.....a bicycle?  
A. that if you had      B. do you have                      C. that you have                      D. if you had
27. “What did your grammar teacher want to talk to you about?”  
“I did badly on the last test. She.....study for it.”  
A. said why didn’t I                      B. asked why didn’t I  
C. said why I didn’t                      D. asked why I didn’t
28. “Why are you staring out the window? What.....about?” - “Nothing”  
A. you are thinking      B. you think                      C. are you thinking                      D. do you are thinking
29. “I can’t decide what color I want for my bedroom. What do you think?”  
“You should choose.....color you want. You’re the one who will have to live with it.”  
A. whichever that      B. whatever                      C. however                      D. that what

30. "Did you remember to tell Marge.....she should bring to the meeting tomorrow?"  
"Oh, my gosh! I completely forgot! I'm sorry"  
A. that                      B. what                      C. if                      D. that what
31. "My aunt has been feeling bad since Uncle George died. Is it because she depressed?"  
"I think so. \_\_\_\_\_ can cause debilitating physical symptoms is a medical fact."  
A. Depression              B. That depression it              C. That depression              D. It is that depression
32. There was an earthquake on the coast yesterday. Fortunately, there was no loss of people. However, because of the danger of collapsing sea walls, it was essential that the area.....evacuated quickly.  
A. to be                      B. will be                      C. be                      D. is
33. ....saying was so important that I asked everyone to stop to listen.  
A. what the woman was                      B. The woman was  
C. That the woman was                      D. What was the woman
34. "This cake is terrible. What happened?"  
"It's my grandmother's recipe, but she forgot to tell me how long.....it."  
A. did I bake              B. should I bake              C. do I bake              D. to bake
35. "Let's go to Riverton this Weekend." - "Sound like fun. \_\_\_\_\_ from here?"  
A. How far is              B. How far it is              C. It how far is              D. How far is it
36. "Somebody forgot this hat. I wonder....."  
A. whose is this hat              B. whose hat this is              C. whose hat is              D. is this whose hat
37. Edward's interview was very intense. The interviewer wanted to know many facts about his personal life, and even asked him.....had ever used any illegal drugs of any kind.  
A. that if he              B. that he              C. if or not he              D. whether or not he
38. It is hoped that all present-day communicable diseases will be conquered. However, .....about certain diseases is still not sufficient to prevent them from spreading easily among the population.  
A. what we know                      B. what do we know  
C. what we know that                      D. that we know what
39. "Why didn't Henry attend the meeting this morning?"  
"He's been very sick. His doctor insisted that he.....in bed this week."  
A. will stay              B. stayed              C. stays              D. stay
40. Nobody yet knew what.....to cause the dam to burst, but the residents of the area organized quickly to protect life and property against the rising of floods.  
A. happens              B. had happened              C. happen              D. did it happen
41. Did the teacher explain how.....this problem?  
A. do we solve              B. can we solve              C. to solve              D. solve
42. ....the National Weather Bureau predicted severe storms did not deter the fishing boats from going out into the open sea.  
A. The fact that                      B. The fact is that  
C. Is fact that                      D. That the fact is
43. Tom walked into the huge hall to register for the classes. At first, he simply looked around and wondered what.....supposed to do.  
A. was he              B. am I              C. he was              D. I am
44. The concert advertisement did not say \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: when will the concert begin                      B: when the concert will begin  
C: when would the concert begin                      D: when the concert would begin

45. A long vacation is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A: what Susan needs  
 C: what does Susan need  
 B: Susan needs  
 D: that Susan needs
46. \_\_\_\_\_ was surely fined by the police.  
 A: Whoever had this done  
 C: Had this done by whoever  
 B: Whoever had done this  
 D: This had done by whoever
47. \_\_\_\_\_ will always be important to me.  
 A: Whatever you do  
 C: What do you do  
 B: Whatever do you do  
 D: You do
48. I asked myself \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A: whether is margarine healthier than butter  
 B: is that margarine healthier than butter  
 C: if margarine is healthier than butter  
 D: that margarine is healthier than butter or not
49. A good coach never reveals to other teams \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A: what his team's weaknesses are  
 C: that his team's weaknesses are  
 B: his team's weaknesses are  
 D: that are his team's weaknesses
50. All the students wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A: why did the teacher suddenly leave the classroom  
 B: why did the teacher suddenly leave the classroom?  
 C: why the teacher suddenly left the classroom  
 D: why the teacher suddenly left the classroom?
51. No one is really sure \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A: whether did he resign  
 C: why he resigned  
 B: that he resign  
 D: why did he resign
52. The function of "That clause" in "The basis for this American custom is that most parents teach their children \_\_\_\_\_"  
 A. complement to "the basis"  
 C. direct object of the verb "was"  
 B. in apposition to "the basis"  
 D. subject of the verb "was"
53. They always give the available seats to \_\_\_\_\_ comes first.  
 A. whoever  
 B. whom  
 C. whomever  
 D. that
54. Punish \_\_\_\_\_ is late.  
 A. whom  
 B. that  
 C. whomever  
 D. whoever
55. "Call the restaurant and ask for that information" - "I don't remember \_\_\_\_\_"  
 A. who I should speak  
 C. who should I speak with  
 B. with whom I should speak  
 D. whom should I speak with
56. "The postal strike started today" - "\_\_\_\_\_ something to prevent it?"  
 A. Why does the government  
 C. Why the government doesn't do  
 B. Why doesn't the government do  
 D. Why the government does
57. "Why doesn't Kurt get his hair cut?" - "I don't know \_\_\_\_\_"  
 A. why he doesn't  
 C. why he does  
 B. why doesn't he  
 D. why does he
58. "Are you planning to go to college?" - "\_\_\_\_\_ go depends on my financial situation".  
 A. If or not I  
 B. Whether or not I  
 C. Whether if I  
 D. I
59. "Why did you talk to the teacher after class?" - "I didn't understand \_\_\_\_\_ during the lecture".  
 A. what she was taking  
 C. what she was talking about  
 B. what was she talking about  
 D. what she was talking about

60. "Do you know Don Kline?" - "I remember the name but I can't remember \_\_\_\_\_"?
- A. what does he look like                      B. what he look like  
C. what he does look like                      D. like what he looks
61. I do not believe \_\_\_ it is necessary to exploit animals for our own satisfaction.
- A. that                      B. when                      C. why                      D. which
62. \_\_\_ was important.
- A. That the peace treaty signed                      B. The peace treaty signed  
C. The signed of the peace treaty                      D. The signing of the peace treaty
63. It doesn't matter .....I rest or not.
- A. if                      B. whether                      C. that                      D. when
64. .... I can't understand is ..... he wants to change his mind.
- A. That/that                      B. Which/what                      C. What/why                      D. What/that
65. ....I have will be yours soon or later.
- A. No matter what                      B. Whatever                      C. Whether                      D. That
66. .... we go swimming every day ..... us a lot of good.
- A. If/do                      B. That/do                      C. If/does                      D. That/does
67. It's still a question ..... we'll have our sports meet.
- A. why                      B. that                      C. when                      D. which
68. We're wondering.....our teacher will come to the party or not.
- A. if                      B. that                      C. why                      D. whether
69. .... we can't get seems better than ..... we have.
- A. What/what                      B. What/that                      C. That/that                      D. That/what
70. .... they had won the game made us excited.
- A. What                      B. That                      C. Where                      D. when
71. .... I accept award or refuse it is none of your business.
- A. If                      B. When                      C. Whether                      D. Even though
72. When they will start ..... not been decided.
- A. does                      B. has                      C. have                      D. is
73. Energy is ..... makes things work.
- A. everything                      B. something                      C. that                      D. what
74. I don't know.....
- A. what is the matter outside                      B. what the matter outside is  
C. what is outside the matter                      D. what is happened outside
75. Everybody was sad \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: the fact that the president was in poor health  
B: why the president was in poor health  
C: that the president was in poor health  
D: that was the president in poor health
76. \_\_\_\_\_ is not as important as \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: How many you have read books / do you understand what you have read  
B: How many have books you read / whether you understand have what you read  
C: Books you have read / you understand what you have read  
D: How many books you have read / whether you understand what you have read
77. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: Peter will come                      B: if Peter will come  
C: that Peter will come                      D: if will Peter come
78. We are not responsible for \_\_\_\_\_.



- A: what you have done  
C: what have you done
79. Could you explain \_\_\_\_\_?  
A: a noun clause is recognized  
C: how a noun clause is recognized
80. Please tell me \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: why you look so worried.  
C: why do you look so worried?
81. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ from the earth.  
A: how far the moon is  
C: if how far the moon is
82. \_\_\_\_\_ is your own bussiness.  
A: Do you do  
C: What do you do after school
83. I would like to know \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: to live  
C: how you to live
84. \_\_\_\_\_ depends mostly on her test scores.  
A: Whether she goes to college  
C: If does she go to college
85. \_\_\_\_\_ is a mystery.  
A: Why isn't he here today  
C: Why he isn't here today
86. Mrs. Krammer rang half an hour ago to ask \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: her cake was ready  
C: was her cake read
87. \_\_\_\_\_ I could see a lot of farms and fields.  
A: Where did I stand  
C: Where I stood
88. John's mistake was \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: be late for work three times  
C: had been late for work three times
89. He seemed to be unaware of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: what happening around him was  
C: what around him was happening
90. The mother called the police and said \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: which was her son kidnapped  
C: that her son was kidnapped
91. The truth \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: is that is he unreliable  
C: that he is unreliable
92. You should be aware \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: of how your eating is related with your stress level  
B: how your eating is related with your stress level  
C: of how is your eating related with your stress level  
D: is how your eating is related with your stress level
- B: that you have done  
D: whether have you done
- B: what a noun clause is recognized  
D: how is a noun clause recognized
- B: why do you so worried.  
D: you look so worried why
- B: how far is the moon  
D: how is the moon far
- B: What will do after school  
D: What you do after school
- B: where you live  
D: where do you live
- B: Whether does she go to college  
D: That if she goes to college
- B: Why isn't he here today?  
D: Why he isn't here today?
- B: if her cake was ready  
D: that was her cake ready
- B: From did where I stand  
D: From where I stood
- B: late for work three times  
D: that he had been late for work three times
- B: what was happening around him  
D: what happening around him
- B: which her son was kidnapped  
D: that was her son kidnapped
- B: that is he unreliable  
D: is that he is unreliable

A: in the papers do you read  
C: what do you read in the papers

B: you read what in the papers  
D: what you read in the papers

94. It is unclear \_\_\_\_\_.

A: whether he shot himself or was murdered  
C: if did he shoot himself or was murdered

B: that he shot himself or was murdered  
D: whether was he shot himself or murdered

95. \_\_\_\_\_ affects your weight.

A: What you eat  
C: What are you eating

B: What do you eat  
D: What eating

96. I was not sure \_\_\_\_\_.

A: which would you like  
C: whether you would like it

B: you would like it  
D: whether would you like it

97. "I'm looking for the mail. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_?" - "Usually it comes by 4:00"

A. when it will arrive  
C. when does it arrive

B. when it does arrive  
D. when will it arrive

98. Scientists are attempting to find out \_\_\_\_\_ there is life on other planets.

A. if or not                      B. whether if                      C. whether or not                      D. whether not

99. "Look at the new dress I bought". - "How \_\_\_\_\_ such an expensive dress?".

A. did you afford                      B. you afforded                      C. afforded you                      D. you do want

100. "Could you help me for a while?" - "Sure. Tell me what \_\_\_\_\_ me to do"

A. you want                      B. want                      C. do you want                      D. did afford you

## II. Change the question in parentheses to a noun clause

1. (How old is he?)

→ I don't know.....

2. (What was he talking about?)

→ .....was interesting.

3. (Where do you live?)

→ Please tell me.....

4. (What did he say)

→ ..... wasn't true.

5. (When are they coming?)

→ Do you know .....

6. (How much does it cost?)

→ I can't remember.....

7. (Which one does he want?)

→ Let's ask him.....

8. (Who is coming to the party?)

→ I don't know.....

9. (Why did they leave the country?)

→ ..... is a secret.

10. (Where did she go?)

→ ..... is not your business.

11. (how many letters are there in the English alphabet?)

→ I don't remember.....

12. (Who is the mayor of New York city?)

→ I don't know.....

## III. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.

1. My head seems to be on fire now.  
→I feel as if .....
2. I had a feeling that I was walking in the air.  
→I felt as though.....
3. Bill doesn't work hard.  
→I'd rather.....
4. He drives too fast.  
→I'd rather.....
5. He didn't want to pay his debts.  
→I'd rather.....
6. He spent his money like a prince.  
→He spent his money as if.....
7. You speak like a prophet.  
→You speak as though .....
8. We must set out, it is a little late.  
→It's high time.....
9. You should review your lessons for the exams.  
→It's time.....
10. He smokes a great deal. I'd like he gives up smoking.  
→I'd rather.....
11. She pretended not to know me.  
→She looked as if she .....
12. He should call me on the phone.  
→It's time.....
13. We must start working now.  
→It's hightime.....
14. She made up like an actress.  
→She made up as if .....
15. She cried like a baby.  
→She cried as though .....
16. They talk like kings.  
→They talk as if .....
17. We should solve this problem.  
→It's time.....
18. Mary dresses up like a queen.  
→Mary dresses up as if.....
19. She talks too much.  
→ I'd rather.....
20. He'll come to my house tonight.  
→I'd rather.....

**I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA, MỤC ĐÍCH PHƯƠNG PHÁP ĐỂ ĐẢO NGỮ****1. Tại sao lại gọi là ĐẢO NGỮ ?**

- Bình thường câu khẳng định và phủ định sẽ có dạng: **S (+ Trợ động từ) + ADV + V**

Eg : I **will never** forget them.

**ĐẢO NGỮ là dạng mà TRỢ ĐỘNG TỪ và TRẠNG TỪ bị ĐẢO LÊN ĐẦU CÂU TRƯỚC CHỦ NGỮ.**

Eg : **Never will** I forget them.

**2. Mục đích của việc đảo ngữ là ?**

- Được dùng để **nhấn mạnh** một **thành phần** hay ý nào đó trong câu.

**Lưu ý:** Câu Hỏi cũng là 1 dạng Đảo Ngữ. (Are you tired? Where did she go?)

**3. Bảng thể hiện chi tiết các dạng đảo ngữ.****ĐẢO NGỮ CÁC CỤM TỪ "NO"****1. No/Not + N + Trợ động từ + S + Động từ**

Eg : Not a tear did she shed when the story ended in a tragedy.

**2. At no time = Never = Under/In no circumstances (không bao giờ)**

Eg : At no time did he suspect that his girlfriend was an enemy spy

**3. By no means (hoàn toàn không)**

Eg : By no means is she poor. She only pretends to be.

**4. For no reason (không vì lí do gì)**

Eg : For no reason will we surrender

**5. On no condition = On no account + Trợ động từ + S + Động từ (dù bất cứ lí do gì cũng không)**

Eg : On no account should you be late for the exam.

**6. No longer (không còn nữa)**

Eg : No longer does he make mistakes

**7. Nowhere + Trợ động từ + S + Động từ (không nơi nào, không ở đâu)**

Eg : No where can the keys be found

**ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CÁC TRẠNG TỪ PHỦ ĐỊNH**

**Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Hardly, Scarcely, Barely, ... + trợ động từ + S + V**

Eg : Little did he know the truth.

Eg : Never in my life have I been in such an embarrassing situation.

**ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI ONLY****1. Only after + S + V + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ sau khi)**

Eg : Only after I had left home did I realize how important my family played a role in my life.

**2. Only after + N + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ sau khi)**

Eg : Only after his father's retirement did he take over the company.

**3. Only by + V-ing + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ bằng cách)**

Eg : Only by studying hard can you pass the exam

**4. Only if + S + V + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ nếu)**

Eg : Only if you promise to keep secret will I tell you about it.

**5. Only when + S + V + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ khi)**

Eg : Only when you grow up can you understand this matter



6. **Only with** + N + trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ với)

Eg : Only with your help can we manage.

7. **Only once/ Only later/ Only in this way/ Only then** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ

Eg : Only once have I met her.

Eg : Only later did I realize I was wrong.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI HARDLY/NO SOONER

1. **Hardly/barely/scarcely** + had + S + Vp2 + **when** + S + V (quá khứ đơn)

Eg : **Hardly** had I gone to bed when the telephone rang

2. **No sooner** + had + S + Vp2 + than + S + V (quá khứ đơn) (Ngay khi/vừa mới... thì)

Eg : **No sooner** had I gone to bed than the telephone rang.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NOT ONLY.....BUT ALSO

**Not only** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ + **but also** + Chủ ngữ + Động từ (không những... mà còn)

Eg : **Not only** does she sing beautifully but also she learns well.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI SO THAT/SUCH THAT

1. **So** + Tính từ + V + chủ ngữ + that + clause

Eg : **So** beautiful is she that many boys run after her.

2. **Such** + be + N + that + clause/ N + be + such + that + clause (quá... đến nỗi mà)

Eg : Her anger was such that she broke the vase.

= **Such** was her anger that she broke the vase.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NOT UNTIL/NOT TILL

**Not until/till** + Time/Time clause + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ (mãi đến khi)

Eg : **Not until/till** midnight did he come home.

Eg : **Not until/till** I was 8 did I know how to ride a bike.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NEITHER

**Neither** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ

Eg : **Neither** is there excitement nor entertainment in this small town.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

1. **Câu điều kiện loại I**: Should + S+V, V + O /S + will, can... + V

Eg : **Should** he come, please tell him to see me.

2. **Câu điều kiện loại II**: Were + S + (to V) + ..., S + would/could + V

Eg : **Were** I you, I would apply for that job. **Were** I to have enough money, I would buy that car.

3. **Câu điều kiện loại III**: Had + S + Vp2, S + would/could + have + Vp2

Eg : **Had** the car in the front not stopped so suddenly, the accidents wouldn't have happened.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI ALTHOUGH.

1. Although/even though/though + S + V, S + V

= **Much as** + S + V, S + V

= No matter what + S + V, S + V hoặc No matter how + adj/adv + S + V, S + V

Eg : Although the exercise is difficult, the boys can solve it.

= **Much as** the exercise is difficult, the boys can solve it.

= **No matter** how difficult the exercise is, the boys can solve it.

= However + adj/adv + S + V = Adj/adv + as/though + S + V, S + V

= **However** difficult the exercise is, the boys can solve it.

= Difficult **as** the exercise is, the boys can solve it.



## ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NOR

Nor + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ

Eg: He doesn't smoke, **nor** does he drink

## ĐẢO NGỮ CÓ SO/NEITHER

So/Neither + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ

Eg: I can't sing well, **neither** can my sister. He loves football, **so** do I.

## ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI TRẠNG TỪ CHỈ HƯỚNG/PHƯƠNG, NƠI CHỖ

Adv of place + V + S

Eg: **Near** my house is a bus stop.

## ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CỤM PHÂN TỬ

Cụm phân tử (V-ing/Vp2) + V + S

Eg: **Situated** in the central mountains of Alaska is a peak named Denali.

Eg: **Coming** first in the race was my sister.

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG ĐẢO NGỮ

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. They never came to class late, and.....  
A. neither did we      B. so did we      C. we did either      D. neither we did
2. Never.....me again.  
A. will she love      B. she loves      C. she won't love      D. she will love
3. Not only.....but she is also very intelligent.  
A. she is beautiful      B. beautiful she is      C. is she beautiful      D. beautiful is she
4. No sooner.....out than it rained.  
A. did I go      B. I went      C. had I gone      D. I had gone
5. "Does November have 31 days?" - "No, and several other months....."  
A. do too      B. do either      C. don't either      D. don't too
6. Many a time.....he wants to marry me.  
A. said he      B. he said      C. has he said      D. he has said
7. Mary has to make tea every day, and.....Daisy.  
A. so has      B. so does      C. has too      D. does too
8. So old.....that she couldn't dance.  
A. she wasn't      B. she was      C. wasn't she      D. was she
9. ....here yesterday, you would have met me.  
A. Were you      B. you were      C. Had you been      D. You had been
10. On the battle field.....  
A. the tank did lie      B. the tanks lay      C. did the tanks lie      D. lay the tanks
11. Peter does not like films,.....  
A. neither do his sister      C. his sister does neither  
B. neither does his sister      D. neither his sister does
12. "I would like to apply for the sales position you advertised."  
"I'm sorry. No longer.....applications for that position."  
A. are taking we      B. we are taking      C. are we taking      D. we taking
13. No sooner.....than he begins to be washed.  
A. is a human being born      B. was a human being born



- A. Neither can't I      B. Neither I can      C. I can't neither      D. Neither can I
33. Not until the early 1900s \_\_\_\_\_ to vote in the United States.  
 A. women were allowed      B. were women allowed  
 C. they allowed women      D. when women were allowed
34. Only recently \_\_\_\_\_ a favourite sport in the United States.  
 A. has jogging become      B. has become jogging  
 C. when jogging became      D. as jogging has become
35. "This is one of the oldest trees in the world" - " \_\_\_\_\_ such a big tree".  
 A. Never I have seen      B. I haven't never seen  
 C. Never have I seen      D. I have seen never
36. "What happened to Jean's new car?" - "No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ it than someone ran into her"  
 A. had she bought      B. she bought      C. did she bought      D. she ad bought
37. Only when the ground is kept moist \_\_\_\_\_ germinate.  
 A. grass seeds will      B. will grass seeds      C. grass seeds does      D. does grass seeds
38. Not until Columbus discovered America \_\_\_\_\_ to Europe.  
 A. was bananas brought      B. bananas were brought  
 C. were bananas brought      D. bananas was brought
39. Only when he started working with her, \_\_\_\_\_ that she was intelligent.  
 A. he had realize      B. did he realize      C. he did realized      D. he realized
40. Only after food has been dried or canned \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. it should be stored for future use.  
 B. that it should be stored for future use.  
 C. should it be stored for future use.  
 D. should it store for future use.
41. \_\_\_\_\_ worked outside the home as nowadays.  
 A. Never so many women have  
 B. Never have so many women  
 C. The women are not never  
 D. The women who have never
42. No longer \_\_\_\_\_ any pleasure to do this job.  
 A. I do have      B. do I have      C. do have I      D. I have
43. John stops smoking.  
 A. John does not smoke no longer      B. John smokes any longer  
 C. No longer does John smoke      D. Any longer John smokes
44. Only when you grow up \_\_\_\_\_ the truth.  
 A. you will know      B. will you know      C. you know      D. do you know
45. No sooner had he arrived home \_\_\_\_\_ he was called out again.  
 A. when      B. and      C. than      D. but
46. \_\_\_\_\_ had the restaurant opened \_\_\_\_\_ people were flocking to eat there .  
 A. Hardly... than      B. No sooner..that      C. No sooner..than      D. hardly.. that
47. Down \_\_\_\_\_ for three days.  
 A. the rain poured      B. did the rain pour      C. poured the rain      D. do the rain pour
48. Out \_\_\_\_\_ the children when the bell rang.  
 A. did the children run      B. ran the children  
 C. run the children      D. do the children run
49. Such \_\_\_\_\_ that he would stop at nothing.  
 A. his ambition was      B. did his ambition      C. does his ambition      D. was his ambition

50. He no longer collects stamps as he used to. No longer \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. he collects stamps as he used to                      B. does he collect stamps as he used to  
 C. does he collected stamps as he used to              D. doesn't he collect stamps as he used to it.
51. \_\_\_\_\_, a matter is formed of molecules.  
 A. It doesn't matter if the complex                      B. It's not a complex matter  
 C. No matter how complex it is                          D. How complex is not a matter
52. No more \_\_\_\_\_ to worry about the future sources of energy.  
 A. don't we have      B. we don't have      C. do we have      D. we do have
53. Hardly \_\_\_\_\_ asleep when the phone woke him up again.  
 A. had the doctor fallen                                      B. did the doctor fall  
 C. the doctor fell    D. the doctor has fallen
54. Not until darkness fell \_\_\_\_\_ he hadn't done half of his work.  
 A. that he realized    B. did he realize  
 C. that he didn't realize                                        D. didn't he realize
55. Seldom \_\_\_\_\_ of Nancy Johnson as coloured.  
 A. her classmates thought                                    B. thought her classmates  
 C. her classmates did think                                 D. did her school classmates think
56. Not until next year \_\_\_\_\_ take place.  
 A. the new tax change will                                 B. will the new tax change  
 C. the new tax changes                                        D. they change the new tax
57. .... did Jerome accept the job.  
 A. Only because it was interesting work.                B. Because it was an interesting work.  
 C. Only because it was interested work.                D. The work was interesting.
58. .... when the Charges found themselves 7-0 down.  
 A. Hardly had the games begun                            B. Hardly the games had begun  
 C. The games had hardly begun                            D. Hardly had begun the games
59. Not until the first land plants developed.....  
 A. land animals appeared                                    B. did land animals appear  
 C. would land animals appear                            D. the land animals appeared  
 failed.
60. It was not until she had arrived home \_\_\_\_\_ her appointment with the doctor.  
 A. when she remembered                                    B. that she remembered  
 C. and she remembered                                      D. did she remember
61. Canada does not require that U.S citizens obtain passports to enter the country, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. Mexico doesn't, too                                        B. so does Mexico  
 C. Mexico doesn't, either                                    D. neither is Mexico
62. I write to her almost every day.  
 A. Not a day goes by unless my writing to her.  
 B. No day go by without my writing to her.  
 C. Hardly does a day go by without my writing to her.  
 D. Almost every day goes by without my writing for her.
63. The noise next door didn't stop until midnight.  
 A. It was not until midnight that the noise next door stopped.  
 B. Not until midnight did the noise next door stopped.  
 C. Only when midnight did the noise next door stopped.  
 D. Hardly did the noise next door stopped when it was midnight.
64. Just after solving one problem, I was faced with another.

- A. Scarcely had I solved one problem when I was faced with another.  
 B. Hardly had I solved one problem when I was faced with another.  
 C. No sooner had I solved one problem than I was faced with another.  
 D. All are correct.
65. We couldn't relax until all the guests had left.  
 A. Not until all the guests had left could we relax.  
 B. It wasn't until all the guests had left that we could relax.  
 C. It wasn't until all the guests had left could we relax.  
 D. A and B are correct
66. The phone stopped ringing the moment I got downstairs.  
 A. No sooner had the phone stopped ringing than I got downstairs.  
 B. After the phone had stopped ringing, I got downstairs.  
 C. Hardly had the phone stopped ringing when I got downstairs.  
 D. No sooner had I got downstairs than the phone stopped ringing.
67. She didn't shed a tear as the play ended in tragedy.  
 A. The tragedy play wasn't good for her to shed tear.  
 B. Without her tear, the play didn't end tragically.  
 C. So tragic was the play that she didn't shed a tear.  
 D. Not a tear did she shed when the play ended in tragedy.
68. She tried very hard to pass the driving test. She could hardly pass it.  
 A. Although she didn't try hard to pass the driving test, she could pass it.  
 B. Despite being able to pass the driving test, she didn't pass it.  
 C. No matter how hard she tried, she could hardly pass the driving test.  
 D. She tried very hard, so she passed the driving test satisfactorily.
69. Laura practised playing the instrument a lot. She could hardly improve her performance.  
 A. Hardly had Laura practised playing the instrument a lot when she could improve her performance.  
 B. Had Laura practised playing the instrument a lot, she could have performed much better.  
 C. However much Laura practised playing die instrument, she could hardly perform any better.  
 D. As soon as Laura practised playing the instrument a lot, she could perform much better.
70. She gave a great performance at the festival. We now know she has artistic talent.  
 A. Amazing as her artistic talent is, we don't know about her great performance at the festival.  
 B. Hardly had we known about her artistic talent when she gave a great performance at the festival.  
 C. Although she gave a great performance at the festival, now we still don't know she has artistic talent.  
 D. But for her great performance at the festival, we wouldn't know about her artistic talent now.
71. Peter told US about his leaving the school. He did it on his arrival at the meeting.  
 A. Only after his leaving the school did Peter inform US of his arrival at the meeting.  
 B. Not until Peter told US that he would leave the school did he arrive at the meeting.  
 C. Hardly had Peter informed US about his leaving the school when he arrived at the meeting.  
 D. No sooner had Peter arrived at the meeting than he told US about his leaving the school.
72. Mike became a father. He felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.  
 A. Were Mike to become a father himself, he would feel a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.



B.Only after Mike had become a father himself did he feel a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.

C.Had Mike become a father himself, he would have felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.

D.Not until he felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents did Mike become a father himself.

73. He had hardly left the office when the phone rang.

A.No sooner had he left the office than the phone rang.

B.No sooner he had left the office than the phone rang.

C.No sooner he had left the office when the phone rang.

D.No sooner he did left the office than the phone rang.

74. No matter how hard Fred tried to start the car, he didn't succeed.

A.Fred tried very hard to start the car, and succeeded.

B.However hard Fred tried, he couldn't start the car.

C.It's hard for Fred to start the car because he never succeeded.

D.Fred tried hard to start the car, and with success

75. Although he was very tired, he agreed to help his child with his homework.

A.Despite of his tiredness, he was eager to help his child with his homework.

B.Tired as he was, he agreed to help his child with his homework.

C.Even if feeling very tired, he agreed to help his child with his homework.

D.He would have helped his child with his homework if he hadn't been tired.

76. The noise next door did not stop until after midnight.

A.It was not until after midnight that the noise next door stopped.

B.It was midnight that the noise next door stopped.

C.Not until after midnight did the noise next door stopped

D.The noise next door stopped at midnight.

77. Exhaustion prevented any of the runners from finishing the race.

A.The runners can't finish the race as a result of their exhaustion.

B.The runners are so exhausted that they can't finish the race,

C.The runners were not exhausted enough to finish the race.

D.So exhausted were the runners that none of them finished the race.

78. He started computer programming as soon as he left school.

A.No sooner had he started computer programming than he left school.

B.Hardly had he started computer programming when he left school.

C.No sooner had he left school than he started computer programming.

D.After he left school, he had started computer programming.

79. We stayed in that hotel despite the noise.

A.Despite the hotel is noisy, we stayed here.

B.We stayed in the noisy hotel and we liked it.

C.No matter how noisy the hotel was, we stayed there.

D.Because of the noise, we stayed in the hotel.

80. Friendly though he may seem, he's not very trusted.

A.However he seems friendly, he's not to be trusted.

B.However friendly he seems, he's not to be trusted.

C.He may have friends, but he's not to be trusted.

D.He's too friendly to be trusted.

81. Despite his early retirement, he found no peace in life.

- A.Although he retired early, but he found no peace in life.  
 B.His early retirement has brought him peace in life.  
 C.He found no peace in life because he retired early.  
 D.Early as he retired, he found no peace in life.
82. It wasn't clear to US at the time how serious the problem was.  
 A.We were not sure about how serious the problem was at the time.  
 B.That the problem was serious was not made clear to US.  
 C.Little did we know anything about the seriousness of the problem.  
 D.Little did we realise at the time how serious the problem was.
83. If you want to save your eyesight, you must operate immediately.  
 A.Unless you want to save your eyesight, you mustn't operate immediately.  
 B.Only by operating immediately can you save your eyesight.  
 C.Provided that you must operate immediately, you can save your eyesight.  
 D.If you did operate immediately, you couldn't save your eyesight.
84. I only realized what I had missed when they told me about it later.  
 A.Only after I had realized what I had missed did they tell me about it later.  
 B.As soon as they told me about it I realized what I had missed.  
 C.Only when they told me about it later did I realize what I had missed.  
 D.They told me about it and I realized what I had missed.
85. The demand was so great that they had to reprint the book immediately.  
 A.So great was the demand that they had to reprint the book immediately.  
 B.So great the demand was that they had to reprint the book immediately.  
 C.Such great was the demand that they had to reprint the book immediately.  
 D.Such was the demand great that they had to reprint the book immediately.
86. You won't find a more dedicated worker anywhere than Mrs Jones.  
 A.Mrs Jones is the most dedicated worker you won't find anywhere.  
 B.Nowhere will you find a more dedicated worker than Mrs Jones.  
 C.Nowhere will not you find a more dedicated worker than Mrs Jones.  
 D.Mrs Jones can't be found in nowhere.
87. The outcome of the election was never in doubt.  
 A.At no time was the outcome of the election in doubt.  
 B.At no time the outcome of the election was in doubt.  
 C.Never in doubt was the outcome of the election.  
 D.By no means was the outcome of the election been suspected.
88. The only way to eliminate world terrorism is by united opposition.  
 A.Only with united opposition could we eliminate terrorism.  
 B.Only by united opposition can we eliminate terrorism.  
 C.Only in this way can world terrorism be eliminated.  
 D.Only then can we eliminate terrorism.
89. He forgot about the gun until he got home.  
 A.Not until he got home did he forget about the gun.  
 B.Not until he got home did he remember about the gun.  
 C.Not until he had got home did he remember about the gun.  
 D.Not until he had got home did he forget about the gun.
90. The truth only came out on the publication of the general's personal diaries.  
 A.Only by publishing the general's personal diaries, did the truth come out.  
 B.Not until the general's personal diaries published did the truth come out.

C. Hardly were the general's personal diaries published than the truth came out.

D. Only when the general's personal diaries were published did the truth come out.

**II. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. He is so intelligent that he always scores high.

→ So.....

2. He hardly bought an insurance when he had an accident.

→ Hardly.....

→ No sooner.....

3. I could drive motorbike only when I reached 18.

→ Only when.....

4. He had hardly left the office when the telephone rang.

→ No sooner.....

5. He is both intelligent and handsome.

→ Not only.....

6. Mr. Bean rarely showed his intelligence.

→ Rarely.....

7. I phone him as soon as I went home.

→ No sooner.....

→ Scarcely.....

8. He only thought about having a holiday abroad after he retired.

→ Only after.....

9. He had hardly left the office when the telephone rang.

→ No sooner.....

10. I had only just put the phone down when the boss rang back.

→ Hardly.....

11. He didn't finish his work until the bell rang.

→ Not until.....

12. We only began to see the symptoms of the disease after several months.

→ Only.....

13. A sleeping dog was lying under the table.

→ Under the table.....

14. His brother had rarely been more excited.

→ Rarely.....

15. The facts were not all made public until later.

→ Only.....

16. If I had realized what would happen, I wouldn't have accepted the job.

→ Had.....

17. She has rarely travelled more than fifty miles from her village.

→ Rarely has she travelled.....

18. He only thought about having a holiday abroad after he retired.

→ Not until.....

19. He had just started driving his new car when he had an accident.

→ Hardly.....

20. I only realized how dangerous the situation had been when I got home.

→ Only when.....

21. We had only just walked in the door when the phone rang.

- No sooner .....
- 22. Miss Rose will not be offered the job under any circumstances.
- Under no .....
- 23. Tom was not only late, but he had left all his books behind.
- Not only .....
- 24. They had to wait for twelve hours before their flight left.
- Only after.....
- 25. If the salary were high, the job would be worth doing.
- Were .....
- 26. If the computer hadn't broken down and I wouldn't have had to stop my work.
- Had .....
- 27. The weather was so beautiful that we decided to go to the beach.
- So .....
- 28. She has such a soft voice that everyone likes her
- Such .....
- 29. The film had never before laid on such a sumptuous celebration.
- Never .....
- 30. If the Government is forced into another election, it will be the favorite to win.
- Should .....

### I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA

Liên từ là từ dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ và mệnh đề với nhau.

Có 3 loại liên từ là: liên từ kết hợp, tương liên từ và liên từ phụ thuộc.

### II. LIÊN TỪ KẾT HỢP/ ĐẲNG LẬP

#### CHỨC NĂNG

- Liên từ kết hợp đẳng lập: Là những từ hoặc cụm từ dùng để nối 2 từ, 2 cụm từ hay 2 mệnh đề trong câu hoặc 2 câu với nhau.

#### ĐẶC ĐIỂM

- Nối các từ hoặc cụm từ/ nhóm từ cùng loại, hoặc những mệnh đề ngang hàng nhau về mặt ngữ pháp (tính từ với tính từ, danh từ với danh từ .)

**For, and, nor, but, or, yet, so (FANBOYS)**

- She is a good **and** loyal wife.
- He is intelligent **but** very lazy.
- She says she doesn't love me, **yet** I still love her.
- We work hard, **or** we will fail the exam.
- The shops were closed, **so** I didn't get any milk.
- He will surely succeed, **for** he works hard.
- That is not what I meant to say, **nor** should you interpret my statement as an admission of guilt.

#### NOTES

- Sau "**nor**" bắt buộc là 1 động từ, nên nếu chủ ngữ của 2 mệnh đề khác nhau thì khi ghép lại, phải đưa động từ hoặc mượn trợ động từ đứng trước chủ ngữ của mệnh đề thứ 2.

He isn't rich, **nor do** I imagine that he ever will be.

### III. LIÊN TỪ TƯƠNG QUAN

#### CHỨC NĂNG

- Sử dụng theo cặp để liên kết các cụm từ/ mệnh đề có chức năng tương đương.

#### MỘT SỐ CẶP LIÊN TỪ TƯƠNG QUAN THƯỜNG GẶP

**Both.....and.....**  
...  
(vừa ... vừa)

- Khi "**Both...and**" dùng để nối hai chủ ngữ, động từ chia số nhiều  
**Both** my father **and** my mother **like** dogs.

**Either.....**  
**or.....**  
(hoặc ... hoặc ...)  
**Neither.....nor.....**  
... (không..mà cũng không ..)

❖ Quy luật chung  
- Quy luật cân đối : Về đâu/ mệnh đề đầu "**either, neither, both, not only**" dùng với loại từ nào thì trong vế sau/ mệnh đề sau "**or, nor, and, but also**" cũng phải dùng với loại từ đó.

- He likes eating **both** fish **and** meat.
- She **neither** smokes **nor** drinks.
- He is **not only** deaf **but also** dumb.
- You can speak **either** slowly **or** fast.

- Quy tắc gần nhất : Nếu chủ ngữ khác nhau về số (nhiều hay ít) hay về ngôi (person) thì động từ chia theo chủ ngữ gần nhất.



<b>Not only..... but also.....</b> (không những ..mà còn..)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Not only he but also his friend likes</b> fish.</li> <li>• <b>Either he or his sisters have</b> been there.</li> </ul>
❖ <b>Lưu ý :</b> Not only ...but also = not only ...but...also = not only ... but...as well.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Not only children but also grown up people</b> love Walt Disney cartoons.</li> <li>• <b>Not only children but grown up people</b> love Walt Disney cartoons <b>as well</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Whether.....or.....</b> ...	Have you made a decision about <b>whether</b> to go to the movies <b>or not</b> ?
<b>If.....then</b> (nếu ... thì)	<b>If</b> that is the case, <b>then</b> I'm not surprised about what's happening.
<b>Not ..... but</b>	I <b>don't</b> want to do anything <b>but</b> sleep.
<b>No sooner..... than.....</b>  <b>Hardly/ Barely</b>  <b>Scarcely.....when</b>  (vừa mới....thì đã...)	<p><b>S + had + no sooner + VP2 + than + S + Vqk</b>  <b>S + had + hardly/ barely/ scarcely + VP2 + when/ before + Vqk</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I had no sooner arrived home than the phone rang.</li> <li>• I had scarcely arrived home when the phone rang.</li> </ul> <p>- Đảo ngữ với No sooner ...than, Hardly/ Scarcely/Barely...when...</p> <p><b>No sooner + had +S+VP2 + than + S + Vqk</b>  <b>Hardly/Barely/ Scarcely + had +S+VP2 + when/ before + S + Vqk</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• We had <b>no sooner</b> left out <b>than</b> they came in room. → <b>No sooner</b> had we left out <b>than</b> they came in room.</li> <li>• I had <b>hardly</b> arrived home <b>when</b> the phone rang. → <b>Hardly</b> had I arrived home <b>when</b> the phone rang.</li> </ul>

#### IV. LIÊN TỪ PHỤ THUỘC

##### CHỨC NĂNG

- Nói các cụm từ/ mệnh đề có chức năng khác nhau – mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính trong câu.

##### MỘT SỐ LIÊN TỪ PHỤ THUỘC THƯỜNG GẶP

##### Though, Although, Even though, Even if

<b>Though</b> (mặc dù)	<p>- <b>Though</b> : liên từ, thường đứng đầu câu hoặc giữa câu.  <b>Though</b> he is poor, he is happy  = Poor <b>though</b> he is, he is happy. (conjunction)</p> <p>- <b>Though</b> trạng từ, và thường hay đứng cuối câu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I am busy today. We could meet tomorrow, <b>though</b>. (adverb)</li> </ul>
<b>Although</b> (mặc dù)	<p>- Liên từ chỉ đứng đầu hay giữa câu, không bao giờ đứng cuối câu.  - Nghĩa <b>though</b> (thường dùng hơn)/<b>although</b> (trang trọng hơn) giống nhau</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Although/ though</b> I don't like him, I admit that he's a good manager.</li> </ul>
<b>Even though</b> (cho dù)	<p>- Có sắc thái ý nghĩa mạnh hơn <b>although</b>, nói về tính tất nhiên sẽ xảy ra dù với điều kiện gì đó. (express a fact)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You keep making that stupid noise <b>even though</b> I've asked you to stop three times.</li> </ul>
<b>Even if</b> (thậm chí)	<p>- Diễn tả 1 sự việc có khả năng xảy ra, nhưng dù có hay không, nó cũng không ảnh hưởng đến sự việc ở mệnh đề chính. (used in a</p>

supposition or hypothesis).

- **Even if** she studies hard, she won't pass the exam.

**No matter + who/what/which/where/when/how + S +V, clause.** (dù có... đi chăng nữa.. thì)

**No matter how** = **however** (dù thế nào đi chăng nữa)

**No matter what** = **whatever** (dù gì đi chăng nữa)

**No matter where** = **wherever** (dù nơi nào đi chăng nữa)

**No matter when** = **whenever** (dù khi nào đi chăng nữa)

**No matter which** = **whichever** (dù điều gì đi chăng nữa)

**No matter who** = **whoever** (dù ai đi chăng nữa)

- **No matter who** telephones, say I'm out.
- **No matter what** you say, I won't believe you.
- **No matter where** we met, I call you friend.

### 📌 LƯU Ý

✓ Các cấu trúc này có thể đứng cuối câu mà không cần có mệnh đề theo sau:

- I will always love you, **no matter what**.

❖ **Cấu trúc: No matter how/ however + adj/ adv + S + V, clause.** (cho dù, dù)

**No matter how/ however** hard I try, I can't solve this problem.

❖ **Cấu trúc: Adj/ ady + as though + S+V, clause.** (mặc dù).

**Rich as he is, he is unhappy.** = **Rich though** he is, he is unhappy.

**As, since, because, due to, owing to seeing that, now (that), in as much as...** (Bởi vì)

**Due to + N** (thường dùng sau "be").

**Owing to +N** (thường đứng đầu câu)

- The delay was **due to** the traffic jam.
- **Owing to** the heavy traffic, they were late.
- **Due to** the rise in oil prices, the inflation rate rose by 1.25%.

**Because of/ on account of + N/V-ing**

- The man was detained **on account of** his strange behavior.

**Because/ since/ as/ seeing that/ now (that) due to the fact that +S+V**

- **As/ Since/ because** you weren't there, I left a message.
- **Seeing that** he's been sick, he's unlikely to come.

**For/ in that /in as much as (trọng trọng)**

- The film is unusual **in that** it features only 4 actors.
- I believed her, **for** surely she would not lie to me.

### Giving examples (đưa ra ví dụ)

- **For example/ For instance (chẳng hạn, ví dụ)** .

What would you do, **for instance**, if you found a member of staff stealing?

- **Namely** (cụ thể là): dùng để đề cập đến cái gì đó bằng tên.

There are two **problems: namely**, the expense and the time.

### Adding information(bổ sung thông tin )

**And** (và)

**In addition (to sth)** (ngoài ra)

**As well as** (cũng như)

**Also** (cũng)

**Too** (cũng)

**Furthermore** (hơn nữa)

**Besides** (ngoài ra)

**Moreover** (hơn nữa)

**Apart from** (ngoài)

**In addition to** these arrangements, extra ambulances will be on duty until midnight.  
We are interested in costs **as well as** the competition.  
**Apart from/ Besides** Rover, we are the largest sports car manufacturer.  
He said he hadn't discussed the matter with her. **Furthermore/ Moreover**, he hadn't even contacted her.

#### Sequencing ideas(sắp xếp ý tưởng theo trình tự).

**The former, .. the latter** (vấn đề trước), .. (vấn đề sau): dùng khi đề cập 1 trong 2 ý  
Marketing and finance are both covered in the course. **The former** is studied in the first term and **the latter** is studied in the final term.

**Firstly, secondly, finally/ lastly, the first point, the second point, the third**

... (đầu tiên là, hai là, cuối cùng là): được dùng để liệt kê các ý.

**The following** (sau đây) là cách hay để bắt đầu một chuỗi liệt kê.

**The following** people have been chosen to go on the training course: Peters, Jones and Owen.

#### Giving a reason(đưa ra lý do)

**Due to / Owing to +N**

**Because of/ On account of (+N/ V-ing)**

**Because/ Since/ As/ Seeing that/ now that + clause**

**The reason for + N, The reason why +S+ V**

**The reason why** grass is green was a mystery to the little boy.

**The reason for** the disaster was engine failure, not human error.

**Due to/ Owing to/ Because of** the rise in oil prices, the inflation rate rose by 1.25%

**Due to/ Owing to the fact that** oil prices have risen, the inflation rate has gone up by 1.25%.

**Because /Since/ As/ Seeing that** it was raining, the match was postponed

#### Giving a result (Đưa ra 1 kết quả)

**Therefore** (vì vậy)/ **So** (vậy nên)/ **Consequently** (do đó). **Thus/ Hence** (do vậy)

**As a result** (kết quả là) để nhấn mạnh hậu quả của hành động/ sự vật sự việc.

**This means that** (điều này có nghĩa là)

The company is expanding. **Therefore / Consequently**, they are taking on extra staff.

He was blinded **as a result of** a terrible accident.

#### Contrasting ideas (đưa ra ý đối lập)

**But** (những) **However/ Nevertheless/ Nonetheless** (tuy nhiên)

**Although / even though** (mặc dù) **Despite/In spite of (the fact that)**(mặc dù)

**While/ Whereas** (trong khi) **Unlike** (không giống)

**In theory... in practice...** (về lý thuyết trên thực tế...): cho thấy kết quả không mong đợi.

**While** my sister has blue eyes, mine are brown.

**Unlike** in the UK, the USA has cheap petrol.

**In theory**, teachers should prepare for lessons, but in practice, they often don't have enough time.

#### Summarising (tóm tắt).

**In short/ brief/ summary/ a nutshell conclusion** (nói tóm lại)

**To summarise/ conclude/ put it in a nutshell**

**In brief/ short/ summary/ conclusion**, the meeting was a disaster.

#### CÁC TỪ NỐI THƯỜNG DÙNG NHIỀU TRONG VĂN NÓI

**But frankly speaking...** thành thật mà nói...

**It is worth noting that...** đáng chú ý là...

**According to estimation/ statistics/ survey data...** theo ước tính/ thống kê/ số liệu điều tra...

As far as I know,....	theo như tôi được biết,...
In a little more detail...	chi tiết hơn một chút...
I have a feeling that...	tôi có cảm giác rằng...
In accordance with sth:	Phù hợp với cái gì...
What is mentioning is that...:	điều đáng nói là...
There is no denial that...	không thể chối cãi là...
It was not by accident that...:	ko phải tình cờ mà...
On behalf of sb...:	Đại diện cho ai...
Viewed from different angles, ...	nhìn từ nhiều khía cạnh khác nhau...

## V. MỘT SỐ TỪ ĐỂ NHẪM LẪN

### However/ Nevertheless/Nonetheless

**However/ Nevertheless** (trang trọng và nhấn mạnh hơn), **nonetheless** (trong văn nói)  
Đứng ở đầu câu, giữa hoặc cuối câu (trước và sau **phải có dấu phẩy**)

Eg . The politician was confident of success. His adviser were not so certain, **however/ nevertheless**.

Eg . The company is doing well. **Nonetheless**, they aren 't going to expand this year.

### However/ But/ Although

- **However** (tuy nhiên) thể hiện sự nhượng bộ, nói về sự trái ngược nhưng không đối nghịch nhau hoàn toàn.

Eg . We could fly via Vienna, **however**, it isn't the only way.

- **However** có thể đứng 1 mình ở đầu câu, với 1 dấu phẩy theo sau nó.

Eg . We decided not to wear our jackets. **However**, the weather was cold.

- **But** (nhưng) nối 2 mệnh đề trái ngược nhau hoàn toàn (phía trước có dấu “,”)

Eg . She did her homework, **but** I didn't. It was midnight, but the restaurant was still open.

- **Although** (mặc dù có thể được dùng ở đầu hoặc giữa câu, nhưng không có một dấu phẩy theo sau.

Eg . **Although** the weather was cold, we decided not to wear our jackets.

### Yet/ yet ...still/ even so/ in spite of this

Dùng “**yet**” thay thế cho “**but**” khi muốn nhấn mạnh sự đối lập để đạt được 1 hiệu ứng mạnh mẽ hơn

Eg . She can play the piano very well, **yet** she can't read music at all.

Eg . She's really quite ill these days. **Even so / In spite of this**, she remains in good spirits.

Eg . He has over a million pounds in his bank account. **Yet** he **still** gets up at six every morning to go to work.

### Mind you/ still/ but still

Trong văn nói, **mind you, still, but still**” đôi khi được dùng như 1 sự thay thế kém trang trọng cho “**yet**”.

Eg . The weather was lousy. It rained every day. **Still**, we managed to enjoy ourselves.

Eg . I don't like the work very much. **Mind you**, the people I work with are very nice.

Eg . You can be very annoying at times, **but** we **still** love you.

### On the other hand/ On the contrary/ In contrast(mặt khác, trái lại)

- “**On the one hand ... On the other hand**”: thể hiện các quan điểm, ý kiến, khía cạnh trái ngược nhau về cùng 1 vấn đề.

Eg . **On the one hand** this car is expensive, **on the other hand**, it's available and we need it right now.



- **On the contrary** (đầu câu) dùng để đưa ra 1 ý kiến trái ngược với ý kiến đã được đưa ra.  
 Eg. "We thought you didn't like opera." – "**On the contrary**, I love it."  
 -**In/by contrast**: dùng để chỉ sự khác biệt đáng ngạc nhiên) giữa 2 sự kiện rất khác nhau.  
 Eg. It is hot in the desert in the day, but **in/ by contrast**, it is very cold at night.

#### **Too/ so- Either/ neither (Cũng cũng không)**

- **Too** (cuối câu) **So** (đầu câu): So + trợ động từ +S: dùng cho câu khẳng định.  
 A: I love you. - B: I love you, **too**. / **So** do I.  
 - **Either** (cuối câu) **neither** (đầu câu: Neither + trợ động từ + S): dùng cho câu phủ định.  
 A: I don't like fish. - B: I don't, **either**. / **Neither** do I.  
 - **Me too/ me neither** (informal)  
 'Me too' = 'so + trợ động từ +I'  
 'me neither' = 'neither + trợ động từ +I'.  
 John: I hate mushrooms. - Me: Me too  
 Lucy: I don't live in London. - Me: Me neither

#### **So (vì vậy)**

**S + V, so + S + V**  
 He wanted to study late, **so** he drank another cup of coffee.

#### **Therefore (do đó)**

**S + V, therefore (,) + S + V**  
 He wanted to study late, **therefore**, he drank another cup of coffee.

#### **As well – too – also (cũng, thêm vào đó)**

- **As well / too** (trang trọng), đặt ở cuối mệnh đề, trong câu khẳng định.  
 My birthday's on the 6th of June. ~That's funny. My birthday's on the 6th of June **too/ as well**.  
 - **Also**: đặt trước các động từ thường và sau trợ động từ, hoặc đặt ở đầu câu.  
 They **also** work hard on Sunday.

#### **Whereas / while (trong khi – đối lập nhau)**

We thought she was arrogant, **whereas** she was just very shy.  
 'While I like all types of fish, my girlfriend always chooses meat dishes when we go out to eat.'

#### **Besides (bên cạnh)**

- **Besides**: bên cạnh giới từ), ngoài ra (trạng từ) + N/ pronoun/ Ving  
**Besides** doing the cooking I look after the garden. I can't go now, I'm busy. **Besides**, my passport is out of date.

### III. THỰC HÀNH

#### **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG LIÊN TỪ-TỪ NỐI**

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions**

- Where have you been \_\_\_\_\_ you left home?  
 A. before                      B. as                              C. since                              D. when
- \_\_\_\_\_ the problem of method is solved, talking about the task is useless.  
 A. Until                              B. Since                              C. After                              D. Unless
- We have produced 15% more cotton this year \_\_\_\_\_ we did last year.  
 A. as                                      B. than                              C. like                              D. white
- It is late; \_\_\_\_\_, I'm too tired to go out.  
 A. besides                              B. except                              C. except for                              D. except that



5. Everything around us is \_\_\_\_ solid .liquid \_\_\_\_ gas.  
A. not / but                      B. either / or                      C. neither / nor                      D. whether / or
6. He will come \_\_\_\_\_ you ask him.  
A. whether                      B. unless                      C. if                      D. while
7. \_\_\_\_\_ he will come or not is still unknown.  
A. If                      B. Where                      C. That                      D. Whether
8. I don' t know \_\_\_\_\_ to stay at home or go out.  
A. whether                      B. if                      C. how                      D. where
9. He spoke loudly \_\_\_\_\_ the audience could hear him clearly.  
A. so                      B. that                      C. so that                      D. in order to
10. The book is not easy. \_\_\_\_\_ it's rather difficult.  
A. On the one hand    B. On the contrary                      C. On the other hand    D. On the other contrary
11. You must work hard, \_\_\_\_\_ you will not learn English well.  
A. if                      B. whether                      C. otherwise                      D. unless
12. It rained heavily, \_\_\_\_\_ the basketball match had to be put off.  
A. so that                      B. when                      C. otherwise                      D. therefore
13. We must do \_\_\_\_\_ the people want us to do..  
A. whatever                      B. however                      C. wherever                      D. whenever
14. \_\_\_\_\_ quickly they ran, they just couldn't catch up with the van.  
A. However                      B. So                      C. Even                      D. Much
15. She started to laugh, \_\_\_\_\_ herself.  
A. in spite of                      B. on account of                      C. in addition to                      D. even though
16. "You should stop working too hard \_\_\_\_\_ you'll get sick".  
A. or else                      B. if                      C. in case                      D. whereas
17. You may get malaria \_\_\_\_\_ you are bitten by a mosquito.  
A. if                      B. so that                      C. though                      D. Unless
18. She got the job \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that she had very little experience.  
A. although                      B. because of                      C. despite                      D. because
19. I studied English for four years in high school. \_\_\_\_\_ I had trouble talking with people when I was traveling in the US.  
A. Therefore                      B. Otherwise                      C. Although                      D. However
20. It was not \_\_\_\_\_ Michael Jackson's death that people around the world understood his contribution in music.  
A. since                      B. when                      C. until                      D. Result
21. \_\_\_\_\_ your precious help, I wouldn't have certainly overcome most of the practical difficulties.  
A. If not                      B. Provided                      C. Unless                      D. Without
22. Jane's been unfaithful to Jim three times, but he still loves her \_\_\_\_\_ everything.  
A. apart from                      B. in spite of                      C. in addition to                      D. because of
23. In Britain, most shops close at 6 pm, \_\_\_\_\_ in other countries they often open in the evening, too.  
A. despite                      B. moreover                      C. nevertheless                      D. whereas
24. Parents shouldn't use physical punishment. it negatively influences children's development.  
A. because of                      B. although                      C. because                      D. in spite of
25. Children are encouraged to read books \_\_\_\_\_ they are a wonderful source of knowledge.  
A. because of                      B. in spite of                      C. because                      D. although
26. \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.



46. Research shows that learners who adopt this approach will undoubtedly manage to broaden their language abilities considerably and, \_\_\_\_\_, are more likely to achieve their objectives in the longer term.  
A. because                      B. in contrast                      C. though                      D. as a result
47. We decided to take a late flight \_\_\_\_\_ we could spend more time with our family.  
A. in order                      B. so that                      C. so as to                      D. in order to
48. I walked away as calmly as I could \_\_\_\_\_ they thought I was the thief.  
A. although                      B. so that                      C. owing to                      D. in case
49. He got wet \_\_\_\_\_ he forgot his umbrella.  
A. because of                      B. because                      C. but                      D. and
50. He stops working \_\_\_\_\_ heavy raining.  
A. in spite of                      B. although                      C. despite                      D. because of
51. They have a lot of difficulties in their life \_\_\_\_\_ their poverty.  
A. in spite of                      B. although                      C. because                      D. because of
52. Tom wakes his parents up \_\_\_\_\_ playing the guitar very softly.  
A. because                      B. in spite of                      C. because of                      D. although
53. Nobody could hear her \_\_\_\_\_ she spoke too quietly.  
A. although                      B. because                      C. because of                      D. in spite of
54. We decided to leave early \_\_\_\_\_ the party was boring.  
A. although                      B. despite                      C. because                      D. because of
55. Many people believe him \_\_\_\_\_ he often tells a lie.  
A. because                      B. in spite of                      C. although                      D. because of
56. \_\_\_\_\_ she was very hard working; she hardly earned enough to feed her family.  
A. In spite of                      B. Because                      C. Because of                      D. Although
57. \_\_\_\_\_ her absence from class yesterday, she couldn't understand the lesson.  
A. Although                      B. In spite of                      C. Because of                      D. Because
58. \_\_\_\_\_ her poorness, she feels happy.  
A. Although                      B. Because                      C. If                      D. In spite of
59. We all feel sad \_\_\_\_\_ the bad news  
A. because                      B. because of                      C. though                      D. despite
60. John lost his job \_\_\_\_\_ his laziness.  
A. because of                      B. because                      C. in spite of                      D. though
61. I went to the club last Saturday \_\_\_\_\_ the heavy rain.  
A. because of                      B. because                      C. in spite of                      D. though
62. He has had this car \_\_\_\_\_ six months.  
A. in                      B. since                      C. during                      D. for
63. We can't go to Julia's party \_\_\_\_\_ we're going away that weekend.  
A. because                      B. because of                      C. although                      D. in spite of
64. \_\_\_\_\_ repeated assurances that the product is safe; many people have stopped buying it.  
A. By                      B. Despite                      C. With                      D. For
65. She walked home by herself, \_\_\_\_\_ she knew that it was dangerous.  
A. because                      B. although                      C. and                      D. but
66. \_\_\_\_\_ his injuries, he bears no animosity towards his attackers.  
A. Because of                      B. But for                      C. In spite of                      D. Without
67. I'll see you after the show and give you £20 for the tickets, or \_\_\_\_\_ much they cost.  
A. whatever                      B. nevertheless                      C. besides                      D. however
68. Mai worked hard, \_\_\_\_\_ she passed her exam.

- A. so                      B. although                      C. because                      D. though
69. \_\_\_\_\_ she was very tired, she helped her brother with his homework.  
A. Because                      B. whether                      C. Although                      D. so
70. It's raining hard, \_\_\_\_\_ we can't go to the beach.  
A. or                      B. but                      C. so                      D. though
71. Nam was absent from class yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ he felt sick.  
A. so                      B. because                      C. although                      D. but
72. Tom has a computer, \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn't use it.  
A. or                      B. as                      C. because                      D. but
73. The boy can't reach the shelf \_\_\_\_\_ he's not tall enough.  
A. because                      B. although                      C. even though                      D. and
74. The film was boring, \_\_\_\_\_ we went home.  
A. so                      B. when                      C. but                      D. if
75. The girl bought the shoes \_\_\_\_\_ they are very expensive.  
A. but                      B. if                      C. so                      D. although
76. He used to smoke a lot \_\_\_\_\_ now he doesn't smoke any more.  
A. still                      B. therefore                      C. but                      D. as
77. She couldn't unlock it \_\_\_\_\_ she had the wrong key.  
A. while                      B. but                      C. though                      D. because
78. \_\_\_\_\_ it rained, the boys played football.  
A. Even                      B. Even though                      C. However                      D. In spite of
79. I won't change my mind \_\_\_\_\_ what you say.  
A. whether                      B. no matter                      C. because                      D. although
80. There was nothing they could do \_\_\_\_\_ leave the cat at the roadside where it had broken down.  
A. but                      B. instead of                      C. than                      D. unless
81. You can go to the party tonight \_\_\_\_\_ you are sober when you come home.  
A. as long as                      B. as far as                      C. as soon as                      D. as well as
82. Ancient Egyptians mummified the dead bodies through the use of chemicals, \_\_\_\_\_ ancient Peruvians did through natural processes.  
A. because                      B. whereas                      C. whether or not                      D. even though
83. \_\_\_\_\_ many times I tell him, he always never passes on phone message.  
A. However                      B. No matter                      C. Whenever                      D. Whatever
84. He always did well at school \_\_\_\_\_ having his early education disrupted by illness.  
A. apart from                      B. in spite of                      C. in addition to                      D. because of
85. \_\_\_\_\_ of all of us who are here tonight, I would like to thank Mr. Jones for his talk.  
A. In person                      B. Instead                      C. On account                      D. On behalf
86. John swims very well and \_\_\_\_\_ does his brother.  
A. also                      B. even                      C. so                      D. too
87. We were expecting beautiful weather at the beach, but it was so cold and rainy that, \_\_\_\_\_ getting a suntan, I caught a cold.  
A. compared to                      B. just as                      C. in case of                      D. instead of
88. The firemen did well \_\_\_\_\_ their preparation for catastrophic gas explosions.  
A. although                      B. because                      C. despite                      D. because of
89. \_\_\_\_\_ there have been many changes in his life, he remains a nice man to everyone.  
A. However                      B. Although                      C. Because                      D. Despite
90. \_\_\_\_\_ he is old, he wants to travel around the world.

- A. In spite of                      B. Although                      C. Despite                      D. Because

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ I was really tired, I couldn't sleep.  
A. If                      B. Although                      C. While                      D. However
2. We watched TV the whole evening \_\_\_\_\_ we had nothing better to do.  
A. because                      B. though                      C. so                      d. but
3. It's cheap, \_\_\_\_\_ I don't like it.  
A. and                      B. because                      C. so                      d. however
4. \_\_\_\_\_ it was late, I decided to phone Brian.  
A. Despite                      B. However                      C. In spite of                      D. Though
5. The little boy was hungry \_\_\_\_\_ he ate nothing.  
A. although                      B. so                      C. but                      D. and
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the car was cheap, it was in good condition.  
A. Although                      B. Because                      C. As                      D. If
7. \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow is a public holiday; all the shops will be shut all day.  
A. As                      B. Just as                      C. Although                      D. When
8. She came in \_\_\_\_\_ turned on the radio.  
A. so                      B. and                      C. or                      D. but
9. We didn't go for a walk \_\_\_\_\_ it was very cold.  
A. though                      B. because                      C. but                      D. so
10. \_\_\_\_\_ I tried to persuade her, I didn't succeed.  
A. Because                      B. So                      C. Although                      D. However
11. Lan woke up late \_\_\_\_\_ she didn't have time for breakfast  
A. so                      B. since                      C. as                      d. though
12. I like fish \_\_\_\_\_ I don't like catching them myself.  
A. or                      B. but                      C. so                      D. and
13. He had an accident \_\_\_\_\_ he was careful.  
A. even though                      B. because                      C. so                      D. since
14. \_\_\_\_\_ it was raining, I went swimming.  
A. So                      B. Because                      C. However                      D. Although
15. Ann felt ill, \_\_\_\_\_ she insisted on going to work.  
A. though                      B. so                      C. and                      D. but
16. \_\_\_\_\_ I felt tired, I went to bed early.  
A. Although                      B. So                      C. As                      D. However
17. \_\_\_\_\_ he's got an English name, he is German.  
A. Although                      B. However                      C. Because                      D. Since
18. They decided not to go out for a meal \_\_\_\_\_ they were too tired.  
A. so                      B. because                      C. but                      D. if
19. We were the better team \_\_\_\_\_ we lost the match.  
A. so                      B. and                      C. but                      D. because
20. I'm learning English \_\_\_\_\_ I want to get a better job.  
A. or                      B. because                      C. therefore                      D. but
21. Please do that work \_\_\_\_\_ I told you yesterday.  
A. like                      B. as                      C. same as                      D. similar to
22. This boy lied to you. \_\_\_\_\_ you don't trust him anymore  
A. so                      B. but                      C. and                      D. however.



23. \_\_\_\_\_ Dad works hard all day; he always goes to bed late and gets up early.  
A. However                      B. Despite                      C. Although                      D. No matter
24. That boy wasn't busy. \_\_\_\_\_, he refused to help his mother.  
A. so                              B. but                              C. and                              D. however.
25. \_\_\_\_\_ the rain, the baseball game was not cancelled.  
A. In spite of                      B. Even though                      C. Although                      D. Despite
26. I got a job \_\_\_\_\_ my bad English.  
A. if                              B. although                      C. in spite of                      D. because
27. I'm not going to the party \_\_\_\_\_ I know that I should.  
A. although                      B. because                      C. despite                      D. if
28. \_\_\_\_\_ I came to see her yesterday, she was reading a magazine.  
A. When                      B. While                      C. Before                      D. After
29. Tom went to work despite \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that he did not feel very well                      B. of the fact not feeling well  
C. he did not feel very well                      D. not feeling very well
30. Though \_\_\_\_\_, they are good friends.  
A. their sometimes quarrel                      B. to have a quarrel sometimes  
C. they sometimes have a quarrel                      D. of having a quarrel sometimes
31. Despite \_\_\_\_\_, we arrived on time.  
A. the traffic                      B. of the traffic  
C. there was heavy traffic                      D. of there was heavy traffic
32. \_\_\_\_\_ it was very cold, she did not put on her coat.  
A. In case                      B. But                      C. Even if                      D. Although
33. \_\_\_\_\_ having the best qualifications among all the applicants, Justin was not offered the job.  
A. Although                      B. While                      C. In spite of                      D. Despite of
34. \_\_\_\_\_ the internet is very popular, many older people do not know how to use it.  
A. However                      B. Nevertheless                      C. Even though                      D. Despite
35. \_\_\_\_\_ he wasn't feeling very well, David was determined to take part in the inter-university athletics meet.  
A. Although                      B. While                      C. Where as                      D. yet
36. They were brave and persistent. \_\_\_\_\_, they had no chance of winning.  
A. However                      B. While                      C. Although                      D. Whereas
37. Bob has been working very hard these days. \_\_\_\_\_, he can't afford to buy a new car.  
A. While                      B. Even though                      C. Though                      D. Nevertheless
38. \_\_\_\_\_ what she prepared for the job interview, Megan didn't pass it.  
A. Despite of                      B. In spite of                      C. Though                      D. However
39. Josh is one of the best student of the school. \_\_\_\_\_, he can't pass the national chemistry exam.  
A. However                      B. Although  
C. In spite of the fact that                      D. Despite of the fact that
40. Bruce was not praised \_\_\_\_\_ he was a hard worker.  
A. despite                      B. in spite of                      C. although                      D. despite of
41. It looks like they are going to succeed \_\_\_\_\_ their present difficulties.  
A. despite                      B. although                      C. in spite                      D. even though
42. Mery usually goes to parties. She likes meeting people and crowded places \_\_\_\_\_ she is rather shy.  
A. In spite of                      B. Even though                      C. On the contrary                      D. In other words
43. Ann: Have you decided to get the job?

Terry: Yes, I've just decided. I'll accept that job \_\_\_\_\_ it is not suitable with my major. It is not an interesting job, \_\_\_\_\_ the salary is very good.

- A. although / but      B. despite / and      C. but / though      D. yet / however

44. \_\_\_\_\_ he has continued to work on his thesis.

- A. Although all these problems      B. Even though there are problems  
C. Despite all these problems      D. In spite of there are problems

45. \_\_\_\_\_ some German and British management styles are similar, there are many differences between them.

- A. In spite      B. In spite of      C. although      D. Despite

46. Keith decided to give up his job \_\_\_\_ I advised him not to

- A. because      B. however      C. although      D. since

47. \_\_\_\_\_ we were in town, we often met him.

- A. For      B. Although      C. So      D. When

48. She didn't get the job \_\_\_\_ she had all the necessary qualifications.

- A. because      B. although      C. so      D. but

49. I could not eat \_\_\_\_ I was very hungry.

- A. even though      B. in spite of      C. despite      D. in spite the fact that

50. In spite \_\_\_\_\_, the baseball game was not cancelled.

- A. the rain      B. of the rain      C. it was raining      D. there was a rain

51. \_\_\_\_ he had enough money, he refused to buy a new car.

- A. In spite      B. In spite of      C. Despite      D. Although

52. \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.

- A. Despite being tired      B. Although to be tired  
C. In spite being tired      D. Despite tired

53. The children slept well, despite \_\_\_\_\_

- A. it was noise      B. the noise      C. of the noise      D. noisy

54. She left him \_\_\_\_\_ she still loved him.

- A. even if      B. even though      C. in spite of      D. despite

55. \_\_\_\_\_ her lack of hard work, she was promoted.

- A. In spite      B. Even though      C. in spite of      D. despite of

56. \_\_\_\_\_ they are brothers, they do not look like.

- A. Although      B. Even      C. Despite      D. In spite of

57. I could not eat \_\_\_\_\_ I was very hungry.

- A. even though      B. in spite      C. despite      D. despite of

58. In spite \_\_\_\_\_, the baseball game was not cancelled.

- A. the rain      B. of the rain      B. it was raining      D. there was a rain

59. \_\_\_\_\_ he had enough money, he refused to buy a new car.

- A. In spite      B. In spite of      C. Despite      D. Although

60. \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.

- A. Despite being tired      B. Although to be tired  
C. In spite being tired      D. Despite tired

61. The children slept well, despite \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. it was noise      B. the noise      C. of the noise      D. noisy

62. She left him \_\_\_\_\_ she still loved him.

- A. even if      B. even though      C. in spite of      D. despite

63. \_\_\_\_\_ her lack of hard work, she was promoted.

- A. In spite                      B. Even though                      C. In spite of                      D. Despite of
64. In spite of \_\_\_\_\_, he was determined to finish his work.  
A. was seriously ill.    B. be seriously ill                      C. his serious illness                      D. he was seriously ill
65. \_\_\_\_\_ they are brothers, they do not look like.  
A. Although                      B. Even                      C. Despite                      D. In spite of
66. Our new neighbors are quite nice \_\_\_\_\_ they are sometimes talkative.  
A. despite                      B. in spite of                      C. though                      D. as though
67. \_\_\_\_\_ of the difficulty, they managed to climb to the top of the mountain.  
A. In spite                      B. Despite                      C. But                      D. Although
68. \_\_\_\_\_, he could not finish the job.  
A. As hard as he work                      B. Despite he worked hard  
C. Though he worked hard                      D. Although hard work
69. He went to work \_\_\_\_\_ his headache.  
A. despite                      B. although                      C. because                      D. because of
70. Despite \_\_\_\_\_, we knew that he was guilty.  
A. denied                      B. of denying                      C. he denied                      D. his denial
71. Despite the fact that \_\_\_\_\_, we enjoyed our trip.  
A. the weather is bad    B. it is a bad weather  
C. the bad weather                      D. the weather was bad
72. Julie failed the exam \_\_\_\_\_ of working very hard.  
A. despite                      B. in spite                      C. even if                      D. though
73. Lan has learnt English since she \_\_\_\_\_ a small girl.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. has been                      D. had been
74. Don't go anywhere until I \_\_\_\_\_ back.  
A. come                      B. came                      C. will come                      D. am coming
75. Before cars \_\_\_\_\_, people \_\_\_\_\_ horses and bicycles.  
A. were discovered/ had used                      B. discovering / had used  
C. had discovered/ used                      D. discovered/ had used
76. I am going to speak with the boss when the meeting \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. will end                      B. ends                      C. is ending                      D. would end
77. When we \_\_\_\_\_ him tomorrow, we will remind him of that.  
A. will see                      B. see                      C. am seeing                      D. saw
78. When he comes, I \_\_\_\_\_ her the news.  
A. tell                      B. will tell                      C. would tell                      D. would have told
79. When the police came, they \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. are fighting                      B. fought                      C. would be fighting                      D. were fighting
80. Before she came to England, she \_\_\_\_\_ English.  
A. studied                      B. will study                      C. had studied                      D. was studying
81. I have lost touch with him \_\_\_\_\_ He left for London.  
A. as soon as                      B. after                      C. before                      D. since
82. My mother is washing the dishes \_\_\_\_\_ my father is watching television.  
A. when                      B. while                      C. as                      D. since
83. \_\_\_\_\_, I will give him the report.  
A. When he will return                      B. When he returns  
C. Until he will return                      D. No sooner he returns
84. \_\_\_\_\_ the firemen arrived to help, we had already put out the fire.  
A. Until                      B. No sooner                      C. By the time                      D. After

85. I have earned my own living \_\_\_\_\_ I was seven.  
 A. since                      B. when                      C. while                      D. as soon as
86. We saw many beautiful birds \_\_\_\_\_ in the lake.  
 A when we are fishing B. while fishing                      C. while fished                      D. fishing
87. \_\_\_\_\_, Peter came to see me.  
 A. While having dinner                      B. While I was having dinner  
 C. When having dinner                      D. When I am having dinner
88. \_\_\_\_\_ my homework, I went to bed.  
 A. After I had finished                      B. After finished  
 C. Finished                      D. After had finished
89. \_\_\_\_\_ the dance, Jerry said good-bye to his girlfriend.  
 A. Before left                      B. Before he leaves  
 C. Before leaving                      D. Before he will leave
90. Jones \_\_\_\_\_ after everyone \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. speaks / will eat                      B. will speak / has eaten  
 C. is speaking / eats                      D. has spoken / will have eaten

**III. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. Tom doesn't lie to his friends. Paul doesn't either. (neither ... nor)  
 → .....
2. He's betrayed your trust. He's betrayed your love for him. (not only ... but also)  
 → .....
3. He felt disappointed. He felt misunderstood. (both ... and)  
 → .....
4. She will have to study hard. She will have to concentrate to do well on the exam. (not only ... but also)  
 → .....
5. We could fly. We could go by train. (both ... and)  
 → .....
6. The speaker will not confirm the story. The speaker will not deny the story. (neither ... nor)  
 → .....
7. Pneumonia is a dangerous disease. Small pox is a dangerous illness. (not only ... but also)  
 → .....
8. The teacher gave Nam a good book. Nam's parents gave him a good book. (both ... and)  
 → .....
9. Fred loves traveling. Jane wants to go around the world. (either ... or)  
 → .....
10. It might rain tomorrow. It might snow tomorrow. (both ... and)  
 → .....
11. Jane owns a shop. She owned a restaurant. (both...and)  
 → .....
12. She's at the shop. She's at the airport. (either...or)  
 → .....
13. David doesn't play tennis. David doesn't play table tennis. (neither...nor)  
 → .....
14. Nam is handsome. Nam is intelligent. (not only... but also)  
 → .....

15. Jane doesn't like cats. I don't like cats either.(Neither....nor)  
→ .....
16. Lisa and play badminton very well. I can, too. (Both....and)  
→ .....
17. We could have lunch at home. We could also go out to eat. (either)  
→ .....
18. She doesn't like hip hop or heavy mental music. (neither)  
→ .....
19. We can go to the cinema on Sunday. We can also go there on Saturday. ( Both)  
→ .....
20. I'm going to buy one of these shirts. One is red, the other is blue . (either)  
→ .....
21. My father has a very good health. He seldom takes any medicines. (SUCH... THAT)  
→ .....
22. My friend is very strong. He can lift up the table himself. (SO... THAT)  
→ .....
23. This coffee is so strong that I can't drink it. (SUCH... THAT)  
→ .....
24. Mary's voice is so beautiful that we all like to hear her sing. (SUCH... THAT)  
→ .....
25. Bill is such an intelligent boy that he always at the top of his class. (SO... THAT)  
→ .....
26. The shelf is too high for the boy to reach. (SO... THAT)  
→ .....
27. Dean swims so powerfully that he always won the races. (SUCH... THAT)  
→ .....
28. I couldn't carry the equipment. I had such a lot. (SUCH... THAT)  
→ .....
29. I have many problems. I can use all the help you can give me. (SO... THAT)  
→ .....
30. The film was so boring that we fell asleep. (SO... THAT)  
→ It was so.....
31. The house is so expensive that we can't afford to buy it. (TOO)  
→ .....
32. The patient was too weak to get up. (SO... THAT)  
→ .....
33. This room is too small for us to hold the meeting. (ENOUGH)  
→ .....
34. The test was so difficult that we couldn't do it. (ENOUGH)  
→ .....
35. The map is so old that I can't read it. (TOO)  
→ .....
36. He spoke so fast that we couldn't hear him well. (ENOUGH)  
→ .....
37. It was too late for them to go to the movies. (ENOUGH)  
→ .....
38. The film is so good that I can't miss it. (TOO)



- .....
39. The ladder wasn't long enough to reach the window. (TOO)  
→ .....
40. I'm too tired to go to the cinema this evening. (SO...THAT)  
→ .....
41. Jim is on holiday and so is Carol. (Both)  
→ .....
42. George doesn't smoke and he doesn't drink. (Neither)  
→ .....
43. Jim hasn't got a car & Carol hasn't got a car, either. (Neither)  
→ .....
44. It is a very boring film. It is very long too. (Not only)  
→ .....
45. She didn't write and she didn't phone. (Neither)  
→ .....
46. His parents as well as his brother are going to Halong Bay next Sunday. (Both)  
→ .....
47. Helen lost her passport at the airport. She also lost her wallet there. (Not only)  
→ .....
48. I haven't got time to go on holiday and I haven't got any money. (Either/Neither)  
→ .....
49. On Friday evening, sometimes I go to the cinema, sometimes I stay at home and watch TV.  
(Either)  
→ .....
50. She was really frightened when hearing the noise from the forest and so did I. (Both)/  
(Together with)  
→ .....
- .....
51. I like Tom and I also like Peter. (both)  
→ .....
52. It is the cheapest as well as the nicest watch. (Not only)  
→ .....
53. I don't like either horror film or action film. (Neither)  
→ .....
54. He doesn't come on time and his wife doesn't come on time. (Neither)  
→ .....
55. I like neither watching TV nor reading a novel before going to bed. (Either)  
→ .....
56. They can't begin working on Monday. They can't begin working on Wednesday. (Neither)/  
(Either)  
→ .....
- .....
57. My sister didn't watch TV last night. She didn't listen to music last night. (Either)  
→ .....
58. We go to school in the morning and we also go to school in the afternoon. (not only ... but... as  
well)  
→ .....

59. Because of being late for the meeting, I missed the most important part.

→ Because.....

60. Because the party is noisy, I can't hear what you are saying.

→ Because of.....

### I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA/CÁC LOẠI GIỚI TỪ

#### 1. Định nghĩa giới từ là gì ? (Definition)

- Giới từ là từ hay cụm từ thường được dùng với danh từ, tính từ, đại từ để chỉ mối liên hệ giữa các từ này với các thành phần khác trong câu.
- Giới từ có vị trí đứng riêng của mình trong câu, sau đây là vị trí của một số giới từ cơ bản trong tiếng Anh:

##### a. Trước danh từ

Ví dụ: + at the cinema: ở rạp chiếu phim

+ in 2000: vào năm 2000

##### b. Sau động từ

Có thể liên sau động từ, có thể bị một từ khác xen giữa động từ và giới từ.

Ví dụ: + I arrived at the airport on time. (Tôi đến sân bay đúng giờ.)

+ Please turn the radio down! (Làm ơn vặn nhỏ đài chút!)

##### c. Sau tính từ

Ví dụ: + Viet Nam is rich in natural resources. (Việt Nam giàu tài nguyên thiên nhiên.)

+ He is very friendly with me. (Anh ấy rất thân thiện với tôi.)

#### 2. Các loại giới từ (Kinds of prepositions)

#### GIỚI TỪ CHỈ THỜI GIAN (PREPOSITIONS OF TIME)

Cách dùng	Ví dụ minh họa
<b>"ON"</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Thứ trong tuần</li> <li>- Ngày trong tháng/năm</li> <li>- Trong một số cụm từ:</li> <li>+ on holiday: đi nghỉ</li> <li>+ on vacation: nghỉ việc</li> <li>+ on business: đi công tác</li> <li>+ on duty: đang làm nhiệm vụ</li> <li>+ on an excursion: trong một chuyến du ngoạn</li> <li>+ on purpose: có chủ định</li> <li>+ on time: đúng giờ</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ We have English lessons <u>on</u> Monday and Friday.</li> <li>+ I was born <u>on</u> May 5th 1987.</li> <li>+ She went <u>on holiday</u> with her family.</li> <li>+ He doesn't have anything to do because he has been <u>on vacation</u>.</li> <li>+ The manager and the secretary are <u>on business</u>.</li> <li>+ I'm sorry but I am <u>on duty</u>, so I can't join you.</li> <li>+ Last week, my class was <u>on an excursion</u> to Halong Bay.</li> <li>+ I think they did it <u>on purpose</u>.</li> <li>+ He is always <u>on time</u>. You can rely on him</li> </ul>
<b>"IN"</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Tháng/năm/mùa</li> <li>- Buổi trong ngày</li> <li>- Trong một số cụm từ:</li> <li>+ in the future: trong tương lai</li> <li>+ in the past: trong quá khứ</li> <li>+ in (good) time for: kịp giờ</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ <u>In</u> March/<u>In</u> 2017/<u>In</u> summer</li> <li>+ <u>In</u> the morning/afternoon/evening</li> <li>+ I wish to be a doctor <u>in the future</u>.</li> <li>+ My village was very poor <u>in the past</u>.</li> <li>+ Luckily, we are <u>in good time for</u> the meeting.</li> </ul>

+ in eood/bad mood: tâm trạng tốt/tệ + in the end: cuối cùng + in the beginning: lúc đầu	+ Today, I'm <u>in bad mood</u> . I don't want to do anything. + <u>In the end</u> , we get married though we hated each other <u>in the beginning</u> .
<b>"AT"</b>	
- Trước các ngày lễ - Cho cuối tuần - Trước giờ - Cho một mốc thời gian nhất định: + at night: vào ban đêm + at noon: vào buổi trưa + at lunch time: vào giờ ăn trưa + at midday: vào giữa ngày + at the moment/ at present: bây giờ + at times: thỉnh thoảng + at dawn: khi bình minh + at dusk: khi hoàng hôn + at the same time: cùng lúc	+ <u>at</u> Christmas: vào giáng sinh + <u>at</u> weekend + <u>at</u> 7 o'clock + It's cooler <u>at night</u> and hotter <u>at noon</u> . + I often read newspapers <u>at lunch time</u> . + <u>At midday</u> everyone would go down to Reg's Café. + I am busy <u>at the moment</u> . + <u>At times</u> , we go out for lunch. + My parents work hard from <u>at dawn to dusk</u> . + The phone rang <u>at the same time</u> you knocked the door.
<b>"SINCE"</b>	
Từ khoảng thời gian nhất định trong quá khứ đến hiện tại	I have lived here <u>since 1997</u> .
<b>"FOR"</b>	
Một khoảng thời gian nhất định tính từ quá khứ đến hiện tại	She has been waiting for you <u>for 3 hours</u> .
<b>"BEFORE"</b>	
Trước khoảng thời gian	I got up <u>before 6am</u> .
<b>"AFTER"</b>	
Sau khoảng thời gian	Don't come back home <u>after 10pm</u>
<b>"FROM... TO"</b>	
Từ... đến	I worked for the company <u>from 2000 to 2007</u> .
<b>"TILL/ UNTIL"</b>	
Đến, cho đến	I will wait here <u>until</u> you come back.
<b>"BY"</b>	
Vào, tính tới	<u>By</u> last month, they had published more than 30 reference books.
<b>"BETWEEN.. AND"</b>	
Giữa... và	He promised to turn up <u>between</u> 8 am <u>and</u> 10 am.
<b>"DURING"</b>	
Trong suốt	<u>During</u> the lesson, all of us kept silent.
<b>GIỚI TỪ CHỈ VỊ TRÍ (PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE)</b>	
<b>Cách dùng</b>	<b>Ví dụ minh họa</b>
<b>"IN"</b>	
- Dùng trong một khu vực, khoảng không	+ <u>in</u> the bedroom: trong phòng ngủ

(mang nghĩa là trong) - Dùng trước cách địa danh như thị trấn, thành phố, quốc gia - Dùng trước các danh từ chỉ phương hướng - Dùng trong một số cụm từ	+ <u>in</u> hospital: trong bệnh viện + <u>in</u> the rain: trong cơn mưa + <u>in</u> a town + <u>in</u> Hanoi + <u>in</u> Vietnam + <u>in</u> the west/east/north/south... + <u>in</u> the middle of: ở giữa + <u>in</u> front of: ở trước + <u>in</u> the back of: ở phía sau
<b>"AT"</b>	
- Dùng trước các địa điểm cụ thể (ở/tại) - Dùng trong một số cụm từ:	+ <u>at</u> the airport, <u>at</u> the part, <u>at</u> the cinema, <u>at</u> the station, <u>at</u> the bus stop, <u>at</u> the meeting, <u>at</u> home... + <u>at</u> the end of: cuối của + <u>at</u> the beginning of: đầu của + <u>at</u> the top of: đỉnh của + <u>at</u> the bottom of: đáy của + <u>at</u> the age of: ở độ tuổi + <u>at</u> the center of: giữa của
<b>"ON"</b>	
- Chỉ vị trí trên một bề mặt (trên/ở trên) - Chỉ vị trí trên các tầng nhà - Dùng trong một số cụm từ:	+ <u>on</u> the table + <u>on</u> the wall + <u>on</u> the beach + <u>on</u> the second floor + <u>on</u> the left/right (of): bên trái/phải (của)
<b>"BY/NEXT TO/BESIDE"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa là gần/bên cạnh	My house is <u>next to/beside/by</u> a school.
<b>"UNDER"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa là bên dưới	The children are playing <u>under</u> the trees.
<b>"BELOW"</b>	
Thấp hơn cái khác nhưng cao hơn mặt đất	The fish are <u>below</u> the surface.
<b>"OVER"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa: - bị bao phủ bởi cái khác - nhiều hơn	put a jacket <u>over</u> your shirt <u>over</u> 16 years of age
<b>"ABOVE"</b>	
- Dùng với ý nghĩa: vị trí cao hơn một cái gì đó	a path <u>above</u> the lake
<b>"AMONG"</b>	
- Dùng với nghĩa là: ở giữa (hơn 2 người/ 2 vật)	She is <u>among</u> the crowd of fans.
<b>"BETWEEN"</b>	
Dùng với ý nghĩa: ở giữa (2 người/ 2 vật)	He is sitting <u>between</u> his girlfriend and his sister.
<b>"BEHIND"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa là: ở phía sau	<u>Behind</u> my house is a river.
<b>"OPPOSITE"</b>	



Dùng với nghĩa là: đối diện	My school is <u>opposite</u> a hotel
<b>GIỚI TỪ CHỈ SỰ CHUYỂN ĐỘNG (PREPOSITIONS OF MOVEMENT)</b>	
<b>Cách dùng</b>	<b>Ví dụ minh họa</b>
<b>"ACROSS"</b>	
Dùng với ý nghĩa: băng qua, băng qua về phía bên kia	The blind man is trying to walk <u>across</u>
<b>"INTO"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa là: vào trong	A strange man came <u>into</u> the building this morning.
<b>"TOWARDS"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa là: di chuyển về hướng	He went 5 steps <u>towards</u> the house.
<b>"ALONG"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa là: dọc theo	She was walking <u>along</u> the beach.
<b>"BY"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa là: ngang qua	I usually walk <u>by</u> the park.
<b>"OVER"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa: vượt qua một cái gì đó	+ He walked <u>over</u> the bridge. + The thief climbed <u>over</u> the wall.
<b>"FROM ...TO"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa: từ ... đến	It takes me 30 minutes to travel <u>from</u> my house <u>to</u> school.
<b>"ROUND /AROUND"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa: quanh	If you are free, I will show you <u>round</u> the city.
<b>"THROUGH"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa: xuyên qua	He walked <u>through</u> the forests.
<b>"OUT OF"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa: ra khỏi	Please get <u>out of</u> my room.
<b>"UP&gt;&lt;DOWN"</b>	
Dùng với nghĩa: lên >< xuống	He often runs <u>up</u> the stairs for exercise
<b>CÁC GIỚI TỪ VỚI Ý NGHĨA KHÁC (OTHER TYPES OF PREPOSITIONS)</b>	
<b>Nghĩa</b>	<b>Ví dụ minh họa</b>
<b>"WITH"</b>	
với	I'm shopping <u>with</u> my brother.
<b>"WITHOUT"</b>	
không, không có	If you come late, we will go <u>without</u> you.
<b>"ACCORDING TO"</b>	
theo như	<u>According</u> to the archives, he was born in Paris.
<b>"IN SPIRE OF"</b>	
mặc dù	<u>In spite of</u> the rain, he turned up on time.
<b>"INSTEAD OF"</b>	
thay vì	I'll have coffee <u>instead of</u> tea.
<b>"LIKE"</b>	
giống như	He walked <u>like</u> an old man.

3. Các cấu trúc giới từ theo sau tính từ, danh từ và động từ (Prepositions following adjectives, nouns and verbs)

PREPOSITIONS FOLLOWING ADJECTIVES, NOUNS AND VERBS	
Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
<b>CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "ABOUT"</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- To be sorry about St</li> <li>- To be curious about St</li> <li>- To be careful about St</li> <li>- To be careless about St</li> <li>- To be confused about St</li> <li>- To be doubtful about St</li> <li>- To be excited about St</li> <li>- To be enthusiastic about St</li> <li>- To be sad about St</li> <li>- To be serious about</li> <li>- To be reluctant about St (or to) St</li> <li>- To be uneasy about St</li> <li>- To be worried about St</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ lấy làm tiếc, hối tiếc về cái gì</li> <li>+ tò mò về cái gì</li> <li>+ cẩn thận về cái gì</li> <li>+ bất cẩn về cái gì</li> <li>+ nhầm lẫn về cái gì</li> <li>+ hoài nghi về cái gì</li> <li>+ hứng thú về cái gì</li> <li>+ nhiệt tình, hào hứng về cái gì</li> <li>+ buồn về cái gì</li> <li>+ nghiêm túc về</li> <li>+ ngần ngại, hững hờ với cái gì</li> <li>+ không thoải mái</li> <li>+ lo lắng về cái gì</li> </ul>
<b>CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "AT"</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- To be amazed at St</li> <li>- To be amused at St</li> <li>- To be angry at sb</li> <li>- To be annoyed at sb</li> <li>- To be bad at st</li> <li>- To be brilliant at</li> <li>- To be good/clever at st</li> <li>- To be efficient at st</li> <li>- To be expert at st</li> <li>- To be mad at sb</li> <li>- To be present at</li> <li>- To be skillful at st</li> <li>- To be surprised at st</li> <li>- To be quick at st</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ kinh ngạc, sững sốt vì cái gì</li> <li>+ thích thú với cái gì</li> <li>+ tức giận với ai</li> <li>+ bực mình với ai</li> <li>+ yếu kém về cái gì</li> <li>+ thông minh, có tài</li> <li>+ giỏi/sắc sảo về cái gì</li> <li>+ có năng lực về cái gì</li> <li>+ thành thạo về cái gì</li> <li>+ tức điên lên với ai</li> <li>+ có mặt</li> <li>+ khéo léo cái gì</li> </ul>
<b>CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "FOR"</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- To be available for sth</li> <li>- To be bad for</li> <li>- To be good for</li> <li>- To be convenient for</li> <li>- To be difficult for</li> <li>- To be dangerous for</li> <li>- To be eager for</li> <li>- To be eligible for</li> <li>- To be late for</li> <li>- To be liable for sth</li> <li>- To leave for</li> <li>- To be famous/well-known for</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ có sẵn (cái gì)</li> <li>+ xấu cho</li> <li>+ tốt cho</li> <li>+ thuận lợi cho...</li> <li>+ khó...</li> <li>+ nguy hiểm...</li> <li>+ háo hức cho</li> <li>+ đủ tư cách cho</li> <li>+ trễ...</li> <li>+ có trách nhiệm về pháp lí</li> <li>+ rời khỏi đâu</li> <li>+ nổi tiếng</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- lo be fit for</li> <li>- To be greedy for</li> <li>- To be grateful for sth</li> <li>- To be helpful/useful for</li> <li>- To be necessary for</li> <li>- To be perfect for</li> <li>- To prepare for</li> <li>- To be qualified for</li> <li>- To be ready for sth</li> <li>- To be responsible for sth</li> <li>- To be suitable for</li> <li>- To be sorry for</li> <li>- To apologize for st/doing St</li> <li>- To thank sb for st/doing St</li> <li>- To be useful for</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ thích hợp với</li> <li>+ tham lam...</li> <li>+ biết ơn về việc...</li> <li>+ có ích/có lợi</li> <li>+ cần thiết</li> <li>+ hoàn hảo</li> <li>+ chuẩn bị cho</li> <li>+ có phẩm chất</li> <li>+ sẵn sàng cho việc gì</li> <li>+ có trách nhiệm về việc gì</li> <li>+ thích hợp</li> <li>+ xin lỗi/lấy làm tiếc cho</li> <li>+ xin lỗi vì cái gì/vì đã làm gì</li> <li>+ cảm ơn ai vì cái gì</li> <li>+ có ích, hữu dụng</li> </ul>
--	---

### CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "FROM"

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- To borrow st from sb/st</li> <li>- To demand st from sb</li> <li>- To draw st from St</li> <li>- To emerge from St</li> <li>- To escape from</li> <li>- To be free from</li> <li>- To prevent st from</li> <li>- To protect sb/st from</li> <li>- To prohibit sb from doing St</li> <li>- To separate st/sb from st/sb</li> <li>- To suffer from</li> <li>- To be away from st/sb</li> <li>- To be different from St</li> <li>- To be far from sb/st</li> <li>- To be safe from St</li> <li>- To save sb/st from</li> <li>- To be resulting from St</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ vay mượn của ai/cái gì</li> <li>+ đòi hỏi cái gì ở ai</li> <li>+ rút cái gì</li> <li>+ nhú lên cái gì</li> <li>+ thoát ra từ cái gì</li> <li>+ không bị, không phải</li> <li>+ ngăn cản ai cái gì</li> <li>+ bảo vệ ai/bảo vệ cái gì</li> <li>+ cấm ai làm việc gì</li> <li>+ tách cái gì ra khỏi cái gì/tách ai ra khỏi ai</li> <li>+ chịu đựng đau khổ</li> <li>+ xa cách cái gì/ai</li> <li>+ khác về cái gì</li> <li>+ xa cách ai/cái gì</li> <li>+ an toàn trong cái gì</li> <li>+ cứu ai/cái gì khỏi</li> <li>+ do cái gì có kết quả</li> </ul>
---	--

### CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "IN"

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- To be absorbed in</li> <li>- To believe in st/sb</li> <li>- To delight in st</li> <li>- To be engaged in st</li> <li>- To be experienced in st</li> <li>- To include st in st</li> <li>- To indulge in st</li> <li>- To be interested in st/doing St</li> <li>- To invest st in st</li> <li>- To involved in st</li> <li>- To persist in st</li> <li>- To be deficient in st</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ say mê, say sưa</li> <li>+ tin tưởng cái gì/vào ai</li> <li>+ hồ hởi về cái gì</li> <li>+ tham dự, lao vào cuộc</li> <li>+ có kinh nghiệm về cái gì</li> <li>+ gộp cái gì vào cái gì</li> <li>+ chìm đắm trong cái gì</li> <li>+ quan tâm cái gì/việc gì</li> <li>+ đầu tư cái gì vào cái gì</li> <li>+ dính líu vào cái gì</li> <li>+ kiên trì trong cái gì</li> <li>+ thiếu hụt cái gì</li> </ul>
--	--

- To be fortunate in st - To be rich in st - To be successful/succeed in	+ may mắn trong cái gì + dồi dào, phong phú + thành công
<b>CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "OF"</b>	
+ To be ashamed of + To be afraid of + To be ahead of + To be aware of + To be capable of + To be confident of + To be certain of + To be doubtful of + To be fond of + To be full of + To be hopeful of + To be independent of + To be proud of + To be jealous of + To be guilty of + To be innocent of + To remind sb of + To be sick of + To be scare of + To be short of + To be suspicious of + To be joyful of + To be typical of + To be tired of + To be terrified of	+ xấu hổ về ... + sợ, e ngại... + trước + nhận thức + có khả năng + tự tin + chắc chắn về + nghi ngờ + thích + đầy + hi vọng + độc lập + tự hào + ganh tị với + phạm tội về, có tội + vô tội + gọi cho ai nhớ tới + chán nản về + sợ hãi + thiếu + nghi ngờ về + vui mừng về + tiêu biểu, điển hình + mệt mỏi + khiếp sợ về
<b>CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "ON"</b>	
+ To be dependent/ depend on st/sb +To be keen on st +To be based on st	+ lệ thuộc vào cái gì/ vào ai + mê cái gì + dựa trên, dựa vào
<b>CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "TO"</b>	
- To be grateful to sb - To be harmful to sb/st - To be important to - To be indifferent to - To be identical to - To be kind to sb To be kind of sb - To be likely to - To be lucky to - To be loyal to - To be necessary to sth/sb - To be next to	+ biết ơn ai + có hại cho ai (cho cái gì) + quan trọng + bàng quan, thờ ơ + giống hệt + tốt với ai + lòng tốt của ai + có thể + may mắn + chung thủy với + cần thiết cho việc gì / cho ai + kế bên

- To be open to	+ cởi mở
- To be opposed to	+ phản đối
- To be pleasant to	+ hài lòng
- To be preferable to	+ đáng thích hơn
- To be profitable to	+ có lợi
- To be responsible to sb	+ có trách nhiệm với ai
- To be rude to	+ thô lỗ, cộc cằn
- To be similar to	+ giống, tương tự
- To be useful to sb	+ có ích cho ai
- To be willing to	+ sẵn lòng

### CẤU TRÚC GIỚI TỪ ĐI VỚI "WITH"

- To be acquainted with	+ quen biết, quen thân
- To be angry with sb	+ tức giận với ai
- To be busy with st/doing St	+ bận với cái gì/làm việc gì
- To be bored with = to be fed up with	+ chán ngán, chán ngấy
- To be consistent with St	+ kiên trì chung thủy với cái gì
- To be content with St = to be satisfied with	+ hài lòng với
- To be crowded with	+ đầy, đông đúc
- To be covered with	+ bao phủ với
- To cope with	+ đương đầu với
- To deal with	+ xử lí, giải quyết với
- To be disappointed with	+ thất vọng với
- To be patient with St	+ kiên trì với cái gì
- To be impressed with/by	+ có ấn tượng/xúc động với
- To be popular with	+ phổ biến, quen thuộc với
- To be wrong with	+ có vấn đề với

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG GIỚI TỪ

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions**

- This library card will give you free access \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet eight hours a day.  
A. on                      B. to                      C. from                      D. in
- She had to hand in her notice \_\_\_\_\_ advance when she decided to leave the job.  
A. with                      B. from                      C. in                      D. to
- If you have anything important to do, do it straight away. Don't put it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. on                      B. off                      C. over                      D. up
- Such relaxing days were few and far \_\_\_\_\_ in her hectic life.  
A. between                      B. off                      C. beyond                      D. out
- She went \_\_\_\_\_ with a bad cold just before Christmas.  
A. through                      B. over                      C. in for                      D. down
- We couldn't help laughing when he took \_\_\_\_\_ his teacher so well.  
A. up                      B. over                      C. off                      D. out
- \_\_\_\_\_ general, our students are very intelligent and really active.  
A. In                      B. With                      C. By                      D. On
- Don't let time go \_\_\_\_\_ without doing anything about the situation.  
A. out                      B. by                      C. off                      D. over



9. Muhammad Ali, the World great boxer, passed \_\_\_\_\_ on June 4th 2016.  
A. through                      B. on                                      C. down                                      D. away
10. Facebook's terms of use state that members must be \_\_\_\_\_ least 13 years old with valid email ID's.  
A. without                      B. of                                      C. at                                      D. on
11. At first he didn't agree, but in the end we managed to bring him \_\_\_\_\_ to our point of view.  
A. over                                      B. up                                      C. back                                      D. round
12. We are \_\_\_\_\_ no obligation to change goods which were not purchased here.  
A. to                                      B. at                                      C. with                                      D. under
13. The ASEAN Vision 2020 is aimed \_\_\_\_\_ forging closer economic integration within the region.  
A. to                                      B. for                                      C. of                                      D. at
14. The population of ASEAN accounts \_\_\_\_\_ about 8.6% of the world's population.  
A. of                                      B. for                                      C. in                                      D. from
15. Joe is an orphan. He was brought \_\_\_\_\_ by his aunt.  
A. about                                      B. up                                      C. around                                      D. on
16. In most football matches, referees often wear \_\_\_\_\_ black.  
A. in                                      B. for                                      C. with                                      D. on
17. We benefit greatly \_\_\_\_\_ the medicines and other products that biodiversity provides.  
A. from                                      B. without                                      C. for                                      D. at
18. While studying, he was financially dependent \_\_\_\_\_ his parents.  
A. of                                      B. to                                      C. from                                      D. on
19. The telescope will photograph distant galaxies, \_\_\_\_\_ attempt to understand their past.  
A. in                                      B. for                                      C. on                                      D. with
20. The issue \_\_\_\_\_ question is more complex than we think.  
A. in                                      B. from                                      C. on                                      D. at
21. I \_\_\_\_\_ was only absent \_\_\_\_\_ the office for a few minutes!  
A. for                                      B. from                                      C. in                                      D. about
22. The old manager has just retired, so Tom takes \_\_\_\_\_ his position.  
A. in                                      B. on                                      C. up                                      D. out
23. I've just spent two weeks looking \_\_\_\_\_ an aunt of mine who's been ill.  
A. at                                      B. for                                      C. out for                                      D. after
24. Were you aware \_\_\_\_\_ the regulations against smoking in the area?  
A. in                                      B. with                                      C. of                                      D. about
25. My uncle took \_\_\_\_\_ golf when he retired from work.  
A. on                                      B. after                                      C. up                                      D. over
26. The boy was always getting \_\_\_\_\_ trouble as a youth. Then, to everyone's surprise, he became a policeman.  
A. into                                      B. onto                                      C. on                                      D. with
27. My grandfather passed \_\_\_\_\_ when I was only six years old. He had lung cancer.  
A. out                                      B. over                                      C. away                                      D. off
28. She started the course two months ago but dropped \_\_\_\_\_ after only a month.  
A. in                                      B. back                                      C. out                                      D. off
29. We are here to provide you \_\_\_\_\_ the best service possible.  
A. of                                      B. with                                      C. to                                      D. for
30. The promoters called the concert \_\_\_\_\_ because the singer had a sore throat.  
A. away                                      B. up                                      C. off                                      D. with

31. All students must hand \_\_\_\_\_ their homework the day after it is assigned.  
A. out                      B. on                      C. to                      D. in
32. Mrs. Marie told her little boy to put all his toys \_\_\_\_\_ before coming to dinner.  
A. out                      B. off                      C. away                      D. in
33. \_\_\_\_\_ time \_\_\_\_\_ time I will examine you on the work you have done.  
A. From / to                      B. At / to                      C. In / to                      D. With / to
34. This village is inhabited \_\_\_\_\_ tens of thieves.  
A. with                      B. to                      C. by                      D. for
35. God has bestowed \_\_\_\_\_ me many graces.  
A. on                      B. for                      C. to                      D. with
36. Make a comment \_\_\_\_\_ this sentence!  
A. to                      B. in                      C. on                      D. about
37. He's a very wealthy man; a few hundred pounds is nothing \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. for                      B. with                      C. to                      D. about
38. She does not show much affection \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. with                      B. in                      C. for                      D. to
39. The clerk \_\_\_\_\_ that counter said those purses were \_\_\_\_\_ sale.  
A. in/ for                      B. at/ on                      C. at/ in                      D. on/ on
40. Someone broke into the shop and made \_\_\_\_\_ with several TVs and videos.  
A. of                      B. up                      C. out                      D. off
41. Old people like to descant \_\_\_\_\_ past memories.  
A. in                      B. with                      C. on                      D. for
42. You should comply \_\_\_\_\_ the school rules.  
A. to                      B. about                      C. with                      D. in
43. The people next door are furious \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_ making so much noise last night.  
A. at/ with                      B. with/ for                      C. for/ to                      D. about/ in
44. The Vietnamese participants always take part \_\_\_\_\_ sports events with great enthusiasm.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. to
45. He isn't independent \_\_\_\_\_ any means. He depends \_\_\_\_\_ his father \_\_\_\_\_ everything.  
A. by/ on/ in                      B. for/ on/ in                      C. of/ in/ for                      D. on/ in/ with
46. He may be quick \_\_\_\_\_ understanding but he isn't capable \_\_\_\_\_ remembering anything.  
A. in/ of                      B. on/ at                      C. at/ of                      D. of/ at
47. Mum is always busy \_\_\_\_\_ her work in the laboratory.  
A. with                      B. at                      C. in                      D. of
48. My sister is very fond \_\_\_\_\_ eating chocolate candy.  
A. of                      B. with                      C. about                      D. at
49. Who's going to look \_\_\_\_\_ the children while you're away?  
A. at                      B. up                      C. after                      D. over
50. I'm afraid I'm a little short \_\_\_\_\_ money this month, so I can't lend you any.  
A. of                      B. from                      C. with                      D. for
51. You should book \_\_\_\_\_ advance because the restaurant is very popular in the area.  
A. on                      B. by                      C. with                      D. in
52. It was so noisy outside that she couldn't concentrate \_\_\_\_\_ her work.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. with                      D. on
53. The children are highly excited \_\_\_\_\_ the coming summer holiday.  
A. with                      B. to                      C. for                      D. about
54. The manager is directly responsible \_\_\_\_\_ the efficient running of the office

- A. about                      B. for                      C. at                      D. in
55. His choice of future career is quite similar \_\_\_\_\_ mine.  
A. at                      B. with                      C. for                      D. to
56. Do you have any objections \_\_\_\_\_ this new road scheme?  
A. at                      B. with                      C. to                      D. for
57. As I was \_\_\_\_\_ of the change in the program, I arrived half an hour late for the rehearsal.  
A. unaware                      B. unconscious                      C. unable                      D. unreasonable
58. May I introduce you \_\_\_\_\_ Mrs Brown?  
A. with                      B. for                      C. to                      D. of
59. She likes reading books \_\_\_\_\_ the library.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. on                      D. from
60. Many students aren't keen \_\_\_\_\_ their study at school.  
A. about                      B. for                      C. with                      D. on
61. Please write your answers \_\_\_\_\_ ink.  
A. in                      B. with                      C. of                      D. by
62. Bread is usually made \_\_\_\_\_ wheat.  
A. from                      B. of                      C. with                      D. by
63. A large number of inventions and discoveries have been made \_\_\_\_\_ accident.  
A. in                      B. by                      C. at                      D. on
64. This part of the country is famous \_\_\_\_\_ its beautiful landscapes and fine cuisine.  
A. about                      B. with                      C. of                      D. for
65. \_\_\_\_\_ entering the hall, he found everyone waiting for him.  
A. With                      B. On                      C. At                      D. During
66. I'm so tired that I can't take \_\_\_\_\_ what you've saying  
A. on                      B. out                      C. up                      D. in
67. The sign warns people \_\_\_\_\_ the dangers of swimming in this river.  
A. about                      B. from                      C. with                      D. to
68. Young people have become increasingly committed \_\_\_\_\_ social activities.  
A. of                      B. to                      C. in                      D. at
69. Bob has left home and is independent \_\_\_\_\_ his parents  
A. on                      B. of                      C. with                      D. in
70. Americans rarely shake hands to say goodbye except \_\_\_\_\_ business occasions  
A. on                      B. during                      C. at                      D. for
71. I've learned to put \_\_\_\_\_ all the noise.  
A. up with                      B. out                      C. on                      D. off
72. That song was popular \_\_\_\_\_ people from my father's generation.  
A. for                      B. on                      C. about                      D. with
73. The English language is rich \_\_\_\_\_ vocabulary.  
A. at                      B. in                      C. on                      D. for
74. She was quick \_\_\_\_\_ understanding what we wanted her to do.  
A. in                      B. about                      C. for                      D. at
75. This organization is quick \_\_\_\_\_ sending relief goods to the flooded areas.  
A. with                      B. at                      C. for                      D. about
76. When are you leaving \_\_\_\_\_ Singapore? This week or next week?  
A. for                      B. in                      C. to                      D. at
77. Can you help me, please? I can't see the differences \_\_\_\_\_ these words.  
A. from                      B. in                      C. between                      D. about

78. That house reminds me \_\_\_\_\_ the one where I used to live.  
A. of                      B. for                      C. about                      D. with
79. It was very kind \_\_\_\_\_ you to lend me the money I needed.  
A. for                      B. of                      C. to                      D. with
80. We have to apply effective measures to save many plant and animal species \_\_\_\_\_ extinction.  
A. from                      B. in                      C. for                      D. on
81. Lan will stay there \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning in September \_\_\_\_\_ November.  
A. from/ to                      B. till/ to                      C. from/ in                      D. till/ of
82. I would like to apply \_\_\_\_\_ the position of sales clerk that you advised in the Sunday newspaper.  
A. for                      B. to                      C. with                      D. in
83. I have been looking \_\_\_\_\_ this book for months, and at last, I have found it.  
A. over                      B. up                      C. for                      D. at
84. Clearing forests for timber has resulted \_\_\_\_\_ the loss of biodiversity.  
A. with                      B. at                      C. in                      D. for
85. She is looking \_\_\_\_\_ a new place to live because she does not want to depend \_\_\_\_\_ her parents any more.  
A. for / on                      B. after / with                      C. up / forward                      D. at / into
86. Due to industrialization, we have to cope \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that many species are \_\_\_\_\_ danger \_\_\_\_\_ extinction.  
A. over / at / for                      B. at / upon / over                      C. for / on / with                      D. with / in / of
87. Boys! Put your toys \_\_\_\_\_. It is time to go to bed. Don't stay \_\_\_\_\_ late.  
A. off / on                      B. away / up                      C. down / off                      D. around / for
88. She intended to quit her job to stay \_\_\_\_\_ home and look \_\_\_\_\_ her sick mother.  
A. in / at                      B. at / after                      C. for / over                      D. up / on
89. He is very worried \_\_\_\_\_ his new job because he is not quite prepared \_\_\_\_\_ working.  
A. on / over                      B. to / off                      C. about / for                      D. in / at
90. Instead \_\_\_\_\_ petrol, cars will only run \_\_\_\_\_ solar energy and electricity.  
A. of / on                      B. for / by                      C. in / over                      D. from/ upon
91. She has a promising future ahead \_\_\_\_\_ her.  
A. for                      B. from                      C. on                      D. of
92. If you have ever watched television, you have seen plenty \_\_\_\_\_ drug advertisements.  
A. with                      B. of                      C. for                      D. about
93. According \_\_\_\_\_ Bill, there's something wrong \_\_\_\_\_ my computer.  
A. after / for                      B. on / about                      C. to / with                      D. upon / at
94. I'm terrified \_\_\_\_\_ breaking down on a motorway at night.  
A. from                      B. with                      C. for                      D. of
95. As an adult, I am independent \_\_\_\_\_ my parents financially.  
A. of                      B. with                      C. out                      D. on
96. Education in many countries is compulsory \_\_\_\_\_ the age of 16.  
A. for                      B. when                      C. until                      D. forwards
97. Lack \_\_\_\_\_ food had stunted his growth.  
A. of                      B. in                      C. for                      D. on
98. Family members who live apart try to get together \_\_\_\_\_ Tet.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. on                      D. during
99. On Christmas Eve children go to bed full \_\_\_\_\_ excitement.

A. of                      B. with                      C. up                      D. in

100. How old was your baby when she smiled \_\_\_\_\_ you for the first time?

A. about                      B. on                      C. by                      D. at

**II. Fill in each blank with the correct preposition.**

1. The price of electricity is going up ..... August.
2. They came to visit us .....my birthday.
3. Did you have a good time.....Christmas?
4. The children are really excited .....their summer vacation.
5. We were very disappointed ..... the organization of the festival.
6. John missed a lot of lessons. He was ill.....January to March.
7. Helen had said goodbye to everybody in the class.....she left for the hometown.
8. My cat is very fond ..... fish.
9. I waited.....10 o'clock and then went home.
10. I can't remember exactly when the accident happened. I think it was .....nine and half past nine.
11. Are you acquainted ..... the lady?
12. ....the children left, the house was very quiet.
13. These photographs were taken ..... a friend of mine.
14. The river Rhine flows ..... the North sea.
15. I shall meet you.....the corner.....the street.
16. I always come.....school ..... foot.
17. He had learned the whole poem.....heart.
18. He has waited.....her for a long time.
19. He's not very keen ..... watching football, but his wife is.
20. Are you worried..... the final examination?
21. You don't like it, do you? .....the contrary, I love it.
22. Mr. Johnson said he was ..... favor of doing the work right away.
23. What time did they arrive .....London?
24. ....the past, people did a great deal of work by hand.
25. Every student should spend ..... least two hours on his homework every night.
26. Some large cities may have to ban cars.....the city center to wipe out smoke.
27. When she arrived in Britain, she wasn't used to driving .....the left.
28. Our flat is ..... the second floor of the building.
29. Did you go on holiday .....yourself?
30. They have been waiting .....the bus for half an hour.
31. She has become very famous ..... her novels.
32. Henry was born .....1992.
33. What do you often do .....the evening?
34. Clean air is necessary ..... our health.
35. She is always fed up ..... washing dishes after dinner.
36. The roofs are covered ..... red tiles.
37. We are looking forward ..... seeing you again.
38. She is very angry ..... me.
39. I'm very grateful .....her ..... help.
40. She is very jealous.....her sister.
41. I'm very sorry.....what I have done.
42. Miss White was very upset ..... the news of her father's death.



43. Don't you think you should try to be friendly.....your classmates?
44. My daily expense are just about equal ..... my income.
45. We were very doubtful .....his ability.
46. The gloves aren't very suitable .....that kind of work.
47. She was sad because he was rude.....
48. Thank you. You are kind ..... me.
49. Everybody was surprised ..... the news.
50. Are you excited ..... going on holiday next week?

### I. THẾ NÀO LÀ "PHRASAL VERBS."

Cụm động từ (Phrasal verbs) là sự kết hợp giữa một động từ và một từ nhỏ (particle). Từ nhỏ, particle(s), này có thể là một trạng từ (adverb), hay là một giới từ (preposition), hoặc là cả hai:

**Ví dụ:** My father gave up smoking 3 years ago. (Bố tôi bỏ thuốc lá 3 năm trước.)

### II. CÁCH SỬ DỤNG "PHRASAL VERBS."

#### PHRASAL VERBS CÓ THỂ ĐÓNG VAI TRÒ LÀ:

- Ngoại động từ (transitive): theo sau là một danh từ hoặc là một cụm danh từ với chức năng là túc từ (object) của động từ.

- Nội động từ (intransitive): không có túc từ theo sau.

#### • NỘI ĐỘNG TỪ: Intransitive phrasal verbs

- Không có túc từ - động từ cùng particle (thường là trạng từ - adverb) luôn đi sát nhau:

**Ví dụ:** When she was having dinner, the fire broke out.

(Khi cô ấy đang ăn tối thì hỏa hoạn xảy ra.)

**Our car broke down and had to be towed to a garage.**

(Xe chúng tôi bị hư và phải kéo về chỗ sửa.)

#### • NGOẠI ĐỘNG TỪ: Transitive phrasal verbs

Được chia làm hai nhóm, tùy theo vị trí của túc từ:

- **Nhóm 1: có thể ở giữa động từ và "particle" hoặc đi sau "particle":**

**Ví dụ:** I took my shoes off. / I took off my shoes. (Tôi cởi giày ra.)

**Ví dụ:** He admitted he'd made up the whole thing/ He admitted he'd made the whole thing up.

(Anh ta thú nhận rằng đã bịa ra mọi chuyện.)

- **Nhóm 2: Nhưng khi túc từ là những chữ như this, that, it, them, me, her và him thì chúng sẽ đứng ở giữa động từ và 'particle':**

**Ví dụ:** I took them off. (Not I took off them.)

He admitted he'd made it up. (Not He admitted he'd made up it.)

#### • NGOẠI LỆ:

Có nhiều phrasal verbs vừa có thể là transitive hoặc intransitive. Ngữ cảnh sẽ cho chúng ta biết chức năng cùng với nghĩa của chúng:

**Ví dụ:** The plane took off at seven o'clock, (intransitive)

(Máy bay cất cánh lúc 7 giờ.)

**The man took off the shoes and came into the room, (transitive)**

(Người đàn ông cởi giày và đi vào phòng.)

### III. CÁC CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ THÔNG DỤNG

#### PHRASAL VERB WITH "BREAK"

Break away: trốn thoát, thoát khỏi

+ Break down:

- dừng hoạt động (máy móc, phương tiện)

- đập vỡ, đổ vỡ tan tành

- phân tích vào chi tiết, chia nhỏ

- suy sụp tinh thần, buồn bã, suy nhược

+ Break in:

- (on) can thiệp vào, gián đoạn, ngắt/ chặn

+ Break out:

- bùng nổ, nổ ra (chiến tranh, dịch bệnh)

- (in) bùng phát (bị bệnh vùng da)

- (of) trốn thoát + Break up:

- chia thành/ vỡ thành từng mảnh

- phân tán (đám đông), dừng lại cuộc chiến

- (with sb) chia tay, kết thúc mối quan hệ.

- bật cười lớn tiếng

(lời); cắt ngang (câu chuyện) - tập luyện (ngựa...), cho vào khuôn phép, dạy dỗ (trẻ con...) + Break into: - đột nhập, đột nhiên, phá lên - break into tears: khóc òa lên	+ Break off: - dừng lại, kết thúc, chấm dứt, bỏ dở - (with sb) cắt đứt quan hệ, tuyệt giao với ai + Break through: vượt qua, đột phá, chọc thủng + Break forth: vỡ ra, nổ ra; bắn ra, tuôn ra
---	---

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "BRING"

+ Bring about: làm xảy ra, mang đến + Bring along: mang theo + Bring back: mang trả lại, gọi lại + Bring down: đem xuống, hạ xuống, làm tụt xuống; hạ, bắn rơi; hạ bệ, làm nhục ai + Bring forward: đưa ra, đề ra, mang ra + Bring in: đưa vào, đem vào, đem lại + Bring off: cứu + Bring sth off: thành công việc khó khăn) + Bring on: dẫn đến, gây ra + Bring out: đưa ra, mang ra; đem ra xuất bản; làm nổi bật, làm lộ rõ ra + Bring round: làm tỉnh lại, làm cho trở lại	+ Bring over: làm cho ai thay đổi lối suy nghĩ, thuyết phục, đưa ai đến chơi + Bring sb round (to sth): làm thay đổi ý kiến theo + Bring through: giúp vượt qua khó khăn + Bring together: gom lại, nhóm lại, họp lại; kết thân (2 người với nhau) + Bring to: dẫn đến, đưa đến (1 tình trạng nào) + Bring sth to light: đưa ra ánh sáng, khám phá + Bring under: làm cho vào khuôn phép, làm cho ngoan ngoãn vâng lời, làm cho phục tùng + Bring up: nuôi nấng, dạy dỗ; ngừng lại, đỡ lại, lưu ý về, đề cập đến
--	---

### PHRASAL VERB WITH "CATCH"

Catch at: bắt lấy, nắm lấy cái gì + Catch out - lừa, đánh lừa - chứng minh, phát hiện ra ai đang nói dối - (bị động) đặt ai trong 1 tình huống khó khăn + Catch on: - nổi tiếng, trở thành mốt, được ưa chuộng - hiểu được, nắm được - cuối cùng cũng hiểu cái gì	+ Catch up: đuổi kịp, theo kịp, bắt kịp, ngắt lời; nhiệm (thói quen) + Catch up in: Bị liên quan, dính líu đến cái gì + Catch up on: - Làm bù, học bù để bắt kịp phần đã lỡ - Ôn lại kỉ niệm cũ + Catch up with: - Tìm ra ai đó (sau một khoảng thời gian) - Trùng phạt ai vì đã làm sai điều gì - Học cái gì mới mà đã nhiều người biết
---	--

### PHRASAL VERB WITH "COME"

+ Come aboard: lên tàu + Come about: xảy ra, đổi chiều + Come across: tình cờ gặp + Come after theo sau, nối nghiệp + Come again: trở lại + Come against: đụng phải, va phải + Come along: đi cùng, xúc tiến, cút đi + Come apart: tách khỏi, rời ra + Come around: đi quanh, làm tươi lại, ghé thăm, đặt tới, xông vào, tỉnh lại + Come at: đặt tới, nắm được, thấy + Come away: đi xa, rời ra. + Come back: trở lại, được nhớ lại, cái lại + Come before: đến trước	+ Come down on: mắng nhiếc, trừng phạt + Come down with: góp tiền, bị ốm + Come easy to: không khó khăn đối với ai + Come forward: đứng ra, xung phong + Come from: đến từ, sinh ra + Come full ahead: tiến hết tốc độ + Come in: đi vào, về đích, dâng lên, bắt đầu + Come in for: có phần, nhận được + Come into: ra đời, thừa hưởng + Come into account: được tính đến + Come into effect: có hiệu lực + Come into existence: ra đời, hình thành + Come into force: có hiệu lực + Come on: tiếp tục, đi tiếp, liên tiếp
---	---

+ Come between: đứng giữa, can thiệp vào	+ Come over: vượt (biển); chợt thấy
+ Come by: đến bằng cách, đi qua, có được	+ Come round: đi nhanh, đi vòng
+ Come clean: thú nhận	+ Come under: rơi vào loại, nằm trong loại
+ Come down: sụp đổ, được truyền lại	+ Come up with: tìm ra, nảy ra

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "DO"

+ Do again: làm lại, làm lại lần nữa	+ Do in:
+ Do away: bỏ đi, huỷ bỏ, gạt bỏ, làm mất đi	- bắt, tóm cổ (ai); tống (ai) vào tù
+ Do away with: xóa bỏ, ngưng sử dụng	- rình mò theo dõi (ai)
+ Do by: xử sự, đối xử	- khử (ai); làm mệt lử, làm kiệt sức
+ Do for:	+ Do over:
- chăm nom công việc gia đình cho, lo việc nội trợ cho (ai)	- làm lại, bắt đầu lại (khi lần đầu làm không tốt)
- Khử đi, phá huỷ, huỷ hoại đi; làm tiêu ma đi sự nghiệp, làm thất cơ lỡ vận	- trang hoàng, dọn dẹp
+ Do off: bỏ còi ra (mũ   áo); bỏ (thói quen)	+ Do up: gói, bọc, tân trang, sửa chữa (cái mũ, gian phòng...), cài, thắt, ... (quần áo, ...)
+ Do on: mặc (áo) vào	+ Do with: vui lòng, vừa ý với, ổn, được, chịu được, thu xếp được, xoay sở được
+ Do out of: ngăn cản ai có được cái gì, nhất là bằng cách gian lận hay không lương thiện	+ Do without: bỏ được, bỏ qua được, nhịn được, không cần ĐẾN

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "DRAW"

+ Draw back: Rút lui, lùi lại	+ Draw on
+ Draw down:	- (thời gian) trôi qua chậm chạp
- Giảm	- nuốt, hít khói từ điều thuốc, điều xì gà, ...
- Xin vốn, xin trợ cấp	- rút tiền từ tài khoản ngân hàng bằng viết séc
- Cạn kiệt bởi sự tiêu dùng, sử dụng lớn	+ Draw out:
+ Draw in:	- kéo dài cái gì hơn cần thiết
-(mùa đông) trời tối sớm	- làm cho 1 người nhút nhát trở nên hoạt bát hơn
-(tàu) đến nhà ga	+ Draw upon: sử dụng kiến thức, kỹ năng, thông tin cho một mục đích cụ thể
+ Draw up:	+ Draw into: cuốn vào, liên quan vào
- soạn thảo, chuẩn bị hợp đồng, văn kiện, ...)	+ Draw even: Về hòa với đối thủ
- (xe) đỗ lại, dừng lại	

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "DROP"

+ Drop around:	+ Drop off:
- Thăm ai đó, thường không hẹn trước	-Đưa ai, cái gì đến một nơi nào đó và để họ hoặc nó ở đó
- Giao, phân phối, phân phát	- Ngủ, thiu thiu ngủ
+ Drop away: Giảm dần (về số lượng)	-Giảm (về số lượng, số đếm)
+ Drop back/ behind: Bị bỏ lại, tụt lại sau	+ Drop out: Bỏ học giữa chừng
+ Drop by/ in/ round/ over: Tạt vào thăm, nhân tiện vào thăm	+ Drop through: Cháng đi đến đâu, chẳng ra kết quả gì
+ Drop sb in it: Đặt ai vào tình trạng khó khăn	

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "FALL"

+ Fall about: Cười nhiều	+ Fall for:
+ Fall apart:	- Say mê ai đó
- Vỡ thành những miếng nhỏ	- Tin vào một lời nói dối
- Cảm xúc hỗn loạn và không thể hành xử bình	+ Fall in: Đổ, đổ sập



thường + Fall back: Rút lui, rút quân + Fall back on: Có thể dùng trong trường hợp khẩn + Fall behind: Tụt lại phía sau + Fall down: - Ngã trên mặt đất -Có điểm yếu	+ Fall into: Bắt đầu làm gì đó mà không có kế hoạch trước + Fall off: Giảm sút + Fall out - Tranh cãi và có quan hệ xấu với ai đó - Rụng tóc + Fall over: Ngã trên mặt đất + Fall through: Không thành công, thất bại
--	---

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GET"

+ Get about: lan truyền + Get ahead: tiến bộ + Get at sth: tìm ra, khám phá ra + Get at sb: chỉ trích, công kích + Get away (from): trốn thoát, lẩn tránh + Get away with thoát khỏi sự trừng phạt) + Get back: trở về, quay lại + Get sth back: lấy lại + Get behind: chậm trễ + Get down: làm nản lòng + Get down to sth: bắt tay vào việc gì + Get in/into sth: được nhận vào + Get off: rời khỏi, xuống xe, máy bay) + Get on: lên ( tàu xe..) +Get on (well) with/ get along with sb: hòa thuận + Get out: lộ ra ngoài ( tin tức... ) + Get out of: lẩn tránh + Get over: phục hồi, vượt qua + Get through: vượt qua, hoàn thành	+ Get through to sb: làm ai hiểu được điều gì + Get together: tụ họp + Get up to: gây ra + Get up: thức dậy + Get up st: từ bỏ cái gì đó + Get used to: trở lên quen với + Get rid of: loại bỏ, tháo dỡ, vứt bỏ, ném đi + Get (be/keep) in touch with sb: giữ liên lạc + Get sb st/ st for sb: lấy cho ai cái gì + Get along: tiến bộ, sống ổn định, vui vẻ + Get lost: lạc đường, biến mất + Get even with: trả đũa, trả miếng + Get the better of: thắng, thắng thế + Get over: lành bệnh, vượt qua, gượng dậy + Get to: bắt đầu, đạt đến, đi đến + Get better, worse: trở lên tốt hơn, xấu hơn + Get sick, tired, busy... bị bệnh, mệt, bận  + Get a rise out of: khiêu khích + Get off one's chest: diễn tả cảm xúc của mình
---	---

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GIVE"

+ Give away: - Nói ra một bí mật, thường là vô ý - Phân phát thứ gì đó miễn phí - Cho đi mà không mong được báo đáp lại - Phán tội, báo cho cơ quan chức trách + Give back - Trả lại thứ gì đó mà bạn đã mượn - Trả lại thứ gì đó mà ai đó bị mất + Give in - Dừng làm gì vì nó quá khó quá mất sức - Gửi bài tập về nhà - Đầu hàng, chấp nhận thất bại - Đưa ra hoặc đệ trình để xem xét, phê duyệt + Give in to - Đồng ý với thứ mà bạn không thích	+ Give onto: Mở hướng ra một địa điểm + Give out - Phân phát - Ngừng làm việc vì tuổi già hoặc quá hạn - Công bố, công khai, phát ra - Tạo âm thanh hoặc tiếng ồn - Than phiền, rên rỉ + Give out to: Mắng, cần nhằn + Give over: - Dừng làm gì đó xấu, phiền -Ủy thác, chuyển giao trách nhiệm - Dừng một hoạt động + Give over to: Cống hiến, chuyển trách nhiệm + Give up: từ bỏ, ngừng một thói quen + Give up on: Mất niềm tin vào ai đó, hoặc thứ
---	---



<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Bùng phát cảm xúc</li> <li>+ Give it to: Chỉ trích thậm tệ, phạt ai đó</li> <li>+ Give it up for/ to: Hoan nghênh</li> <li>+ Give of: Đóng góp mà không mong được báo đáp lại, thường là thời gian hoặc tiền</li> <li>+ Give off: Bốc mùi, tỏa mùi; mở rộng</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>gì đó thôi hi vọng</li> <li>+ Give up to: Báo cáo với cơ quan chức trách</li> <li>+ Give yourself up: Đầu thú trước cảnh sát, cơ quan chức trách</li> <li>+ Give yourself up to: Dành thời gian, năng lượng cho một cái gì đó</li> </ul>
---	---

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GO"

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Go after sb/st: đuổi theo, đi theo sau</li> <li>+ Go ahead: đi về phía trước, tiến lên</li> <li>+ Go along with sb) (to sw): đi cùng ai đến nơi nào</li> <li>+ Go away: đi nơi khác, đi khỏi, rời</li> <li>+ Go back on one's word: không giữ lời</li> <li>+ Go beyond st: vượt quá, vượt ngoài</li> <li>+ Go by: đi qua, trôi qua thời gian)</li> <li>+ Go down: giảm, hạ (giá cả)</li> <li>+ Go down with: mắc bệnh nhiễm bệnh</li> <li>+ Go for st: cố gắng, chọn, giành được</li> <li>+ Go in for = take part in: tham gia</li> <li>+ Go into: điều tra, hỏi thông tin, kiểm tra</li> <li>+ Go off: nổi giận, hỏng/thối rữa (thức ăn)</li> <li>+ Go on = Continue: tiếp tục</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Go off with (sb/st) = Give away with: mang đi theo, cuỗm theo</li> <li>+ Go over st: kiểm tra, xem xét kỹ lưỡng</li> <li>+ Go out: đi ra ngoài, lỗi thời</li> <li>+ Go out with sb: hẹn hò với ai</li> <li>+ Go through: trải qua, thực hiện công việc</li> <li>+ Go through with (st): kiên trì, bền bỉ, chịu đựng, trải qua cái gì đó khó khăn/ không dễ chịu</li> <li>+ Go together: đi cùng nhau, tồn tại cùng nhau</li> <li>+ Go round: xoay, xoay quanh, có đủ thức ăn</li> <li>+ Go under: chìm</li> <li>+ Go up: tăng</li> <li>+ Go without: nhịn, chịu thiếu, tình trạng không có thứ gì đó mà bạn thường có</li> </ul>
---	---

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "KEEP"

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Keep away: để xa ra, cất đi</li> <li>+ Keep back: giữ lại, làm chậm lại, chặn lại, cản lại, cầm lại</li> <li>+ Keep down/ in: cầm lại, nén lại, dằn lại</li> <li>+ Keep from/ off: nhịn, kiêng, nén, tự kiềm chế được, tránh xa</li> <li>+ Keep in with sb: vẫn thân thiện với ai</li> <li>+ Keep on: tiếp tục</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Keep out: không đi vào, ở lại bên ngoài, tránh</li> <li>+ Keep (sb) out of st: tránh xa, không để cho</li> <li>+ Keep together: kết hợp với nhau, gắn bó với nhau, không rời nhau</li> <li>+ Keep up: duy trì, giữ vững</li> <li>+ Keep up with: theo kịp, ngang bằng</li> <li>+ Keep under: đè nén, thống trị, bắt quy phục, kiềm chế</li> </ul>
--	--

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "MAKE"

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Make after: Theo đuổi, đuổi theo</li> <li>+ Make away off with: Ăn trộm, ăn cắp</li> <li>+ Make do with: Miễn cưỡng chấp nhận điều gì đó vì không có sự thay thế</li> <li>+ Make for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Đi theo một hướng nhất định</li> <li>- Đưa ra kết quả hay tình huống</li> </ul> </li> <li>+ Make into: Chuyển cái này thành cái khác</li> <li>+ Make it: Đi đến hoặc nhận kết quả</li> <li>+ Make it up to: Cố gắng đền bù điều gì đó</li> <li>+ Make of: Hiểu hoặc có ý kiến</li> <li>+ Make off: Rời khỏi nơi nào đó một cách vội vàng</li> <li>+ Make with: Đưa cho (thường bị bắt</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Make out <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Có thể thấy hoặc nghe cái gì đó</li> <li>- Hiểu được bản chất hoặc tính cách của ai đó</li> </ul> </li> <li>+ Make over: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Thay đổi diện mạo</li> <li>- Đưa tiền hoặc tài sản cho ai đó một cách hợp pháp</li> </ul> </li> <li>+ Make up - (with) Làm lành <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Trang điểm</li> <li>- Bịa ra một câu chuyện</li> </ul> </li> <li>+ Make up for: Bồi thường, bù đắp</li> <li>+ Make up to: Tăng số tiền nhận được lên một con số cao hơn</li> </ul>
--	--

buộc)

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "PUT"

+ put aside: để dành, dành dụm  
+ put back: để lại (vào chỗ cũ); vặn (kim đồng hồ) lùi lại  
+ put forward: trình bày, đề xuất, đưa ra, nếu ra; vặn (kim đồng hồ) tiến lên  
+ put oneself forward: tự đề cao mình, tự làm cho mình nổi bật  
+ put by: để sang bên, lảng tránh (vấn đề, câu hỏi,...)  
+ put down: để xuống, đàn áp, tước quyền, giáng chức, hạ cánh (máy bay, người trong máy bay), đào giếng  
+ put in: đệ đơn, đưa ra chứng cứ, thi hành, thực hiện

+ put in for: đòi, yêu sách, xin  
+ put off: cời (quần áo, mũ nón, giày dép) ra; hoãn lại, để chậm lại  
+ put on: mặc (quần áo), đội (mũ nón), đi (giày, dép) vào; làm ra vẻ, làm ra bộ  
+ put the blame on sb: đổ tội lên đầu ai  
+ put out: tắt, thổi tắt, dập tắt; sản xuất ra; đuổi ra ngoài, lè (luôi) ra; quấy rầy, làm phiền  
+ put up: để lên, đặt lên, cho ở trọ, trọ lại, búi (tóc) lên; giương (ô ) lên; xây dựng, lắp đặt, đem trình diễn, cầu kính; đề cử, tiến cử  
+ put up to: cho hay, báo cho biết  
+ put up with: kiên nhẫn chịu đựng; tha thứ

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "TAKE"

+ Take advantage of: tận dụng, lợi dụng  
+ Take after: giống, y hệt  
+ Take along: mang theo, đem theo  
+ Take aside: đưa ra một chủ đề nói riêng  
+ Take away: mang đi, lấy đi, đem đi, cất đi  
+ Take account of: xem xét, quan tâm  
+ Take down:  
- tháo ra, dỡ ra, dời đi, hạ xuống - ghi chép  
- làm nhục, sỉ nhục  
+ Take back: rút lại (lời nói), lấy lại  
+ Take from: giảm bớt, làm yếu  
+ Take in hand: đảm trách  
+ Take in:  
- tiếp đón; nhận cho ở trọ  
- thu nhỏ, làm hẹp lại  
- hiểu, nắm được đánh giá đúng  
- lừa phỉnh, lừa gạt, cho vào tròng  
- hấp thụ

+ Take off:  
- bỏ (mũ), cời quần áo); giặt ra, lấy đi, cuốn đi  
- (hàng không) cất cánh  
+ Take into account: xem xét, để ý tới  
+ Take on:  
- đảm nhiệm, nhận làm, gách vác  
- tuyển, tuyển dụng  
+ Take oneself off: bỏ trốn  
+ Take up:  
- nhặt, cầm lên, đưa lên, dẫn lên, mang lên  
- thu hút, choán, chiếm (thời gian, tâm trí...)  
- chọn (nghề); đảm nhiệm, gách vác (công việc)  
+ Take out: Lấy ra; xoá sạch, làm mất đi  
+ Take up with: giao du với  
+ Take over: tiếp quản, kế tục, nối nghiệp  
+ Take place: thay thế, thay đổi, diễn ra  
+ Take to  
- dùng đến, nhờ cậy đến, cần đến  
- bắt đầu ham thích, bắt đầu say mê, tập, như

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "ASK"

Ask about : hỏi về  
Ask after: hỏi thăm  
Ask for : xin  
Ask sb out : mời ai đó đi ăn/đi chơi

### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "BLOW"

Blow about : lan truyền, tung ra Blow down : thổi ngã, làm đổ rạp xuống Blow in : thổi vào, đến bất chợt, đến thành linh Blow off : thổi bay đi, làm xì hơi ra, tiêu phí	Blow out : thổi bay đi, làm xì hơi ra, tiêu phí, phung phí Blow over : bỏ qua, quên đi Blow up : bom căng lên
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "CALL"</b>	
Call out : gọi to Call on/upon : kêu gọi, yêu cầu, tạt qua thăm Call for : gọi, tìm đến ai để lấy cái gì Call at : dừng lại, đỗ lại, ghé thăm	Call in : mời đến, triệu đến Call off : hoãn lại, đình lại Call up : gọi tên, gọi điện, gọi dậy, gọi nhập ngũ
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "CUT"</b>	
Cut away : cắt, chặt đi Cut back : tia bớt, cắt bớt Cut down : nói xen vào, chen ngang Cut in : nói xen vào, chen ngang	Cut off : cắt, cúp, ngừng hoạt động Cut out : cắt ra, bớt ra Cut up : chỉ trích gay gắt, phê bình nghiêm khắc Cut down on : cắt giảm
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "CARRY"</b>	
Carry away : mang đi, cuốn đi, bị làm cho mê say Carry off : chiếm đoạt, làm cho chấp nhận được Carry on : tiếp tục	Carry out : thực hiện, tiến hành Carry over : mang sang bên kia Carry through : hoàn thành, vượt qua
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "DIE"</b>	
Die of : chết vì bệnh gì Die for : hi sinh cho cái gì Die down : chêt dần, chêt mòn	Die off : chết lần lượt Die out : tuyệt chủng
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "FILL"</b>	
Fill in : điền đầy đủ thông tin Fill out : làm căng ra, làm to ra, mập ra Fill up : đổ đầy, lấp đầy	
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "HOLD"</b>	
Hold back : ngăn lại Hold down : giữ Hold forth : đưa ra, nêu ra Hold in : nén lại, kìm lại Hold off : giữ không cho lại gần, nán lại	Hold on : nắm chặt, giữ chặt Hold out : đưa ra Hold over : đình lại, hoãn lại Hold up : tắc nghẽn
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "HANG"</b>	
Hang about : đi lang thang, đi la cà, sắp đến Hang back : do dự, lưỡng lự Hang behind : tụt lại đằng sau Hang down : rủ xuống, xoã xuống	Hang on : dựa vào, bám vào Hang out : đi lang thang, la cà Hang up : treo lên
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "LOOK"</b>	
Look about : đợi chờ Look after : chăm sóc Look at : ngắm nhìn Look away : quay đi	Look forward to : mong đợi Look in : nhìn vào, ghé qua thăm Look into : xem xét kỹ, nghiên cứu Look on : đứng xem



Look back : quay lại, ngoái cổ lại Look back upon : nhìn lại cái gì đã qua Look down : nhìn xuống Look down on : coi thường Look up to : kính trọng Look for : tìm kiếm	Look out : để ý, coi chừng Look out for St : trông chừng cái gì Look over : xem xét, kiểm tra, tha thứ, bỏ qua Look round : nhìn quanh Look through : lò đi, xem lướt qua Look up : lò đi, xem lướt qua
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "LAY"</b>	
Lay aside : gác sang một bên, không nghĩ tới Lay down : để xuống, xác lập, đề ra Lay for : nằm đợi Lay in : dự trữ, để dành	Lay sb off : cho ai nghỉ việc Lay on : đánh, giáng đòn Lay out : sắp đặt, bố trí, đưa ra Lay over : trải lên, phủ lên
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "LET"</b>	
Let by : để cho đi qua Let down : làm cho ai đó thất vọng Let in : cho vào Let off : tha thứ	Let on : để lộ, tiết lộ Let out : để cho đi ra, để cho chạy thoát Let up : dịu, ngớt
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "PASS"</b>	
Pass away : qua đời Pass sb/st by : lò đi, làm ngơ Pass for : được coi là, có tiếng là Pass off : mất đi, biến mất (cảm giác) Pass on : truyền lại	Pass out : mê man, bất tỉnh Pass over : băng qua Pass round : chuyền tay, chuyền theo vòng Pass through : trải qua, kinh qua Pass up : từ bỏ, khước từ
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "PICK"</b>	
Pick at : chế nhạo, chế giễu, rầy la Pick off : nhổ đi Pick up : nhặt, đón	
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "TURN"</b>	
Turn away : ngoảnh mặt đi Turn back : quay lại Turn down: vặn nhỏ, từ chối Turn into: biến thành Turn off: tắt đi	Turn on : bật lên Turn out : hoá ra Turn over: lật, dờ Turn up = show up = arrive : đến, xuất hiện
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "TRY"</b>	
Try on : thử đồ Try out = : test kiểm tra xem có hoạt động được hay không	
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "TELL"</b>	
Tell against : nói điều chống lại Tell off : rầy, la mắng Tell on : mách	Tell over đếm Tell sb/st apart: phân biệt ai/cái gì
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "SEE"</b>	
See about : đảm đương See after : săn sóc, để ý tới See off : tiễn	
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "SET"</b>	
Set against : so sánh, đối chiếu	Set down : ghi lại, chép lại

Set apart : dành riêng ra Set back : vắn chậm lại	Set off/out : khởi hành Set up : thành lập
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "STAY"</b>	
Stay away : không đến, vắng mặt Stay in : không ra ngoài Stay out : ở ngoài, không về nhà	Stay on : ở lâu hơn dự định Stay up : thức
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "STAND"</b>	
Stand by : đứng cạnh Stand for : viết tắt, tượng trưng cho Stand in : đại diện cho Stand in with : đại diện cho Stand off : tránh xa, lảng xa Stand on : giữ đúng, khẳng khái đòi	Stand out : nổi bật Stand over : bị hoãn lại Stand up : đứng dậy Stand up for : về phe, ủng hộ Stand up to : dũng cảm đương đầu Stand in for : thay thế chỗ của ai
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "RUN"</b>	
Run after : theo đuổi ai Run against : đi ngược lại, chống đối, phản đối Run along : rời đi, tránh ra xa Run down : hao mòn, tiền tụy Run out : hao mòn, tiền tụy	Run out of : hết sạch cái gì Run on : chạy bằng cái gì Run over : cán lên, đè lên Run through : tiêu xài phung phí
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "WATCH"</b>	
Watch after : dõi theo, nhìn theo Watch for : chờ, đợi	Watch out : đề phòng, coi chừng Watch over : trông nom, canh gác
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "WEAR"</b>	
Wear away : làm mòn dần, làm mất dần Wear down : làm kiệt sức dần	Wear off : làm mòn mất Wear out : làm rách, làm sòn, làm mệt lử
<b>PHRASAL VERBS WITH "WIPE"</b>	
Wipe at : quật, giáng cho một đòn Wipe away : tẩy, lau sạch Wipe out : xoá sạch	

#### IV. THỰC HÀNH

#### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

- The truth turned \_\_\_\_\_ to be stranger than we had expected.  
A. against                      B. over                      C. out                      D. round
- He stood \_\_\_\_\_ his manager while she was away on maternity leave.  
A. aside                      B. by                      C. up                      D. in for
- A ruling had been expected by the end of April, but has been \_\_\_\_\_ a further month.  
A. taken in                      B. put back                      C. gone without                      D. got off
- We'd better stop soon. Otherwise, we'll \_\_\_\_\_ of gas.  
A. Run out                      B. go off                      C. get off                      D. get on
- We \_\_\_\_\_ at six in the morning on our drive to the Grand Canyon.  
A. Set off / out                      B. take off                      C. go off                      D. run off
- When I was staying in German last year, I \_\_\_\_\_ quite a lot of German.  
A. Picked up                      B. picked over                      C. picked out                      D. picked on



7. After Joe's mother died, he was \_\_\_\_\_ up by his grandmother.  
A. Brought                      B. taken                      C. grown                      D. drawn
8. Unfortunately, I had to \_\_\_\_\_ Bob for his poor performance.  
A. Tell off                      B. shout at                      C. tell about                      D. talk to
9. Unfortunately, our school had to \_\_\_\_\_ the music department because of lack of funds.  
A. Give up                      B. do away with                      C. get away                      D. take back
10. We are going for a drink now. Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. Follow up                      B. follow after                      C. come along                      D. come with
11. Sally decided to \_\_\_\_\_ up with Jason for the dance contest.  
A. pair                      B. team                      C. fed                      D. Both A, B are correct
12. We had lots of good applicants for the job, but one \_\_\_\_\_ from the rest.  
A. stood out                      B. went along                      C. got back                      D. threw away
13. \_\_\_\_\_, I admit I didn't always do the right thing.  
A. Looking round for                      B. Looking forward to  
C. Looking back                      D. Looking on with
14. Our car broke \_\_\_\_\_ and we had to push it off the road.  
A. off                      B. down.                      C. with                      D. out in
15. They're \_\_\_\_\_ all men and boys over the age of 14 to join the army.  
A. getting off                      B. giving out                      C. taking up                      D. calling on
16. A city council member said that the proposals for the new shopping centre were \_\_\_\_\_ unlikely to.  
A. warm up                      B. fall over                      C. go through                      D. find out
17. Tomorrow's match has been \_\_\_\_\_ because of the icy weather.  
A. called off                      B. turned off                      C. set off                      D. seen off
18. Fighting \_\_\_\_\_ in the stands five minutes before the end of the match.  
A. cut off                      B. caught up with                      C. broke out                      D. grew up
19. He \_\_\_\_\_ some of his old love letters in his wife's desk.  
A. warmed up                      B. turned away                      C. backed up                      D. came across
20. The firm was badly in need of restructuring when she \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. put down                      B. cleared up                      C. took over                      D. carried out
21. She \_\_\_\_\_ a bit of money when her grandfather died.  
A. came into                      B. went over                      C. moved on                      D. thought over
22. When the truth \_\_\_\_\_, there was public outrage.  
A. dropped by                      B. called for                      C. came out                      D. checked out
23. Traffic was \_\_\_\_\_ for several hours by the accident.  
A. checked in                      B. got by                      C. held down                      D. held up
24. The alarm should \_\_\_\_\_ automatically as soon as smoke is detected.  
A. go on                      B. go off                      C. go with                      D. go under
25. I hoped to \_\_\_\_\_ the idea that a community is more than just a bunch of people living in one place.  
A. show up                      B. look back on                      C. keep up                      D. get across
26. The photographs brought \_\_\_\_\_ many pleasant memories of my childhood.  
A. on                      B. in                      C. back                      D. off
27. When you're \_\_\_\_\_ a crisis, it often helps to share with someone.  
A. coming up                      B. going through                      C. taking on                      D. running away

28. According to one witness, a worker who was standing next to her, the driver deliberately\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. ran Clark down    B. ran Clark into    C. came into Clark    D. collided into Clark
29. A special show is being \_\_\_\_\_to raise money for famine victims in Africa.
- A. put off    B. put through    C. put on    D. put up
30. Repairing this damage, and returning to the centre ground, seem like an almost impossible, and thankless task, for whoever \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. does it up    B. takes it on    C. puts it out    D. makes it off
31. Tim had a severe, chronic problem with alcoholism, which eventually \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. broke the couple up    B. ended the couple up  
C. integrated the couple    D. reconciled the couple
32. A: "Do you want to stay at our place while you're in town?" - B: "That would be great. So long as it doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. put out up    B. put you out    C. hurt    D. let you down
33. America's political climate is changing; among other things, the 2016 presiden election\_\_\_\_\_the issue of wealth inequality in this country and made people consider closely the structural forces that define class here.
- A. brought up    B. developed    C. bring about    D. bring around
34. Ms. Hai is \_\_\_\_\_an information sheet about the art show.
- A. passing out    B. getting around    C. doing up    D. going along with
35. It's the sort of work that\_\_\_\_\_ a high level of concentration
- A. catches on    B. turns back    C. puts down    D. calls for
36. It took hours of negotiations to \_\_\_\_\_a reconciliation between the two sides.
- A. bring up    B. bring about    C. bring on    D. bring forward
37. We put some money\_\_\_\_\_every month for our retirement.
- A. forward    B. on    C. off    D. aside
38. Politicians are already. up for the next election.
- A. putting    B. gearing    C. taking    D. standing
39. If you tell them what happened I will bear you \_\_\_\_\_ (on it).
- A. with    B. off    C. out    D. about
40. In one year she turned from a problem child\_\_\_\_\_a model student.
- A. off    B. up    C. out    D. into
41. He has put himself \_\_\_\_\_ for a place on the national executive.
- A. up with    B. up to    C. towards    D. forward
42. He hadn't been asked to the party and was feeling very \_\_\_\_\_
- A. left out    B. delighted in    C. broken away    D. belonged
43. These new demands may be hard for traditional managers to\_\_\_\_\_
- A. speed up    B. take on    C. pick up    D. go up
44. We wanted the baby to be born at home, but it didn't quite turn\_\_\_\_\_ as planned
- A. over    B. out    C. round    D. down
45. She was told to go to the washroom and take her lipstick.
- A. in    B. over    C. off    D. back
46. When there is too little space, a tent is\_\_\_\_\_in front of people's homes for the guests.
- A. put through    B. put down    C. put on    D. put up
47. The editor's primary responsibility would be the tedious business of bringing the paper \_\_\_\_\_every week.
- A. up    B. down    C. out    D. down

48. All the worry and anxiety had been too much for her, and she suddenly broke \_\_\_\_\_ in tears.  
A. up                      B. in                      C. into                      D. down
49. If you find a piece of music hard to play, break it \_\_\_\_\_ into small sections and practice each one slowly.  
A. on                      B. over                      C. down                      D. into
50. He was upset enough because it was the first day of his swimwear sale and Astrid had called \_\_\_\_\_ sick.  
A. for                      B. up                      C. in                      D. down
51. For me, the film didn't \_\_\_\_\_ all the enthusiastic publicity it received.  
A. Come up                      B. live up                      C. turn up to                      D. live up to
52. Jack and Linda \_\_\_\_\_ last week. They just weren't happy together.  
A. Broke up                      B. broke into                      C. finished off                      D. ended up
53. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's address. Do you know it?  
A. Looking on                      B. finding out                      C. looking for                      D. getting for
54. I can \_\_\_\_\_ with most things but I can't stand noisy children.  
A. Put aside                      B. put on                      C. put up                      D. put off
55. If we don't do something now, the birds are going to \_\_\_\_\_ soon.  
A. Die of                      B. die with                      C. die out                      D. die on
56. If you really want to lose weight, you need to \_\_\_\_\_ eating desserts.  
A. Give away                      B. give up                      C. put off                      D. take off
57. I had to \_\_\_\_\_ her request for a loan. Her credit was just not good enough  
A. Turn on                      B. turn off                      C. turn down                      D. turn into
58. I need to \_\_\_\_\_ from work and take a holiday.  
A. Go away                      B. get away                      C. relax on                      D. run on
59. It \_\_\_\_\_ to be a beautiful night tonight!  
A. Turned into                      B. turned out                      C. turned on                      D. turned off
60. I want you to \_\_\_\_\_ every bad word you've said about my brother.  
A. Take back                      B. say again                      C. take off                      D. give off
61. When I was turning out my cupboard I \_\_\_\_\_ this photograph of my uncle  
A. Came over                      B. came round                      C. came across                      D. came into
62. He \_\_\_\_\_ in German, but moved to the US at the age of 18.  
A. Brought to                      B. grew up                      C. turned off                      D. went to
63. He \_\_\_\_\_ the club on recommendation from his friend Jack.  
A. Got in                      B. got on                      C. got by                      D. got into
64. He \_\_\_\_\_ unleaded gas and left on his journey.  
A. Poured on                      B. filled up with                      C. filled up                      D. poured with
65. He spent the entire night thinking and in the end \_\_\_\_\_ a brilliant idea.  
A. Received with                      B. got up                      C. came up with                      D. came out
66. We're not ready yet, we are going to have to \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting until next week.  
A. Take off                      B. put off                      C. take on                      D. go off
67. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ the grammar one more time before the test.  
A. Go through                      B. come over                      C. go on                      D. go over
68. Look Jack, I've \_\_\_\_\_ your bad behavior long enough!  
A. Put up                      B. put through                      C. put up with                      D. get on well
69. Make sure to \_\_\_\_\_ pick-pockets when you go to the market.  
A. Watch out for                      B. come along                      C. take to                      D. look at

70. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ my cats while I was away on vacation.  
 A. Looked after      B. looked for      C. looked at      D. looked on
71. Our flight was delayed, but we finally \_\_\_\_\_ shortly after midnight.  
 A. Took off      B. took on      C. took up      D. put off
72. Our school \_\_\_\_\_ for the summer holidays on the 10th of July.  
 A. Breaks up      B. breaks down      C. breaks off      D. breaks in
73. She promised to \_\_\_\_\_ her cigarette smoking to five a day.  
 A. Cut down      B. give up      C. give away      D. cut up
74. "Let me check the directions," he said, reaching in his pocket to \_\_\_\_\_ a little booklet.  
 A. pick up      B. get over      C. take out      D. do away with
75. This \_\_\_\_\_ to be a hard job, as the island seems to be inhabited only by shepherds and smugglers.  
 A. drops out      B. comes out      C. turns out      D. ends up
76. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ for me on the conference call? I have to leave early today for a doctor's appointment  
 A. drop off      B. fill in      C. pick up      D. call on
77. He will be able to \_\_\_\_\_ the multinational forces, if he deems it necessary to have them deal with a problem.  
 A. sack      B. turn out      C. call on      D. take over
78. The bus only stops here to \_\_\_\_\_ passengers.  
 A. Get off      B. pick up      C. alight      D. get on
79. Most of the afternoon was \_\_\_\_\_ in Oxford, where I had a hair appointment.  
 A. taken on      B. taken up      C. depended on      D. called up
80. In some cases, companies give \_\_\_\_\_ goods or refund purchases in return for glowing reviews.  
 A. off      B. away      C. in      D. up
81. Some of those applications will be brought by some people for assistance when they meet next Monday night.  
 A. forward -      B. up      C. in      D. back
82. Check it with your boss before you do anything.  
 A. out      B. in      C. on      D. up
83. Yet these organizations bring women \_\_\_\_\_ of the family in ways that do not fundamentally challenge their traditional roles.  
 A. up      B. out      C. forward      D. in
84. The child was \_\_\_\_\_ by a lorry on the safety crossing in the main street.  
 A. Knocked out      B. knocked down      C. run out      D. run across
85. The exact questions she had prepared perfect answers for \_\_\_\_\_ in the exam.  
 A. Came out      B. came in      C. came through      D. came up
86. There is just too much work to be done. We'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ some new employees.  
 A. Get on      B. take on      C. take off      D. get off
87. When you go to New York, \_\_\_\_\_ the bad restaurants offering cheap food.  
 A. Look for      B. look out for      C. look head      D. look on
88. Don't worry about trying to catch the last train home, as we can easily \_\_\_\_\_ you up for the night.  
 A. Take      B. set      C. put      D. keep
89. I am late because my alarm clock didn't \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.  
 A. Come on      B. ring out      C. go off      D. turn on

90. He furiously told the beggar to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. Clear up                      B. clear off                      C. clear away                      D. clear after
91. Their aim is to \_\_\_\_\_ up a new political party.
- A. Strike                      B. stand                      C. set                      D. show
92. There was a big hole in the road which \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic.
- A. Kept down                      B. held up                      C. stood back                      D. sent back
93. These old houses are going to be \_\_\_\_\_ soon.
- A. Laid out                      B. run down                      C. knocked out                      D. pulled down
94. If you want to join this club, you must \_\_\_\_\_ this application form.
- A. Make up                      B. write down                      C. do up                      D. fill in/ out
95. It's high time Bill got a steady job and \_\_\_\_\_. He's almost thirty.
- A. Settled in                      B. settled down                      C. turned in                      D. turned down
96. My daughter often \_\_\_\_\_ to see me at least once a week.
- A. Calls up                      B. drops in                      C. goes up                      D. comes on
97. They had never come \_\_\_\_\_ such a beautiful little village before.
- A. At                      B. across                      C. off                      D. back
98. They've \_\_\_\_\_ a new tower where that old building used to be.
- A. Put up                      B. put down                      C. pushed up                      D. pushed down
99. We need to go to the market because we have \_\_\_\_\_ sugar this morning.
- A. Shortened of                      B. come short of                      C. run out of                      D. finished off
100. When my tea cup is empty, I fill it \_\_\_\_\_ again if I'm still thirsty.
- A. Out                      B. on                      C. over                      D. up

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. While I was waiting for the bus, I fell \_\_\_\_\_ conversation with a friendly old woman.
- A. into                      B. over                      C. in                      D. for
2. They started \_\_\_\_\_ a couple of months ago, and now they are inseparable.
- A. going out                      B. going through                      C. going on                      D. going by
3. Being the second child of three, he tends to admire his elder brother and \_\_\_\_\_ his younger sister.
- A. look up to                      B. make over                      C. make up to                      D. look down on
4. Since more than 50 percent of all marriages in the United States end in divorce, about half of the children in America must \_\_\_\_\_ in single-parent homes.
- A. grow up                      B. bring up                      C. come out                      D. go off
5. Beaches were \_\_\_\_\_ as police searched for canisters of toxic waste from the damaged ship.
- A. cut off                      B. sealed off                      C. washed up                      D. kept out
6. I need to check \_\_\_\_\_ a few things before I can decide.
- A. up on                      B. upon                      C. out of                      D. on to
7. That cheesecake must have already \_\_\_\_\_ when you bought it.
- A. gone off                      B. gone through                      C. gone down                      D. gone over
8. We intend to \_\_\_\_\_ with the old system as soon as we have developed a better one.
- A. do up                      B. do away                      C. do down                      D. do in
9. Jim makes a lot of money by buying old houses, \_\_\_\_\_ them up and then selling them again.
- A. doing                      B. making                      C. putting                      D. setting
10. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ in for sailing after he made friends with Harry.
- A. got                      B. went                      C. put                      D. came
11. Drive faster! They are \_\_\_\_\_ us.



- A. keeping with      B. getting on with      C. catching up with      D. going along with
12. Belinda Harrell \_\_\_\_\_ taking her driving test until she finally passed it on her twenty-first attempt.  
A. kept on      B. cleared off      C. used up      D. wore out
13. The total cost of all of Ms. Harrell's driving lessons \_\_\_\_\_ £6,000.  
A. held out      B. paid up      C. passed as      D. came to
14. Kate had been \_\_\_\_\_ in order to buy a new laptop, but then she decided to use the money on guitar lessons instead.  
A. working on      B. paying off      C. saving up      D. giving away
15. Hardly a day \_\_\_\_\_ when I don't think about her.  
A. goes through      B. goes back      C. goes down      D. goes by
16. Who do you think I \_\_\_\_\_ in the library this morning?  
A. off      B. went over      C. chased after      D. bumped into
17. You can \_\_\_\_\_ the packet; it's empty now.  
A. keep up      B. turn out      C. put down      D. throw away
18. It's high time decided you'll \_\_\_\_\_ the post or not.  
A. go in for      B. put up with      C. apply for      D. make up
19. In an effort to \_\_\_\_\_ the rate of inflation, many banks have raised their interest rates.  
A. run out of      B. keep up with      C. watch out      D. stand by
20. Nguyen Thi Anh Vien performed so well the 28th Sea Games Women's 200m butterfly that none of her rivals could \_\_\_\_\_ her.  
A. look up to      B. come up to      C. catch up with      D. put up with
21. The table in the living room should be moved to \_\_\_\_\_ the new TV set.  
A. get rid of      B. pave the way for      C. make room for      D. take hold
22. Candidates are requested to \_\_\_\_\_ the form to the admissions officer by July 25th.  
A. fill out      B. show up      C. pass over      D. hand in
23. When the manager of our company retires, the deputy manager will \_\_\_\_\_ that position.  
A. stand for      B. take over      C. catch on      D. hold on
24. Peter is disappointed at not getting the job, but he will \_\_\_\_\_ it soon.  
A. take on      B. get over      C. go through      D. come over
25. The company management decided to \_\_\_\_\_ more workers to meet the production schedule.  
A. take on      B. make out      C. take over      D. make up
26. A lot of research in medical science has been \_\_\_\_\_ to improve human health.  
A. made up      B. carried out      C. taken up      D. given off
27. You shouldn't lose heart; success often comes to those who are not \_\_\_\_\_ by failures.  
A. left out      B. put off      C. switched off      D. turned on
28. The school drama club is \_\_\_\_\_ a play for the school's anniversary, which is due to take place next month.  
A. turning up      B. making off      C. putting on      D. bringing down
29. Many parents tend to make their children study hard in the belief that good education will enable them to \_\_\_\_\_ in the future.  
A. turn up      B. get on      C. get out      D. turn away
30. The coastal city is \_\_\_\_\_ extra buses during the summer because of a considerable increase in the number of tourists.  
A. making up      B. turning out      C. putting on      D. taking off
31. Laura didn't enjoy her first year at college because she failed to \_\_\_\_\_ her new friends.  
A. come in for      B. look down on      C. go down with      D. get on with

32. If you're lonely, you should go out and try to \_\_\_\_\_ a friendship with someone you like.  
A. take up                      B. break up                      C. hold up                      D. strike up
33. I am not sure how old he is but he must be \_\_\_\_\_ for 70.  
A. getting on                      B. going by                      C. getting up                      D. going off
34. Quite soon, the world is going to \_\_\_\_\_ energy resources.  
A. come up against                      B. keep up with                      C. get into                      D. run out of
35. I've just been offered a new job! Things are \_\_\_\_\_  
A. clearing up                      B. making up                      C. looking up                      D. turning up
36. Xoan singing is a vocal art of villages in the ancestral land of Phu Tho. It has been \_\_\_\_\_ for generations and the oral tradition is still very much alive today.  
A. handed down                      B. landed on                      C. passed by                      D. taken over
37. Peter lost the race because he \_\_\_\_\_ petrol on the last lap.  
A. put out of                      B. got out of                      C. made out of                      D. ran out of
38. The new airport has \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of changes on this island.  
A. brought about                      B. taken to                      C. counted in                      D. turned up
39. You'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ a better idea than that if you want to win.  
A. come in for                      B. come up with                      C. bring out                      D. get down to
40. The online game "Dumb ways to die" quickly \_\_\_\_\_ with young people after being released in 2013.  
A. took on                      B. caught up                      C. caught on                      D. took up
41. I \_\_\_\_\_ my mom by cooking dinner for her.  
A. felt like                      B. waited for                      C. looked up                      D. cheered up
42. Although Daisy and Lucille had many problems at the start of their marriage, they soon managed to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_  
A. pick - over                      B. build - on                      C. pass - away                      D. work - out
43. Because the waiter didn't \_\_\_\_\_ what I ordered, he brought me a mutton steak instead of the chicken wings that I'd wanted.  
A. call on                      B. stay up                      C. take down                      D. check in
44. Charles Baudelaire was sent to India on a ship by his stepfather, but he \_\_\_\_\_ when it landed in Mauritius, and then returned to France.  
A. passed off                      B. went down                      C. put out                      D. ran away
45. Charles Dickens was born near Portsmouth, Hampshire on 7 February 1812, but relocated to and \_\_\_\_\_ in Camden Town in London.  
A. grew up                      B. came back                      C. called away                      D. left out
46. Through the dense fog in the harbour, the captain and crew were barely able to \_\_\_\_\_ the lights on the dock.  
A. look up                      B. make out                      C. go ahead                      D. see out
47. Monica was so angry about the noise that her neighbours were making that she refused to \_\_\_\_\_ it anymore.  
A. run away with                      B. cut down on                      C. put up with                      D. get away with
48. Yvonne was really surprised when Gary \_\_\_\_\_ at her front door, because she hadn't seen him for 12 years.  
A. showed up                      B. jumped on                      C. turned in                      D. brought about
49. Bernard Trevisan was born in 1406 but didn't \_\_\_\_\_ until 1490; living to the age of 84 was unusual in the period of the Italian Renaissance.  
A. set back                      B. pass away                      C. kill off                      D. die out
50. During his long life, Trevisan never \_\_\_\_\_ looking for a way to turn base metals into gold.

- A. pulled off            B. held down            C. gave up            D. put up
51. Such approaches should be supported and mainstreamed in health interventions in order to \_\_\_\_\_ positive behavior change.  
A. put off            B. bring about            C. hold up            D. set off
52. Segolene Royal has decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the French presidency in the election that will take place next year.  
A. run for            B. take in            C. go up            D. come out
53. I broke \_\_\_\_\_ with my boyfriend because he didn't like any of my friends.  
A. down            B. in            C. up            D. out
54. As it's sales have risen, that company is going to \_\_\_\_\_ more staff.  
A. take over            B. take up            C. take in            D. take on
55. It was the job of the secret service agent to \_\_\_\_\_ anyone suspicious hanging around the restaurant while the Spanish ambassador was dining inside.  
A. get away with            B. check out of            C. look out for            D. kick out of
56. As Joe's roommate, I find him a fairly nice fellow, even if at times it is not easy to \_\_\_\_\_ his noisy behavior.  
A. put down for            B. put up with            C. put off with            D. put in for
57. Although Jane is a newcomer, she gets \_\_\_\_\_ with her colleagues in the department.  
A. on quite well            B. off well            C. away            D. into
58. She should have been here, but she's \_\_\_\_\_ a terrible cough.  
A. gone down with            B. gone through with            C. come for            D. come up against
59. As a kid, I hated getting shots so much that a nurse usually had to hold me \_\_\_\_\_  
A. off            B. in            C. down            D. over
60. Linda had been up late finishing her dissertation, so she decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the next morning.  
A. sleep off            B. lie in            C. rest on            D. stay over
61. A few hours after the treatment, the pain in your arm will \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. wear off            B. fade out            C. drop away            D. fall through
62. The Smiths will move to New York. But we hope to \_\_\_\_\_ with them.  
A. keep touch            B. keep at touch            C. keep on touch            D. keep in touch
63. Ann is very temperamental. How do you \_\_\_\_\_ her?  
A. put up with            B. put with            C. put up to            D. putting up with
64. Pew knew he wouldn't get \_\_\_\_\_ with cheating in the exam.  
A. along            B. on            C. up            D. away
65. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ out of college and got a job.  
A. founded            B. dedicated            C. proved            D. dropped
66. Julia has \_\_\_\_\_ out of playing with dolls.  
A. developed            B. moved            C. removed            D. grown
67. We did have a terrible quarrel, but we've \_\_\_\_\_ it up now.  
A. turned            B. cleaned            C. sorted            D. made
68. Dreams are something for us to \_\_\_\_\_ and work for.  
A. go down            B. go after            C. go by            D. go ahead
69. Building a road here would go \_\_\_\_\_ the wishes of the local community.  
A. at            B. back            C. over            D. against
70. My Venezuelan friend has promised to \_\_\_\_\_ my essay on Elena Quiroga with me before I give it into my literature professor.  
A. check in            B. write off            C. go over            D. look up

71. I must have set my alarm incorrectly last night, because it \_\_\_\_\_ an hour too early this morning.  
A. ran out                      B. blew off                      C. woke up                      D. went off
72. Even if a person manages to \_\_\_\_\_ the eternal flame at Yanartas in Antalya, it will instantly relight itself.  
A. stop in                      B. put out                      C. get down                      D. blow up
73. Jeanne said that she would \_\_\_\_\_ our place this afternoon if she had enough time before she had to go back to work.  
A. drop by                      B. give in                      C. put up                      D. call off
74. We didn't like John when we first met him, but he has turned \_\_\_\_\_ to be a good friend to us.  
A. down                      B. up                      C. on                      D. out
75. "Have you \_\_\_\_\_ this contract yet?" - "Not yet. I'll try to read it this weekend."  
A. looked over                      B. looked into                      C. looked up                      D. looked out
76. After ten minutes, the students \_\_\_\_\_ in their quizzes to the instructor.  
A. gave                      B. had                      C. held                      D. handed
77. I was talking to my aunt when suddenly my cousin George \_\_\_\_\_ in on our conversation.  
A. interrupted                      B. broke                      C. went                      D. intervened
78. She found it hard to \_\_\_\_\_ up to the fact that she would never be famous.  
A. come                      B. get                      C. face                      D. keep
79. My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ when I was only six years old. He had lung cancer.  
A. left out                      B. moved over                      C. passed away                      D. went off
80. Shall we \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday and go for a drink or something?  
A. get together                      B. get down                      C. get off                      D. get up
81. It is late now. I think we should \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting and stop wasting time.  
A. go on with                      B. catch up with                      C. go in for                      D. make up for
82. I couldn't quite \_\_\_\_\_ what they were doing because they were so far away.  
A. see off                      B. make out                      C. think about                      D. try on
83. I think you have to \_\_\_\_\_ that he's good deal younger and less experienced than the rest of us.  
A. take into account                      B. give way to                      C. make up for                      D. run out of
84. You can always rely on Max's Garage; they never \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. get you down                      B. take you down                      C. let you down                      D. put you down
85. A week later, he \_\_\_\_\_ again on his journey around the world, despite his friends' attempt to persuade him not to.  
A. went away                      B. leave out                      C. came off                      D. set out
86. I could not \_\_\_\_\_ to the police because the telephone line was down.  
A. get down                      B. get up                      C. get through                      D. get over
87. "Have you \_\_\_\_\_ this plan yet?" - "Not yet. I'll try to read it this weekend."  
A. looked over                      B. looked out                      C. looked up                      D. looked into
88. The concert didn't come \_\_\_\_\_ our expectations.  
A. up with                      B. up against                      C. up to                      D. round
89. If you need any support, you can rely on me to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. set you down                      B. face up to you                      C. back you up                      D. put you through
90. I can't understand how your father managed to \_\_\_\_\_ that man. He had deceived all the rest of us.  
A. see off                      B. see through                      C. see to                      D. see out

91. The smell was so bad that it completely \_\_\_\_\_ us off our food.  
A. set                      B. took                      C. got                      D. put
92. They thought they could deceive me but they were wrong. I could \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. see them off              B. see off them              C. see through them              D. see them through
93. \_\_\_\_\_ a minute! I think I've left my keys in my other bag.  
A. Get off                      B. Carry out                      C. Run up                      D. Hold on
94. Sue has \_\_\_\_\_ smoking, but now she can't stop eating junk food!  
A. closed down              B. put out                      C. given up                      D. crossed out
95. Harvey didn't want to tell his boss the real reason why he was late, so he \_\_\_\_\_ a story about a crash having blocked up the road.  
A. made up                      B. pulled away                      C. spoke for                      D. watched out
96. The first census to be \_\_\_\_\_ in Ottoman Istanbul in 1477 revealed a total of 16,324 households.  
A. hung on                      B. carried out                      C. counted against                      D. done for
97. He never expected that he would come up \_\_\_\_\_ so many problems at the very start of his business.  
A. with                      B. against                      C. for                      D. to
98. She was very proud of her qualifications and \_\_\_\_\_ down on people she thought were uneducated.  
A. looked                      B. put                      C. took                      D. come
99. Because of an increase in orders, the factory manager took \_\_\_\_\_ a hundred new workers.  
A. on                      B. up                      C. over                      D. into
100. I'm sorry I offended you. I \_\_\_\_\_ what I said.  
A. take back                      B. get back                      C. come back                      D. get away

**III. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.**

1. Such unpopular legislation is unlikely to be **brought in** before the next election.  
A. introduced                      B. attracted                      C. earned money                      D. decided
2. We are determined that nothing should **hold back** the peace talks.  
A. allow                      B. prevent                      C. wait                      D. postpone
3. The former Joint Chiefs of Staff Chairman has **turned down** the job.  
A. accepted                      B. depended                      C. attacked                      D. rejected
4. They **talked over** the proposal and decided to give it their approval.  
A. included                      B. discussed                      C. connected                      D. disregarded
5. I had to read the letter twice before I could **take it all in**.  
A. tighten                      B. deceive                      C. obsorb                      D. completely understand
6. The police **brought forward** some new evidence in the case.  
A. proved                      B. accounted for                      C. suggested                      D. complained
7. The differences in achievement between the pupils are partly **accounted for** by differences in age.  
A. defeated                      B. destroyed                      C. explained                      D. recorded
8. She was late again, but I'm not sure how it came about this time.  
A. found by chance              B. happened                      C. received                      D. published
9. The company's new product was a success, and it really started to **take off**.  
A. imitated                      B. left a place                      C. succeeded in                      D. began to fly
10. He **made up** some excuse about the dog eating his homework.



- A. invented a story  
 B. became friends again  
 C. apply makeup  
 D. constituted

11. The members of the Green Party will say that they **stand for** green principles.  
 A. support                      B. oppose                      C. tolerate                      D. follow
12. It was an interesting exhibition, but there was too much to **take in** at once.  
 A. understand completely                      B. go bankrupt  
 C. sell like hot cakes                      D. come in for a lot of criticism

**IV. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.**

1. She **looks down on** people who haven't been to college.  
 A. reflects                      B. respects                      C. examines                      D. cares for
2. Don't be bullied, learn to **stand up for** yourself and what you believe in.  
 A. replace                      B. support                      C. defend                      D. oppose
3. The supermarket chain has promised to **cut down on** packaging.  
 A. increase                      B. drop                      C. reduce                      D. go down
4. Police have **put out** a description of the man they wish to question.  
 A. concealed                      B. caused trouble                      C. become upset                      D. made unconscious
5. The government looks likely to **go back on** its decision to close the mines.  
 A. set a record                      B. break a promise                      C. change a decision                      D. keep a promise
6. Kate's already agreed, but it's going to be harder persuading MIKE to **go along with** it .  
 A. approve                      B. disagree                      C. agreed                      D. agree
7. The average cost of a new house has gone up by five percent to £276,500.  
 A. raised                      B. decreased                      C. increased                      D. fluctuated
8. Online trading has been slow to catch on in this part of the country.  
 A. become unpopular                      B. become popular  
 C. become a phenomenon                      D. become common
9. My husband may **blow up** when he finds out how much I spent on clothes and cosmetics.  
 A. got angry                      B. enlarged                      C. ruined                      D. kept calm
10. If my cold doesn't **clear up**, it will ruin my vacation to Hawaii at weekend  
 A. get better                      B. get worse                      C. disappear                      D. explain
11. I think the poor guy passed out. It looks like he's had a lot to drink  
 A. became irresponsible                      B. became mischievous  
 C. became unconscious                      D. became conscious
12. It was supposed to be a surprising party for him but the children **gave away**.  
 A. revealed                      B. kept secret                      C. betrayed                      D. presented

### 1. KHÁI NIỆM THÀNH NGỮ ( THỂ NÀO LÀ THÀNH NGỮ ?)

- **Idiom - thành ngữ** là những cụm từ được sử dụng nhiều trong giao tiếp. Không chỉ trong tiếng Việt, mà tiếng Anh cũng có rất nhiều thành ngữ được dùng phổ biến như **"You scratch my back and I'll scratch yours"** (Cố qua cố lại mới toại lòng nhau). Các bạn thấy sao, rất thú vị phải không nào.

### II. MỘT SỐ THÀNH NGỮ THÔNG DỤNG

THÀNH NGỮ CHỨA MÀU SẮT		
STT	Thành ngữ	Nghĩa
1	The black sheep	ngịch tử, phá gia chi tử
2	Blue in the face	mãi mãi, lâu đến vô vọng
3	Red-letter day	ngày đáng nhớ vì có chuyện tốt lành, ngày vui
4	White as a ghost/sheet	trắng bệch, nhợt nhạt
5	With flying colors	xuất sắc
6	Once in a blue moon	năm thì mười họa, hiếm khi
7	Black and white	rõ ràng
8	Catch sb red-handed	bắt tại trận
9	Have a yellow streak	có tính nhát gan
10	Get/give the green light	bật đèn xanh
11	Out of the blue	hoàn toàn bất ngờ
12	Paint the town red	ăn mừng
13	Red tape	nạn quan liêu
14	In the pink = in good health	sức khỏe tốt
15	Lend color to St	chứng minh cái gì
THÀNH NGỮ CHỨA CÁC DANH TỪ BỘ PHẬN		
STT	Thành ngữ	Nghĩa
1	Break a leg	Good luck! (thường dùng để chúc may mắn)
2	Scratch someone's back = Help someone out with the assumption that they will return the favor in the future	giúp đỡ người khác với hi vọng họ sẽ giúp lại mình
3	Hit the nail/ on the head = Do or say something exactly right	nói chính xác, làm chính xác
4	Splitting headache = A severe headache	đau đầu như búa bổ
5	Make someone's blood boil	làm ai sôi máu, giận dữ
6	Pay through the nose = To pay too much for something	trả giá quá đắt
7	By the skin of one's teeth	sát sao, rất sát
8	Pull someone's leg	chọc ai
9	Fight tooth and claw/nail	đánh nhau dữ dội, cẩu xé nhau

10	Not bat an eye = To not show any shock or surprise	không tỏ ra ngạc nhiên hay sốc
11	Cost an arm and a leg	rất là đắt đỏ
12	Go to one's head	khiến ai kiêu ngạo
13	Get/have cold feet	mất hết can đảm, chùn bước
14	Led somebody by the nose = To control someone and make them do exactly what you want them to do	nắm đầu, dắt mũi ai
15	Off one's head	điên, loạn trí
16	Put one's foot in it	gây nhầm lẫn, bối rối, phạm một sai lầm gây bối rối
17	Stay/keep/be on one's toe	cảnh giác, thận trọng
18	Have in mind	đang suy tính, cân nhắc
19	At heart	thực chất, cơ bản (basically, fundamentally)
20	Face the music	chịu trận
21	Like the back of one's hand	rõ như lòng bàn tay
22	The twinkling of an eye	trong nháy mắt
23	On the tip of tongue	dùng khi muốn diễn tả ai đó không thể nhớ ra được điều gì mặc dù đã chắc chắn biết về nó
24	Put one's foot in one's mouth	nói một điều ngu ngốc làm xúc phạm đến người khác
25	Stick one's nose into one's business	chúi mũi vào việc của người khác
26	Feel st in one's bones	cảm nhận rõ rệt
27	A real pain in the neck	sốc, nghiêm trọng
28	Face to face	trực tiếp
29	See eye to eye with sb = totally agree	đồng tình
30	Keep one's head above the water	xoay xở
31	Have egg on one's face	xấu hổ
32	Word of mouth	đồn đại, truyền miệng
33	Heart to heart	chân thành
34	Body and soul	hết lòng, hết dạ
35	Flesh and blood	người có máu mủ ruột thịt
36	Skin and bones	tiêu tụy thảm thương, chỉ còn da bọc xương
37	Lend an ear to sb/st	lắng nghe một cách chân thành
38	Trip over one's big feet	tự vấp ngã
39	In one's capable hands	trong quyền giải quyết
40	Up to your eyes	rất bận
41	Have a head for st	giỏi về cái gì
42	A sweet tooth	người thích ăn đồ ăn ngọt
43	Have st at one's fingertips = To have the information, knowledge, etc. That is needed in a particular	nhận được thông tin/ kiến thức cần thiết một cách dễ dàng và nhanh chóng

	situation and be able to find it easily and use it quickly	
<b>THÀNH NGỮ CÓ CHỨA CÁC CON VẬT</b>		
STT	Thành ngữ	Nghĩa
1	Take the mickey out of sb = make fun of sb	chế nhạo, châm chọc ai
2	Get butterflies in one's stomach	cảm thấy bồn chồn
3	Have a bee in one's bonnet about St	ám ảnh về điều gì
4	When pigs fly = something will never happen	điều vô tưởng, không thể xảy ra
5	Teacher's pets	học sinh cưng
6	Let the cat out of the bag	tiết lộ bí mật
7	Huddle into a pen	lại gần nhau, túm tụm lại
8	Kill two birds with one stone	một mũi tên trúng hai đích
9	A big fish in a small pond	thằng chột làm vua xứ mù
10	Rain cats and dogs	mưa rất to
11	Like a fish out of water	như cá ra khỏi nước (bơ vơ, xa lạ, ngớ ngẩn)
12	Like water off a duck's back	nước đổ đầu vịt
13	Don't count yours the chicken before they hatch	đừng vội làm gì khi chưa chắc chắn
14	Catch the worms	nắm bắt cơ hội
15	Be in the doghouse	nếu bạn đang "in the doghouse", tức là ai đó đang khó chịu với bạn vì điều bạn đã làm
16	Don't look a gift horse in the mouth	đừng đòi hỏi về giá trị khi nhận được một món quà
17	Cock- and -bull	bịa đặt, vẽ vờ ra
18	Change horse in midstream	thay ngựa giữa dòng (ý nói thay đổi giữa chừng)
<b>THÀNH NGỮ VỀ CUỘC SỐNG</b>		
STT	Thành ngữ	Nghĩa
1	To be in deep water	rơi vào tình huống khó khăn
2	To be in hot water	gặp rắc rối
3	Better safe than sorry	cẩn tắc vô áy náy
4	Money is the good servant but a bad master	khôn lấy của che thân, dại lấy thân che của
5	The grass are always green on the other side of the fence	đứng núi này trông núi nọ
6	One bitten, twice shy	chim phải đạn sợ cành cong
7	In Rome do as the Romans do	nhập gia tùy tục
8	Honesty is the best policy	thật thà là thượng sách
9	A woman gives and forgives, a man gets and forgets	đàn bà cho và tha thứ, đàn ông nhận và quên



10	No roses without a thorn	hồng nào mà chẳng có gai, việc nào mà chẳng có vài khó khăn!
11	Save for the rainy day	làm khi lành để dành khi đau
12	It's an ill bird that fouls its own nest	vạch áo cho người xem lưng / Tốt đẹp phô ra xấu xa đậy lại
13	Don't trouble trouble till trouble troubles you	sinh sự sự sinh
14	Still water run deep	tâm ngâm tâm ngâm mà đắm chết voi
15	Men make house, women make home	đàn ông xây nhà, đàn bà xây tổ ấm
16	Penny wise pound foolish	tham bát bỏ mâm
17	Make the mare go	có tiền mua tiền cũng được
18	Like father, like son	con nhà tông không giống lông thì cũng giống cánh
19	The die is cast	bút sa gà chết
20	Two can play that game	ăn miếng trả miếng
21	Practice makes perfect	có công mài sắt có ngày nên kim
22	Ignorance is bliss	không biết thì dựa cột mà nghe
23	No pain, no gain	có làm thì mới có ăn
24	A bad beginning makes a bad ending	đầu xuôi đuôi lọt
25	A clean fast is better than a dirty breakfast	giấy rách phải giữ lấy lề
26	Beauty is but skin-deep	cái nết đánh chết cái đẹp
27	Calamity is man's true touchstone	lửa thử vàng, gian nan thử sức.
28	Diamond cut diamond	vỏ quýt dày có móng tay nhọn
29	Diligence is the mother of success	có công mài sắt có ngày nên kim
30	Don't put off until tomorrow what you can do today	việc hôm nay chớ để ngày mai
31	A hot potato = something that is difficult or dangerous to deal with	vấn đề nan giải
32	A lost cause	hết hi vọng, không thay đổi được gì
33	It never rains but it pours = good or bad things do not just happen a few at a time, but in large numbers all at once	hoạ vô đơn chí

### THÀNH NGỮ LÀ CÁC CỤM DANH TỪ KHÁC

STT	Thành ngữ	Nghĩa
1	A blind date	cuộc hẹn giữa hai người chưa hề quen biết
2	Golden handshake	món tiền hậu hĩnh dành cho người sắp nghỉ việc
3	One's cup of tea	thứ mà ai đó thích
4	Odds and ends	linh tinh, vụn vặt
5	Leaps and bounds	nhảy vọt, vượt trội
6	Between two stools = on the horns of a dilemma = when someone finds it	tiến thoái lưỡng nan



	difficult to choose between two alternatives	
7	On the house	không phải trả tiền
8	Off the peg	hàng may sẵn
9	Off the record	không chính thức, không được công bố
10	Part and parcel	thiết yếu, quan trọng
11	A shadow of a doubt	sự nghi ngờ
12	Beyond the shadow of a doubt	không hề nghi ngờ
13	The last straw = a nail in one's coffin	giọt nước tràn ly
14	The apple of one's eye	bảo bối của ai
15	Good egg	người có nhân cách, đáng tin cậy
16	Close shave = narrow escape	thoát chết trong gang tấc
17	Wet blanket	người phá đám
18	A kick in the pants	một bài học để ứng xử tốt hơn
19	An open-and-shut case	vấn đề dễ giải quyết
20	A shot in the dark	một câu đố
21	A big cheese	nhân vật tai to mặt lớn, người có vai vế, quyền lực
22	Ups and downs	lúc thăng lúc trầm
23	Ins and outs	những đặc tính và sự phức tạp
24	The tip of the iceberg	phần nhìn thấy
25	Compulsive liar	kẻ nói dối chuyên nghiệp

### THÀNH NGỮ LÀ CÁC CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ KHÁC

STT	Thành ngữ	Nghĩa
1	To pour cold water on something	đội nước lạnh vào...
2	To blow something out of the water	đánh bại, vượt
3	To sell/go like hot cakes	đắt đỏ, đắt như tôm tươi
4	To get in hot water = be in trouble/ have difficulty	gặp khó khăn
5	To hit the books = to study	học
6	To hit the roof = to hit the ceiling = to suddenly become angry	giận dữ
7	To hit it off	tâm đầu ý hợp
8	To make good time	di chuyển nhanh, đi nhanh
9	To chip in	góp tiền
10	To run an errand	làm việc vặt
11	To fly off the handle	dễ nổi giận, phát cáu
12	To cut it fine	đến sát giờ
13	To jump the traffic lights	vượt đèn đỏ
14	To put on an act	giả bộ, làm bộ
15	To come to light	được biết đến, được phát hiện, được đưa ra ánh sáng.
16	To pull one's weight	nỗ lực, làm tròn trách nhiệm

17	To make ends meet	xoay xở để kiếm sống
18	To get the hold of the wrong end of the stick	hiểu nhầm ai đó
19	To cut and dried	cuối cùng, không thể thay đổi, rõ ràng, dễ hiểu
20	To know by sight	nhận ra
21	To take pains	làm việc cẩn thận và tận tâm
22	To drop sb a line/note	viết thư cho ai
23	To turn over a new leaf	bắt đầu thay đổi hành vi của mình
24	To weigh up the pros and cons	cân nhắc điều hay lẽ thiệt
25	To burn the midnight oil = to stay up working, especially studying late at night	thức khuya làm việc, học bài
26	To put sb/st at one's disposal	cho ai tùy ý sử dụng
27	To bring down the house	làm cho cả khán phòng vỗ tay nhiệt liệt
28	To beat about the bush	vòng vo tam quốc
29	To find fault with	chỉ trích, kiểm chuyện, bắt lỗi
30	To take it amiss = to understand as wrong or insulting, or misunderstand	hiểu lầm
31	To break the news	thông báo
32	To drop a brick	lỡ lời, lỡ miệng
33	To take st for granted	coi là hiển nhiên
34	To break the ice	Thành ngữ này thường dùng để diễn tả làm một việc gì đó để giúp mọi người thư giãn và thoải mái, đặc biệt khi mới gặp
35	To blow one's own trumpet	khoe khoang, khoác lác
36	To miss the boat	lỡ mất cơ hội
37	To put one's card on the table	thẳng thắn
38	To call it a day = stop working	ngủ, giải lao
39	To hear a pin drop	im lặng, tĩnh lặng
40	To blow hot and cold	hay thay đổi ý kiến, dao động
41	To call the shots	chỉ huy, quyết định về những việc cần làm
42	To draw the line	đặt giới hạn cho việc gì; phân biệt giữa hai thứ tương tự nhau
43	To foot the bill	thanh toán tiền
44	To carry the can	chịu trách nhiệm, chịu sự chỉ trích
45	To throw the baby out with the bathwater	vứt bỏ những thứ đáng giá cùng lúc với rử bỏ với thứ gì không còn cần
46	To go with the flow	làm theo mọi người
47	To keep his shirt on	bình tĩnh
48	To let off steam	xả hơi
<b>THÀNH NGỮ LÀ CỤM TÍNH TỪ/ TRẠNG</b>		
<b>STT</b>	<b>Thành ngữ</b>	<b>Nghĩa</b>
1	At the drop of a hat = immediately, instantly	ngay lập tức

2	Off and on/ on and off	không đều đặn, thỉnh thoảng
3	High and low = here and there = everywhere = far and wide	đó đây, khắp mọi nơi
4	Spick and span	ngăn nắp, gọn gàng
5	On the spot = immediately	ngay lập tức
6	At the eleventh hour	vào phút chót
7	On the top of the world = walking on the air = over the moon = like a dog with two tails = happy	vui sướng, hạnh phúc
8	In vain	vô ích
9	A piece of cake	dễ như ăn cháo
10	Down the drain	công cốc, đổ ra sông ra biển
11	Under the weather = off color	không được khoẻ
12	The end of the world	đáng để bận tâm
13	As fit as a fiddle	khỏe như vâm
14	On probation	trong thời gian quản chế, tập sự (công việc)
15	Home and dry = with flying colors	thành công
16	Apples and oranges = chalk and cheese	rất khác nhau, khác một trời một vực
17	As long as your arm	rất dài
18	As high as a kite	quá phấn khích, thường là do bị ảnh hưởng bởi đồ uống có cồn hoặc ma túy
19	In the same boat	ở trong cùng một hoàn cảnh
20	Hot under the collar	điên tiết, cáu tiết
21	As red as a beetroot	đỏ như củ cải đường/nguợng
22	For good = permanently = forever	mãi mãi
23	Now and then = once in a while = sometimes = every so often = occasionally	thỉnh thoảng
24	Full of beans	hăng hái, sôi nổi, đầy năng lượng
25	At a loose end = free	rảnh rỗi
26	A tall story = unbelievable	khó tin
27	As cool as cucumber	bình tĩnh, không nao núng
28	Peace and quiet	bình yên và tĩnh lặng
29	Behind closed doors	kín, không công khai
30	High and dry = in a difficult situation, without help or money	trong tình huống khó khăn
31	Prim and proper = always behaving in a	kĩ lưỡng (quá mức), có chút bảo thủ

### III. THỰC HÀNH

#### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG THÀNH NGỮ

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She comes to see me once in a ..... moon.

- A. red                      B. glouse                      C. blue                      D. green
2. She is walking on the.....she doesn't know how to say.  
A. air                      B. road                      C. street                      D. garden
3. Her husband is a rich and successful businessman, so she eats..... and dresses..... without hard work.  
A. delicious/nice      B. well/beautifully      C. good/beautiful      D. well/beautiful
4. He takes after his father very much. It is like father like.....  
A. son                      B. children                      C. father                      D. girl
5. Enjoy your meal! Home grow, home....  
A. make                      B. made                      C. makes                      D. making
6. I've never really enjoyed going to the ballet or the opera; they're not really my.....  
A. piece of cake      B. sweets and candy      C. biscuit                      D. cup of tea
7. He travels.....for 20 years and then he decided to return home.  
A. father away      B. far and wide                      C. far from it                      D. farthest of all
8. Remember to appreciate what your friends do for you. You shouldn't take them.....  
A. as a rule                      B. as usual                      C. out of habit                      D. for granted
9. After running up the stairs, I was \_\_\_\_breath.  
A. without                      B. out of                      C. no                      D. away from
10. I know his name, but I can't recall it at the moment. It's on the tip of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. tongue                      B. brain                      C. mind                      D. memory
11. The sixth time he called me at night was the\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. last cause                      B. last straw                      C. touch and go                      D. hot air
12. Now that they have read it in\_\_\_\_\_, they believe me.  
A. red and blue      B. blue and red                      C. white and black                      D. black and white
13. Just keep \_\_\_\_\_on the baby while I cook the supper, will you?  
A. a look                      B. a glance                      C. an eye                      D. a care
14. Remember to appreciate what your friends do for you. You shouldn't take them.....  
A. as a rule                      B. as usual                      C. out of habit                      D. for granted
15. The children went \_\_\_\_\_ with excitement.  
A. wild                      B. wildly                      C. wilderness                      D. wildlife
16. In order to avoid boredom, the most important thing is to keep oneself \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. occupation                      B. occupant                      C. occupied                      D. occupational
17. "Where did you hear about that?" - "Just word of ....."  
A. eyes                      B. nose                      C. mouth                      D. ears
18. "What's wrong?"- "I'm a bit ... the weather."  
A. in                      B. under                      C. at                      D. off
19. "You've been rude to me all day, and I've had it. That's the last ....."!  
A. moment                      B. second                      C. minute                      D. straw
20. "Let's all be very careful what we say at the meeting tomorrow. I don't want anyone putting their ..... in their mouth."  
A. arm                      B. hand                      C. Fingure                      D. foot
21. I wanted to ask her what she thought of her ex-husband, but I figured it was better to let sleeping..... lie."  
A. cat                      B. dog                      C. fish                      D. cow
22. "I have to run to the bathroom. Can you keep an eye ..... my suitcase while I am gone?"  
A. on                      B. at                      C. off                      D. in
23. "Her husband is awful; they fight all the time but I think it takes ..... to tango."



- A. one                      B. two                      C. three                      D. four
24. "I have decided that this summer I am going to learn how to scuba dive." -- "Me too! I have already paid for the course. Great minds ..... alike!"  
A. think                      B. hear                      C. listen                      D. tell
25. "When my girl friend and my brother got in a fight I had to help my brother because blood is .....than water."  
A. thinner                      B. thicker                      C. better                      D. more
26. I think the main problem in this area is the lack of a good bus service.  
- You're right. You've hit the \_\_\_\_\_ on the head.  
A. nail                      B. wall                      C. lips                      D. hand
27. She is walking on the \_\_\_\_\_. She doesn't know how to say.  
A. air                      B. road                      C. street                      D. garden
28. When you do something, you should \_\_\_\_\_  
A. pay through the nose                      B. turn over a new leaf  
C. weigh up the pros and cons                      D. huddle into a pen
29. Someone who is inexperienced is \_\_\_\_\_  
A. red                      B. blue                      C. black                      D. green
30. The year-end party was **out of this world**. We had never tasted such delicious food.  
A. enormous                      B. terrific                      C. strange                      D. awful
31. The nominating committee always meet **behind closed doors**, lest its deliberations become known prematurely.  
A. privately                      B. safely                      C. publicly                      D. dangerously
32. She's so \_\_\_\_\_; you really have to watch you say or she'll walk out of the room.  
A. high and dry                      B. prim and proper                      C. rough and ready                      D. sick and tired
33. "Whenever that professor says something I don't like, I have to bite my ....."  
A. tougue                      B. mouth                      C. lips                      D. eyes
34. "Sorry I was late for the meeting today; I got stuck in traffic." -- "That's okay; better late than ....."  
A. never                      B. no                      C. not                      D. none
35. "If you want to ask me, just ask; don't beat ..... the bush."  
A. for                      B. around                      C. round                      D. towards
36. "Don't tell me how to do this; show me because Actions speak louder than ....."  
A. words                      B. speech                      C. work                      D. jobs
37. The time we spend apart has been good for us because absence makes the heart grow ....."  
A. fonder                      B. founder                      C. louder                      D. sounder
38. At every faculty meeting, Ms. Volatie always manages to **put her foot in her mouth**.  
A. move rapidly                      B. trip over her big feet  
C. fall asleep                      D. say the wrong thing
39. If you are **at a loose end** this weekend, I will show you around the city.  
A. free                      B. confident                      C. occupied                      D. reluctant
40. Thanks to her regular workouts and sensible diet she certainly strikes me as in the pink.  
A. in absolute health                      B. in good health                      C. in clear health                      D. in extreme health
41. That the genetic differences make one race superior to another is nothing but **a tall story**.  
A. cynical                      B. unbelievable                      C. untrue                      D. exaggeration
42. You should accept the Nokia mobile phone as a 16-birthday present from your parents delightedly. Don't \_\_\_\_\_  
A. look gift horse in the mouth                      B. buy it through the nose







82. The children were **full of beans** today, looking forward to their field trip.  
 A. eating a lot  
 B. hyperactive  
 C. melancholy  
 D. lively and in high spirits
83. John: "Oh, I forgot my girlfriend's birthday last week." - Anne: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
 A. Not on your life  
 B. So I guess you are in the doghouse again.  
 C. Sure, knock on wood.  
 D. You really should get a life.
84. Sometimes in a bad situation, there may still be some good things. Try not to "throw out the \_\_\_\_\_ with the bathwater".  
 A. fish  
 B. duck  
 C. baby  
 D. child
85. Wendy is **on the horns of a dilemma**: she just wonders whether to go for a picnic with her friends or to stay at home with her family.  
 A. unwilling to make a decision  
 B. able to make a choice  
 C. eager to make a plan  
 D. unready to make up her mind
86. Failing to submit the proposal on time was \_\_\_\_\_ for Tom.  
 A. a real kick in the pants  
 B. an open and shut case  
 C. a shot in the dark  
 D. a nail in the coffin
87. At first, no one believed she was a pilot, but her documents \_\_\_\_\_ colour to her statements.  
 A. provided  
 B. got  
 C. borrowed  
 D. lent
88. Mr. Simpkins is the big \_\_\_\_\_ in the company as he has just been promoted to the position of Managing Director.  
 A. bread  
 B. meat  
 C. cheese  
 D. apple
89. One way to let off \_\_\_\_\_ after a stressful day is to take some vigorous exercise.  
 A. cloud  
 B. tension  
 C. steam  
 D. sweat
90. I wish you'd do the accounts. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ for numbers.  
 A. a head  
 B. a mind  
 C. the heart  
 D. the nerve
91. He sent his children to the park so that he could have some \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. fresh and quiet  
 B. quiet and peace  
 C. peace and quiet  
 D. fresh and peace
92. To say that someone has told a secret, we use the idiom, 'You've let the \_\_\_ out of the bag!'  
 A. cat  
 B. mouse  
 C. goose  
 D. dog
93. Someone who is inexperienced is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. red  
 B. blue  
 C. black  
 D. green
94. The sheep were huddled into a \_\_\_\_\_ to protect them from overnight frosts.  
 A. cage  
 B. pen  
 C. kennel  
 D. hutch
95. My English is progressing \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. odds and ends  
 B. leaps and bounds  
 C. bounds and leaps  
 D. ends and odds
96. When you do something, you should \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. get through to  
 B. turn over a new leaf  
 C. weigh up the pros and cons  
 D. go down well with
97. The weather is going to change soon; I feel it in my \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. body  
 B. legs  
 C. skin  
 D. bones
98. As it was very hot in summer, sales of bottles of water went \_\_\_\_\_ the roof.  
 A. through  
 B. to  
 C. above  
 D. over
99. She is the black .....of her family.  
 A. goat  
 B. deer  
 C. sheep  
 D. sleep
100. During the days when the temperature dropped under 10oC, electric heaters sold like hot ..... in the Northern cities of Vietnam.

A. dogs

B cakes

C. sandwiches

D. foods

**I. KHÁI NIỆM CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH.**

- **Cụm từ cố định (collocation)** là những cụm gồm hai hay nhiều từ thường hay đi cùng với nhau và theo một trật tự nhất định. Chúng không có quy tắc hay một công thức cụ thể.

**II. CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ**

<b>MỘT SỐ CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ</b>	
<b>Collocations with DO</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ do one's best: cố hết sức, làm hết khả năng của bản thân</li> <li>+ do damage/harm to sb/st: gây ra thiệt hại, phá huỷ</li> <li>+ do more harm than good: hại nhiều hơn lợi</li> <li>+ do exercise/ aerobics /yoga karate: tập thể dục/thể dục nhịp điệu/yoga/karate</li> <li>+ do someone a favour /a good turn: giúp đỡ ai đó, làm một điều gì cho ai đó</li> <li>+ do household chore/housework: làm việc nhà</li> <li>+ do accountancy / engineering / law / economics: học nghề kế toán, kĩ sư, luật / kinh tế</li> <li>+ do the shopping/cooking/gardening: đi mua sắm/nấu ăn/làm vườn</li> <li>+ do/ run/start/build/expand a business: làm/ bắt đầu mở rộng kinh doanh</li> <li>+ do away with: loại bỏ, giết (= kill/get rid of); bãi bỏ (= abolish)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ do a crossword: chơi trò ô chữ .</li> <li>+ do/take/attend a course: học một khoá học</li> <li>+ do a deal: thoả thuận (trong kinh doanh) + do (= wash) the dishes: rửa bát</li> <li>+ do (= arrange) the flowers: cắm hoa vào lọ</li> <li>+ do for a living: kiếm sống</li> <li>+ do impression of sb: bắt chước (cho giống với ai đó) # make impression on sb: gây ấn tượng với ai</li> <li>+ do a good/great/terrible job: làm tốt/tệ</li> <li>+ do/conduct/carry out/undertake research: làm/tiến hành/thực hiện nghiên cứu</li> <li>+ do sth right/wrong: làm điều gì đúng/sai</li> <li>+ do sums: thực hiện phép toán</li> <li>+ do/perform/fullfil/take on one's duty: làm nhiệm vụ</li> <li>+ do military service: thực hiện nghĩa vụ quân sự</li> </ul>
<b>COLLOCATION WITH MAKE</b>	
<p>Collocations + make a difference: tạo nên sự khác biệt</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ make a fortune: trở nên giàu có</li> <li>+ make history: làm nên lịch sử</li> <li>+ make friends: kết bạn</li> <li>+ make a noise/mess/fuss: làm ồn/làm rối, làm bẽ bộn/làm ầm ĩ</li> <li>+ make an appointment: hẹn gặp</li> <li>+ make a suggestion: đưa ra một đề xuất</li> <li>+ make a mistake: mắc lỗi</li> <li>+ make a profit: kiếm lãi</li> <li>+ make preparations (for): chuẩn bị</li> <li>+ make a decision: ra một quyết định</li> <li>+ make an effort/attempt: nỗ lực, gắng hết sức</li> <li>+ make a list: làm một danh sách</li> <li>+ make room for sth: tạo chỗ trống</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ make/keep/break a promise: hứa/giữ lời hứa/phá vỡ lời hứa</li> <li>+ make (full) use of/take advantage of: tận dụng (tối đa)</li> <li>+ make a discovery: khám phá ra</li> <li>+ make an excuse: kiếm cớ</li> <li>+ make money/a living: kiếm tiền/kiếm sống</li> <li>+ make a phone call: gọi điện</li> <li>+ make a journey: thực hiện một hành trình</li> <li>+ make progress (in/on): tiến bộ</li> <li>+ make sense: có ý nghĩa</li> <li>+ make a complaint: phàn nàn make a comment/statement/announcement: bình luận/tuyên bố/báo cáo</li> <li>+ make a connection: tạo ra một kết nối</li> <li>+ make/meet the deadline: hoàn thành đúng</li> </ul>



<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ make an observation: quan sát</li> <li>+ make up/invent a story: bịa ra 1 câu chuyện</li> <li>+ make a reservation: đặt chỗ</li> <li>+ make a go of it: thành công trong việc gì</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>hạn</li> <li>+ make a discovery: thực hiện khám phá</li> <li>+ make contribution (to): góp phần vào</li> </ul>
--	---

### COLLOCATIONS WITH TAKE

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ take a nap: đánh một giấc ngủ trưa</li> <li>+ take a closer look (at): xem xét kỹ lưỡng</li> <li>+ take a break/ rest: nghỉ giải lao, nghỉ ngơi</li> <li>+ take a picture/ photo (of sb): chụp ảnh</li> <li>+ take a seat: tìm một chỗ ngồi</li> <li>+ take a test/ exam: tham gia kỳ thi</li> <li>+ take a bow: cúi đầu</li> <li>+ take medicine: uống thuốc</li> <li>+ take action: hành động</li> <li>+ take a strong/strict/drastic measure: thực hiện biện pháp mạnh mẽquyết liệt</li> <li>+ take a beating: chịu một trận đòn</li> <li>+ take an obstacle: vượt qua một điều trở ngại</li> <li>+ take one's temperature: đo nhiệt độ cho ai</li> <li>+ take a risk: gây nguy hiểm</li> <li>+ take (sb) to court: đưa ai đó ra tòa</li> <li>+ take pride in = be proud of: tự hào về</li> <li>+ take turns: thay phiên</li> <li>+ take after sb (=resemble): giống (với ai đó)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ take notes: ghi chép</li> <li>+ take one's time: ung dung, từ từ, thông thả</li> <li>+ take a chance/ the opportunity tận dụng cơ hội</li> <li>+ take/catch/grab a taxi: bắt taxi</li> <li>+ take control of: kiểm soát</li> <li>+ take care of (=look after/care for): chăm sóc</li> <li>+ take part in/participate in st: tham gia</li> <li>+ take advantages of: tận dụng lợi dụng</li> <li>+ take pleasure in: thích thú với việc gì</li> <li>+ take someone's place: thế chỗ ai</li> <li>+ take precautions: thực hiện biện pháp phòng ngừa</li> <li>+ take effect: có hiệu lực</li> <li>+ take notice of: chú ý, để ý đến, nhận thấy việc gì</li> <li>+ take/shoulder/carry/assume the responsibility for sth: chịu trách nhiệm</li> </ul>
---	---

### COLLOCATIONS WITH GET

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ get lost: bị lạc</li> <li>+ get a job: có một công việc</li> <li>+ get married/divorced: kết hôn/ly hôn</li> <li>+ get the message/cue: hiểu ý; thấm ý</li> <li>+ get a life: có được một cuộc sống</li> <li>+ get ready for st: chuẩn bị cho</li> <li>+ get/earn a living: kiếm sống</li> <li>+ get fame: nổi tiếng</li> <li>+ get/learn sth by heart: học thuộc lòng</li> <li>+ get along/on (with sb): sống hòa thuận với</li> <li>+ get over difficulties/illness: vượt qua khó khăn/khỏi bệnh</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ get home: về nhà</li> <li>+ get fired/sacked/the axe: bị đuổi</li> <li>+ get into debt/a habit: mắc nợ/nhiễm một thói quen</li> <li>+ get permission: xin phép</li> <li>+ get a picture: chụp ảnh</li> <li>+ get a promotion: được thăng chức</li> <li>+ get a ticket: mua một cái vé</li> <li>+ get access to: có quyền/được truy cập vào</li> <li>+ get across an idea: trình bày ý kiến một cách khúc chiết</li> </ul>
--	--

### COLLOCATIONS WITH GO

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ go bald: bị hói đầu</li> <li>+ go crazy insane/mad: nổi điên, trở nên khủng</li> <li>+ go missing: mất tích, thất lạc</li> <li>+ go on a journey/tour/trip/cruise: thực hiện một hành trình/chuyến đi/du ngoạn trên biển</li> <li>+ go on foot: đi bộ</li> <li>+ go online: lên mạng</li> <li>+ go on a holiday/date/picnic/strike: đi nghỉ/hẹn</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ go abroad/ overseas: đi ra nước ngoài</li> <li>+ go astray: đi lạc đường, lạc lối, thất lạc</li> <li>+ go/come/take into effect: có hiệu lực</li> <li>+ go out of business/bankrupt: làm ăn thua lỗ, đóng cửa/phá sản</li> <li>+ go shopping/fishing/camping/climbing: đi mua sắm/câu cá/cắm trại/leo núi</li> <li>+ go native: trở thành như người địa phương</li> </ul>
---	--

hò/dã ngoại/đình công + go blind/deaf/bald: bị mù/điếc/hói đầu	+ go back on (upon) one's word: không giữ lời hứa +go for a walk/swim/drink: đi dạo/bơi/uống
<b>COLLOCATIONS WITH GAIN</b>	
Collocations +gain weight: tăng cân +gain access to: truy cập/tiếp cận với +gain control of: giành được quyền kiểm soát +gain a reputation for: nổi tiếng vì + gain popularity/acceptance: phổ biến/được chấp nhận + gain market share: giành được thị phần	+ gain experience/understanding/support: thu được/có được kinh nghiệm/sự hiểu biết/sự hỗ trợ + gain one's living: kiếm sống +gain an insight into: có cái nhìn thấu đáo + gain an advantage over sb: có lợi thế hơn ai + gain purpose: đạt được mục đích
<b>COLLOCATIONS WITH GIVE</b>	
+give permission: cho phép + give sb a chance: cho ai đó cơ hội + give advice: đưa ra lời khuyên +give sb a lift: cho ai đó đi nhờ xe . +give sb a call: gọi cho ai đó + give preference to sb: ưu tiên ai đó + give a lecture/speech/ performance: thuyết giảng/phát biểu/ biểu diễn + give rise to: làm phát sinh, gia tăng + give thought (to): suy nghĩ về	+ give sb a headache: làm ai đó cảm thấy cực kì phiền phức (nghĩa đen: làm ai đó thấy đau đầu) + give information: đưa ra chỉ dẫn, cung cấp thông tin + give sb a hand: giúp đỡ ai đó + give the impression that: làm ai đó nghĩ/cảm thấy theo một chiều hướng nhất định + give birth (to): sinh, đẻ ra + give an example: đưa ra ví dụ
<b>COLLOCATIONS WITH BREAK</b>	
+ break the news to sb: báo tin cho ai (tin buồn) + break one's heart: làm ai đau lòng + break a record: phá kỷ lục + break the rules/promise/appointment: phá vỡ những quy luật không giữ lời hứa/không giữ hẹn + break the peace: làm rối trật tự chung + break a sleep: giải mê, giải bùa + break out of prison: vượt ngục	+ break a habit: từ bỏ một thói quen + break the ice: bắt đầu làm quen với nhau + break a leg: làm gãy chân #break a leg! chúc may mắn + break the silence: phá tan sự yên lặng + break one's health/ courage/will: làm ai mất sức/ can đảm/ ý chí + break for lunch: nghỉ ăn trưa + break off with sb: cắt đứt quan hệ
<b>COLLOCATION WITH COME</b>	
+ come up to: đạt đối (expectation/success)>< fall short of: không đạt tới + come in for: hưởng (lãi sản); hứng chịu (chỉ trích) + come prepared: đến có chuẩn bị, sẵn sàng + come up with (ideas/solutions): nảy ra, nghĩ ra ý tưởng giải pháp + come to terms with: nhìn nhận sự thật + come to a standstill: đi đến một bế tắc + come across/bump into sb: tình cờ gặp ai	+ come to/reach an agreement: đi đến thỏa thuận + come to/reach/arrive at a decision: đi đến quyết định + come to an end: đi đến kết thúc + come into effect: có hiệu lực + come forward: đứng ra, xung phong +in years to come: trong những năm tới + come under attack: bị tấn công + come to a compromise: đi đến 1 thỏa hiệp
<b>COLLOCATIONS WITH HAVE</b>	
+ have a meeting: có một cuộc họp + have a party: tổ chức một bữa tiệc	+ have a fight: có một cuộc chiến + have a conversation: Có một cuộc trò chuyện

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ have a baby: có em bé</li> <li>+ have difficulty/trouble (in sth): gặp khó khăn, rắc rối</li> <li>+ have sth in common: Có điểm chung</li> <li>+ have a good time: đi chơi vui vẻ nhé</li> <li>+ have a problem: gặp một trở ngại, rắc rối</li> <li>+ have sympathy: có sự thương cảm</li> <li>+ have a splitting headache: đau đầu như búa bổ</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ have an interview: có một cuộc phỏng vấn</li> <li>+ have breakfast/lunch/dinner: ăn sáng/trưa/tối</li> <li>+ have fun: vui vẻ, vui chơi</li> <li>+ have an argument/a row: cãi vã, tranh luận</li> <li>+ have a break: nghỉ mệt, thư giãn</li> <li>+ have a drink: uống một cốc (rượu...)</li> <li>+ have a go (at sth/to do sth): thử làm gì đó</li> <li>+ have/undergo an operation: phải/trải qua</li> </ul>
--	--

### COLLOCATIONS WITH CATCH

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ catch fire: bắt lửa, cháy</li> <li>+ catch a bus/ train/flight: bắt xe buýt/ tàu/máy bay</li> <li>+ catch a ball: bắt bóng</li> <li>+ catch a cold/the flu: nhiễm lạnh/ cảm cúm</li> <li>+ catch a thief: bắt một tên trộm</li> <li>+ catch in the act/ red-handed: bắt quả tang</li> <li>+ catch/take sb by surprise: làm ai đó sùng sốt/bất ngờ</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ catch one's breath: nín thở</li> <li>+ catch one's eyes catch one's attention: thu hút được sự chú ý</li> <li>+ catch a habit: nhiễm một thói quen</li> <li>+ catch the public: lôi cuốn được công chúng</li> <li>+ catch a sight/glimpse of sb/sth: nắm lấy/tóm lấy/thấy ai/ cái gì</li> <li>+ catch someone's meaning: hiểu được ý ai muốn nói gì</li> </ul>
---	---

### COLLOCATIONS WITH PAY

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ pay one's (last) respects to/for: thể hiện sự kính trọng (cuối cùng) đối với ai đó</li> <li>+ pay heed/attention to sb/st: chú ý tới ai/ điều gì</li> <li>+ pay the price: trả giá</li> <li>+ pay a bill /fine /subscription: thanh toán hoá đơn/tiền phạt/tiền đặt mua dài hạn</li> <li>+ pay in cash/by cheque: trả tiền mặt/ngân phiếu</li> <li>+ pay one's debt: trả nợ, thanh toán nợ</li> <li>+ pay off: có hiệu lực, thành công (chính sách/kế hoạch) .</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ pay the bill: thanh toán hóa đơn</li> <li>+ pay by credit card: trả bằng thẻ tín dụng</li> <li>+ pay someone a visit: ghé thăm ai</li> <li>+ pay sb a compliment: ngỏ lời khen ngợi ai</li> <li>+ pay a sum: trả một số tiền</li> <li>+ pay off one's debts /a loan la mortgage: trả hết nợ/khoản vay/khoản cầm cố</li> <li>+ pay sb back for sth: trả thù ai về điều gì</li> <li>+ pay through the nose (for sth): trả 1 giá quá đắt</li> <li>+ pay tribute to sb: kính trọng/ngưỡng mộ ai</li> </ul>
--	---

### COLLOCATIONS WITH KEEP

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ keep calm/ one's temper: giữ bình tĩnh</li> <li>+ keep quiet/ silent: giữ im lặng</li> <li>+ keep control: giữ kiểm soát</li> <li>+ keep a secret: giữ bí mật</li> <li>+ keep the laws: tuân giữ pháp luật</li> <li>+ keep a shop: quản lý một cửa hiệu</li> <li>+ keep an eye on: để mắt vào, trông giữ</li> <li>+ keep tabs on: kiểm tra, kiểm soát; theo dõi</li> <li>+ keep pace with: bắt kịp, theo kịp</li> <li>+ keep peace with: giữ mối quan hệ tốt</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ keep/stay/be in touch/contact (with sb): giữ liên lạc (với ai)</li> <li>+ keep one's promise (word): giữ lời hứa</li> <li>+ keep the change: giữ lại tiền thừa</li> <li>+ keep an appointment: y hẹn</li> <li>+ keep st in mind: ghi nhớ điều gì</li> <li>+ keep the cash: giữ két</li> <li>+ keep/raise/bring up/rear a family/a: nuôi nấng gia đình</li> <li>+ keep someone waiting: bắt ai chờ đợi</li> <li>+ keep good time: đúng giờ (đồng hồ)</li> </ul>
--	---

### COLLOCATIONS WITH SAVE

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ save energy/ electricity/money/time/ space:</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ save one's strength: giữ sức</li> </ul>
---	--



tiết kiệm năng lượng điện/ tiền/ thời gian/  
không gian + save one's life: cứu mạng ai đó  
+ save the situation: cứu vãn tình thế  
+ save one's breath: làm thính

+ save someone a seat: giữ chỗ, dành một chỗ  
+ Save oneself the trouble: đỡ mất công  
+ save one's soul: cứu vớt linh hồn ai  
+ save a file: lưu tập tin

### III. CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH CỦA DANH TỪ VÀ TÍNH TỪ.

#### CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH CỦA DANH TỪ VÀ TÍNH TỪ

+ careful consideration: sự xem xét cẩn thận  
+ false hope: hy vọng hão  
+ firm belief: tin tưởng chắc chắn  
+ firm conviction: lời kết tội, kết án chắc chắn  
+ general conclusion: kết luận chung  
+ heavy fine: phạt nặng  
+ heavy losses: tổn thất nặng nề  
+ heavy rain: mưa to  
+ heavy traffic: giao thông căng thẳng  
+ high expectations: kỳ vọng cao  
+ high hope: hi vọng lớn  
+ high proportion: tỷ lệ cao  
+ key figure: nhân vật chính  
+ positive attitude: thái độ tích cực  
+ positive feedback: phản hồi tích cực  
+ rapid change: sự thay đổi chóng mặt

+ major breakthrough/concern/factor/ |  
influence: đột phá/quan ngại/nhân tố ảnh  
hưởng chính  
+ noticeable change/difference/ improvement:  
sự thay đổi/khác biệt/cải thiện đáng chú ý  
+ outstanding achievement: thành tựu nổi bật  
+ economic crisis/downturn/growth/policy  
/reform/ slowdown: khủng hoảng/suy sụp/ tăng  
trường/chính sách/đổi mới/giảm tốc độ tăng  
trường kinh tế  
+ growing awareness/concern/tension: sự nhận  
thức/mối quan ngại/căng thẳng gia tăng  
+ high quality/speed/standard: chất lượng/tốc  
độ/tiêu chuẩn cao  
+ key element/factor/feature/role: yếu tố/đặc

### IV. CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH CỦA TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ.

#### CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH CỦA TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ

##### (Absolutely/utterly/quite/really)

+ (Absolutely/utterly/quite/really) alone/convinced/devastated: (hoàn toàn) đơn độc/bị thuyết  
phục/suy sụp  
+ (Absolutely/utterly/quite/really) amazed/ appalled/beautiful/fantastic/ furious/  
miserable/ridiculous: (vô cùng/hết sức/cực kỳ) kinh ngạc/kinh hãi/xinh đẹp/tuyệt vời/giận dữ/khó  
sở/lố bịch  
+ (Absolutely/utterly/quite/really) impossible: chắc chắn là không thể  
+ Utterly devoted: cống hiến hết mình

##### COMPLETELY

+ Completely amazed: hoàn toàn kinh ngạc  
+ Completely different: hoàn toàn khác biệt  
+ Completely fantastic: thực sự tuyệt vời  
+ Completely strong: cực kỳ mạnh mẽ

##### BITTERLY

+ Bitterly cold: lạnh tê tái  
+ Bitterly criticized: bị chỉ trích cay nghiệt  
+ Bitterly disappointed: thất vọng tràn trề  
+ Bitterly regret: nuối tiếc đầy cay đắng  
+ Bitterly resent: tức giận đầy cay đắng

##### DEEPLY

+ Deeply affected: ảnh hưởng sâu sắc

+ Deeply moved: vô cùng cảm động

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Deeply ashamed: vô cùng hổ thẹn</li> <li>+ Deeply care: quan tâm sâu sắc</li> <li>+ Deeply committed: cống hiến hết mình</li> <li>+ Deeply competitive: cạnh tranh, ganh đua</li> <li>+ Deeply concerned: lo ngại sâu sắc</li> <li>+ Deeply divided: bị chia rẽ sâu sắc</li> <li>+ Deeply hurt: bị tổn thương sâu sắc</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Deeply offended: bị xúc phạm ghê gớm</li> <li>+ Deeply regrettable: hối tiếc sâu sắc</li> <li>+ Deeply religious: sùng đạo</li> <li>+ Deeply shocked: sốc nặng</li> <li>+ Deeply unhappy: vô cùng bất hạnh</li> <li>+ Deeply worried: cực kỳ lo lắng</li> <li>+ Deeply disturbed: thật sự bị làm phiền</li> </ul>
<b>HIGHLY</b>	<b>RIDICULOUSLY</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Highly recommended: được nhiều người đề cử, giới thiệu</li> <li>+ Highly successful: vô cùng thành công</li> <li>+ Highly unlikely: có khả năng cao không xảy ra</li> <li>+ Highly controversial: gây nhiều tranh cãi</li> <li>+ Highly effective: hiệu quả cao</li> <li>+ Highly probable: khả thi cao</li> <li>+ Highly profitable: lợi nhuận cao</li> <li>+ Highly unusual: cực kỳ bất thường</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Ridiculously cheap: rẻ không tưởng</li> <li>+ Ridiculously early: sớm không tưởng</li> <li>+ Ridiculously easy: dễ không tưởng</li> <li>+ Ridiculously long: dài không tưởng</li> <li>+ Ridiculously small: nhỏ không tưởng</li> </ul>
<b>OTHERS</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Ruggedly handsome: đẹp trai theo kiểu phong trần</li> <li>+ Scared stiff: sợ khiếp vía</li> <li>+ Strongly opposed: phản đối mạnh mẽ</li> <li>+ Actively involved: tham gia tích cực</li> <li>+ Badly hurt: bị thương rất nặng</li> <li>+ Blissfully unaware: hoàn toàn không nhận thức được</li> <li>+ Blissfully ignorant: không hề hay biết</li> <li>+ Dead tired: mệt đến chết</li> <li>+ Drop+dead gorgeous: vô cùng lộng lẫy</li> <li>+ Fiercely competitive: cạnh tranh dữ dội</li> <li>+ Fully aware: hoàn toàn ý thức</li> <li>+ Painfully shy: nhát kinh khủng</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Quietly confident: thầm tự tin</li> <li>+ Readily available: rất sẵn sàng</li> <li>+ Reasonably happy: trong đối vui vẻ</li> <li>+ Reasonably priced: giá cả hợp lý</li> <li>+ Reasonably well: trong đối tốt</li> <li>+ Terribly disappointing: thất vọng tràn trề</li> <li>+ Totally unbelievable: hoàn toàn không tin nổi</li> <li>+ Widely accepted: được chấp nhận rộng rãi</li> <li>+ Wildly optimistic: cực kỳ lạc quan</li> <li>+ Awfully sorry: vô cùng xin lỗi</li> <li>+ Perfectly capable: hoàn toàn có khả năng</li> <li>+ Painfully thin: gày đau gày đón</li> <li>+ Perfectly normal: hoàn toàn bình thường</li> <li>+ pretty good : khá tốt</li> </ul>

## V. MỘT SỐ CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH THÔNG DỤNG KHÁC

### MỘT SỐ CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH THÔNG DỤNG KHÁC

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ carry out/do/handle the chores: thực hiện/ làm công việc vặt trong nhà</li> <li>+ divide/split/share the chores: phân chia/ chia sẻ công việc vặt trong nhà</li> <li>+ do the heavy lifting: làm việc nặng</li> <li>+ not see the point of: không thấy rõ được mục đích, tầm quan trọng của ...</li> <li>+ maintain eye contact with sb: duy trì giao tiếp mắt với ai</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ get up the nerve: lấy hết can đảm = pluck up/get up/wake up the courage to V</li> <li>+ keep/hold one's nerve: giữ can đảm/tâm lý</li> <li>+ lose one's nerves: mất tinh thần, hoảng sợ</li> <li>+ take/have a nap: đánh một giấc ngủ trưa</li> <li>+ in an attempt to V: nỗ lực làm gì</li> <li>+ at the (first, second, last....) attempt: trong lần cố gắng, lần thứ (thứ nhất, thứ hai, ...)  </li> <li>+ make noan attempt/effort to V: không có cố</li> </ul>
---	--



+ get rid of/ kick/break a bad habit: vứt bỏ thói xấu

+ have a smash/big/huge/great hit: có được sự thành công, thắng lợi bất ngờ

+ make a commitment to st/ V+ing: tận tụy (cống hiến thời gian, công sức vào việc gì đó)

+ lack of commitment: thiếu sự tận tâm

+ demand/require/ demonstrate a high level of commitment: đòi hỏi/thể hiện mức độ quyết tâm cao

+ on a regular basic = frequently/regularly: đều đặn, thường xuyên

+ play an important part/role in st: đóng một phần/vai trò quan trọng trong ...

+ a key/leading central/crucial/vital/ major/ significant role: một vai trò quan trọng/hàng đầu/trung tâm/chính

+ set/establish/keep/hold/break/beat a record: lập/giữ/phá một kỷ lục

+ make/turn/earn a profit: kiếm lời

+ carry on/have/hold a conversation with sb: chuyện trò với ai, đàm luận với ai

+ follow in one's footsteps: làm theo ai, theo gương ai, theo gót ai

+ come true = become reality: trở thành hiện thực

+ Fulfill /meet/satisfy the criteria/ requirement/demand/need: đáp ứng các tiêu chí/yêu cầu

+ take action/measure: hành động/đưa ra biện pháp

+ have difficulty in V+ing: gặp khó khăn

+ have/make/cause/spell trouble for sb: gặp/gây rắc rối

+ come/enter into force (of a law, rule, etc.) = Come into effect có hiệu lực

+ bring/carry into effect = to come into use; to begin to apply: thực hiện, thi hành

+ come into power: nắm quyền

+ attract/catch/grab/draw one's attention = catch one's eye = bring st to the attention of sb/st: thu hút sự chú ý của ai

+ pay close attention to sb/st = take notice of: chú ý tới ai/cái gì

+ the centre of attention: trung tâm của sự chú ý

+ be on the verge of: trên bờ vực của ...

gắng làm gì

+ go through/have a difficult period: trải qua/có một thời kỳ khó khăn

+ open the door of knowledge to sb: mở ra cánh cửa tri thức đối với ai

+ a thirst for knowledge: khát khao tri thức

+ to the best of your knowledge/ belief = as far as you know: theo như bạn được biết

+ common/public knowledge: kiến thức chung

+ have a huge/big heart for sb: hào hiệp phóng khoáng, rộng lượng

+ set a good/shining/great/inspiring example for sb: nêu gương tốt/sáng chói/tuyệt vời, đây cảm hứng cho ai

+ lead by example: gương mẫu đi đầu

+ without example: chưa hề có tiền lệ

+ put an end to (=stop): chấm dứt, bãi bỏ

+ come to an end (= finish): hoàn thành

+ bring st to the end: chấm dứt cái gì

+ change one's mind: thay đổi ý kiến, suy nghĩ

+ make up one's mind: đưa ra quyết định

+ be made redundant: bị cho nghỉ việc

+ be sacked for st: bị sa thải, bị cách chức vì

+ give/get sb the sack/the axe: đuổi ai/bị sa thải

+ get fired/dismissed from a job = fire sb from a job: bị sa thải

+ make a donation: quyên góp, cho tặng

+ a generous/large/ sizeable/small donation: một khoản đóng góp hào phóng/lớn/nhỏ

+ in the fight/struggle against/for st: trong cuộc chiến chống lại/giành thứ gì ...

+ be in need of st: cần

+ There's no need to V: không cần phải làm gì

+ raise/heighten/increase awareness of: nâng cao nhận thức về

+ a greater/a growing/an increasing awareness of st: nhận thức ngày càng cao về điều gì

+ face/deal with many challenges: đối mặt với nhiều thử thách

+ issue/send a challenge: thách, thách thức

+ pose huge challenges to sb/st: đặt ra những thách thức lớn đối với...

+ meet the challenge of st: đáp ứng thách thức của

+ pose a threat to sb/st: đặt ra một mối đe dọa với ai

+ drive/bring sb/st to the verge/brink of st: đẩy ai/cái gì đến bờ vực của ...  
 + come to/lead to/arrive at/reach/draw a conclusion: đi tới/dẫn tới/rút ra kết luận  
 + tell the difference = distinguish: phân biệt

+ under threat of: bị đe dọa + try/wait/be in vain: cố gắng/chờ đợi/trong vô vọng  
 + Raise/pose/put a question: nêu lên vấn đề

### III. THỰC HÀNH

#### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. The decision has been \_\_\_\_\_ to move UN troops in to try and stop the fighting,  
 A. gone                      B. come                      C. made                      D. done
2. \_\_\_\_\_ of the financial crisis, all they could do was hold on and hope that things would improve.  
 A. At the bottom      B. At the height      C. On the top      D. In the end
3. His boss asked him to take \_\_\_\_\_ of the office for a few days while she was away.  
 A. protection      B. duty      C. responsibility      D. charge
4. Children seem to learn more interesting things from their own surroundings compared \_\_\_\_\_ when they are at school.  
 A. to      B. with      C. by      D. Both A, B are correct
5. His comments \_\_\_\_\_ little or no relation to the facts and the figures of the case.  
 A. reflect      B. bear      C. give      D. possess
6. Despite all the evidence, he wouldn't admit that he was in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. fault      B. error      C. wrong      D. slip
7. Mr. Nixon refused to answer the questions on the \_\_\_\_\_ that the matter was confidential.  
 A. reasons      B. excuses      C. grounds      D. foundation
8. At first I thought he was a bit shy, but I've \_\_\_\_\_ to the conclusion that he's simply unfriendly!  
 A. come      B. reached      C. drawn      D. Arrive
9. The Business Advisory Council has been specially designed for those in \_\_\_\_\_ of advice about setting up new businesses.  
 A. absence      B. duty      C. want      D. need
10. The city has \_\_\_\_\_ of young consumers who are sensitive to trends, and can, therefore, help industries predict the potential risks and success of products.  
 A. a high rate      B. a high proportion      C. a high tendency      D. a great level
11. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ to conclusions, we don't yet know all the relevant facts.  
 A. hurry      B. jump      C. rush      D. run
12. I wonder if you could \_\_\_\_\_ me a small favour, Tom?  
 A. bring      B. make      C. give      D. do
13. Scientists warn that many of the world's great cities are \_\_\_\_\_ flooding.  
 A. being      B. at risk      C. in danger of      D. endangered
14. The boy's strange behavior aroused the \_\_\_\_\_ of the shop assistant.  
 A. thought      B. consideration      C. exectations      D. suspicions
15. The young should \_\_\_\_\_ themselves in social activities.  
 A. determine      B. serve      C. involve      D. promote.
16. I know from \_\_\_\_\_ that everything will be all right.

- A. conscience      B. experience      C. wisdom      D. care
17. Your second essay \_\_\_\_\_ improvement on the first one.  
A. showed      B. made      C. cast      D. presented
18. The Women's World Cup is \_\_\_\_\_ in popularity.  
A. competing      B. establishing      C. advancing      D. growing
19. Our class team has won four \_\_\_\_\_ football matches.  
A. successful      B. unsuccessful      C. success      D. successive
20. We interviewed a number of candidates but none of them \_\_\_\_\_ us.  
A. enlivened      B. encouraged      C. delighted      D. impressed
21. \_\_\_\_\_ to British universities depends on examination results.  
A. Admission      B. Admittance      C. Permission      D. Permit
22. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ jobs because I don't like keep on moving and changing all the time.  
A. demanding      B. challenging      C. steady      D. secure
23. The investment has had \_\_\_\_\_ on the development of our project.  
A. results      B. progress      C. interruptions      D. effects
24. In China, there are still a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ families sharing the same house.  
A. extent      B. extension      C. extended      D. extensive
25. \_\_\_\_\_, the number of people at the first New York show equaled the entire car population of the United States at that time.  
A. By design      B. On purpose      C. For example      D. By happenstance
26. Negotiating is the process of communicating back and \_\_\_\_\_ for the purpose of reaching an agreement.  
A. next      B. forth      C. again      D. over
27. At her trial in 1431, Joan was accused of being in \_\_\_\_\_ with the devil.  
A. cooperation      B. association      C. league      D. conjunction
28. You've all \_\_\_\_\_ the point. The film itself is not racist - it simply tries to make us question our own often racist attitude.  
A. mistaken      B. misunderstood      C. missed      D. lost
29. It never \_\_\_\_\_ my head that such a terrible thing would happen.  
A. struck      B. dawned      C. occurred      D. entered
30. My mother often \_\_\_\_\_ our mistakes, whereas my father is very strict and punishes us for even the slightest one.  
A. neglects      B. overlooks      C. avoids      D. passes
31. After congratulating his team, the coach left, allowing the players to let their \_\_\_\_\_ down for a while.  
A. hearts      B. hair      C. souls      D. heads
32. Alice said: "That guy is \_\_\_\_\_ gorgeous. I wish he would ask me out."  
A. dead-centre      B. drop shot      C. jumped-up      D. drop-dead
33. The party leader travelled the length and \_\_\_\_\_ of the country in an attempt to spread his message.  
A. width      B. distance      C. diameter      D. breadth
34. Vietnam U23 made not only Asia but also Europe keep a close eye on them. They \_\_\_\_\_ internationally.  
A. have made headlines      B. had made headlines  
C. have done headlines      D. did headlines
35. If we didn't \_\_\_\_\_ any measures to protect whales, they would disappear forever.  
A. use      B. make      C. take      D. do

36. People who take on a second job inevitably \_\_\_\_\_ themselves to greater stress.  
A. offer                      B. subject                      C. field                      D. place
37. It is the \_\_\_\_\_ of stupidity to go walking in the mountains in this weather.  
A. height                      B. depth                      C. source                      D. matter
38. Both universities speak \_\_\_\_\_ of the programme of student exchange and hope to cooperate more in the future.  
A. highly                      B. largely                      C. strongly                      D. widely
39. We were all in a \_\_\_\_\_ mood because the weather was good and we were going on holiday the next day.  
A. bad                      B. well                      C. excellent                      D. good
40. With this type of insurance, you're buying \_\_\_\_\_ of mind.  
A. peace                      B. satisfaction                      C. calmness                      D. contentment
41. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me a lift into town?  
A. give                      B. get                      C. do                      D. make
42. The players' protests \_\_\_\_\_ no difference to the referee's decision at all.  
A. did                      B. made                      C. caused                      D. created
43. In a formal interview, it is essential to maintain good eye \_\_\_\_\_ with the interviewers.  
A. link                      B. connection                      C. touch                      D. contact
44. It was no accident that he broke my glasses. He did it \_\_\_\_\_ purpose.  
A. with                      B. on                      C. by                      D. about
45. I read the contract again and again \_\_\_\_\_ avoiding making spelling mistakes.  
A. in terms of                      B. by means of                      C. with a view to                      D. in view of
46. Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ a word of this to anyone else, it's highly confidential.  
A. speak                      B. pass                      C. mutter                      D. breathe
47. My advice is that you get straight to the point in the next report.  
A. If I were you, I would go straight to the bush in the next report.  
B. If I were you, I would have the next report got started.  
C. If I were you, I would not beat around the bush in the next report.  
D. If I were you, I would not point out the next report.
48. "How was your exam?" "A couple of questions were tricky, but on the \_\_\_\_\_ it was pretty easy."  
A. spot                      B. general                      C. hand                      D. whole
49. If you practice regularly, you can learn this language skill in short \_\_\_\_\_ of a time.  
A. period                      B. aspect                      C. arrangement                      D. activity
50. Students can \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of information just by taking an active part in class.  
A. concern                      B. install                      C. appear                      D. memorize
51. A few years ago, a fire \_\_\_\_\_ much of an overcrowded part of the city.  
A. battled                      B. devastated                      C. mopped                      D. developed
52. I have learned a lot about the value of labour from my \_\_\_\_\_ at home.  
A. credit                      B. energy                      C. chores                      D. pot plants
53. Although he tried to hide it, it was \_\_\_\_\_ that Peter didn't like his birthday present.  
A. foolish                      B. basic                      C. obvious                      D. vigorous
54. Environmental groups try to stop farmers from using harmful \_\_\_\_\_ on their crops.  
A. economy                      B. agriculture                      C. investments                      D. chemicals
55. If you \_\_\_\_\_ too much on study, you will get tired and stressed.  
A. concentrate                      B. develop                      C. organize                      D. complain
56. Good health and methods of study are very necessary, or \_\_\_\_\_ for success in college.

- A. available                      B. dependable                      C. essential                      D. efficient
57. In order to \_\_\_\_\_ their goals in college, students need to invest the maximum amount of time, money, and energy in their studies.  
A. manage                      B. catch                      C. establish                      D. achieve
58. Before choosing a job, you should take into consideration several \_\_\_\_\_ including the supply and demand for professionals in any particular field.  
A. turns                      B. factors                      C. remarks                      D. sides
59. The deadline is coming, and we still have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ problems.  
A. unsolving                      B. unsolved                      C. insolved                      D. solving
60. He received a medal in \_\_\_\_\_ to his bravery.  
A. turns                      B. response                      C. favour                      D. reward
61. He left the country \_\_\_\_\_ arrest of he returned.  
A. in fear that                      B. with fear of                      C. under threat of                      D. with threat of
62. When you consider all the advantages you've gained I think you'll admit you had a good \_\_\_\_\_ for your money.  
A. run                      B. way                      C. earn                      D. drive
63. In a modern family the husband is expected to join hands with his wife to \_\_\_\_\_ the household chores.  
A. do                      B. make                      C. run                      D. take
64. While everyone else in this class prefers working in groups, Alice likes working \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. on her own                      B. of her own                      C. on herself                      D. in herself
65. Foreign students who are \_\_\_\_\_ a decision about which school to attend may not know exactly where the choices are located.  
A. doing                      B. making                      C. taking                      D. having
66. Since he failed his exam, he had to \_\_\_\_\_ for it again.  
A. pass                      B. make                      C. take                      D. sit
67. It is very important for a firm or a company to keep \_\_\_\_\_ the changes in the market.  
A. pace of                      B. track about                      C. touch with                      D. up with
68. My brother left his job last week because he did not have any \_\_\_\_\_ to travel.  
A. position                      B. chance                      C. ability                      D. location
69. I haven't read any medical books or articles on the subject for a long time, so I'm \_\_\_\_\_ with recent developments.  
A. out of reach                      B. out of the condition  
C. out of touch                      D. out of the question
70. I get quite depressed when I think about the damage we are \_\_\_\_\_ to the environment.  
A. having                      B. taking                      C. making                      D. causing
71. I am glad that we see eye to eye on the matter of the conference location.  
A. dislike                      B. agree                      C. disagree                      D. approve
72. Make sure you \_\_\_\_\_ us a visit when you are in town again.  
A. pay                      B. have                      C. give                      D. do
73. I used to run a mile before breakfast but now I am \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. not used to it                      B. no longer practice it  
C. out of practice                      D. out of the habit
74. The government is determined to \_\_\_\_\_ terrorism.  
A. put the stop to                      B. put stop to                      C. put stops to                      D. put a stop to
75. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ our brain for a moment? I can't do this crossword by myself.  
A. use                      B. have                      C. mind                      D. pick



76. We are going to build a fence around the field with \_\_\_\_\_ to breeding sheep and cattle.  
A. a goal                      B. an outlook                      C. a reason                      D. a view
77. She's \_\_\_\_\_ her word and decided not to give me the job after all.  
A. gone back on                      B. gone on at                      C. gone out into                      D. gone in for
78. As he made no \_\_\_\_\_ to our quarrel, I assumed he had forgiven me.  
A. statement                      B. mention                      C. reference                      D. comment
79. She complained that her difficult husband never \_\_\_\_\_ her any compliments.  
A. expressed                      B. accepted                      C. recognised                      D. paid
80. : She clearly joined the firm with a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ to improving herself professionally.  
A. purpose                      B. aim                      C. view                      D. ambition
81. Both writing and speech require context to \_\_\_\_\_ of what might formally be ambiguous.  
A. makes sense                      B. grasps                      C. comprehends                      D. understands
82. Despite all the interruptions from his company, he \_\_\_\_\_ with his project.  
A. held on                      B. pressed ahead                      C. stuck at                      D. hung out
83. Geometry is the branch of mathematics \_\_\_\_\_ the properties and relation of lines, angles, shapes, surfaces and solids.  
A. is concerned with                      B. dealing with                      C. copes with                      D. to be concerned about
84. You are not allowed to drive the influence \_\_\_\_\_ alcohol.  
A. under/of                      B. in/of                      C. under/by                      D. by/in
85. The education system stands no \_\_\_\_\_ with that in many Asian countries.  
A. relation                      B. comparison                      C. competition                      D. impact
86. The speaker reiterated the main points he was trying to get \_\_\_\_\_ to the audience.  
A. around                      B. in                      C. across                      D. out
87. Poor management brought the company to \_\_\_\_\_ of collapse.  
A. the wall                      B. the foot                      C. the ring                      D. the brink
88. A sudden idea \_\_\_\_\_ to the cyclist that he might try the new method.  
A. occurred                      B. happened                      C. took place                      D. took part
89. My cousin was nervous about being interviewed on television, but she rose to the \_\_\_\_\_ wonderfully.  
A. event                      B. performance                      C. incident                      D. occasion
90. This latest injury must surely mean that her tennis career is now at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. completion                      B. stop                      C. end                      D. finishing
91. - \_\_\_\_\_ exception \_\_\_\_\_ the little baby, everybody in my family has to jog every morning.  
A. With/of                      B. With/to                      C. In/of                      D. By/on
92. The movie needs some big \_\_\_\_\_ in it, if it's going to be successful.  
A. firms                      B. advertisements                      C. names                      D. money
93. The Senator's opinion carries a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in Congress.  
A. encouragement                      B. control                      C. mood                      D. weight
94. The company has made the final decision to make 800 employees compulsorily \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. bored                      B. redundant                      C. disappointed                      D. homeless
95. He doesn't speak much Japanese but he can make himself \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. understood                      B. understand                      C. understanding                      D. misunderstand
96. The factories are staying open all weekend to try to \_\_\_\_\_ the consumer demand for this product  
A. satisfy                      B. fulfill                      C. meet                      D. A, B, & C are correct

97. She took \_\_\_\_\_ advantage of the children's absence to tidy their rooms.  
 A. finishing                      B. full                                      C. unfair                                      D. dishonest
98. Don't get so nervous about his coming late. When you get to know him better, you'll learn to take it \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. amiss                              B. fine                                      C. easy                                      D. nice
99. The prime minister's speech \_\_\_\_\_ a clear determination to break the power of the unions.  
 A. carried                              B. let out                                      C. revealed                                      D. operated
100. Andy's going through a \_\_\_\_\_ patch at the moment - his wife has passed away because of cancer.  
 A. boring                              C. lucky                                      B. rough                                      D. advantageous

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

1. We're having terrible weather for our holiday. I just can't **put up with** it for much longer.  
 A. display                              B. suggest                                      C. postpone                                      D. tolerate
2. There is **bound** to be a serious energy crisis in the next century.  
 A. likely                                      B. certainly                                      C. forced                                      D. sure
3. Being **out of work** and having two young children they found it impossible to make ends meet  
 A. hard-working                      B. impoverished                              C. employed                                      D. unemployed
4. It's not easy to **make ends meet** with a big family, but somehow we manage.  
 A. use as a replacement for something missing, lost, or lacking  
 B. have enough money to buy what you need to live  
 C. forgive someone and be friendly with them again  
 D. put something together from several different things
5. The training has **got me ready** to deal with any medical issue.  
 A. prepared me for                                      B. been designed for me  
 C. helped me                                      D. required me
6. She's always **taking the mickey out** of the managers, she's got no respect for them at all.  
 A. flattering                              B. insulting                                      C. making fun of                                      D. criticizing
7. Over half his speech was **devoted to the issue** of saving Social Security.  
 A. presented to                              B. dominated to                                      C. dedicated to                                      D. donated to
8. I read the article **over and over again** till it made sense.  
 A. quickly                                      B. in detail                                      C. a few times                                      D. repeatedly
9. Clovis **was on good terms with the bishops** in his kingdom.  
 A. was connected with                                      B. got on well with  
 C. went along with                                      D. was similar to

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

1. Sarah and I **coincidentally** reserved the rooms in the same hotel. She was really surprised to see me there.  
 A. by chance                              B. accidentally                                      C. unintentionally                                      D. deliberately
2. The new hairdryer does not **abide by** British safety standard.  
 A. follow                                      B. violate                                      C. obey                                      D. make use of
3. They all have to follow the rules, and none of them is **above the law**.  
 A. over the law                              B. beyond the law                                      C. within the law                                      D. outside the law
4. The things she said **were in disagreement** with the teacher or another member of the class at all times.  
 A. disapproved                              B. concurred                                      C. were different                                      D. became familiar



### I. ĐƯA RA MỘT KHÁI NIỆM VỀ CÁC TỪ DỄ GÂY NHẦM LẪN.

- Trong tiếng anh có nhiều cặp từ **gần giống nhau** và người học thường hay dùng nhầm giữa các cặp từ này. Vì vậy khi làm bài tập dạng lỗi sai cần chú ý. Những bạn giỏi phải đọc kỹ để nắm cách dùng từng từ. Những bạn **không** khá giỏi chỉ cần đọc và biết các cặp hay nhầm này và chỉ cần khoanh khi gặp chúng trong làm bài **Sửa lỗi sai**

### II. BẢNG PHÂN BIỆT CÁC TỪ GÂY NHẦM LẪN THƯỜNG GẶP.

STT	TỪ DỄ NHẦM	NGHĨA
1	Uninterested /ʌn'ɪntərestɪd/(a)	Lãnh đạm, thờ ơ, không quan tâm, không chú ý, không để ý
	Disinterested /dɪ'sɪntərəstɪd/(a)	Vô tư, không vụ lợi, không cầu lợi
2	Formally /'fɔ:məli/(adv)	(một cách) chính thức
	Formerly /'fɔ:məli/(adv)	Trước đây
3	Considerable /kən'sɪdərəbl/(a)	Rất lớn, to tát, đáng kể
	Considerate /kən'sɪdərət/(a)	Ân cần, chu đáo; cẩn thận, thận trọng
4	Appreciable /ə'pri:ʃəbl/(a)	Có thể đánh giá, thấy rõ được; đáng kể
	Appreciative /ə'pri:ʃətɪv/(a)	Biết thưởng thức, biết ơn
5	Forgettable /fə'getəbl/(a)	Có thể quên được
	Forgetful /fə'getfl/(a)	Hay quên
6	Expectation /,ekspek'teɪʃn/(n)	Sự trông chờ, sự hy vọng (của một người)
	Expectancy /ɪk'spektənsi/(n)	Sự chờ mong, hy vọng (thường liên quan đến khoảng thời gian được dự kiến để điều gì diễn ra)
7	Respectable /rɪ'spektəbl/(a)	Đáng kính trọng; đứng đắn, đàng hoàng; khá lớn, đáng kể
	Respective /rɪ'spektɪv/(a)	Riêng của mỗi người/vật; tương ứng
	Respectful /rɪ'spektfl/(a)	Thể hiện sự tôn trọng, tôn kính, lễ phép
8	Comprehensible /,kɒmprɪ'hensəbl/(a)	Có thể hiểu được, có thể lĩnh ngộ
	Comprehensive /,kɒmprɪ'hensɪv/(a)	Bao quát, toàn diện
9	Beneficent /bə'nefɪsənt/(a)	Hay làm phúc, hay làm việc thiện
	Beneficial /,benɪ'fɪʃl/(a)	Có ích, có lợi
10	Complimentary /,kɒmplɪ'mentəri/(a)	Ca ngợi, mời, biếu
	Complementary /,kɒmplɪ'mentəri/(a)	Bổ sung, bù
11	Farther /'fɑ:ðə(r)/(a)	Xa hơn (thường để chỉ khoảng cách vật lý)
	Further /'fɜ:ðə(r)/(a)	Xa hơn (dùng để chỉ khoảng cách vật lý cũng như khoảng cách khác như không gian, thời

		gian; có thể chỉ mức độ); thêm vào đó
12	Sensible /'sensəbl/(a)	Biết điều, hợp lý, nhận thấy
	Sensitive /'sensitiv/(a)	Nhạy cảm, dễ bị tổn thương, truyền cảm, thông cảm
13	Responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/(a)	Chịu trách nhiệm; đáng tin cậy
	Responsive /rɪ'spɒnsɪv/(a)	Đáp lại, phản ứng nhanh nhẹn
14	Successful /sək'sesfl/(a)	Thành công
	Successive /sək'sesɪv/(a)	Liên tiếp, kế tiếp
15	Classical /'klæsɪkl/(a)	Cổ điển, thuộc về truyền thống lâu đời
	Classic /'klæsɪk/(a)	Kinh điển
16	Deadly /'dedli/(a)	Chết người; cực kỳ, hết sức
	Deathly /'deθli/(a)	Như chết
17	Continual /kən'tɪnjuəl/(a)	Liên tục nhưng có ngắt quãng
	Continuous /kən'tɪnjuəs/(a)	Liên tục, không ngừng
18	Economical /,i:kə'nɒmɪkl/(a)	Tiết kiệm (thời gian, tiền,...)
	Economic /,i:kə'nɒmɪk/(a)	Thuộc về kinh tế
19	Specifically /spə'sɪfɪkli/(adv)	Đặc biệt (dùng để chỉ một việc gì đó được thực hiện vì một mục đích đặc biệt nào đó)
	Especially /ɪ'speʃəli/(adv)	Đặc biệt (dùng để chỉ một điều gì đó mà bạn nói đến có sự đặc biệt nhiều hơn thứ khác)
20	Terrible /'terəbl/(a)	Khủng khiếp, rất tồi, rất chán, không ra gì
	Terrific /tə'rɪfɪk/(a)	Tuyệt vời
21	Favourite /'feɪvərɪt/(a)	Được yêu thích, yêu thích nhất
	Favourable /'feɪvərəbl/(a)	Thuận lợi, tỏ ý tán thành
22	Awful /'ɔ:ful/(a)	Đáng sợ, khủng khiếp, mang tính tiêu cực
	Awesome /'ɔ:səm/(a)	Đáng kính sợ (miêu tả sự ngạc nhiên, thú vị, mang tính tích cực)
23	Historical /hɪ'stɔ:rikl/(a)	Thuộc lịch sử (thường mô tả cái gì đó liên quan đến quá khứ hoặc việc nghiên cứu lịch sử hay cái gì đó được thực hiện ở quá khứ)
	Historic /hɪ'stɔ:ri:k/(a)	Có tính chất lịch sử (thường được dùng để miêu tả cái gì đó rất quan trọng đến độ người ta phải ghi nhớ nó)
24	Imaginary /ɪ'mædʒɪnəri/(a)	Tưởng tượng
	Imaginative /ɪ'mædʒɪnətɪv/(a)	Giàu trí tưởng tượng
	Imaginable /ɪ'mædʒɪnəbl/(a)	Có thể tưởng tượng được
25	Restful /'restfl/(a)	Tạo không khí nghỉ ngơi thoải mái, yên tĩnh
	Restless /'restləs/(a)	Luôn luôn động đậy, không yên, bồn chồn



26	Industrial /ɪnˈdʌstriəl/(a)	Thuộc công nghiệp
	Industrious /ɪnˈdʌstriəs/(a)	Cần cù, siêng năng
27	Dependent /dɪˈpendənt/(a)	Dựa vào, ỷ lại, phụ thuộc
	Dependable /dɪˈpendəbl/(a)	Có thể tin cậy được
28	Every day(adv)	Mỗi ngày (trong một thời kỳ, giai đoạn), rất thường xuyên
	Everyday(a)	Thông thường, lệ thường, hằng ngày
29	Effective /ɪˈfektɪv/(a)	Có hiệu quả (được dùng để nói về việc tạo ra/đạt được kết quả như mong muốn)
	Efficient /ɪˈfɪʃnt/(a)	Có hiệu suất cao (máy móc cao), năng suất cao (con người), dùng để chỉ cách làm việc tốt mà không phí thời gian, công sức, tiền bạc
30	Principle /ˈprɪnsəpl/(a)	Nguyên lý, nguyên tắc
	Principal /ˈprɪnsəpl/(a)	Chính, chủ yếu
31	Later /ˈleɪtər/(adv)	Sau này, một thời điểm ở tương lai
	Latter /ˈlætər/(n)	Cái sau, người sau (trong số 2 người)
32	Illicit /ɪˈlɪsɪt/(a)	Trái phép, lậu, vụng trộm
	Elicit /ɪˈlɪsɪt/(v)	Mòi ra
33	Entrance /ˈentrəns/(n)	Lối vào, cửa vào; quyền, khả năng của ai để đi vào nơi nào
	Entry /ˈentri/(n)	Sự đi vào; quá trình người/vật trở thành một phần của cái gì đó
34	Drastically /ˈdræstɪkli/(adv)	Một cách mạnh mẽ, quyết liệt
	Dramatically /drəˈmætɪkli/(adv)	Đột ngột
35	Package /ˈpækɪdʒ/(n)	Gói đồ, kiện hàng, hộp để đóng hàng
	Packaging /ˈpækɪdʒɪŋ/(n)	Bao bì
36	Percent /pəˈsent/(n)	Phần trăm
	Percentage /pəˈsentɪdʒ/(n)	Tỷ lệ phần trăm
37	Desert /ˈdezət/(n)	Rời đi, bỏ đi; sa mạc
	Dessert /dɪˈzɜ:t/(n)	Món tráng miệng
38	Felicitate /fəˈlɪsɪteɪt/(v)	Khen ngợi, chúc mừng
	Facilitate /fəˈsɪlɪteɪt/(v)	Tạo điều kiện dễ dàng
39	Heroin /ˈherəʊɪn/(n)	Heroin, thuốc phiện
	Heroine /ˈherəʊɪn/(n)	Nữ anh hùng
40	Compliment /ˈkɒmplɪmənt/(n)	Lời khen ngợi, lời chúc mừng
	Complement /ˈkɒmplɪmənt/(n)	Phần bổ sung, số lượng cần thiết
41	Intensive /ɪnˈtensɪv/(a)	Tập trung, sâu, nhấn mạnh, cực kỳ kỹ lưỡng

	Extensive /ɪk'stensɪv/(a)	Rộng, rộng lớn
42	Foul /faʊl/(n)	Hôi, bẩn
	Error /'erə[r]/(n)	Sai sót, sai lầm
43	Sometime /'sʌmtaɪm/(adv)	Trước kia, nguyên
	Sometimes /'sʌmtaɪmz/(adv)	Đôi khi, đôi lúc
44	Beside /bɪ'saɪd/(prep)	Bên cạnh
	Besides /bɪ'saɪdz/(adv)	Ngoài ra, hơn nữa, và lại
45	Advisory /əd'vaɪzəri/(n)	Tư vấn
	Advisable /əd'vaɪzəbl/(n)	Nên, đáng theo; khôn ngoan
46	Suggested /sə'dʒestɪd/(a)	Được gợi ý
	Suggestible /sə'dʒestəbl/(a)	Dễ bị ảnh hưởng
47	Ingredient /ɪn'gri:diənt/(n)	Thành phần (thường trong đồ ăn)
	Component /kəm'pəʊnənt/(n)	Nhân tố cấu thành (thường dùng trong máy móc)
48	Wound /wu:nd/(v)	bị thương trong 1 cuộc chiến, đánh nhau (bị thương bởi súng, dao, hoặc vật gì đó)
	Injure /'ɪndʒə(r)/(v)	Bị thương vì tai nạn
49	Confident /'kɒnfɪdənt/(a)	Tin tưởng, tin, tự tin
	Confidential /,kɒnfɪ'denʃl/(a)	Kín, mật
50	Invent /ɪn'vent/(v)	Phát minh, sáng chế
	Discover /dɪs'kʌvə(r)/(v)	Phát hiện, tìm ra, khám phá
51	Ignore /ɪg'nɔ:r/(v)	Làm ngơ, bỏ qua, không chú ý tới
	Neglect /nɪ'glekt/(v)	Không quan tâm, lơ là
52	Found /faʊnd/(v)	Thành lập, sáng lập
	Found /faʊnd/(v)	Quá khứ đơn và quá khứ phân từ của động từ "find"
53	Lie - lied - lied(v)	Nói dối (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ)
	Lie - lay - lain(v)	Nằm xuống (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ)
	Lay - laid - laid(v)	Để, đặt cái gì (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ)
54	Prolong /prə'lɒŋ/(v)	Kéo dài (ngoại động từ)
	Last /lɑ:st/(v)	Kéo dài (nội động từ)
55	Drop /drɒp/(v)	Rơi, nhảy xuống, giảm xuống (nhiệt độ, gió, mực nước,...)
	Reduce /rɪ'dju:s/(v)	Giảm, hạ (ngoại động từ)
56	Rise /raɪz/(v)	Gia tăng về số lượng (là nội động từ)

	Raise /reɪz/(v)	Gia tăng, nâng một cái gì từ vị trí thấp lên vị trí cao hơn (là ngoại động từ)
57	Finally /'fainəli/(adv)	Cuối cùng, để kết luận( được dùng để giới thiệu một điểm, một mục cuối cùng hay hỏi một câu sau cùng)
	Eventually /ɪ'ventʃəli/(adv)	Rốt cuộc, cuối cùng (để nói về những gì xảy ra trong giai đoạn cuối của một loạt sự kiện, và thường là kết quả của chúng)
58	A while	Một khoảng thời gian (cụm danh từ)
	Awhile /ə'waɪl/	Một lát, một chốc (phó từ)
59	Reward /rɪ'wɔ:d/(n)	Phần thưởng, thưởng (dùng để đền bù hay công nhận sự nỗ lực, sự đóng góp, sự vất vả của một cá nhân; dưới hình thức tiền hay được thăng chức)
	Award /ə'wɔ:d/(n)	Trao thưởng, giải thưởng (dùng để trao trong những dịp quan trọng, một minh chứng thành tích, sự xuất sắc của một cá nhân và được hội đồng thông qua, thường dưới hình thức huy chương, giấy chứng nhận, danh hiệu, cúp,...)
60	Forget /fə'get/(v)	Quên, bỏ quên
	Leave /li:v/(v)	Bỏ lại, để lại, bỏ quên (ở một nơi nào đó, có địa điểm cụ thể)
61	Persuade /pə'sweɪd/(v)	Thuyết phục ai đó làm gì vì hợp lý
	Convince /kən'vɪns/(v)	Thuyết phục ai tin vào điều gì đó
62	Expand /ɪk'spænd/(v)	(Làm cho) trở nên lớn hơn về kích cỡ, số lượng, hoặc tầm quan trọng
	Extend /ɪk'stend/(v)	Làm cho cái gì đó dài ra hơn, thêm rộng hơn, lớn hơn. (thường là nghĩa đen, như cái nhà, cái hàng rào, con đường, hay một khu vực,...); kéo dài hiệu lực
63	Assurance /ə'ʃʊ:rəns/(n)	Được dùng để chỉ “bảo hiểm nhân mạng” (life assurance). Khi tham gia hệ thống bảo hiểm này, bạn đều đặn nộp tiền cho công ty bảo hiểm. Khi bạn qua đời, thân nhân của bạn sẽ lĩnh được một số tiền.
	Insurance /ɪn'ʃʊ:rəns/(n)	Hợp đồng do một công ty hoặc tổ chức xã hội, hoặc nhà nước làm để đảm bảo đền bù, mất mát, thiệt hại, ốm đau,... bằng việc bạn đóng tiền thường kỳ.
64	Stationary /'steɪʃənəri/(a)	Đứng yên, để một chỗ, không thay đổi

	Stationery /'steɪʃnəri/(n)	Văn phòng phẩm
65	Immigrate /'ɪmɪgrənt/(v)	Nhập cư
	Migrate /maɪ'greɪt/(v)	Di trú (người, chim)
66	Poster /'pəʊstə(r)/(n)	Áp phích lớn, tờ quảng cáo lớn
	Porter /'pɔ:tə(r)/(n)	Công nhân khuân vác, người trực ở cổng
67	Drought /draʊt/(n)	Hạn hán
	Draught /dra:ft/(n)	Gió lùa
68	Unnecessary /ʌn'nesəsəri/(a)	Không cần thiết (thừa), không có lý do, vô cớ
	Needless /'ni:dləs/(a)	Không cần thiết
69	Shadow /'ʃædəʊ/(n)	Bóng của người hay vật
	Shade /ʃeɪd/(n)	Bóng mát, bóng râm
70	Sink /sɪŋk/(v)	Chìm (áp dụng cho cả người, động vật và đồ vật)
	Drown /draʊn/(v)	Chết đuối, chết chìm ( dùng khi nói về sinh vật).
71	Lend /lend/(v)	Cho mượn, cho vay
	Borrow /'bɒrəʊ/(v)	Vay, mượn từ ai
72	Mend /mend/(v)	Thường được sử dụng để diễn tả sự sửa chữa trên những chất liệu mềm, những vật liệu hữu cơ để sửa chữa hoặc những sự vật hiện tượng mang tính tinh thần
	Repair /rɪ'peər/(v)	Dùng khi một phần nào đó của một vật hoặc hệ thống cần được sửa chữa
73	Disuse /dɪs'ju:s/(v)	Sự bỏ không dùng đến
	Misuse /mɪs'ju:z/(v)	Dùng sai
74	Recognize /'rekəɡnaɪz/(v)	Nhận diện (bằng việc nhìn bằng mắt), phân biệt, nhận ra ai đó
	Realize /'ri:əlaɪz/(v)	Cảm nhận, nhận biết, nhận thức được, hiểu ra
75	Climate /'klaɪmət/ (n)	Khí hậu, miền khí hậu
	Climax /'klaɪməks/ (n)	Cực điểm, tột đỉnh
76	Satisfying /'sætɪsfamɪ/ (a)	Làm hài lòng, làm thoả mãn (nói về một việc/đồ vật nào đó đáp ứng được nhu cầu và yêu cầu của bạn và quan trọng nhất là cảm giác của bạn khi làm việc/dùng vật đó. Bạn thấy hoàn toàn thỏa mãn/hài lòng).
	Satisfactory /,sætɪs'fæktəri/ (a)	Vừa lòng, vừa ý; thoả mãn (chỉ một việc/vật nào đó khi mức độ hài lòng của người nói đối với việc/đồ vật đó chỉ dừng ở mức tạm chấp nhận được, họ không có gì để than



		phiền nhưng cũng không thích thú gì với việc/vật đó).
77	Sacred /'seɪkrɪd/ (a)	Thần thánh, thiêng liêng
	Scared /skeəd/ (a)	Bị hoảng sợ
78	Doggy /'dɒgi/ (n)	Chó má, khốn nạn
	Dogged /'dɒɡɪd/ (a)	Bền bỉ, ngoan cường
79	Application /,æplɪ'keɪʃən/ (n)	Lời xin, đơn xin, sự áp dụng
	Applicant /'æpləkənt/ (n)	Người xin việc
80	Employer /ɪm'plɔɪər/ (n)	Ông chủ
	Employee /ɪm'plɔɪi/ (n)	Người làm công
81	Ingenious /ɪn'dʒiːniəs/ (a)	Tài tình, khéo léo
	Ingenuous /ɪn'dʒenjuəs/ (a)	Chân thật, ngây thơ
82	Enquiry /'ɪnkwəri/ (n)	Sự đặt câu hỏi, sự thăm vấn (một yêu cầu đối với sự thật, sự hiểu biết, thông tin)
	Inquiry /ɪn'kwɪəri/ (n)	Điều tra về một cái gì đó
83	Direction /daɪ'rekʃən/ (n)	Chỉ dẫn (dùng cho việc tìm hướng)
	Instruction /ɪn'strʌkʃən/ (n)	Chỉ dẫn (thông tin về cách làm việc gì đó)
84	Magic /'mædʒɪk/ (n) (a)	Ma thuật, phép thần thông, sức lôi cuốn, khi là tính từ "magic" dùng trong vai trò làm thuộc ngữ, đứng trước danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa "magic" thường dùng nghĩa đen và một số cụm từ nhất định
	Magical /'mædʒɪkəl/ (a)	Kỳ diệu, liên quan đến phép thuật, ma thuật, được dùng trong cả vai trò vị ngữ và bổ ngữ
85	Permissive /pə'mɪsɪv/ (a)	Dễ dãi (nhất là với trẻ em)
	Permissible /pə'mɪsəbəl/ (a)	Được cho phép, chấp nhận được
86	Humble /'hʌmbəl/ (a)	Khiêm tốn (vì cảm thấy mình thấp kém)
	Modest /'mɒdɪst/ (a)	Khiêm tốn (chỉ con người, cách cư xử không muốn khoe khoang)
87	Sociable /'səʊʃəbəl/ (a)	Hòa đồng, dễ gần gũi
	Social /'səʊʃəl/ (a)	Thuộc xã hội
88	Angle /'æŋɡəl/ (n)	Góc độ, góc cạnh
	Angel /'eɪndʒəl/ (n)	Thiên thần, thiên sứ
89	Dairy /'deəri/ (n)	Nơi làm bơ sữa, cửa hàng bơ sữa
	Diary /'daɪəri/ (n)	Nhật ký
90	Devise /dɪ'vaɪz/ (v)	Nghĩ ra, dặt ra, sáng chế
	Device /dɪ'vaɪs/ (n)	Thiết bị, dụng cụ
91	Noisy /'nɔɪzi/ (a)	Ồn ào, làm ồn, ầm ĩ



	Noisome /'nɔɪsəm/ (a)	Khó chịu, hôi thối, ghê tởm
92	Prosecute /'prɒsɪkjʊ:t/ (v)	Truy tố, tiếp tục, theo đuổi
	Persecute /'pɜːsɪkjʊ:t/ (v)	Làm khổ, quấy rối
93	Practicable /'præktɪkəbəl/ (a)	Làm được, khả thi
	Practical /'præktɪkəl/ (a)	Thực tế; thiết thực, có ích
94	Reality /ri'æləti/ (n)	Sự thực, thực tế
	Realty /'riəlti/ (n)	Bất động sản
95	Residence /'rezɪdəns/ (n)	Sự ở, sự cư trú, nhà ở
	Resident /'rezɪdənt/ (n)	Cư dân
96	Moral /'mɒrəl/ (a)	Thuộc đạo đức, thuộc luân lý, có đạo đức
	Morale /mə'reɪl/ (n)	Tinh thần, chí khí; nhuệ khí
97	Morning /'mɔːrnɪŋ/ (n)	Buổi sáng, sáng
	Mourning /'mɔːrnɪŋ/ (n)	Sự đau buồn, tang, đồ tang
98	Pretty /'prɪti/ (a)	Xinh xắn, hay, tốt
	Petty /'peti/ (a)	Nhỏ, vặt, không quan trọng
99	Marital /'merɪtəl/ (a)	Thuộc chồng, thuộc vợ, thuộc hôn nhân
	Martial /'mɑːrɪəl/ (a)	Thuộc quân sự, thuộc chiến tranh
100	Access /'ækses/ (n)	Lối vào, cửa vào, sự đến gần
	Excess /'ekses/ (n)	Sự quá mức, sự thái quá
101	Affect /ə'fekt/ (v)	Ảnh hưởng đến, tác động đến
	Effect /ɪ'fekt/ (n)	Tác động, ảnh hưởng
102	Adopt /ə'dɒpt/ (v)	Chấp nhận, nhận làm con nuôi
	Adapt /ə'dæpt/ (v)	Thích nghi với
103	Proceed /prə'siːd/ (v)	Tiến lên, tiếp tục làm; hành động
	Precede /pri'siːd/ (v)	Đi trước, đến trước
104	Diploma /dɪ'plɒmə/ (n)	<b>Chứng chỉ</b> do các trường đại học, cao đẳng và trường kỹ thuật cấp. Thời gian học khoảng hai năm, hệ trung cấp. Có thời gian ngắn hơn vì chỉ tập trung vào học một môn/ngành nghề.
	Degree /dɪ'ɡriː/ (n)	<b>Bằng đại học</b> và các loại bằng sau đại học (bằng cử nhân, thạc sĩ, tiến sĩ)
	Certificate /sə'tɪfɪkət/ (n)	<b>Giấy chứng nhận</b> do các trường cao đẳng và trường kỹ thuật cấp. Thời gian học từng ngành nghề (từng khoá học riêng lẻ) khoảng vài tháng đến dưới 1 năm. Ngoài ra, giấy chứng nhận "certificate" còn là một chứng từ chính thức cho biết thông tin trên đó là đúng/thật, như: a birth certificate (giấy khai

		sinh), a marriage certificate (giấy kết hôn), a death certificate (giấy báo tử), etc.
105	Exhaustive /ɪg'zɔ:stɪv/ (a)	Thấu đáo, toàn diện
	Exhausted /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ (a)	Kiệt sức, mệt lử
106	Neglected /nɪ'glectɪd/ (a)	Cẩu thả, xuềnh xoàng, bỏ bê
	Neglectful /nɪ'glectfəl/ (a)	Sao lãng, lơ là
	Negligible /'neglɪdʒəbəl/ (a)	Không đáng kể
107	Litter /'lɪtə/ (n)	Rác thải mà mọi người vứt bừa bãi, không đúng nơi quy định.
	Sewage /'su:ɪdʒ/ (n)	Nước thải, chất thải
	Garbage /'gɑ:rbɪdʒ/ (n)	Rác trong nhà bếp, thường là "wet wastes", ví dụ như đồ ăn đã bị hỏng hoặc bỏ đi.
108	Patient /'peɪʃənt/ (a) (n)	Kiên nhẫn, nhẫn nại; bệnh nhân
	Patience /'peɪʃəns/ (n)	Tính kiên nhẫn, tính nhẫn nại
109	Action /'ækʃən/ (n)	Hành động, động tác (chỉ những chuyển động vật lý (physical movement) của cơ thể con người, chứ không phải là 'speak' không, mà đã chuyển thành 'action', action thường không phải dưới một hoàn cảnh nào như behaviour mà nó nhấn mạnh vào sự thực hiện hành động)
	Activity /æk'tɪvəti/ (n)	Hoạt động (chỉ những tình huống mà có nhiều người cùng tham gia vào làm gì đó hoặc một nhóm các hoạt động chung; Chỉ những hoạt động nhằm hướng vào mục đích nào đó, đem lại niềm vui, giải trí)
110	Recreation /,rekri'eɪʃən/ (n)	Sự giải lao, trò giải lao, tiêu khiển
	Creation /kri'eɪʃən/ (n)	Sự sáng tạo, tạo ra
111	Advertisement /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/ (n)	Sự quảng cáo, mục quảng cáo
	Advertising /'ædvətaɪzɪŋ/ (n)	Nghề quảng cáo, công việc quảng cáo
112	Conservation /,kɒnsə'veɪʃən/ (n)	Sự bảo tồn, giữ gìn
	Conversation /,kɒnvə'seɪʃən/ (n)	Cuộc nói chuyện
113	Solve /sɒlv/ (v)	Giải quyết vấn đề, tình huống khó khăn (bằng cách tìm ra giải pháp)
	Resolve /rɪ'zɒlv/ (v)	Giải quyết vấn đề quan trọng, xung đột có liên quan đến nhiều người (bằng cách kết thúc vấn đề đó)
114	Fee /fi:/ (n)	Phí trả (cho việc sử dụng một dịch vụ đặc thù như học phí, phí đăng ký xe máy, các loại dịch vụ pháp lý như phí thuê luật sư,...)
	Fare /feə/ (n)	Phí trả (cho việc di chuyển, sử dụng phương

		tiện giao thông như tàu xe)
115	Salary /'sæləri/ (n)	Tiền lương (là số tiền cố định được nhận hàng tháng, hàng năm, không thay đổi dựa trên số giờ làm việc)
	Wage /weɪdʒ/ (n)	Tiền công (là số tiền được trả hàng tuần hoặc theo từng ngày dựa vào số tiền làm theo giờ, ngày hoặc tuần hoặc thỏa thuận dựa trên dịch vụ nào đó)
116	Celebration /,selə'breɪʃən/ (n)	Sự kỷ niệm, lễ kỷ niệm
	Celebrity /sə'lebrəti/ (n)	Người nổi tiếng
117	Numerate /'nju:mərət/ (a)	Có kiến thức toán học
	Numerous /'nju:mərəs/ (a)	Rất nhiều, rất đông
118	Reliant /rɪ'laɪənt/ (a)	Phụ thuộc vào, dựa dẫm vào ai
	Reliable /rɪ'laɪəbəl/ (a)	Đáng tin cậy
119	Relation /rɪ'leɪʃən/ (n)	Mối quan hệ, mối tương quan; giao thiệp (giữa hai người, hai nước,...)
	Relationship /rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp/ (n)	Mối quan hệ (thân thiết giữa những người cụ thể như trong gia đình, cặp đôi, hàng xóm,...)
120	Initiative /ɪ'nɪʃətɪv/ (n)	Sáng kiến; sự khởi xướng
	Initial /ɪ'nɪʃəl/ (a)	Đầu, đầu tiên
121	Live /lɪv/ (v) (a)	Sống, hoạt động
	Lively /'laɪvli/ (a)	Sinh động; hoạt bát hăng hái
122	Addicted /ə'dɪktɪd/ (a)	Say mê, nghiện
	Addictive /ə'dɪktɪv/ (a)	Có tính gây nghiện
123	Hard /hɑ:d/ (a)	Cứng rắn; gian khổ; nghiêm khắc
	Hardly /'hɑ:dlɪ/ (adv)	Hầu như không

### III. THỰC HÀNH

#### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG CÁC TỪ GÂY NHẦM LẪN.

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- I dreaded the thought of going home and being.....by my father.  
A. scolded                      B. reproached                      C. told off                      D. tell off
- His family..... to Canada shortly after the war started, and has lived here ever since  
A. immigrated                      B. emigrated                      C. escaped                      D. fled
- On..... of his plight, a businessman offered him a job.  
A. watching                      B. listening                      C. hearing                      D. looking
- This summer has..... the end of water restrictions in the area thanks to a new reservoir.  
A. looked                      B. watched                      C. seen                      D. reviewed
- The experience.....him that Europe was on the brink of a revolution.  
A. claimed                      B. convinced                      C. allowed                      D. persuaded

6. Take that shirt off and.....a new one. You can't go out in such an old shirt.  
A. put on                      B. wear                      C. dress                      D. take on
7. The process of \_\_\_\_\_ Jackson from a talented teenager into a franchise player began in training camp.  
A. exchanging              B. transforming              C. altering                      D. converting
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ lay with the organizers, who failed to make the necessary arrangements for dealing with so many people.  
A. mistake                      B. foul                      C. fault                      D. Error
9. The law was .....so that profits from drug dealing could be seized by the government.  
A. mended                      B. amend                      C. amended                      D. mends
10. Greenpeace has been invited to..... the environmental costs of such on operation.  
A. appraise                      B. appraised                      C. apprise                      D. apprise
11. The company stands to..... financially if this deal falls through.  
A. lose                      B. loose                      C. get lost                      D. lack
12. More problems like those at the nuclear power plant are certain to.....  
A. rise                      B. raise                      C. rose                      D. arise
13. Dolphin sounds are unintelligible to humans, and cover a larger range of frequencies than we can hear or.....  
A. differentiate              B. differ                      C. difference                      D. different
14. The two universities are to .....in the development of a new industrial process.  
A. cooperate                      B. incorporate                      C. cooperation                      D. operate
15. Your duties will .....greeting visitors and directing them to the appropriate department  
A. comprise                      B. include                      C. contain                      D. consist of
16. He promised to all before a committee .of experts chosen by the board.  
A. bare                      B. bore                      C. bear                      D. beer
17. The government was, he said, prepared to .....and fund the work of researchers into the matter.  
A. facilitate                      B. felicitate                      C. facility                      D. faculty
18. The truck was so badly.....in the accident that it was barely worth repairing.  
A. broken                      B. crashed                      C. harmed                      D. damaged
19. It is wise to..... your property against storm damage.  
A. ensure                      B. insure                      C. assure                      D. reassure
20. Why do some people .....they know what other people think about something?  
A. assume                      B. think                      C. know                      D. ensure
21. ....in 1935 in Ohio, Alcoholics Anonymous is now a world-wide organization.  
A. Found                      B. Founded                      C. Find                      D. Finding
22. Don't tell her about the job until you know for sure - we don't want to..... her hopes. (= make her hope too much).  
A. lift                      B. rise                      C. arise                      D. raise
23. The two people \_\_\_\_\_ badminton seemed to be at it quite intensely.  
A. going                      B. playing                      C. doing                      D. practicing
24. \_\_\_\_\_ I said, I'm not interested in buying insurance at the moment.  
A. Like                      B. As                      C. similar                      D. alike
25. He put on a large hat and glasses as a disguise and hoped no one would \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. see                      B. recognize                      C. realize                      D. watch

26. You could always \_\_\_\_\_ a dress for the ball if you can't afford to buy one.  
A. hire                      B. rent                      C. employ                      D. take on
27. I'm having lunch with an old friend \_\_\_\_\_ next week.  
A. sometimes              B. occasionally              C. sometime                      D. often
28. Some musicians don't like to \_\_\_\_\_ rings when they're playing.  
A. wear                      B. dress                      C. put on                      D. clothe
29. Customs officers have seized \_\_\_\_\_ a ton of heroin destined for New York.  
A. mostly                      B. nearby                      C. near                      D. nearly
30. Do you think these two colours \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. match                      B. fit                      C. go with                      D. suit
31. This was my first trip on the ocean and my first \_\_\_\_\_ in a steamboat.  
A. excursion                      B. voyage                      C. expedition                      D. journey
32. When you've pinned the pattern onto the \_\_\_\_\_ you can start cutting out all the pieces.  
A. clothing                      B. costume                      C. cloth                      D. clothes
33. I could \_\_\_\_\_ someone calling my name.  
A. hear                      B. listen to                      C. overhear                      D. feel
34. The building was demolished before a crowd of nearly 200 \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. onlookers                      B. audiences                      C. viewers                      D. spectators
35. To them, acid rain and urban \_\_\_\_\_ are more immediate and urgent concerns than global warming.  
A. haze                      B. fog                      C. smog                      D. mist
36. Untreated \_\_\_\_\_ is being pumped into the sea, from where it pollutes our beaches.  
A. sewage                      B. litter                      C. rubbish                      D. garbage
37. Mexican farm workers \_\_\_\_\_ into the US each year to find work at harvest time and then return to their hometown.  
A. emigrate                      B. migrated                      C. drift                      D. move
38. A crowd had gathered \_\_\_\_\_ the scene of the accident.  
A. center                      B. surrounding                      C. around                      D. round
39. The \_\_\_\_\_ for the disaster was engine failure, not human error.  
A. origin                      B. excuse                      C. cause                      D. reason
40. The hounds had lost the \_\_\_\_\_ of the fox near the river.  
A. scent                      B. odor                      C. savour                      D. flavor

## II. Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences

1. In your capacity as a judge, you have to work with high concentration. You must make uninterested judgment.
2. The building was formally used as a bank, but it has been turned into a church recently.
3. A considerate amount of time and effort has gone into this exhibition.
4. I'm very appreciable of all the support you've given me.
5. Emotional problems, such as stress, anxiety, or depression, can make a person more forgettable.
6. Life expectation for both men and women has improved greatly in the past 20 years.
7. Everyone would go into the hall for assembly and then afterwards we'd go to our respectful classes
8. You should be more respectable of other people's points of view. Don't embarrass someone even if they are wrong.



9. This type of computer jargon is barely comprehensive to most people.
10. From our points of view, we do not see how these changes will be beneficent to the company.
11. She wasn't very complementary about your performance, was she?
12. We discussed the problem but we didn't get much farther in actually solving it.
13. I think the sensitive thing to do is call and ask for directions.
14. We must develop more rapid, responsible systems for dealing with online messages.
15. Our team won the trophy for the second successful season.
16. The novel is regarded as one of the classical works. I really love reading it in my free time.
17. Doctors fear possible epidemics of cholera, malaria, and other deadly diseases.
18. Recovery after the accident will be a continual process that may take several months.
19. With rents so high, it wasn't economic to continue to live in the city.
20. The newspaper, or more especially, the editor, was taken to court for publishing the photographs.
21. Most of these women are very poorly paid and work in terrific conditions.
22. An area with a favourite climate will inevitably be richer than one without.
23. It is awful to see these magnificent creatures in flight. I have never seen these things before.
24. You'll need to be a little more imaginable if you want to hold their attention.
25. Her suite of rooms was cool and restless and there was a small balcony beyond the bedroom window.
26. Every employee is expected to be competent and industrial because wage rates depend on levels of productivity.
27. The service was not entirely dependent and flights were often cancelled.
28. The documentary offers an insight into the every day lives of millions of ordinary Russian citizens.
29. We need someone really effective who can organize the office and make it smoothly.
30. The organization works on the principal that all members have the same rights.
31. She offered me more money or a car and I chose the later.
32. In this teaching practice, teachers illicit and build on their students' mathematical insights.
33. The children were surprised by the sudden entrance of their teacher.
34. Her health has improved drastically since she started on this new diet.
35. His company offers a flexible package service for the food industry.
36. A growing percent of women are delaying marriage to pursue professional careers.
37. She made a fabulous desert with alternate layers of chocolate and cream.
38. The new trade agreement should felicitate more rapid economic growth.
39. He was arrested at the airport with a kilo of heroine secreted in his clothing.
40. She complained that her husband never paid her any complement anymore.
41. The accident caused intensive damage to both cars, but fortunately no one died.
42. The text has numerous foul, but none are particularly significant.
43. We really should meet sometimes soon to discuss the details.
44. The author's wife was a good editor, beside being a great writer herself.
45. Therefore, heavy reliance on this single strategy is highly unsafe, and the timely development of alternative or complementary methods to chemical control is advisory.
46. We will offer you a comprehensible training in all aspects of the business if you take this course.
47. When a child becomes a teenager, he encounters many experiences which are new for him to handle independently and on his own. Children of this age are often highly suggested.

48. The course has four main ingredients: business law, finance, computing and management skills.

49. He was not seriously wounded, though his coach took him off at half-time as a precaution. The study founded that men who were married lived longer than those who were not.

### III. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence

1. The afternoon activities will .....soon. (take place/take part)
2. I will certainly .....my uncle's murder. (revenge/avenge)
3. I hope that I can ..... you to try some of these appetizers. (persuade/convince)
4. First thing in the morning we ..... the camp flag. (raise/rise)
5. Cathy.....a nice sports car. (has/is with)
6. I .....high marks in music very easily. (take/get, receive)
7. Clara .....her daughter how to read. (taught/learnt)
8. She does not ..... care of her plants so they always look sick. (take/care for)
9. Dad, .....I be excused from the table? (can/may)
10. I will ..... you do 25 pushups if you forget your kit. (make/let)
11. The.....of the Titanic was a horrible naval disaster. (drowning/sinking)
12. I ..... the newspaper to relax. (read/study)
13. On week nights I try to .....early. (sleep/ go to bed)
14. The Canadian doctors, Banting and Best, ..... insulin. (invented/discovered)
15. Do you .....to go skiing with me this winter? (like/want)
16. The doctor .....in his office as usual all morning. (was found/was)
17. How ..... I get to Tokyo from here? (can/may)
18. I ..... your invitation to the dance. (agree/accept)
19. I am going to .....a book from the library. (lend/borrow)
20. I like to .....early in the morning. (raise/rise)
21. Can you .....the airplane in the sky? (see/look)
22. Eric.....to drink the medicine. (refused/denied)
23. Her testimony ..... me that he is guilty. (persuaded/ convinced)
24. Are you ..... at the airplane in the sky? (seeing/looking)
25. I .....my textbook for one hour every evening. (read/study)
26. The picture was ..... over the fireplace. (hung/hanged)
27. Do not ..... go off the string of the kite. (leave/let)
28. When you come in, .....your wet clothes at the door. (take out/take off)
29. He decided to ..... his wife and live alone. (give up/leave)
30. The library will ..... me a book. (borrow/lend)
31. Could you kindly ..... me a pair of scissors? (fetch/search)
32. Help me ..... to give back her pencil. (remind/remember)
33. I .....you and understand your feelings. (like/sympathise)
34. Do you ..... skiing in the winter? (like/want)
35. I ..... aspirin whenever I have a headache. (get, receive/take)
36. Have you ever learned how to ..... a pie? (make/do)
37. Cheese is .....milk. (made of/made from)
38. I can ..... with you but I cannot change the facts. (sympathize/like)
39. .... your belt. (Get tight/Tighten)
40. Can you ..... the music playing upstairs? (listen/hear)
41. Summer is a good time .....the family. (to be with/to have)
42. I took .....on the thief who stole my watch. (avenge/revenge)

43. It takes practice, patience and perseverance to.....to speak English. (learn/teach)
44. Sheila plants to ..... at Harvard next year. (learn/study)
45. I ..... how to use a word processor. (learn/know)
46. Remember to .....the garbage in the morning. (take off/take out)
47. He does not .....spaghetti very much. (take care of/care for)
48. Carol ..... that she would travel abroad this summer. (said/told)
49. The telephone was ..... by Alexander Graham Bell. (invented/discovered)
50. Sally .....gloves before she goes out to the garden. (wear/puts on)

### I. MẪU CÂU ĐỀ NGHỊ NGƯỜI KHÁC GIÚP: (Making request)

Đề nghị	Trả lời	
	Đồng ý	Không đồng ý
- V-inf...! - V-inf..., please! - Please + V-inf ...! - Can you + V-inf...? - Could you + V-inf...? - Would you please + V-inf...? - Will you + V-inf...? - I wonder if you'd/could + V-inf ...?	- Certainly. - Of course. - Sure - No problem. - What can I do for you? - How can I help you? - By all means. - Yes, with pleasure	- I'm sorry. I can't. I'm busy. (I have something else to do.) - I'm sorry. I don't know how to do it.
* Riêng với mẫu: - Would/Do you mind + V-ing...?	- No, I don't mind. - No, of course not. - Not at all.	

### II. MẪU CÂU ĐỀ NGHỊ GIÚP NGƯỜI KHÁC: (Making offer)

Đề nghị	Trả lời
- Can I help you? - Shall I + V-inf...? - What can I do for you? - May I help you? - Do you need any help? - Let me help you	- Yes/No. Thank you - That's very kind of you. - Don't worry! I'll do it. - That would be great. - Oh, would you really? Thanks a lot. - Well, that's very kind of you, but I think I can manage, thanks. - No, thank you. I can manage.

### III. MẪU CÂU XIN PHÉP NGƯỜI KHÁC: (Asking for permission)

<b>Xin phép</b>	- May I + V-inf ...? - Can I + V-inf ...? - Would you mind if I + V (chia quá khứ đơn)? - Do you mind if I + V (chia hiện tại đơn)? - Excuse-me! May I + V-inf...? - Do you think I could + V-inf...? - I wonder if I could + V-inf...? - Is it all right if I could/can + V-inf ...?
<b>Trả lời</b>	<b>Đồng ý</b>
	- Certainly. - Of course. - Please do. - Please go ahead. - Sure.

<b>Không đồng ý</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I'd rather you didn't.</li> <li>- I'd prefer you didn't.</li> <li>- No, I'm afraid you can't.</li> <li>- I'm sorry, but you can't.</li> </ul>
---------------------	--

#### IV. MẪU CÂU "RỦ"/GỢI Ý: (Making suggestion)

Câu "rủ"/gợi ý	Trả lời
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Let's + V-inf ...?</li> <li>- Why don't we + V-inf ...?</li> <li>- Shall we + V-inf ...?</li> <li>- How about + V-ing...?</li> <li>- What about + V-ing...?</li> <li>- I think we should + V-inf...</li> <li>- I suggest that we + V-inf...</li> <li>- It might be a good idea if we + V-inf...</li> <li>- I think the best way of dealing with this situation would be + to V-inf...</li> <li>- If you ask me, I think we should/could + V-inf...</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Yes, let's.</li> <li>- No, let's not.</li> <li>- That's a good idea.</li> <li>- Yes, definitely.</li> <li>- Sure, why not?</li> <li>- By all means.</li> <li>- That's probably the best option.</li> </ul>

#### V. MẪU CÂU CẢM ƠN: (Saying thanks)

Câu cảm ơn	Trả lời
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Thank you.</li> <li>- Thank you very much.</li> <li>- Thanks a lot.</li> <li>- Thanks a lot for (N/V-ing).</li> <li>- It's very kind of you.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- You're welcome.</li> <li>- That's all right.</li> <li>- Not at all.</li> <li>- It's my pleasure.</li> <li>- Don't mention it.</li> </ul>

#### VI. MẪU CÂU XÁC ĐỊNH LẠI THÔNG TIN: (Confirming information)

- Pardon (me)!
- Please say that again!
- Excuse-me! What did you say?
- Could you repeat that?

#### VII. MẪU CÂU MỜI: (Making invitation)

Câu mời		Trả lời
<b>Mời ăn uống</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Would you like + món ăn/uống?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Yes, please.</li> <li>- No, thanks.</li> </ul>
<b>Mời đi đâu/làm gì</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Would you like + to V-inf...?</li> <li>- Do you fancy + V-ing...?</li> <li>- Do you feel like + V-ing...?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Yes, I'd love to. (Thanks)</li> <li>- That's very kind of you, thanks.</li> <li>- That sounds lovely (interesting).</li> <li>- That's a good idea. Thanks.</li> <li>- That would be great. Thanks.</li> <li>- I'm sorry. I'm afraid I can't.</li> <li>- That's very kind of you, but...</li> </ul>

#### VIII. MẪU CÂU CHÚC MỪNG: (Congratulating others)

Câu kể	Trả lời (câu chúc mừng)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I've passed the entrance exam.</li> <li>- I've got a driving licence.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- You did a great job!</li> <li>- Congratulations!</li> </ul>



- .....	- Excellent! - Well done!
---------	------------------------------

### IX. MẪU CÂU XIN LỖI:

Câu xin lỗi	Trả lời
- I'm very/extremely/awfully/terribly + sorry - Sorry. It's/was my fault. - I do apologise. - Please accept my apologies. - I'm sorry for + N/V-ing	- That's all right, ok. - Not too worried! - No need to apologize. - Don't worry about it! - Never mind!

### X. MẪU CÂU THỂ HIỆN LỜI KHEN: (Compliments)

Câu thể hiện lời khen	Trả lời
- You really have + positive adjective + Noun - I've never seen such a perfect thing on you. - Your + noun + is/was + positive adjective + complement - You are a/an + positive adjective + complement - What (a/an) + positive adjective + Noun! - How + positive adjective/adverb + subject + Verb!	- It's very kind of you to say so, thank you! - Thank you. That's a nice compliment. - Thanks. I think I've finally found (the color, the style, the way...) that + Verb... - I'm glad you like it, thanks. - You've got to be kidding./You must be kidding. I thought it was terrible,

### XI. MẪU CÂU THỂ HIỆN Ý PHỤ HÒA: (Expressing the same idea)

- Mệnh đề ở dạng khẳng định: "so + V-aux + subject".  
"..., subject + V-aux, too".
- Mệnh đề ở dạng phủ định: "neither + V-aux + subject".  
"..., subject + V-aux + not, either".

### XII. CÁC MẪU CÂU HỎI THÔNG DỤNG:

Đôi khi đề thi cũng đưa ra các câu hỏi này. Phần này được cung cấp nhằm giúp học sinh ôn lại các câu hỏi thường gặp.

Câu hỏi	Trả lời
- What (gì)	Dùng các danh từ chỉ vật
- Who (ai)	Dùng các danh từ chỉ người
- What time (mấy giờ)	Dùng các danh từ chỉ giờ
- What...for? (để làm gì)	Dùng các cụm: <b>to V-inf, in order to, so as to, so that, in order that...</b>
- Where (ở đâu)	Dùng các trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn
- Why (tại sao)	Dùng các từ chỉ lý do ( <b>because, as, due to...</b> )
- Which (chọn lựa trong tập hợp biết trước)	Dùng các từ chỉ đối tượng cần chọn
- When (khi nào)	Dùng các từ chỉ thời gian
- How (phương tiện di chuyển)	Dùng các từ chỉ phương tiện
- How (thế nào)	Dùng tính từ, trạng từ
- How often (tần suất, bao lâu 1 lần)	Dùng các trạng từ tần suất ( <b>sometimes, never...</b> ), số lần ( <b>once, twice, times...</b> )

- How + tính từ: <b>mang nghĩa...như thế nào (how far, how fast, how tall, how old...)</b>	Xem tính từ sau "how" hỏi gì thì trả lời cái đó
- <b>How many</b> (bao nhiêu) (đi với danh từ đếm được, số nhiều) - <b>How much</b> (bao nhiêu) (đi với danh từ không đếm được, số ít hoặc giá tiền)	Dùng các từ chỉ số lượng, giá tiền.

### XIII. THỰC HÀNH

#### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG KỸ NĂNG GIAO TIẾP

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best completes each of the following exchanges.

1. Hung was invited to Hoa's party. He wants to thank her for the lovely party. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

- **Hung: "Thank you very much for a lovely party."**

- **Hoa: "....."**

A. Thanks

B. Have a good day

C. You are welcome

D. Cheers

2. Mary has a special meal tonight. She has just made friend with Steven, so she wants to invite him to have dinner with her. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

- **Mary: "Would you like to have dinner with me?"**

- **Steven: "....."**

A. Yes, it is. Isn't it?

B. Yes, I'd love to

C. Yes, so do I

D. I've had enough

3. John was in Hanoi and wanted to send a parcel to his parents. He asked a local passer-by the way to the post-office. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

- **John: "Can you show me the way to the nearest post office, please?"**

- **Passer-by: "....."**

A. Not way, sorry.

B. Just round the corner over there.

C. Look it up in a dictionary!

D. There's no traffic near here.

4. Lora has just bought a new skirt that she likes very much. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

- **Jane: "You look great in that red skirt, Lora!"**

- **Lora: "....."**

A. No, I don't think so.

B. Oh, you don't like it, do you?

C. Thanks, I bought it at Macy's.

D. Thanks, my mum bought it.

5. Ken and Tom are high-school students. They are discussing where their study group will meet.

**Ken: "Where is our study group going to meet next weekend?" – Tom: "....."**

A. Studying in a group is great fun.

B. We are too busy on weekdays.

C. Why don't you look at the atlas?

D. The library would be best.

6. Sue and Mira are talking about the use of mobile phone in class.

**Sue: "Students should not be allowed to use mobile phone in class."**

**Mira: "..... This will distract them from studying."**

A. Not really

B. No way! It's useful

C. I'm of the opposite opinion

D. I quite agree

7. Jenny and Jimmy are talking about university education.
- Jenny: "I think having a university degree is the only way to succeed in life."  
 - Jimmy: " ..... There were successful people without a degree."  
 A. That's all right. B. I don't quite agree.  
 C. I can't agree more. D. That's life.
8. Silas is talking to his roommate, Salah, about the Olympic Games.
- Silas: "Do you think our country can host the Olympic Games some day in the future?"  
 - Salah: " ..... We can't afford such a big event."  
 A. No, I don't think so. B. You can say that again.  
 C. I can't agree with your more. D. Yes, you're right.
9. Lien was walking her dogs in the park, she met Lan accidentally.
- Lan: "How lovely your pets are!"  
 - Lien: " ....."  
 A. Thank you, it's nice of you to say so B. Really? They are  
 C. Can you say that again D. I love them, too
10. Thorny enters the meeting room and sees a lot of men. He is asking one of the men near the door.
- Thorny: "Excuse me. I don't want to interrupt you but..."  
 - The man: " ....."  
 A. What can I do for you? B. Certainly. How dare you!  
 C. I quite agree D. I have no idea
11. Husha and Honish are talking about Trishie after watching her music performance.
- Husha: "Trishie's the best singer in our school."  
 - Honish: " ....."  
 A. Yes, please. B. I couldn't agree with you more.  
 C. That's OK! D. Yes, tell me about it.
12. Luca is at Noi Bai Airport. She wants to exchange some money, she is talking to Paula - a clerk at a currency exchange kiosk.
- Luca: "I'd like to change some money." Paula: " ....."  
 A. Five tens, please B. Which currency?  
 C. You haven't signed it. D. What's your account number?
13. Yuki and Hana are having a free afternoon. Yuki is inviting Hana to see a new movie with him.
- Yuki: "Do you feel like going to the cinema this afternoon?"  
 - Hana: " ....."  
 A. I don't agree. I'm afraid B. I feel very bored  
 C. You're welcome D. That would be great
14. David is talking to Lucy about her painting.
- David: "What a beautiful painting!"  
 - Lucy: " ....."  
 A. No problem B. It's on the wall  
 C. I'm glad you like it D. You're welcome.
15. Peter and Dane are talking about environmental protection.
- Peter: "We should limit the use of plastic bags."  
 - Dane: " ..... We can use paper bags instead."  
 A. I completely agree. B. It's not true.  
 C. I don't quite agree D. You're wrong.
16. David is apologising to his teacher for being late.

- David: "Sorry I'm late! The traffic is so heavy."

- Teacher: "\_\_\_\_\_. Come in and sit down."

- A. You're so kind      B. It's alright      C. Me neither      D. Thank you

17. Peter and Mary are talking about social networks.

- Peter: "Using social networks may have negative effects on students."

- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_. It distracts them from their studies."

- A. I'm not sure about that      B. I don't quite agree  
C. You're wrong      D. That's quite true

18. Linda and Peter are talking about safe driving.

- Linda: "I think drink-driving should be severely punished."

- Peter: "\_\_\_\_\_. It may cause accidents or even deaths."

- A. You must be kidding      B. I don't think so  
C. I don't understand what you mean      D. I absolutely agree with you

19. A porter is talking to Mary in the hotel lobby.

- Porter: "May I help you with your suitcase?"

- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. What a shame      B. Me too      C. You're welcome      D. Yes, please

20. John is having dinner at Linda's house.

- John: "This roast beef is so delicious."

- Linda: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. sure. I'd love to      B. I'm glad you like it.  
C. No, don't worry.      D. I don't either.

21. Joana and David, two lecturers, are talking about library skills.

- Joana: "I think we should teach our students how to use the library."

- David: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. You're absolutely wrong      B. You must be kidding  
C. I couldn't agree with you more      D. That's not a good idea

22. A shop assistant is talking to a customer.

- Shop assistant: "Do you need anything else?"

- Customer: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. That's all. Thanks      B. Good job!      C. With pleasure      D. You're welcome

23. Ann and Peter are talking about housework.

- Ann: "I think children should be paid for doing the housework."

- Peter: "\_\_\_\_\_. It's their duty in the family."

- A. That's what I think      B. You're exactly right  
C. There's no doubt about it      D. I don't think so

24. Ken and Tom are high-school students. They are discussing where their study group will meet.

- Ken: "Where is our study group going to meet next weekend?"

- Tom: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Studying in a group is great fun.      B. We are too busy on weekdays.  
C. Why don't you look at the atlas?      D. The library would be best.

25. Mike and Lane are university students. They are talking about Lane's upcoming high-school reunion.

- Mike: "So, you have your fifth high-school reunion coming up?"

- Lane: "....."

- A. Oh, the school reunion was wonderful.      B. No. You're in no mood for the event.  
C. The food at the reunion was excellent.      D. Yeah. I'm really looking forward to it.

26. A waiter in a restaurant is talking to a customer who has just finished his meal there.

- Waiter: "Here's your bill, sir."

- Customer: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Don't mention it.

B. Can I pay by credit card?

C. What do you have?

D. You're welcome.

27. Two close friends Tom and Kyle are talking about Kyle's upcoming birthday.

- Tom: "Can I bring a friend to your birthday party?"

- Kyle: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. It's my honour.

B. Let's do it then.

C. The more the merrier.

D. That's right.

28. Two friends Diana and Anne are talking about Anne's new blouse.

- Diana: "That blouse suits you perfectly, Anne."

- Anne: "\_\_\_\_\_".

A. Never mind.

B. Don't mention it.

C. Thank you.

D. You're welcome.

29. Mary is talking to a porter in the hotel lobby.

- Porter: "Shall I help you with your suitcase?"

- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Not a chance.

B. That's very kind of you.

C. I can't agree more.

D. What a pity!

30. Susan accidentally stepped on Denise's foot.

- Susan: "Oops! I'm sorry, Denise."

- Denise: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. You shouldn't do that.

B. It's alright.

C. You are welcome.

D. It's nonsense.

31. Hana and Jenifer are talking about a book they have just read.

- Hana: "The book is really interesting and educational."

- Jenifer: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. I'd love it.

B. That's nice of you to say so.

C. I couldn't agree more.

D. Don't mention it.

32. Jolie and Tom are meeting at the supermarket.

- Jolie: "Hi, Tom. How are you doing?"

- Tom: "\_\_\_\_\_. How about you?"

A. I'm waiting for my sister

B. I'm shopping for food

C. I'm doing nothing

D. I'm doing well

33. Maria and Alex are talking about the environment.

- Maria: "Our environment is getting more and more polluted. Do you think so?"

- Alex: "\_\_\_\_\_. It's really worrying."

A. I'll think about that

B. I don't agree

C. I don't think so

D. I can't agree more

34. Liz is telling Andrew about her first novel.

- Liz: "Guess what? My first novel has just been published."

- Andrew: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. It's my pleasure.

B. Congratulations!

C. Better luck next time!

D. It's very kind of you.

35. Jenny and her teacher are meeting at the bus stop.

- Jenny: "Good afternoon, Miss. How are you?"



- Teacher: "\_\_\_\_\_. And you?"

A. I'm going home

B. I'm leaving now

C. I'm thirty years old

D. Fine, thank you

36. Linda is thanking Daniel for his birthday present.

- Linda: "Thanks for the book. I've been looking for it for months."

- Daniel: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. You can say that again

B. Thank you for looking for it

C. I like reading books

D. I'm glad you like it

37. David and his teacher are meeting at the school gate.

- David: "Good morning, Mr Deakin. How are you?"

- Mr Deakin: "\_\_\_\_\_. And you?"

A. I'm busy now

B. I'm fine. Thank you

C. I'm going home

D. I'm having a class now

38. Mrs Smith and her students are visiting the zoo.

- Mike: "Can I feed the gorilla, Mrs Smith?"

- Mrs Smith: "\_\_\_\_\_. The sign says 'No feeding the animals'."

A. Of course you can

B. I don't think it works

C. I'm sure about that

D. I'm afraid not

39. Andrew is talking to a waiter in a restaurant.

- Andrew: "Can I have the bill, please?"

- Waiter: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. You are very kind

B. Just a minute, please

C. My pleasure

D. You're exactly right

40. Silas is talking to his roommate, Salah, about the Olympic Games.

- Silas: "Do you think our country can host the Olympic Games some day in the future?"

- Salah: "\_\_\_\_\_. We can't afford such a big event."

A. You can say that again

B. I can't agree with you more

C. Yes, you're right

D. No, I don't think so

41. Laura is telling Bob about her exam results.

- Laura: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- Bob: "That's great. Congratulations!"

A. I hope I'll pass the exam tomorrow.

B. I've passed the exam with an A.

C. I'll get the exam results tomorrow.

D. I didn't do well in the exam.

42. Nancy and James are talking about their school days.

- Nancy: "I think school days are the best time of our lives."

- James: "\_\_\_\_\_. We had sweet memories together then."

A. I'm afraid so

B. Absolutely.

C. That's nonsense

D. I doubt it

43. John and Mike are talking about Mike's new car.

- John: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- Mike: "Thanks. I'm glad to hear that."

A. Where did you buy your car?

B. What a nice car!

C. Your car is new, isn't it?

D. My car is very expensive.

44. Two students are talking about the school curriculum.

- Ted: "Swimming should be made part of the school curriculum."

- Kate: "\_\_\_\_\_. It is an essential life skill."

A. Oh, that's a problem.

B. I can't agree with you more.

C. Not at all

D. You can make it.

45. Jane is talking to Mike, who has just helped her with her luggage.

- Jane: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- Mike: "It's my pleasure."

A. It's too heavy.

B. It's not my duty.

C. Thanks a lot, indeed.

D. Welcome back.

46. Adam and Janet are at the school canteen.

- Adam: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- Janet: "Yes, please."

A. Do you mind if I sit here?

B. Can you pass me the salt, please?

C. It's a bit hot in here, isn't it?

D. Would you like a cup of coffee?

47. Jenny and Jimmy are talking about university education.

- Jenny: "I think having a university degree is the only way to succeed in life."

- Jimmy: "\_\_\_\_\_. There are successful people without a degree."

A. That's life

B. That's all right

C. I don't quite agree

D. I can't agree more

48. John was in Hanoi and wanted to send a parcel to his parents. He asked a local passer-by the way to the post-office.

- John: "Can you show me the way to the nearest post office, please?"

- Passer-by: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Not way, sorry.

B. Just round the corner over there.

C. Look it up in a dictionary!

D. There's no traffic near here.

49. Lora has just bought a new skirt that she likes very much.

- Jane: "You look great in that red skirt, Lora!"

- Lora: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. No, I don't think so.

B. Oh, you don't like it, do you?

C. Thanks, I bought it at Macy's.

D. Thanks, my mum bought it.

50. John and Mary are talking about what to do after class.

- John: "\_\_\_\_\_ - Mary: "Yes, I'd love to."

A. Do you often have time for a drink after class?

B. Would you like to have a drink after class?

C. Do you often go out for a drink after class?

D. Would you like tea or coffee after class?

51. Paul and Daisy are discussing life in the future.

- Paul: "I believe space travel will become more affordable for many people in the future."

- Daisy: "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. It doesn't matter at all.

B. There's no doubt about that.

C. It is very kind of you to say so.

D. I am sorry to hear that.

52. Jack is inviting Mary to his party.

- Jack: "Would you like to come to my party this weekend?"

- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. Yes, I'd love to

B. No, don't worry

C. You're welcome

D. I'm afraid so

53. Laura and Mitchell are talking about their school curriculum.

- Laura: "I think Art should be a compulsory subject."

- Mitchell: "\_\_\_\_\_. Art helps develop creativity."

A. I quite agree

B. You must be kidding

C. I'm of the opposite opinion

D. I don't think that's a good idea

54. Mai and Lan are friends. Lan asks Mai about Mai's plan. Select the most suitable response to fill in the blank.

- Lan: "Are you going to see the live show by Son Tung today?"

- Mai: "\_\_\_\_\_".

A. Yes, I enjoyed it very much

B. Maybe I'll be out

C. Yes, I'm going to stay in

D. I think so

55. Mary invited her friend, Sarah, to have dinner out that night and Sarah accepted. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

- Mary: "Shall we eat out tonight?" - Sarah: "\_\_\_\_\_".

A. It's kind of you to invite

B. You are very welcome

C. That's a great idea

D. That's acceptable

56. Two friends meet on the first day at school. Complete the conversation.

- A: "Hey John. I didn't know you were coming to this school."

- B: "\_\_\_\_\_. It's good to see you."

A. Oh, nice to meet you

B. Yeah, what a coincidence

C. That's life

D. Every now and then

57. Joanna is inviting Sally to go out with her.

- Joanna: "Well, would you like to come out for dinner? Let's go somewhere this evening."

- Sally: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Really? I'd love to.

B. How do you feel about it?

C. Shall we go out tonight?

D. I love going out.

58. Tom is in Ho Chi Minh city and asks a passer-by the way to the railway station.

- Tom: "Can you show me the way to the railway station, please?"

- Passer-by: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. No way.

B. Just round the corner over there.

C. Look it up in a dictionary!

D. There's no traffic near here.

59. Two students are discussing their previous English class.

- Student 1. "I think the teacher should give us more exercises."

- Student 2. "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Yes, let's

B. Ok

C. That's rubbish

D. That's what I was thinking

60. Mr Collin is talking to Brian.

-Mr. Collin: "You've been making very good progress. I'm proud of you!" - Brian: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. No problem.

B. Don't worry about it!

C. Everything's alright. Thank you.

D. I really appreciate you saying that.

61. Two students are talking about the types of family in class.

- Nam: "I think it is a good idea to have three or four generations living under one roof."

- Mai: "..... Family members can help each other a lot."

A. I don't agree

B. It's not true

C. That's wrong

D. I couldn't agree

more

62. Tom and Mary are talking about the hair style

-Tom "What an attractive hair style you have got, Mary!" - Mary "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. You are telling a lie.

B. I don't like your saying

C. Thank you very much. I'm afraid

D. Thank you for your compliment.

63. Sue and Mira are talking about the use of mobile phone in class.

- Sue: "Students should not be allowed to use mobile phone in class."

- Mira: "\_\_\_\_\_. This will distract them from studying."

- A. Not really
- B. No way! It's useful
- C. I'm of the opposite opinion
- D. I quite agree

64. Hana and Jenifer are talking about a book they have just read.

- Hana: "The book is really interesting and educational." - Jenifer: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Don't mention it
- B. That's nice of you to say so.
- C. I'd love it.
- D. I couldn't agree more.

65. James: "Do you know that many inventions were inspired by the natural world?"

Anna: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Of course. You're right.
- B. There is no hope about it.
- C. Well, that sounds interesting.
- D. Yes, I couldn't agree more.

66. Lan And Hoa are talking about taking part in non- profit organization this summer.

- Mai: - "I like to work part-time for a non-profit organization this summer."

- Hoa : - "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Me too. I'm thinking of applying for 'Hope'.
- B. I do, but I don't have enough time for studying.
- C. That's great. You have been coming of age.
- D. Is that all? How about using time wisely?

67. Peter is talking to Laura about her house.

-Peter : "What a lovely house you have!"

-Laura: \_\_\_\_\_

- A. Of course not, it's not costly.
- B. Thank you. Hope you will drop in.
- C. I think so.
- D. No problem.

68. Sue and Anne are talking about their future plans.

- Sue: "I am not interested in the idea of taking a gap year and going backpacking in Nepal."

- Anne: "Well, \_\_\_\_\_."

- A. I am
- B. help yourself
- C. neither do I
- D. that's life

69. Two students are chatting in the corridor after class.

- Tim: "We should make a slide show for our history presentation next week."

- Laura: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. Sorry, I have to check my diary.
- B. That's exactly what I was going to say.
- C. I'd love to but I just can't now.
- D. That's true. I understand how you feel.

70. "What an attractive hair style you have got, Mary!"

- "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. Thank you very much. I am afraid
- B. I don't like your sayings
- C. You are telling a lie
- D. Thank you for your compliment

71. Two friends Diana and Anne are talking to each other about their shopping.

- Diana: "Look at this catalog, Anne. I think I want to get this red blouse."

- Anne: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. Don't you have one like this in blue?
- B. That's a long way to go, dear.
- C. No, thank you.
- D. I'll go myself, then.

72. Tung and Tu are talking about time management skill.

-Tung: "What do you think about time management skill?"

-Tu : "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. It's time to go.
- B. I quite agree with you.
- C. It is an important life skill.
- D. I can't help thinking about it.

73. Hana and Jenifer are talking about a book they have just read.

- Hana: "The book is really interesting and educational." - Jenifer: "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. Don't mention it

B. That's nice of you to say so.

C. I'd love it.

D. I couldn't agree more.

74. Thanh: "Lan's the best singer in our school".

- Nadia: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Yes, tell me about it!

B. I can't agree with you more!

C. That's OK!

D. Yes, please.

75. Linda is thanking Daniel for his birthday present.

-Linda: "Thanks for the book. I've been looking it for months."

-Daniel:

"\_\_\_\_\_"

A. I'm glad you like it.

B. You can say that again.

C. I like reading books.

D. Thank you for looking for it.

76. Lan And Hoa are talking about taking part in non- profit organization this summer.

- Mai: - "I like to work part-time for a non-profit organization this summer."

- Hoa : - "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. Me too. I'm thinking of applying for 'Hope'.

B. I do, but I don't have enough time for studying.

C. That's great. You have been coming of age.

D. Is that all? How about using time wisely?

77. Peter is talking to Laura about her house.

- Peter : "What a lovely house you have!"

- Laura: \_\_\_\_\_

A. Of course not, it's not costly.

B. Thank you. Hope you will drop in.

C. I think so.

D. No problem.

78. Jane is talking to Billy about the meeting.

- Jane: "Is everybody happy with the decision?"

- Billy: "\_\_\_\_\_".

A. That sounds like fun.

B. Yes, it is certainly.

C. No, have you?

D. Not really.

79. Lucy is asking for permission to play the guitar at Pete's home.

- Lucy: "Is it all right if I play the guitar in here while you're studying?"

- Pete: "\_\_\_\_\_".

A. Oh, I wish you wouldn't.

B. Well, I'd rather not.

C. Well, actually, I'd prefer it if you didn't.

D. Well, if only you didn't.

80. Nam is talking to Lan about the environmental problem today.

-Nam: "What are the main threats to the environment today?"

-Lan: "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. Threats are possible dangers to the environment

B. Probably deforestation and global warming.

C. Environmental pollution is a big issue for our planet

D. We need a clean environment to live in.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best completes each of the following exchanges.

1. A: "How do you do?" ~ B: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. How do you do?

B. I'm a bartender

C. Everything is OK!

D. I'm very fine, thanks!

2. Mary: "You stepped on my toes!" ~ James: "\_\_\_\_\_."



- A. Are you sure? It's understandable.  
C. Really! I'm glad you like it.
3. Josh and Mike are talking about hobbies.  
Josh: "What is your hobby Mike?"  
Mike: "\_\_\_\_\_"
- A. Well, I like hiking.  
C. Sure, I'll go with you.
- B. I'm sorry but I meant it.  
D. I'm terribly sorry. I didn't mean it.
4. John and Smith are talking about solar energy.  
John: "Solar energy is not only plentiful and unlimited but also clean and safe. Do you think so?"  
Smith: "\_\_\_\_"
- A. Thanks for your kind words.  
C. Thank you for your consideration.
- B. Well, I want sugar  
D. Oh, I live here.
5. Tim: "Let me wash the vegetable while you're preparing the meat."  
- Linda: "\_\_\_\_\_."
- A. OK. Thank you very much.  
C. Yes, please. But I can manage.
- B. Thank you, I'm fine at the moment.  
D. Yeah. You're absolutely right.
6. Sara: "How do you feel about his comment?"  
- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_."
- A. Yes, it's a very good idea.  
C. I'm afraid I disagree with you.
- B. Good idea. I'll do it for you.  
D. No problem.
7. Hoa is asking Hai, who is sitting at a corner of the room, seeming too shy. Hoa: "Why aren't you taking part in our activities? \_\_\_\_\_"  
Hai: "Yes, I can. Certainly."
- A. Could you please show me how to get the nearest post office?  
B. Shall I take your hat off?  
C. Can you help me with this decoration?  
D. Can I help you?
8. Mary is talking to a porter in the hotel lobby.  
Porter: "Shall I help you with your suitcase?"  
Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_"
- A. What nonsense!  
C. What a pity!
- B. That's very kind of you.  
D. I can't agree more.
9. Jane and Suzie are talking after school.  
Tom: "I'm awfully sorry I can't go with you."  
Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_? Haven't you agreed?"
- A. Why do you think B. How come  
C. What is it  
D. Why don't you
10. Peter and Mike are talking during a class break.  
Peter: "What are you doing this weekend?"  
Mike: "\_\_\_\_\_."
- A. I'm very busy now  
C. I think it will be interesting
- B. I plan to visit my aunt  
D. I hope it isn't raining
11. John: "Don't fail to send your parents my regard." - Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_."
- A. Thanks, I will  
B. You're welcome  
C. Good idea, thanks  
D. It's my pleasur
12. Tom: "Do you have a minute please?" - Tony: "\_\_\_\_\_."
- A. Sorry. I left my watch home  
C. Yes, but you should be brief
- B. That's just fantastic. Thanks  
D. Well it is not as good as I think
13. A: "I'm very sorry for letting you wait for so long." - B: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. Don't apologize. I've just arrived here.      B. It doesn't matter. Thank you.  
 C. You've welcome.      D. My pleasure. Don't worry about it.
14. "Would you like me to send this package for you?" – B: " \_\_\_\_\_"  
 A. That would be nice. Any problems?      B. Yes, please, if you don't mind.  
 C. I'm sorry, but here you are.      D. No, thanks. I'm really busy.
15. Bush: " \_\_\_\_\_." - Clinton: "No, but thanks all the same."  
 A. Another cup of coffee?      B. May I help you?  
 C. Would you like a slice of salad?      D. How about having dinner out?
16. Tom: "Would you please drive me to class today?" - Thuy: " \_\_\_\_\_."  
 A. No, I don't mind      B. You are welcome  
 C. Yes, I'd be glad to      D. Thank you for all
17. Mai and Lan are talking about Mai's new house.  
 Lan: "What a lovely house you have!"  
 Mai: " \_\_\_\_\_"  
 A. I'm glad you like it. Thanks.      B. Thanks. It must be very expensive.  
 C. You're welcome.      D. Certainly!
18. Lora is talking to Maria about her failure at applying for a job.  
 Lora: " \_\_\_\_\_"  
 Maria: "Never mind, better luck next time"  
 A. I have a lot on my mind.      B. I've broken your precious vase.  
 C. I couldn't keep my mind on work.      D. I didn't get the vacant position.
19. - Porter: "I didn't do too well on my final exams." - Mary: " \_\_\_\_\_."  
 A. That's a shame!      B. Don't mention it!      C. What a drag!      D. That will be the day
20. Teacher: " Janet, you've written a much better essay this time".  
 Janet: " ....."  
 A. Writing? Why?      B. Thank you. It's really encouraging  
 C. You're welcome.      D. What did you say? I'm so shy.
21. Ken and Tom are high-school students. They are discussing where their study group will meet.  
 Select the most suitable response to fill in the blank.  
 Ken: " Where is our study group going to meet next weekend?"  
 Tom: " \_\_\_\_\_"  
 A. We are too busy on weekdays.      B. The library would be best.  
 C. Why don't you look at the atlas.      D. Studying in a group is great fun.
22. Mary: "I will never go mountaineering again."  
 Mary: "I will never go mountaineering again." – Linda: "Me \_\_\_\_\_."  
 A. so      B. either      C. too      D. neither
23. Mary: "Thanks a lot for your help." – John: " \_\_\_\_\_."  
 A. My excitement      B. My delight      C. My happiness      D. My pleasure
24. Mike and Joe are talking about transport in the future.  
 - Mike: "Do you think there will be pilotless planes?"  
 - Joe: " \_\_\_\_\_"  
 A. I'm afraid I can't.  
 B. What for? There are quite a few around.  
 C. Why not? There have been cars without drivers.  
 D. I'm glad you like it.
25. Julie and Ann are talking about their classmate.

Julie: " \_\_\_\_\_ " - Ann: "Yeah, not bad, I suppose."

- A. Do you see him often?
- B. What are you thinking?
- C. How did you meet him?
- D. He is quite good-looking, isn't he?

26. Daniel: "Do you think it's bad to keep all the candy to yourself?"

Jacob: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. You are absolutely right. I'm crazy about candy.
- B. I'm so sorry. Sometimes I'm too aggressive.
- C. I'm sorry. I should not be so selfish.
- D. You're right. I'm a bit jealous.

27. Mary: "Let me bring something to your party, won't you?"

Laura: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. In my opinion, you're right.
- B. That really surprises me.
- C. It's enough, just to have you come.
- D. Sorry, I've ready had plan for tonight.

28. - "Excuse me. Where's the parking lot?"

- " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Why do you ask me? I don't know.
- B. Do you get lost? I do too.
- C. You missed the turn. It's back that way
- D. You are going the wrong way. It's not here.

29. Mary is talking to a porter in the hotel lobby.

- Porter: "Shall I help you with your suitcase?"

- Mary: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Not a chance.
- B. That's very kind of you.
- C. I can't agree more.
- D. What a pity!

30. Which expression is used to start a conversation?

- A. Well, it's been nice meeting you
- B. How's everything at school?
- C. Catch you later.
- D. Sorry, I've got to go. Talk to you later.

31. Hoa: "Are you going to buy a new computer or just continue using the old one?" - Mary: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Neither. I'm going to lease one.
- B. That's impossible. I can't afford a new one
- C. Yes, I'd like one. Thank you.
- D. Yes, I am.

32. A man is talking to Alex when he is on holiday in Paris,

The man: "You haven't lived here long, have you?"

Alex: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Yes, I have just moved here
- B. No, only three months
- C. Yes, just a few days
- D. No, I live here for a long time

33. Susan shared with her friend about her losing purse.

Susan: "I have lost my purse."

Her friend: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. It's careless
- B. Oh, what a pity
- C. That's nothing
- D. Oh, be careful

34. Two friends are having a conversation in a restaurant.

Mary: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

Jane: "All right. Suit yourself."

- A. What is your favorite starter?
- B. I haven't been to such a nice place with you for a while.
- C. Can you help me choose the main course?
- D. I don't want to eat anything. I'm on diet.

35. Two friends are talking about the university entrance examination.

Peter: " My parents gave me no choice but to study business."

Danny: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Well, so be it.
- B. Of course not.
- C. Oh, by all means.
- D. No, I can't get it.

36. Harry is talking to Judy over the phone.

Harry: "Thank you for helping me prepare for my birthday party, Judy."

Judy: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. It's my pleasure  
B. That's out of this world  
C. Never mention me  
D. Of course not

37. Tom and Josh are discussing their summer vacation plan.

Tom: "\_\_\_\_\_."

Josh: "I don't think that's a good idea because it will be costly and strenuous."

- A. Is it wise to climb Mount Everest when we are in India this summer?  
B. What if we climb Mount Everest when we are in India this summer?  
C. How come will we climb Mount Everest when we are in India this summer?  
D. Why don't we climb Mount Everest when we are in India this summer?

38. Peter: "Do you like going to the cinema this evening, Susan?" Susan: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. I feel very bored.  
B. That would be great  
C. You're welcome  
D. I don't agree, I'm afraid.

39. Peter: "Oops, I'm terribly sorry!?"

Susan: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. You're welcome  
B. That's OK  
C. That's right  
D. You're right

40. Peter: "Don't fail to send your parents my regards."

Susan: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. You're welcome.  
B. Thanks, I will.  
C. Good ideas, thanks  
D. It's my pleasure.

41. Tom: "I'm sorry, I left my guitar home."

Helen: "\_\_\_\_\_, I've got another one here."

- A. No way  
B. Never mind  
C. Well, you do? I'm sorry  
D. Oh. What's a pity for that.

42. Two high school students, Jane and John, are talking about their plan after graduation.

Jane: "\_\_\_\_\_."

John: As far as I'm concerned, there's no doubt about it.

- A. Taking a gap year should be among the best choices for us, don't you think?  
B. Let's take a gap year and see how things go!  
C. What do you think about taking a gap year before university?  
D. How come you decided to take a gap year before university!

43. John was late for a meeting with Jane. He's now apologizing to Jane for the incident.

John: "I'm so sorry I was late."

Jane: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Little wonder you do!  
B. Forget about it!  
C. Don't sweat over it!  
D. No offense intended!

44. "What's the matter? You don't look very well." – "I feel a little \_\_\_\_\_."

- A. out of the blue  
B. out of order  
C. under the weather  
D. under a cloud

45. Jane: "Would you mind if I use your computer for an hour?" – Tony: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Not at all. I've finished my job  
B. Yes, you can use it  
C. Of course not. I still need it now  
D. Yes, it's all right

46. John is talking to a cashier at the checkout counter of the supermarket.

Cashier: "All right. Keep your receipt. If something comes up, you can show it to us and you can get a refund."

John: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Thanks. I'll put it in a safe place

B. Thank you. I'll keep it for you.

C. OK, I won't use it,

D. You're welcome. See you.

47. Joe and Matt met at a friend's farewell party.

Joe: "I thought you were too tired"

Matt: "\_\_\_\_\_ I've decided to go. I feel I owe it to him."

A. More of the same

B. All the more

C. One and the same

D. All the same

48. Interviewer: "What sort of job are you looking for?" - Curtis: "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. No, I don't think so. I'd really prefer something outdoors.

B. Oh, for me the most important is job satisfaction and I can have some work experience.

C. As a student, the most interesting thing about the job is working with people.

D. Well, I'm still in school, so I want something either in the evening or on the weekend.

49. Peter: "Hi, David, do you think it's possible for you to have a talk sometime today?" - David:

"\_\_\_\_\_."

A. I'd love to, but I've got a pretty tight schedule today.

B. No more time for me. I have to work with my boss.

C. I wish I had been free yesterday to have time with you.

D. Excuse me; however, I'm so busy all day from morning.

50. John: "Oh, I forgot my girlfriend's birthday last week." - Anne: "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. Not on your life.

B. So I guess you are in the doghouse again.

C. Sure, knock on wood.

D. You really should get a life.



- Khi muốn câu có ý thuyết phục hơn và nghĩa mạnh hơn người ta dùng hình thức nhấn mạnh (emphasis).

**I.NHẤN MẠNH TRONG CÁCH PHÁT ÂM (Emphasis in pronunciation)**

- Khi muốn nhấn mạnh một từ, ta đọc từ đó mạnh hơn, lớn hơn hoặc với ngữ điệu cao hơn. Ta cũng có

thể kéo dài nguyên âm hoặc ngưng lại trước từ được nhấn mạnh.

**II.NHẤN MẠNH TRONG CÁCH VIẾT (Emphasis in writing)**

**A.ĐỘNG TỪ. (verbs)**

Công thức :DO/ DOES/ DID + V(bare-inf.)

Ex: John visited her yesterday. =>John did visit her yesterday.

I like coffee. =>I do like coffee.

**B.TÍNH TỪ. (adjectives)**

Công thức : It is/ was + adj. + to-infinitive

Ex: Travelling by air is fast. =>It is fast to travel by air.

Learning a foreign language is necessary. =>It is necessary to learn a foreign language.

We found that getting a visa was impossible. =>We found that it was impossible to get a visa.

**C.DANH TỪ,ĐẠI TỪ HOẶC TRẠNG TỪ (nouns, pronouns or adverbs)**

- Để nhấn mạnh danh từ hoặc đại từ ta có thể dùng các đại từ nhấn mạnh (emphatic pronouns) myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, themselves. Đại từ nhấn mạnh thường đứng ngay sau từ được nhấn mạnh hoặc đứng cuối câu.

Ex: Ted himself broke the news to me. =>I myself am wrong.

-Để nhấn mạnh trạng từ ta đưa trạng từ ra đầu câu và đảo ngữ.

Ex: Rarely has a new film produced such positive reviews

Công thức : It is/ was + ... + that/ who ...

Ex: England won the World – Cup in 1966 =>It was England that won the World – Cup in 1966

I love you. =>It is you that/ who I love.

The accident happened last night. =>It was last night that the accident happened

Lưu ý dạng câu có 2 mệnh đề như sau:

Ex: I need water. I don't need milk. =>It is water, not milk that I need.

I saw Hoa. I didn't see Lan. =>It was Hoa, not Lan that I saw.

**D.CÂU MỆNH LỆNH.(Commands)**

Câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định (Affirmative commands)

Công thức : DO + V(bare-Inf.)

Ex: Listen to me, please. => Do listen to me, please.

Visit us some time. => Do visit us some time.

Câu đề nghị phủ định (Negative commands)

**Công thức : DON'T YOU + V(bare-inf.)**

Ex: **Don't talk in class.** =>Don't you talk in class.  
**Don't make too much noise.** =>Don't you make too much noise.

**E. STRUCTURE : IT WAS NOT UNTIL..... ( Mãi cho đến khi )**

**Công thức : It was not until + thời gian + that + S + Ved / V2"**

Ex: I didn't go to school until yesterday -> **It was not until yesterday that I went to school**

➤ **Note!**

**Khi viết lại cấu trúc này cần lưu ý những điều sau:**

- Luôn bắt đầu bằng cụm từ " It was not until" những gì phía sau " until" của câu đề ta ghi lại hết, sau đó qua mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng chữ "**that**"
- Mệnh đề sau "that" luôn ở thì quá khứ đơn và luôn luôn ở thể khẳng định
- Nếu đề cho " didn't" thì sau mệnh đề that ta bỏ từ didn't, nếu đề cho couldn't thì ta bỏ đi từ not, nếu đề cho thể bị động " wasn't + V3/ Ved" ta chỉ bỏ **not** sau mệnh đề that

**F.CẤU TRÚC CÂU CHÉ ( Cleft Sentences )**

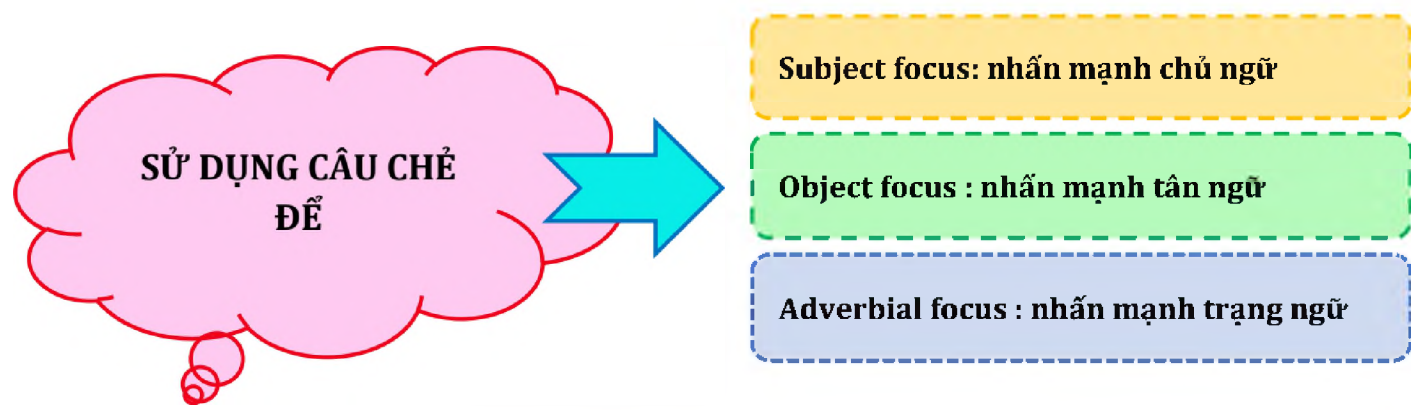
- Câu ché là loại câu mà người ta dùng để nhấn mạnh trọng tâm vào từ hoặc cụm từ nào đó bằng cách dùng mệnh đề quan hệ nào đó ngoại trừ những từ mà ta muốn nhấn mạnh. Điều này làm cho các từ trong câu gốc phải nằm xa nhau – bị tách biệt bởi một mệnh đề. Do đó, các nhà ngữ pháp gọi nó là câu ché.

- Câu ché thường được sử dụng trong văn viết vì chúng ta không thể dùng âm giọng để nhấn mạnh trong văn viết. Tuy nhiên, câu ché cũng được sử dụng phổ biến trong văn nói.

**Cấu trúc chung :**

=> Cleft sentences là cách dùng "**It + is / was + từ gạch chân + That.....**"  
Nếu **S chỉ người** ta dùng "**who / that**"  
Nếu các **S khác** ta dùng "**that**"

**Các dạng nhấn mạnh :**



**1. Subject focus: nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ**

Ex1: Mary gave me this book

=> It **was** Mary **that / who** gave me this book

Ex2: The TV program gives me a headache

=> It **is** the TV program **that** gives me a ...

**2. Object focus : nhấn mạnh tân ngữ**

Ex1: The boy hit the dog in the garden

=> It was the dog that the boy hit in the garden

Ex2: I'm studying English grammar

=> It is English grammar that I'm studying

**3. Adverbial focus : nhấn mạnh trạng ngữ**

Ex1: Sarah's husband died on Friday

=> It **was** on Friday **that** Sarah's husband died

Ex2 : The boy hit the dog in the garden

=> It **was** in the garden **that** the boy hit the

**PHƯƠNG PHÁP NHẤN MẠNH**

**III.THỰC HÀNH**

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG CÁC LOẠI NHẤN MẠNH**

**I.Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

- It is ..... I get emotional satisfaction.
 

A.Collecting stamps that	C. collecting stamps from that
B.From collecting stamps that	D. collecting stamps that from
- It is the library .....
 

A.That I often borrow books	C. where I often borrow books from
B.That I often borrow books from	D. from that I often borrow books
- ..... England won the World Cup.
 

A.It was in 1966 that	C. it was on 1966 that
B.It was in 1966 when	D. it was 1966 in that
- ..... took my car.
 

A.It was you	B. it were you	C. it was you that	D. it was you whom
--------------	----------------	--------------------	--------------------
- It was the stamp collection .....
 

A.About I have ever told you	C. about that I have ever told you
B.I have ever told you about	D. that I have ever told you
- ..... taught me how to collect butterflies.
 

A.It was my father	C. it was my father whom
B.It is my father	D. my father
- \_\_\_\_\_ I bought the golden fish.
 

A. It was from this shop that	B. I was from this shop where
C. It was this shop which	D. It was this shop that
- ..... invented the telephone.
 

A.He was Marconi that	C. he is Marconi who
B.it is Marconi that	D. it was Marconi that

9. It was Tom \_\_\_\_\_ to help us.  
A. comes                      B. that comes                      C. to come                      D. who came
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the police had rescued from the fire.  
A. The baby                      B. The baby that  
C. It was the baby whom                      D. The baby whom
11. \_\_\_\_\_ my parents gave me the fish tank.  
A. It was on my birthday when                      B. It was my birthday on that  
C. It was my birthday that                      D. It was on my birthday that
12. \_\_\_\_\_ I first met my girlfriend.  
A. It was in London that                      B. It was in London where  
C. It was London that                      D. It was London which
13. \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone.  
A. It is his mother whom is                      B. It was his mother whom is  
C. It was his mother who is                      D. It is his mother who is
14. \_\_\_\_\_ a high level of blood cholesterol.  
A. It is eggs that contain                      B. Those are eggs it contains  
C. It is eggs that contains                      D. It is eggs contain
15. \_\_\_\_\_ England won the World Cup.  
A. It was in 1966 that                      B. It was on 1966 that  
C. It was in 1966 when                      D. It was 1966 in that
16. \_\_\_\_\_ we all look for.  
A. It is happiness that                      B. That happiness  
C. Happiness it is that                      D. Happiness it is
17. \_\_\_\_\_ me how to play the drum.  
A. It was my uncle who taught                      B. My uncle who taught  
C. It was my uncle taught                      D. It is my uncle teaching
18. It is the room \_\_\_\_\_ we usually hold our meetings.  
A. that                      B. why                      C. where                      D. when
19. It's my brother \_\_\_\_\_ gave me this hat on my birthday.  
A. he                      B. whose                      C. which                      D. who
20. It was in New York \_\_\_\_\_ I first met her ten years ago.  
A. there                      B. where                      C. that                      D. which
21. It \_\_\_\_\_ English that the man is learning in the classroom.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. be                      D. were
22. It \_\_\_\_\_ at the bank that the wanted man changed the money.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. being                      D. were
23. It was the dog \_\_\_\_\_ the boy hit in the garden.  
A. where                      B. in which                      C. who                      D. that
24. It is the student who \_\_\_\_\_ toward us.  
A. is running                      B. was running                      C. ran                      D. were running
25. It \_\_\_\_\_ Peter and Sandra who travelled together on the ship to Asia.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. be                      D. were
26. It was in 1875 \_\_\_\_\_ joined the staff of the astronomical observatory at Harvard University.  
A. that Anna Winlock                      B. Anna Winlock, who  
C. as Anna Winlock                      D. Anna Winlock then
27. \_\_\_\_\_ that the capital of South Carolina was moved from Charleston to Columbia.



- A. In 1790 was            B. There was in 1790    C. In 1790                            D. It was in 1790
28. It was Mr. Harding \_\_\_\_\_ the bill to yesterday.  
 A. who sent my secretary                            B. to whom my secretary sent  
 C. that my secretary sent                            D. my secretary sent
29. \_\_\_\_\_ who was elected the first woman mayor of Chicago in 1979.  
 A. It was Jane Byrne    B. Jane Byrne                            C. That Jane Byrne            D. When Jane Byrne
30. It is in Quebec \_\_\_\_\_ French is used as an official language .  
 A. which                            B. where                            C. in where                            D. that
31. \_\_\_\_\_ that the capital of South Carolina was moved from Charleston to Columbia.  
 A. In 1790 was            B. There was in 1790    C. In 1790                            D. It was in 1790
32. \_\_\_\_\_ Ruth St. Dennis turned to Asian dances to find inspiration for her choreography.  
 A. It was the dancer that    B. The dancer                            C. That the dancer            D. The dancer was
33. It is the library \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. that I often borrow books                            B. that I often borrow books from  
 C. where I often borrow books from                            D. from that I often borrow books
34. \_\_\_\_\_ took my car.  
 A. It was you            B. It were you                            C. It was you that            D. It was you whom
35. \_\_\_\_\_ me how to play the drum.  
 A. It was my uncle who taught                            B. My uncle who taught  
 C. It was my uncle taught                            D. It is my uncle teaching
36. \_\_\_\_\_ gave me that picture book.  
 A. Mary                            B. It was Mary                            C. It was Mary whom    D. It was Mary whose
37. It is \_\_\_\_\_ we will leave for Paris.  
 A. April                            B. in April that                            C. April in that                            D. in April when
38. \_\_\_\_\_ on my part that I could not manage to deliver the goods on time.  
 A. An error            B. That is an error                            C. It was an error                            D. An error it was
39. \_\_\_\_\_ took my document ?  
 A. It is Peter that    B. It was Peter that                            C. Was it Peter that            D. Was that Peter
40. It is \_\_\_\_\_ I get emotional satisfaction.  
 A. collecting stamps that                            B. from collecting stamps that  
 C. collecting stamps from that                            D. collecting stamps that from
41. \_\_\_\_\_ taught me how to collect butterflies.  
 A. It was my father                            B. It is my father  
 C. It was my father whom                            D. My father
42. It was the woman that \_\_\_\_\_ us English last year.  
 A. taught                            B. teaches                            C. has taught                            D. had taught
43. It was the boy \_\_\_\_\_ I told you about.  
 A. that                            B. whose                            C. who's                            D. None is correct
44. \_\_\_\_\_ was Nam who wanted to buy my old guitar.  
 A. There                            B. Which                            C. It                            D. Who
45. Nguyen Du wrote Kieu story.  
 A. It is Kieu story that was written by Nguyen Du.  
 B. It was Kieu story that was written by Nguyen Du.  
 C. It was Kieu story that is written by Nguyen Du.  
 D. It is Kieu story that is written by Nguyen Du.
46. They grow corn in India.  
 A. It is corn that they grow in India.                            B. It was corn that they grow in India.



C. It is corn that was grown in India.

D. It was corn that is grown in India

47. The cat is going to catch the mouse.

A. It was the mouse that the cat is going to catch.

B. It is the mouse that the cat is going to catch.

C. It is the mouse that was being caught by the cat.

D. It was the mouse that was being caught by the cat.

48. Mary bought this book yesterday.

A. It is this book that Mary bought yesterday.

B. It is this book that was bought by Mary yesterday.

C. It was this book that was bought by Mary yesterday.

D. It is this book that is bought by Mary yesterday.

49. They feed these animals twice a day.

A. It was these animals that they feed twice a day.

B. It is these animals that were fed twice a day.

C. It was these animals that are fed twice a day.

D. It is these animals that they feed twice a day.

50. My brother bought his new car from our next-door neighbour last Saturday.

A. It is last Saturday that my brother bought his new car from our next-door neighbour.

B. It was last Saturday that my brother bought his new car from our next-door neighbour.

C. It is last Saturday when my brother bought his new car from our next-door neighbour.

D. It was last Saturday which my brother bought his new car from our next-door neighbour.

**Rewrite the sentences to focus attention on the underlined information. Using structure "it is / was ... that"**

1. She bought the car from Tom.

→ It.....

2. The computer gives me a headache.

→ It.....

3. We are coming to stay with Jane this weekend.

→ It.....

4. The president makes the important decisions.

→ It.....

5. I'm looking forward to physics exam.

→ It.....

6. I lost my wallet somewhere in there.

→ It.....

7. I was born and grew up in a small village.

→ It.....

8. My teacher helped me a lot of with my study last semester.

→ It.....

9. The headmaster gave Tam a bicycle as a scholarship.

→ It.....

10. Your carelessness caused the accident

→ It.....

11. The neighbour told them about it.

→ It.....

12. My friend came to see me late last night.

→ It.....

13. That boy scored the goal for his team.

→ It.....

14. The dog grabbed at the piece of meat and ran away.

→ It.....

15. The strong wind blew the roof off.

→ It.....

**Rewrite the sentences to focus attention on the underlined information. Using structure " it is / was not until**

1. She weren't allowed to open her presents until her birthday.

→It was.....

2. No one could leave the stadium until 2.30

→It was.....

3. I didn't sleep until midnight.

→It was.....

4. We didn't have any holiday until last summer

→It was.....

5. I couldn't comment futher until I had the information

→It was.....

6. I couldn't finish my project until Mark helped me

→It was.....

7. She didn't stop learning German until the age of 24

→It was.....

8. They didn't pay the bill until the electricity was cut off

→It was.....

9. She didn't become a teacher until yesterday.

→It was.....

10. He didn't know how to swim until he was 30 years old.

→It was.....

**Rewrite the sentences with an *Emphasis* on the underlined words.**

1. Ted broke the news to me.

=>.....

2. Knowing your limitations is important.

=>.....

3. They want money. They don't want affection.

=>.....

4. He misunderstood my intentions.

=>.....

5. I remembered her name after she had gone.

=>.....

6. I did my English test very well.

=>.....

7. Does Mary wash up everyday?

=>.....

8. She first heard the news from Francis.

=>.....

9. I get along with him perhaps because he's a misfit.

=>.....

10. We need pilots, not ground staff.

=>.....

11. Prices will go up. This is certain.

=>.....

12. To be early is better.

=>.....

13. Peter lent us money. Paul didn't.

=>.....

14. We found that getting a visa was impossible.

=>.....

15. He's going today.

=>.....

16. We ordered wine. We didn't order beer.

=>.....

17. Bad roads don't cause accidents. Speed does.

=>.....

18. Teasing animals is cruel.

=>.....

19. Mastering a second language takes time and practice.

=>.....

20. I loved you.

=>.....

### I. LÝ THUYẾT XÁC ĐỊNH

- Kiến thức trọng tâm cần nắm : Tất cả các chủ điểm ngữ pháp, từ vựng chủ đề các từ dễ gây nhầm lẫn Các loại lỗi sai xuất hiện trong các câu hỏi tìm lỗi sai trong đề thi vào 10 kỳ thi THPT Quốc gia môn Tiếng Anh những năm gần đây (2016-2020) bao gồm :

**Trường hợp 1 :** Lỗi sai về từ vựng (thường tập trung vào các cặp từ dễ nhầm lẫn với nhau)

**Trường hợp 2 :** Lỗi sai về thể chủ động - bị động

**Trường hợp 3 :** Lỗi sai về trật tự các từ trong câu

**Trường hợp 4 :** Lỗi sai về hoà hợp chủ ngữ động từ

**Trường hợp 5 :** Lỗi sai về cấu trúc câu chẻ

**Trường hợp 6 :** Lỗi sai về đại từ hay tính từ sở hữu thay thế chủ ngữ

**Trường hợp 7 :** Lỗi sai về dạng của động từ (Động từ theo sau bởi V-ing hay to-V...)

**Trường hợp 8 :** Lỗi sai về từ loại

**Trường hợp 9 :** Lỗi sai về cấu trúc song song

**Trường hợp 10 :** Lỗi sai về đại từ quan hệ

### II. MỘT SỐ DẠNG TÌM LỖI SAI THƯỜNG GẶP

#### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN TỪ VỰNG

**Example 1 :** These days, many consumers do not prefer less-known brands, what with the increasing risk of buying products of poor quality.

A. of buying                      B. do                                      C. increasing                              D. less-known

**Đáp án D :** less known → lesser-known (adj) : Ít được biết đến hơn, không nổi tiếng

**Ghi chú thêm :** what with (+N/Gerund) = bởi vì (dùng khi ta muốn nói đến nguyên do của một sự việc, hiện tượng...)

**Example 2 :** The 12 boys stuck in the cave have not been rescued as yet, but rescuers ensure the public that they are doing their best.

A. as yet                              B. have                                      C. ensure                                      D. stuck

**Đáp án C :** ensure → assure

- Phân biệt assure và ensure

- “assure” nghĩa là “cam đoan, bảo đảm với ai đó (rằng mình sẽ làm chuyện gì đó hay chuyện gì đó sẽ xảy ra...)”

- ensure nghĩa là “bảo đảm rằng chuyện gì đó sẽ xảy ra hay mình sẽ làm chuyện gì đó,...”

- Mấu chốt phân biệt “assure” và “ensure” chính là túc từ. Túc từ của “assure” thường sẽ là người hay trong một số trường hợp là động vật (đối tượng mà ta đưa ra lời cam đoan, bảo đảm), còn túc từ của “ensure” sẽ là một sự việc (việc mà ta bảo đảm sẽ xảy ra).

I assure you that our dog will be fine because Robert will ensure that she is looked after while we reo vacation. (Tôi bảo đảm/cam đoan với bạn rằng chú chó của chúng ta sẽ ổn vì Robert sẽ bảo đảm rằng ” được chăm sóc khi ta đi nghỉ mát).

#### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN TRẬT TỰ TỪ

**Example 1 :** Alex Burnham, who later became known as an infamous serial killer, had a good surprisingly upbringing, contrary to popular belief.

A. who                                      B. good surprisingly                                      C. contrary to                                      D. became known

**Đáp án B :** good surprisingly → surprisingly good

→ “surprisingly” là bộ nghĩa cho tính từ good, hơn nữa tính từ “good” lại là bộ nghĩa cho danh từ

“upbringing” nên ta phải sửa “good surprisingly” thành “surprisingly good”.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

**Example 1 :** When I got (A) home, Irene was lying (B) in bed thinking (C) about the wonderful time she has had. (D)

**Đáp án D :** She has had → she had had

Hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ phải chia ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành

Dịch: Khi tôi về nhà, Irene đang nằm trên giường suy nghĩ về khoảng thời gian tuyệt vời mà cô đã từng có.

**Example 2 :** The disposable (A) camera, a single, used camera (B) preloaded with print film (C) had appeared (D) in the late 1980s and has become very popular.

**Đáp án D :** In the late 1980s (cuối những năm 1980) là thời gian trong quá khứ nên ta dùng thì quá khứ đơn

Had appeared → appeared

Dịch : Máy ảnh đã qua sử dụng, là máy ảnh được sử dụng một lần được tải sẵn phim in đã xuất hiện vào cuối những năm 1980 và đã trở nên rất phổ biến.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN THỂ CHỦ ĐỘNG - BỊ ĐỘNG

**Example 1 :** Plastic bags are harmful (A) to the (B) environment so (C) they should replace (D) by paper bags.

**Đáp án D :**

Túi nhựa nên được thay thế bằng túi giấy (mang nghĩa bị động)

Should replace → should be replaced

Dịch : Túi nhựa có hại cho môi trường vì vậy chúng nên được thay thế bằng túi giấy.

**Example 2 :** Affecting (A) by the Western cultures, Vietnamese (B) young people's attitudes (C) towards love and marriage have dramatically (D) changed.

**Đáp án A :**

Sau “affecting” có “by” nên động từ mang nghĩa bị động

Affecting → affected

Dịch : Bị ảnh hưởng bởi các nền văn hóa phương Tây, thái độ của giới trẻ Việt Nam đối với tình yêu và hôn nhân đã thay đổi đáng kể.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN GERUND - INFINITIVE

**Example 1 :** Many people object to use (A) physical punishment (B) in dealing with (C) discipline problems at school. (D) .

**Đáp án A :** Cấu trúc: object to V-ing : phản đối làm gì

to use → to using

Dịch : Nhiều người phản đối sử dụng hình phạt thể xác trong việc xử lý các vấn đề kỷ luật ở trường.

**Example 2 :** The policeman (A) warned the tourists not walking (B) alone in (C) empty streets at night. (D) (Trích đề thi THPTQG 2017)

**Đáp án B :** Cấu trúc: warn sb not to V/ warn sb against V-ing : Cảnh báo ai không làm gì

not walking → not to walk

Dịch : Cảnh sát cảnh báo khách du lịch không đi bộ một mình trên những con đường vắng vào ban đêm.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN HÒA HỢP CHỦ NGỮ ĐỘNG TỪ

**Example 1 :** Teenagers is (A) greatly influenced by (B) not only their parents (C) but also their peers. (D) .

**Đáp án A :** Teenagers là danh từ số nhiều + V số nhiều



is → are

**Dịch :** Thanh thiếu niên bị ảnh hưởng rất nhiều bởi không chỉ cha mẹ mà còn cả bạn bè đồng trang lứa.

**Example 2 :** What I told her (A) a few days ago were (B) not the solutions to (C) most of (D) her problems.

**Đáp án B :** Mệnh đề đứng đầu câu làm chủ ngữ + V số ít

were → was

**Dịch :** Những gì tôi nói với cô ấy vài ngày trước không phải là giải pháp cho hầu hết các vấn đề của cô ấy.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN SO SÁNH TÍNH TỪ TRẠNG TỪ

**Example 1 :** Of the two lectures, the first (A) was by far the best, (B) partly because the person who (C) delivered it had such a (D) dynamic style.

**Đáp án B :** Trong câu có số lượng là “hai” thì ta dùng “the + so sánh hơn”

the best → the better

**Dịch :** Trong hai bài giảng, bài đầu tiên là tốt hơn nhiều, một phần vì người thực hiện nó có phong cách năng động như vậy.

**Example 2 :** When (A) they were (B) first introduced, electronic calculators were less powerful (C) and cost many (D) more than they do today.

**Đáp án D :** Much/ far + so sánh hơn (nhấn mạnh mức độ)

many → much

**Dịch :** Khi được giới thiệu lần đầu tiên, máy tính điện tử ít hiệu quả hơn và có giá cao hơn nhiều so với hiện nay.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN PHRASAL VERBS

**Example 1 :** I often look into (A) new words in the (B) dictionary whenever (C) I don't know the meanings. (D)

**Đáp án A :** Look into = examine: kiểm tra → look up: tra/tìm

**Dịch :** Tôi thường tra từ mới trong từ điển mỗi khi tôi không biết nghĩa của chúng.

**Example 2 :** He asked (A) her to marry (B) him but (C) she turned him out. (D)

**Đáp án D :** Turn out: hóa ra là → turn down: từ chối, bác bỏ

**Dịch :** Anh ấy cầu hôn cô ấy nhưng cô ấy đã từ chối.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN MẠO TỪ

**Example 1 :** My father used to give (A) me a good advice (B) whenever (C) I had a problem. (D)

**Đáp án B :** Advice là danh từ không đếm được nên không dùng “a”

A good advice → a piece of good advice/ some pieces of advice/ good advice

**Dịch :** Cha tôi thường cho tôi lời khuyên tốt mỗi khi tôi gặp vấn đề.

**Example 2 :** All nations may have to make (A) fundamental changes in (B) their economic, political, and the technological institutions (C) if they are to preserve (D) environment.

**Đáp án C :** Trong cấu trúc song hành, A and/or B thì A, B phải đồng đẳng

Adj, adj and adj → bỏ “theo trong cụm “the technological institutions” vì đã có “their” trước đó rồi

**Dịch :** Tất cả các quốc gia có thể phải thực hiện những thay đổi cơ bản trong các thể chế kinh tế, chính trị và công nghệ nếu muốn bảo vệ môi trường.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN COLLOCATIONS

**Example 1 :** Foreign students who are doing (A) a decision about which (B) school to attend (C) may not know exactly where the choices (D) are located.

**Đáp án A :** Cấu trúc: make a decision: đưa ra quyết định

are doing → are making

**Dịch :** Các sinh viên nước ngoài đang quyết định học trường nào có thể không biết chính xác các lựa chọn nằm ở đâu.

**Example 2 :** Some people are concerned (A) that burning (B) garbage may make (C) harm to (D) the environment.

**Đáp án C :** Cấu trúc: do harm to sb/st: làm hại tới ai/ cái gì  
make-do

**Dịch :** Một số người lo ngại rằng đốt rác có thể gây hại cho môi trường

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN ĐẠI TỪ

**Example 1 :** Animals like frogs have (A) waterproof skin that (B) prevents it (C) from drying out quickly in air, sun, or wind. (D)

**Đáp án C :** It them Các danh từ đứng trước "it" là "animals, frogs" đều là số nhiều  
it → them

**Dịch :** Động vật như ếch có da không thấm nước ngăn chúng khô nhanh trong không khí, nắng hoặc gió.

**Example 2 :** All (A) the judges paid (B) the dancer compliments on their (C) excellent performance in (D) the competition.

**Đáp án C :** Từ cần thay thế là "the dancer"  
their → his

**Dịch :** Tất cả các giám khảo đã dành cho các vũ công lời khen về màn trình diễn xuất sắc của anh ấy trong cuộc thi.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN TỪ LOẠI

**Example 1 :** The keynote speaker (A) started with some complementary remarks (B) about the organisers (C) of the conference, and then proceeded (D) with her speech.

**Đáp án B :** Complementary (adj): mang tính bổ sung → complimentary (adj) bày tỏ sự ngưỡng mộ, khen ngợi

**Dịch :** Người diễn giả chủ chốt bắt đầu với một vài lời nhận xét khen ngợi về ban tổ chức của hội thảo, và sau đó tiến hành bài phát biểu của mình.

**Example 2 :** They have carried out exhausting (A) research into (B) the effects of smartphones on schoolchildren's behaviour (C) and their academic performance. (D) (Trích đề thi THPTQG 2018)

**Đáp án A :** Exhausting (adj) làm kiệt sức, làm mệt lử → exhaustive (adj) hết mọi khía cạnh, hết mọi mặt, toàn diện

**Dịch :** Họ đã thực hiện nghiên cứu toàn diện về tác động của điện thoại thông minh đối với hành vi của học sinh và kết quả học tập của chúng.

### LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN CẤU TRÚC SONG SONG

**Example 1 :** Sylvia remembers cleaning the house, feeding the dog and then scrub the toilet before she went to the restaurant where her friends were waiting.

A. were                      B. where                      C. scrub                      D. cleaning

**Đáp án D :** scrub → scrubbing

Theo quy tắc cấu trúc song song, ta phải sửa scrub thành scrubbing để tương ứng với cleaning và feeding ở phía trước.

## III. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG TÌM LỖI SAI

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions**

**Question 1.** New sources of energy have been looking for as the number of fossil fuels continues to decrease.

- A. sources of energy    B. been looking    C. number    D. continues

**Question 2.** A lot of athletic and non-athletic extracurricular activities are available in Vietnamese high-schools, either public and private.

- A. available in    B. non- athletic  
C. either public and private    D. A lot of

**Question 3.** In a restaurant, if we want to call the waiter, we can raise our hand and wave it slight to signal that we need assistance.

- A. sight to signal    B. if we    C. assistance    D. wave it

**Question 4.** It is primary education that establishes foundations in science, geography, history, or other social sciences for young students.

- A. It is    B. that    C. or    D. sciences

**Question 5.** Taking a trip to the foreign country is a good way to practice a second language, but it is too expensive for many people.

- A. good    B. the    C. too    D. a

**Question 6.** There are such many planets in the universe that we cannot count them.

- A. such    B. in the    C. cannot    D. them

**Question 7.** The nitrogen makes up over 78 percent of the Earth's atmosphere, the gaseous mass surrounding the planet.

- A. The nitrogen    B. over    C. percent of    D. surroundiing

**Question 8.** Never in the history of humanity has there been more people living on this relatively small planet.

- A. humanity    B. has    C. living    D. relatively

**Question 9.** The school officials are considering a comprehensive planning to alleviate the problem of overcrowding in the dormitories.

- A. are    B. planning    C. alleviate    D. overcrowding

**Question 10.** Her weigh has increased remarkably since she began receiving treatment.

- A. Her    B. weigh    C. remarkably    D. receiving

**Question 11.** The University of Kentucky has held this prestigious title until 1989, when it was granted to the University of Georgia.

- A. has held    B. it    C. was granted    D. to

**Question 12.** Owing to their superior skill, highly competitive athletes have been known to win contests and break records even when suffered from injuries, physical disorders, and infections.

- A. when suffered    B. highly competitive    C. have been known    D. Owing to

**Question 13.** An ambitious person is committed to improve his or her status at work.

- A. is    B. improve    C. status    D. at

**Question 14.** Prevented the soil from erosion, the trees planted by the fanner many years before were what stopped the flood from reaching his house.

- A. Prevented    B. Before    C. What    D. reaching

**Question 15.** The medical problems of parents and their children tend to be very similar to because of the hereditary nature of many diseases.

- A. their    B. tend to    C. similar to    D. because of

**Question 16.** We always have believed that honesty is the best policy in personal as well as professional matters.

- A. always have believed                      B. best policy  
C. personal                                      D. professional

**Question 17.** Thomas refused to join the school basketball team, this was not good news at all.

- A. to join                      B. school                      C. this                      D. good

**Question 18.** I am now in my attempt winning a place at the same university to my brother.

- A. now in                      B. winning                      C. at the same                      D. to

**Question 19.** However type of raw materials is used in making paper, the process is essentially the same.

- A. However                      B. is used                      C. paper                      D. essentially

**Question 20.** The continental shelf is the shadow area of the ocean floor that is closest to the continents.

- A. The continental shelf                      B. the shadow area  
C. ocean floor                      D. closest to

**Question 21.** The movie tried something new, combining ruthless violence and quick-witted humor and philosophy reflection.

- A. something new                      B. ruthless                      C. and                      D. philosophy

**Question 22.** Historically, it was the 3<sup>rd</sup> Asian Games in Japan that tennis, volleyball, table tennis and hockey were added.

- A. Historically                      B. was the 3<sup>rd</sup> Asian Games  
C. that                      D. were

**Question 23.** Diamonds are graded according to weigh, color, and cut.

- A. Diamonds                      B. are graded                      C. weigh                      D. color

**Question 24.** Almost medical doctors have had some training in psychology and psychiatry.

- A. Almost                      B. have had                      C. training                      D. and

**Question 25.** The news of the flood in Central provinces were broadcast over radio and television as well as published in the newspaper.

- A. of the flood                      B. were broadcast                      C. as well as                      D. in the newspaper

**Question 26.** She made some very complementary remarks about my English, saying that I spoke quite fluently and comprehensibly.

- A. made                      B. complementary remarks  
C. saying                      D. quite fluently

**Question 27.** Our Spanish teacher would prefer us spending more time in the laboratory practicing our pronunciation.

- A. us                      B. spending                      C. in the                      D. practicing

**Question 28.** When eggs of some species of insects hatch, the newly born insects look almost like its adult counterparts.

- A. When                      B. species                      C. look                      D. its

**Question 29.** He was quite amusing when he heard what happened.

- A. was                      B. amusing                      C. heard                      D. happened

**Question 30.** I saw the blind man crossed the busy road without any help.

- A. the                      B. crossed                      C. without                      D. help

**Question 31.** Dams are used to control flooding, provide water for irrigation, and generating electricity for the surrounding area.

- A. to control flooding                      B. irrigation







A. needs                      B. cutting                      C. let                      D. to take

**Question 49.** Hadn't you informed of the change in the timetable, I would have rushed to the office yesterday.

A. Hadn't you                      B. of                      C. have                      D. the

**Question 50.** I'd prefer to do it on myself because other people make me nervous.

A. I'd prefer                      B. on myself                      C. other                      D. make

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions**

**Question 1.** Every member of the class were invited to the party by the form teacher.

A. member                      B. were                      C. to                      D. the form teacher

**Question 2.** For such a demanding job, you will need qualifications, soft skills and having full commitment.

A. such                      B. will need  
C. qualifications                      D. having full commitment

**Question 3.** In a restaurant, if we want to call the waiter, we can raise our hand and wave it slight to signal that we need assistance.

A. slight to signal                      B. if we                      C. assistance                      D. wave it

**Question 4.** Manufacturers may use food additives for preserving, to color, to flavor, or to fortify foods.

A. may use                      B. for preserving                      C. fortify                      D. foods

**Question 5.** Approximately 80 percent of farm income in Utah it is derived from livestock and livestock products.

A. Approximately                      B. of                      C. it is derived                      D. livestock products

**Question 6.** Each of the musicians in the orchestra were rehearsing daily before the concert tour began.

A. began                      B. musicians                      C. were                      D. daily before .

**Question 7.** The audience watched the rock concert and does not satisfy with the slow numbers that the band presented.

A. with                      B. does not satisfy                      C. watched                      D. presented

**Question 8.** Sarah was not best speaker in the class, but her personality and ability to convey her feelings helped her become the most requested.

A. not best                      B. ability                      C. feelings                      D. requested

**Question 9.** Upon reaching the destination, a number of personnel is expected to change their reservations and proceed to Hawaii.

A. reaching                      B. is                      C. to change                      D. proceed to

**Question 10.** Amelia Earhart, the first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic, disappeared on June 1937 while attempting to fly around the world.

A. the Atlantic                      B. on                      C. to fly solo                      D. attempting

**Question 11.** Neither of the two candidates who had applied for admission to the Industrial Engineering Department were eligible for admission.

A. who                      B. had applied                      C. to                      D. were

**Question 12.** It is unclear which agency will be responsible for cleaning the canal if it will become polluted again in the near future.

A. which agency                      B. responsible                      C. will become                      D. polluted

**Question 13.** A smile can be observed, described, and reliably identify, it can also be elicited and manipulated under experimental conditions.

A. smile                      B. identify                      C. can also                      D. experimental

**Question 14.** It was suggested that he studies the material more thoroughly before attempting to pass the exam.

A. was suggested              B. studies                      C. more thoroughly              D. attempting

**Question 15.** Some methods to prevent soil erosion are plowing parallel with the slope of hills, to plant trees on unproductive land, and rotating crops.

A. Some                      B. to prevent                      C. are                      D. to plant

**Question 16.** Sometimes all it take is a few minutes to help you and your family members feel more in touch with each other.

A. all it take                      B. to help                      C. feel                      D. in touch with

**Question 17.** The examination will test your ability to understand spoken English, to read non technical language, and writing correctly.

A. will test                      B. spoken                      C. writing                      D. correctly

**Question 18.** Miranda still has trauma from the tragic accident, that took away her closest friend.

A. has                      B. tragic                      C. that                      D. closest

**Question 19.** The office furniture that was ordered last month have just arrived, but we're not sure whether the manager likes it.

A. that                      B. have just arrived              C. whether                      D. likes

**Question 20.** Don't go up to your hotel room because the maid is making the beds, cleaning the bathroom, and vacuum the carpet.

A. Don't go                      B. because                      C. cleaning                      D. vacuum

**Question 21.** Education and training are an important steps in getting the kind of job that you would like to have.

A. Education                      B. an                      C. in getting                      D. to have

**Question 22.** Optimists that in the future we will be living in a cleaner environment, breathe fresher air and eating healthier food.

A. believe                      B. living                      C. breathe                      D. eating

**Question 23.** Several people have apparent tried to change the man's mind, but he refuses to listen.

A. Several                      B. apparent                      C. man's mind                      D. to listen

**Question 24.** She had so many luggage that there was not enough room in the car for it.

A. so many                      B. was                      C. enough room                      D. it

**Question 25.** Her application for a visa was turned down not only because it was incomplete and incorrectly filled out but also because it was written in pencil.

A. for a visa                      B. down                      C. incomplete                      D. in pencil

**Question 26.** The doctor's records must be kept thorough and neatly so as to insure good book – keeping.

A. thorough                      B. neatly                      C. so as to                      D. good

**Questions 27.** For thousands of years, people have used some kinds of refrigeration cooling beverages and preserve edibles.

A. have used                      B. kinds                      C. cooling                      D. edibles

**Question 28.** My brother usually asks me for help when he has difficulty to do his math homework.

A. asks                      B. when                      C. has                      D. to do

**Question 29.** Many people object to use physical punishment in dealing with discipline problems at school.

A. to use                      B. punishment                      C. dealing with                      D. at school

**Question 30.** If you make a five - days trip across the Atlantic Ocean, your ship enters a different time zone every day.

- A. make                      B. five – days                      C. enters                      D. zone

**Question 31.** What happened in that city were a reaction from city workers, including firemen and policemen who had been laid off from their jobs.

- A. What happened                      B. were                      C. including                      D. their

**Question 32.** In order to avoid to make mistakes, take your time and work carefully.

- A. In order to                      B. to make                      C. take                      D. carefully

**Question 33.** The more tired you are, the least hard you concentrate.

- A. more tired                      B. you are                      C. least hard                      D. concentrate

**Question 34.** Many people who live near the ocean depend on it as a source of food, recreation, and to have economic opportunities.

- A. depend on                      B. food                      C. recreation                      D. to have economic

**Question 35.** Animal researchers have identified many behavioral patterns associated with selection a place to live, avoiding predators, and finding food.

- A. associated                      B. selection                      C. to live                      D. predators

**Question 36.** It was not until 1937 when Southern source of the Nile River was discovered.

- A. was                      B. until                      C. the                      D. when

**Question 37.** Many hundred years ago, there were many villages and little towns in England.

- A. ago                      B. were                      C. little                      D. in

**Question 38.** I found my new contact lenses strangely at first, but I got used to them in the end.

- A. my new                      B. strangely                      C. got used to                      D. in the end

**Question 39.** He was so intelligent a student that he could pass the final exam easy.

- A. was                      B. so intelligent                      C. could                      D. easy

**Question 40.** The assumption that smoking has bad effects on our health have been proved.

- A. The                      B. that                      C. effects on                      D. have

**Question 41.** Vietnam exports a lot of rice is grown mainly in the south of the country.

- A. exports                      B. is grown                      C. in                      D. of

**Question 42.** He passed the exam with high scores, that made his parents happy.

- A. passed                      B. with                      C. that                      D. happy

**Question 43.** To attract someone's attention, we can use either verbal and non-verbal forms of communication.

- A. attract                      B. can use                      C. and non-verbal                      D. communication

**Question 44.** Next week, when there will be an English club held here, I will give you more information about it.

- A. there will be                      B. held                      C. will give                      D. about

**Question 45.** The symptoms of diabetes in the early stages are too slight that people do not notice them.

- A. The                      B. too                      C. do not                      D. them

**Question 46.** Sandara has not rarely missed a play or concert since she was seventeen years old.

- A. not rarely                      B. a play  
C. since                      D. seventeen years old

**Question 47.** Because his sickness he didn't take part in the English competition held last Sunday.

- A. Because                      B. he                      C. take                      D. held

**Question 48.** Rudolph Nureyev has become one of the greatest dancer that the ballet world has ever known.

- A. the                      B. dancer                      C. ever                      D. become

**Question 49.** That man was an easy recognized figure with his long, white beard and a wide – brimmed hat.

- A. easy                      B. wide – brimmed                      C. was                      D. figure

**Question 50.** Exceeding speed limits and fail to wear safety belts are two common causes of automobile death.

- A. Exceeding                      B. fail                      C. safety belts                      D. causes

**I. CÁC CẤU TRÚC SỬ DỤNG THÔNG DỤNG.(OTHER STRUCTURES)**

<b>Cấu trúc</b>	<b>Nghĩa</b>
<p>Khi hai mệnh đề đồng chủ ngữ, ta có thể bỏ chủ ngữ của vế đầu và thay bằng:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- V-ing +..., S + V + O</li> <li>- Having + Vp2, S + V + O</li> <li>- Vp2 +..., S+ V + O</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Diễn tả hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau</li> <li>+ Diễn tả một hành động đã hoàn thành trước một hành động khác xảy ra trong quá khứ</li> <li>+ Khi câu mang nghĩa bị động</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Have sb + V (bare)</li> </ul> <p>= get sb to + V [bare]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Have/get St + Vp2</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Nhờ ai làm gì</li> <li>+ Có cái gì được làm bởi ai</li> </ul>
<p>Pay sb compliment (n) on sth</p> <p>= Compliment (v)sb on sth</p>	<p>Khen ngợi ai về việc gì</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Out of breath</li> <li>- Out of date</li> <li>- Out of order</li> <li>- Out of work</li> <li>- Out of stock</li> <li>- Out of question</li> <li>- Out of season</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Thở không ra hơi</li> <li>+ Lạc hậu, lỗi thời</li> <li>+ Hông học</li> <li>+ Thất nghiệp</li> <li>+ Hết, không có sẵn</li> <li>+ Không thể</li> <li>+ Trái mùa</li> </ul>
<p>Sau số thứ tự (the first/ the second/the third... the last) + to V(bare)</p>	<p>Đầu tiên/thứ hai/thứ ba/ cuối cùng... làm cái gì đó</p>
<p>It was not until + time/time clause + that + S + V (quá khứ đơn)</p> <p>(Mệnh đề sau that luôn ở thể khẳng định)</p>	<p>Phải mãi cho tới tận khi ... thì</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- In the end = finally = eventually = at last</li> <li>- At the end of + N/V-ing</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Cuối cùng</li> <li>+ Cuối của cái gì</li> </ul>
<p>Have (no) difficulty (in) + V-ing</p>	<p>Có (không có) khó khăn (trong việc) làm gì</p>
<p>Decrease/increase by + ...%</p>	<p>Giảm/tăng ...% (so với trước)</p>
<p>Find it + adj + to V (bare)</p>	<p>Thấy như nào để làm gì</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Used to + V (bare)</li> <li>- To be/get used to + V-ing</li> <li>- To be used to + V (bare)</li> </ul> <p>= To be used for + V-ing</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Thường làm gì (trong quá khứ)</li> <li>+ Thường làm gì (ở hiện tại)</li> <li>+ Được dùng để làm gì</li> </ul>
<p>Congratulate + sb + on + V-ing</p>	<p>Chúc mừng ai vì đã làm gì</p>
<p>To be acquainted with sb/st</p>	<p>Làm quen với, biết với ai/cái gì</p>
<p>To be responsible to sb for st/doing st</p>	<p>Chịu trách nhiệm trước ai vì cái gì/ vì đã làm gì</p>
<p>Accuse sb of doing st</p>	<p>Buộc tội ai làm gì</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Make sb/st + adj</li> <li>- Make sb + V (bare)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>+ Làm cho ai đó/cái gì đó như thế nào</li> <li>+ Bắt ai đó làm gì</li> </ul>



- Love/like/enjoy + V-ing - Hate/dislike/resent + V-ing	+ Thích làm gì + Ghét làm gì
- Let sb + V (bare) = Allow/permit sb + to V (bare) - Allow/permit + V-ing	+ Cho phép ai đó làm gì  + Cho phép làm gì
So that = in order that + clause = so as to/ in order to/ to + V (bare)	Để mà
- Advise sb to + V (bare) - Advise + V-ing	+ Khuyến ai đó làm gì + Khuyến làm gì
- Suggest + that + S + (should) + V (bare) - Suggest + V-ing	+ Gợi ý ai đó nên làm gì + Gợi ý làm gì
Các cấu trúc câu ước: - S + wish + S would+ V - S + wish + S + V (quá khứ đơn) - S + wish + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)	+ Ước một điều trong tương lai + Ước một điều ở hiện tại + Ước một điều trong quá khứ
Prevent sb from doing st	Ngăn cản ai đó làm gì
- Remind sb to + V (bare) - Remind sb of sb/st	+ Nhắc nhở ai làm gì + Gợi cho ai nhớ tới ai/cái gì
Encourage sb + to + V (bare)	Khuyến khích ai làm gì
Tell/ask + sb + to + V (bare)	Bảo ai đó làm gì
- Sb+ need + to V - St + need + V-ing = St + need + to be + Vp2	+ Ai đó cần phải làm gì + Cái gì cần thiết được làm
No good/use + V-ing = No point in + V-ing	Không có ích khi làm gì
To be worth + V-ing	Đáng làm gì
Appreciate + V-ing	Đánh giá cao khi làm việc gì
(That/what + S + V) + V (số ít)	Mệnh đề danh từ
Reproach sb for doing St (v)	Trách mắng ai vì làm gì
Be on the verge of + V-ing = Be about to V	Đang định làm gì
Why not + V = Let's + V	Hãy làm..., tại sao không...
Postpone + V-ing	Hoãn làm gì
- Remember + to V - Remember + V-ing	+ Nhớ để làm gì (trong tương lai) + Nhớ đã làm gì (trong quá khứ)
Object to + V-ing/ N	Phản đối điều gì
Can't stand/help/bear + V-ing	Không thể chịu/nhịn được
To be interested in = to be fond of = to be keen on	Thích/quan tâm
Deny + V-ing	Phủ nhận làm gì
Admit + V-ing	Thừa nhận làm gì
Promise + to V	Hứa làm gì
Refuse + to V	Từ chối làm gì
- V (tri giác) + O + V - V (tri giác) + O + V-ing	+ Khi chứng kiến từ đầu tới cuối + Khi chứng kiến một phần của sự việc

<b>Committed to something</b>	Tận tâm với cái gì
<b>Lend/give somebody a hand = help sb</b>	Giúp một tay
- Confess that + mệnh đề <b>Confess (to) something Confess to doing something</b>	Để nói "thú nhận việc gì"
<b>Mind + V-ing</b>	Ngại, phiền làm gì
<b>Practise + V-ing</b>	Thực hành, luyện tập làm việc gì
<b>S + indicate + that + S + V</b>	Chỉ ra rằng
<b>Agree + to V</b>	Đồng ý làm gì
<b>No matter what + S + V ~ Whatever + S + V..., a clause = No matter how + adj/adv + S + V ~ However + adj / adv + S + V, a clause</b>	Dù có ... đi chăng nữa ... thì...
<b>As well as + V-ing</b>	Không chỉ/ không những
<b>Instead of + V-ing</b>	Thay vì làm gì đó
<b>Attempt + to V = try + to V = make an effort + to V</b>	Nỗ lực, cố gắng làm gì
<b>Lose one's (own) life in + sth/ V-ing</b>	Mất mạng/ chết khi làm gì đó
<b>So + trợ động từ/ to be + S</b>	Dùng sau một phát biểu khẳng định để diễn đạt sự đồng tình
<b>Neither + trợ động từ/to be + S = S + trợ động từ/to be (phủ định) + either</b>	Dùng sau một phát biểu phủ định để diễn tả sự đồng tình
<b>Provide sb with sth ~ provide sth for sb</b>	Cung cấp cho ai cái gì/ cung cấp cái gì Cho ai
<b>Many a + N (số ít) + V (số ít) = many + N (số nhiều) + V (số nhiều)</b>	Nhiều
<b>To be irrelevant to sb/st</b>	Không thích hợp, không tương thích, không thích đáng
<b>Irrespective of = regardless of</b>	Bất kể, bất chấp
<b>Limit yourself/sb (to doing sth/to sth) = to restrict or reduce the amount of sth that you or sb can have or use</b>	Giới hạn, giảm cái gì
<b>Seem to V (inf) =&gt; bị động: seem to be + Vp2</b>	Dường như
<b>Cấu trúc nhấn mạnh as + adj + a/an + N + as</b>	Đưa tính từ lên trước một danh từ số ít để nhấn mạnh danh từ
<b>Without + V-ing</b>	Mà không làm gì
<b>With a view to doing something</b>	Với ý định/hi vọng làm gì
- Keep in touch with sb = have contact with sb - Lose contact with sb	+ Giữ liên lạc với ai + Mất liên lạc với ai
- Similar to somebody / something - Just like + N/Pronoun - Such as - As well as	Tương tự như + Giống y như + Theo sau bởi danh từ, mang tính liệt kê + Mang nghĩa như not only... but also
<b>Belong to sb/sth</b>	Thuộc về ai/cái gì
<b>S + V + the same (Noun) as + N / Pronoun</b>	Giống như

- Insist on something/somebody doing something - Insist on + V-ing - Insist + that + S + V [bare]	+ Khăng khăng, yêu cầu hoặc đòi hỏi ai làm gì + Khăng khăng làm gì
What + (a/an) + adj + Noun! = How + adj/ adv + S + V!	Cấu trúc câu cảm thán
- Begin/ start + to V - Finish + V-ing	+ Bắt đầu làm việc gì + Kết thúc làm gì
Charge sb with sth = accuse sb of St	Buộc tội cho ai về việc gì
Get down to + V-ing = start + V-ing	Bắt đầu nghiêm túc làm gì
Refresh sb's memory	Nhớ lại
Do somebody good	Có lợi, tốt cho ai
To be accustomed to something = To be/ get used to st/ V-ing	Quen với cái gì
It takes sb + time + to V = S + spend + time + V-ing	Mất bao lâu cho ai để làm gì

## II. THỰC HÀNH

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG CÁC CẤU TRÚC KHÁC

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- \_\_\_\_\_ the letter, she cried a lot because of what he had written to her.  
A. Having read      B. To read      C. Read      D. Being read
- Today, the old couple has their family and friends \_\_\_\_\_ their golden wedding anniversary.  
A. attend      B. to attend      C. attended      D. attending
- The jury \_\_\_\_\_ her compliments \_\_\_\_\_ her excellent knowledge of the subject.  
A. returned/to      B. paid/to      C. returned/ on      D. paid/on
- After running up the stairs, I was \_\_\_\_\_ breath.  
A. away from      B. without      C. no      D. out of
- Neil Armstrong was the first man \_\_\_\_\_ on the moon.  
A. walking      B. has walked      C. to walk      D. walked
- It was not until he took off his dark glasses \_\_\_\_\_ I realized he was a famous film star.  
A. as      B. that      C. though      D. since
- I am sure that everything will be all right \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. in the end      B. at the end      C. by the end      D. for the end
- I'm sure you'll have no \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.  
A. difficulty passing      B. difficulties to pass      C. difficulty to pass      D. difficulties of passing
- Vietnam's rice export this year will decrease \_\_\_\_\_ about 10%, compared with that of last year.  
A. with      B. at      C. by      D. on
- I don't find it difficult to get up early in the morning.  
A. It's difficult for me to get up early in the morning.  
B. I'm used to getting up early in the morning.  
C. I hate getting up early in the morning.  
D. I used to get up early in the morning.
- John congratulated us \_\_\_\_\_ our exam with high marks.

- A. on passing      B. for passing      C. to pass      D. on pass
12. I assume that you are acquainted \_\_\_\_\_ this subject since you are responsible \_\_\_\_\_ writing accompanying materials.  
A. to/for      B. with/for      C. to/to      D. with/with
13. The old woman accused the boy \_\_\_\_\_ the window.  
A. in breaking      B. on breaking      C. at breaking      D. of breaking
14. In order to make the house more beautiful and newer, the Browns had it \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
A. to be repainted      B. repaint      C. repainted      D. to repaint
15. I love \_\_\_\_\_ films but I seldom find time to go to the cinema.  
A. seeing      B. see      C. saw      D. seen
16. We're going to freeze out here if you don't let us \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.  
A. come up      B. go into      C. take off      D. get on
17. Kevin put a fence so that people didn't walk on his garden.  
A. Kevin put a fence because he wants to remind people to walk on his garden.  
B. Kevin put a fence to prevent people from walking on his garden.  
C. In order to tell people to walk on his garden, Kevin put a fence.  
D. So as to encourage people to walk on his garden, Kevin put a fence.
18. I regret going to the cinema. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_  
A. hadn't gone there      B. haven't gone there  
C. didn't go there      D. would not go there
19. "Why don't you ask your parents for advice?" said Tom.  
A. Tom advised me asking my parents for advice.  
B. Tom said to me to ask my parents for advice.  
C. Tom wanted to know the reason why I don't ask my parents for advice.  
D. Tom suggested that I ask my parents for advice.
20. He was suspected to have stolen credit cards. The police have investigated him for days.  
A. He has been investigated for days, suspected to have stolen credit cards.  
B. Suspecting to have stolen credit cards, he has been investigated for days.  
C. Having suspected to have stolen credit cards, he has been investigated for days.  
D. Suspected to have stolen credit cards, he has been investigated for days.
21. The house is too dark. You need \_\_\_\_\_ a bright color.  
A. to be painted      B. painting it      C. to have it painted      D. to have it paint
22. My music teacher suggested \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour before breakfast.  
A. practising      B. to practise      C. having practised      D. to practising
23. It's no good \_\_\_\_\_ to him; he never answers letters.  
A. write      B. to write      C. writing      D. for writing
24. We all \_\_\_\_\_ working with you. You are so dynamic.  
A. believe      B. judge      C. think      D. appreciate
25. \_\_\_\_\_ have made communication faster and easier through the use of email and Internet is widely recognized.  
A. That it is computers      B. That computers  
C. Computers that      D. It is that computers
26. He \_\_\_\_\_ his wife for forgetting their wedding anniversary  
A. approached      B. reproached      C. reproduced      D. renounced
27. Bill was on the verge of speeding when he saw the patrolman.  
A. Bill was given a speeding ticket by the patrolman.

- B. Bill was speeding when he saw the patrolman.  
 C. Bill was about to speed when he saw the patrolman.  
 D. Bill told the patrolman that he had not been speeding.
28. Lan didn't apply for the job in the library and regrets it now.  
 A. Lan wishes she had applied for the job in the library.  
 B. Lan wishes she hadn't applied for the job in the library.  
 C. Lan wishes she would apply for the job in the library.  
 D. Lan wishes she applies for the job in the library.
29. Why not \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting until Thursday morning?  
 A. postpone                      B. postponing                      C. you postpone                      D. do you postpone
30. There is no point in your phoning Jane - she's away.  
 A. It would be a waste of time phoning Jane - she's away.  
 B. You waste your time if you insist on phoning Jane - she's away.  
 C. Don't spend your valuable time phoning Jane - she's out.  
 D. Jane is very difficult to phone - she's always away.
31. We've had to postpone \_\_\_\_\_ to France because the children are ill.  
 A. be gone                      B. to go                      C. going                      D. go
32. I didn't see the red light at the crossroads. Otherwise, I \_\_\_\_\_ my car.  
 A. stopped                      B. had stopped  
 C. would have stopped                      D. would stop
33. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ him tomorrow. It will be a big sum of money I've been saving so far.  
 A. paying                      B. to pay                      C. paid                      D. to be paid
34. The bed-ridden old man objected \_\_\_\_\_ as a burden on his family.  
 A. to being regarded                      B. at his being regarded  
 C. with his regarding                      D. for regarding
35. Her mother can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ her at home all day.  
 A. seeing                      B. see                      C. seen                      D. to see
36. My little brother is very \_\_\_\_\_ collecting sea shells.  
 A. interested of                      B. keen in                      C. fond on                      D. interested in
37. Tom denied \_\_\_\_\_ part in the fighting at school.  
 A. to take                      B. take                      C. to taking                      D. taking
38. "I haven't been very open-minded," said the manager.  
 A. The manager promised to be very open-minded.  
 B. The manager admitted not having been very open-minded.  
 C. The manager denied having been very open-minded.  
 D. The manager refused to have been very open-minded.
39. The president offered his congratulations to the players when they won the cup.  
 A. The president congratulated the players on their winning the match.  
 B. When they won the cup, the players had been offered some congratulations from the president,  
 C. The president would offered the players congratulations if they won the match.  
 D. The president congratulated that the players had won the cup.
40. The child that we caught \_\_\_\_\_ was made to stand in the corner of the classroom.  
 A. misbehavior                      B. misbehave                      C. behaving                      D. misbehaving
41. The shop assistant is ready to \_\_\_\_\_ me a helping hand. She is very nice.  
 A. take                      B. lend                      C. offer                      D. get
42. Young people have become increasingly committed \_\_\_\_\_ social activities.



A. of                      B. in                      C. to                      D. at

43. The suspect confessed \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the police his crime                      B. his crime  
C. his crime the police                      D. his crime to the police
44. She \_\_\_\_\_ to the station every day but then she suddenly decided to walk instead.  
A. used to                      B. was used to                      C had used to                      D. didn't used to
45. There has been an announcement from the Principal that the students will not hear the bell \_\_\_\_\_ this week as it has broken.  
A. ring                      B. ringing                      C. rang                      D. rung
46. Don't use the milk I bought last month. It's \_\_\_\_\_ date now.  
A. out of                      B. in for                      C. into                      D. over
47. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ much homework.  
A. did                      B. to do                      C. do                      D. doing
48. My student practises \_\_\_\_\_ English with her friends every day.  
A. speaking                      B. to speak                      C. spoke                      D. speak
49. Studies indicate \_\_\_\_\_ collecting art today than ever before.  
A. more people that are                      B. there are that more people  
C. that there are more people                      D. people there are more
50. Edith Harlow has kindly agreed \_\_\_\_\_. You should ask him.  
A. to helping                      B. to help                      C. help                      D. helping

**II. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. What do you fancy doing this evening?  
=>What do you want.....
2. Why don't we ask him for help?  
=>I suggest.....
3. Helen said she would go to the party with us.  
=>Helen agreed.....
4. I met you somewhere, I clearly remember that.  
=>I clearly remember.....
5. My mother said I had better go on a vacation.  
=>My mother advised me.....
6. It's not a good idea to travel during rush hour.  
=>It's best to avoid.....
7. He said that it was true that he didn't have a license.  
=>He admitted.....
8. The teacher said that we mustn't use dictionary during the test.  
=>The teacher didn't allow.....
9. The customs officers told him to open the briefcase.  
=>The customs officer made.....
10. John smoked a lot when he was young.  
=>John used to.....
11. I don't find it difficult to get up early in the morning.  
=>I am used.....
12. I would like you to help me to put the chairs away.  
=>Do you mind.....
13. My sister expects to meet my aunt next summer in Hanoi.

=>My sister is looking.....

14. You can try to get Jim to lend you his car, but you won't succeed.

=>There's no use.....

15. I told him off. Then I realized I was wrong.

=>After I.....

16. I worked very hard for the exam. Then I passed it.

=>By the time I.....

17. He bought a radio. First he checked the price.

=>Before he.....

18. She crossed the road. I saw her.

=>I saw.....

19. We wanted to open the door, but we couldn't.

=>We tried.....

20. Dad regretted that he had sold our house.

=>Dad regretted.....

**III. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. They one started these machines by hand

=>They used.....

2. When I was a little boy, I often played with my dog

=>I used.....

3. Minh often got up late, but now he doesn't get up late any more

=>Minh used.....

4. He would go hunting when he was in Africa

=>He used .....

5. Jane found driving on the left difficult

=>Jane wasn't used .....

6. She doesn't normally drives a car on the left

=>She isn't used .....

7. My brother doesn't serve in the army any longer.

=>My brother used .....

8. Barbara is not as keen on travel as she used to be.

=>Barbara used.....

9. When he was young, he usually did morning exercise in the park.

=>He used .....

10. The man often spent his holiday in the mountain when he was young.

=>The man used .....

11. Before he had the car, he went to work by bike.

=>Before he had the car, he used to .....

12. When I was young, I usually get up early.

=>I used .....

13. Minh normally gets up early

=>Minh gets used .....

14. It took us five hours to get to london

=>We had.....

15. He wrote the report in two hours

=>It took.....

16. I get to work in twenty minutes

=>I spend .....

17. My daughter spends two hours studying english everyday

=>It take .....

18. John finished his essay in two hours.

=>It took .....

19. Keeping the environment clean is very important.-It's

=>It's .....

20. Learning English is important

=>It 's.....

## TỔNG ÔN TẬP NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 1

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.

Question 1: A. disposal                      B. pollutant                      C. Extinction                      D. dangerous

Question 2: A. Produce                      B. Damage                      C. reduce                      D. control

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following.

Question 3: A. Natural                      B. disrupt                      C. Destruction                      D. agricultural

Question 4: A. prevention                      B. Domestic                      C. Depletion                      D. chemical

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Question 5: I'd like to see that football match because I \_\_\_\_\_ once this year.

A. weren't seeing                      B. haven't seen                      C. don't see                      D. didn't see

Question 6: The air-hostess knows the time she has been here, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn't she                      B. doesn't he                      C. has she                      D. hasn't she

Question 7: \_\_\_\_\_ one day by a passing car, the dog never walked properly again.

A. Having injured                      B. Injuring                      C. Injured                      D. To be injured

Question 8: It turned out that we \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport as the plane was delayed by several hours.

A. mustn't have rushed                      B. can't have rushed  
C. needn't have rushed                      D. shouldn't have rushed

Question 9: \_\_\_\_\_ what she prepared for the job interview, Megan didn't pass it.

A. Despite of                      B. In spite of                      C. Though                      D. However

Question 10: The ancient medical treatment \_\_\_\_\_ as an acupuncture is sometimes used during surgery.

A. to know                      B. knowing                      C. Known                      D. knows

Question 11: Some researchers are finding that daydreaming may be important to mental health and it is \_\_\_\_\_ good means of relaxation.

A. X/X                      B. X/the                      C. X/a                      D. the /X

Question 12: Luna eclipses occur each time the Earth blocks the Sun's light from the Moon \_\_\_\_\_ the Moon's full phase.

A. whenever                      B. during                      C. Whether                      D. in which

Question 13: Any pupil caught \_\_\_\_\_ was made to stand at the front of the class.

A. misbehaved                      B. misbehave                      C. Misbehavior                      D. misbehaving

Question 14: Using many symbols makes \_\_\_\_\_ to put a large amount of information on a single map.

A. possible .                      B. it possible                      C. that possible                      D. it is possible

Question 15: \_\_\_\_\_ the phone rang later that night did Anna remember the appointment.

A. No sooner                      B. Only                      C. Not until                      D. Just before

Question 16: You must lend me the money for the trip. \_\_\_\_\_, I won't be able to go.

A. Nevertheless                      B. Otherwise                      C. Consequently                      D. Therefore

Question 17: To solve this problem, it is advisable \_\_\_\_\_.

A. a drastic measure to be adopted                      B. that a drastic measure be adopted  
C. that a drastic measure is adopted                      D. that a drastic measure to be adopted

Question 18: Crushed ice is used to cool drinks, and is often applied to injuries when there is swelling, to remove excess heat \_\_\_\_\_ in the tissues.

A. generated                      B. to generate                      C. Generating                      D. generates

**Question 19:** All the girls in the school were wearing jeans, except two, one wore a blouse and a skirt and \_\_\_\_\_ wore a dress.

- A. others                      B. other                      C. the other                      D. another

**Question 20:** According to the conditions of my scholarship, after graduation, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. an employer will give me a full – time job  
B. the university will employ me full-time  
C. I would be offered by the university worl .  
D. I will be employed full-time by the university

**Question 21:** It was an awkward situation, and so there was a great silence from \_\_\_\_\_ ends of the telephone line since \_\_\_\_\_ person could find anything to say.

- A. either / none od      B. both / neither                      C. all / anyone                      D. neither / all

**Question 22:** The government is trying to convince people \_\_\_\_\_ the need for higher taxes.

- A. that                      B. for                      C. With                      D. of

**Question 23:** At the beginning of the conference, the secretary's peace \_\_\_\_\_ was warmly welcomed by all leaders.

- A. initiation                      B. initiator                      C. Initially                      D. initiative

**Question 24:** I didn't dare to admit that I had broken his glasses. He \_\_\_\_\_ so angry with me.

- A. could be                      B. can have been                      C. will surely be                      D. would have been

**Question 25:** \_\_\_\_\_ the distance was too far and the time was short, we decided to fly there instead of going there by train.

- A. To discover                      B. Discover                      C. Discovering                      D. To have discovered

**Question 26:** We are big fans of Rafael Nadal and Roger Federer, so not a match of theirs \_\_\_\_\_

- A. we had missed      B. did we miss                      C. we didn't miss                      D. we missed

**Question 27:** I know Pete's conduct was intolerable, but don't be hard \_\_\_\_\_ him.

- A. On                      B. with                      C. at                      D. to

**Question 28:** The patient was lying \_\_\_\_\_ on the bed.

- A. consciously                      B. Unconsciously                      C. unconscious                      D. consciousness

**Question 29:** There were dirty dishes and clothes all over \_\_\_\_\_ place.

- A. an                      B. X                      C. the                      D. a

**Question 30:** \_\_\_\_\_, the town doesn't get much of ocean breeze.

- A. Locating near the coast                      B. Despite location near the coast  
C. Though located near the coast                      D. In spite having location near the coast

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the most suitable response to complete each of the following exchanges.**

**Question 31:** "My throat has been a little bit sore lately. What should I do?" – " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. You'd better not do that again!                      B. Drinking lots of water would help.  
C. It's not really sore.                      D. You shouldn't have done that!

**Question 32:** "John and I are getting married next week!" – " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Sorry to hear that. Is he alright?                      B. What a surprise! Congratulations!  
C. Get well soon!                      D. My deepest condolences.

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.**

**Question 33:** The children had such difficult time when they began school in their new neighborhood that their parents decided never to move again.

- A. such difficult time      B. Began                      C. Never                      D. to move



**Question 34:** He didn't know who they were and couldn't imagine why they did it, but there must have been somebody that started the rumor which he was from London and very wealthy.

- A. which                      B. who                      C. Why                      D. that

**Question 35:** It is important that you turned off the heater every morning before you leave for class.

- A. leave for                      B. It                      C. turned off                      D. Before

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest meaning to each of the following questions.**

**Question 36:** Sally paid for her travel in advance, but I'm not sure.

- A. Sally could have paid for her travel in advance.  
B. Sally should have paid for her travel in advance.  
C. Sally needn't have paid for her travel in advance.  
D. Sally may have paid for her travel in advance.

**Question 37:** Most of the river ferries have been cancelled today due to the lack of visibility caused by the fog.

- A. A few of the ferries need to be rescheduled because of the fog that is causing poor visibility on the river.  
B. Since today's fog is obstructing visibility, the majority of the river ferries will not be running.  
C. Because of the fog, it will be difficult for most of the ferries to cross the river safely today.  
D. Whenever visibility is poor owing to the fog, nearly all of the river ferries are cancelled during the day.

**Question 38:** A drug may affect several functions, even though it's targeted at only one.

- A. A drug is taken for a specific purpose, but it may have a range of other effects.  
B. However effective a drug may be, its functions have to be several.  
C. Despite various other uses, a drug usually has a function for a special effect.  
D. The functions expected of a drug are various even if it is used for a specific disease.

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.**

**Question 39:** The burglar might come back. You'd better change all the locks.

- A. If you don't change all the locks, the burglar could come back.  
B. The burglar will come back unless you change all the locks.  
C. You'd better change all the locks or the burglar will come back.  
D. You'd better change all the locks in case the burglar comes back.

**Question 40:** My personal opinion doesn't really matter. We need to decide for the good of everyone.

- A. Though my personal opinion doesn't really matter, we need to decide for the good of everyone.  
B. Deciding for the good of everyone makes our personal opinion not really matter at all.  
C. We need to decide for the good of everyone, so my personal opinion doesn't really matter.  
D. If my personal opinion doesn't really matter, we need to decide for the good of everyone.

## TỔNG ÔN TẬP NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 2

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.

Question 1: A. Supply                      B. consist                      C. Happen                      D. delay

Question 2: A. engineer                      B. understand                      C. Referee                      D. mechanic

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following.

Question 3: A. chocolate                      B. champagne                      C. Challenge                      D. cheerful

Question 4: A. Laughs                      B. says                      C. Mouths                      D. paths

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Question 5: \_\_\_\_\_ you happen to visit him, give him my best wishes.

A. Could                      B. Would                      C. Might                      D. Should

Question 6: Housewives find it easier to do domestic chores thanks to \_\_\_\_\_ invention of labor-saving devices.

A. the                      B. a                      C. Some                      D. an

Question 7: One man \_\_\_\_\_ outside his own country is tipped to become the new President.

A. little knowing                      B. little known                      C. to know little                      D. to be little known

Question 8: Scientists and engineers have invented devices to remove \_\_\_\_\_ from industrial wastes.

A. pollutions                      B. pollute                      C. Polluting                      D. pollutants

Question 9: There is no excuse for your late submission. You \_\_\_\_\_ the report by last Friday.

A. must have finished                      B. needn't have finished  
C. should have finished                      D. mightn't have finished

Question 10: No matter \_\_\_\_\_, Mozart was an accomplished composer while still a child.

A. how it seems remarkable                      B. how remarkable it seems  
C. it seems remarkable how                      D. how seems it remarkable

Question 11: \_\_\_\_\_ the age of 21, he was able to gamble in Las Vegas.

A. When reached                      B. Upon reaching                      C. Reached                      D. As reaching

Question 12: I think he hasn't finished his assignment of literature yet, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. hasn't he                      B. does he                      C. has he                      D. do I

Question 13: \_\_\_\_\_ they've already made their decision, there's nothing much we can do.

A. Seeing that                      B. On grounds that                      C. Assuming that                      D. For reason that

Question 14: John contributed five hundred dollars to a charity organisation, but he wishes he could contribute \_\_\_\_\_.

A. more five hundred dollars                      C. the same amount also 334  
B. one other five hundred dollars                      D. another five hundred

Question 15: What measures have been \_\_\_\_\_ to control traffic jam at rush hours?

A. imagined                      B. taken                      C. Done                      D. carried

Question 16: "\_\_\_\_\_ accordance \_\_\_\_\_ the wishes \_\_\_\_\_ my people" the president said, "I am retiring \_\_\_\_\_ public life."

A In, with, of, from                      B. On, to, for, in                      C. In, of, from, at                      D. To, in, of, for

Question 17: \_\_\_\_\_ I'd like to help you out I'm afraid I just haven't got any spare money at the moment.

A. Even                      B. Despite                      C. Much as                      D. Try as

Question 18: If our team \_\_\_\_\_ U23 Uzbekistan in the final match, we the champion now.

A. have defeated/ would be

B. defeats/ will be

C. defeated/ would be

D. had defeated/ would be

**Question 19:** "Which is more important: luck or effort?" – "Luck is \_\_\_\_\_ effort.

A. of the same importance

B. of the same important as

C. as the same importance as

D. of the same importance as

**Question 20:** The report makes the recommendation that no more prisons \_\_\_\_\_.

A. must be built

B. be built

C. had to be built

D. should be building

**Question 21:** James should have stayed out of the sun as his skin is so \_\_\_\_\_.

A. sensible

B. insensible

C. Senseless

D. sensitive

**Question 22:** They've both had knee injuries, but the two friends make \_\_\_\_\_ of their weaknesses.

A. height

B. light

C. Weight

D. depth

**Question 23:** She \_\_\_\_\_ fainted when she got the news that her son had an accident.

A. rather than

B. nothing but

C. all but

D. near

**Question 24:** Determining the mineral content of soil samples is an exacting process, \_\_\_\_\_, experts must perform detail tests to analyze soil specimens.

A. so that

B. however

C. Afterwards

D. therefore

**Question 25:** It pays \_\_\_\_\_ some professional advice before you make a decision.

A. get

B. getting

C. to getting

D. to get

**Question 26:** Hardly \_\_\_\_\_ of the paintings at the gallery was for sale.

A. none

B. few

C. Some

D. any

**Question 27:** I do not believe that this preposterous scheme is \_\_\_\_\_ of our serious consideration

A. Worthy

B. worth

C. worthwhile

D. worthless

**Question 28:** Frankly, I'd rather you didn't do anything about it \_\_\_\_\_.

A. over time

B. at times

C. in times to come

D. for the time being

**Question 29:** The temperature \_\_\_\_\_ ture takes place varies widely from material to material

A. which melting

B. which they melt

C. at which melting

D. at which they melt

**Question 30:** The chemical injected into the body will attach itself \_\_\_\_\_ to cancer cells

A. preferably

B. Preferential

C. preferentially

D. preferring

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the most suitable response to complete w of the following exchanges.**

**Question 31:** "Do you mind if I take a seat ?". " \_\_\_\_\_ "

A. No, I mind

B. No, do as you please

C. Yes, do as you please

D. Yes, I don't mind

**Question 32:** Charlott is feeling unwell and has to see the doctor, Ben,

Ben: "Do you have a temperature?" - Charlotte: ". \_\_\_\_\_ "

A. Yes I think so. It's been a bit high.

B. I have a sore back.

C. What seems to be the problem?

D. I need a prescription, please,

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.**

**Question 33:** Sylvia Earle, an underwater explorer and marine biologist, who was born in the USA in 1935.

A. underwater explorer

B. Biologist

C. Who

D. the USA

**Question 34:** The threat of being dismissed do not worry me anymore because I have started on my own business.

A. The threat

B. being dismissed

C. do not worry

D. my own business

**Question 35:** I felt like a complete alien who didn't understand something people were saying.

A. felt

B. who

C. Something

D. were saying

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest meaning to each of the following questions.**

**Question 36:** Many people think that the new regulations will encourage people to use less energy.

- A. The new regulations are thought to encourage lower consumption of energy.
- B. It is thought that the new regulations will encourage people to consume more energy.
- C. It was thought that lower consumption of energy was stimulated by the new regulations.
- D. Lower consumption of energy is thought to lead to the introduction of the new regulations.

**Question 37:** He seemed very reluctant to take my advice.

- A. He seemed quite willing to take my advice.
- B. It seemed he was not ready to give me advice.
- C. It seemed he was not willing to take my advice.
- D. He seemed very anxious to take my advice.

**Question 38:** It was very impolite of him to leave without saying a word.

- A. He was very impolite to leave without saying a word.
- B. He didn't say nothing when he left.
- C. He didn't say anything as he left, which was impolite.
- D. Both A and C are correct.

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.**

**Question 39:** The wedding took place last Friday. Only members of the family were invited to it.

- A. Only members of the family were invited to the wedding, which took place last Friday.
- B. The wedding, where only members of the family were invited to, took place last Friday.
- C. The wedding took place last Friday, when only members of the family were invited to.
- D. The wedding, which only members of the family were invited to, took place last Friday.

**Question 40:** William Clark was not granted the rank of captain. Captain Lewis more or less ignored this and treated Clark as his equal in authority and rank.

- A. William Clark was not granted the rank of captain because Captain Lewis more or less ignored this and treated Clark as his equal in authority and rank.
- B. William Clark was not granted the rank of captain, thus Captain Lewis more or less ignored this and treated Clark as his equal in authority and rank.
- C. Although William Clark was not granted the rank of captain, Captain Lewis more or less ignored this and treated Clark as his equal in authority and rank.
- D. As William Clark was not granted the rank of captain, Captain Lewis more or less ignored this and treated Clark as his equal in authority and rank.

## TỔNG ÔN TẬP NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 3

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of the primary stress in each of the following questions.

Question 1: A. forgettable      B. Philosophy      C. humanism      D. objectively

Question 2: A. influential      B. Opportunity      C. expectation      D. temperament

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following.

Question 3: A. Flora      B. trophy      C. Glory      D. orally

Question 4: A. Naked      B. dogged      C. Learned      D. wicked

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Question 5: The president \_\_\_\_\_ a speech, but in the end he \_\_\_\_\_ mind.

- A. delivered - had changed      B. was delivering - changed  
C. would deliver - had changed      D. was going to deliver - changed

Question 6: Anne was not \_\_\_\_\_ to think that the test was too difficult.

- A. the only one      B. Who      C. the one who      D. among the people

Question 7: The new supermarket is do much cheaper than the one in John Street. \_\_\_\_\_, they do free home deliveries.

- A. Moreover      B. Consequently      C. Nevertheless      D. Instead

Question 8: The manager regrets \_\_\_\_\_ that a lot of people will be made redundant by the company next year.

- A. announcing      B. to announce      C. having announce      D. to have announced

Question 9: The city \_\_\_\_\_ at one time prosperous, for it enjoyed a high level of civilization.

- A. must have been      B. can't have been      C. may have been      D. should have been

Question 10: You'd better give me your answer quickly, I'll \_\_\_\_\_ withdraw the invitation.

- A. instead of      B. as long as      C. rather than      D. or else

Question 11: As I was driving home, I thought I saw a ghost standing at \_\_\_\_\_ side of the road. But it was just a reflection of the window.

- A. X      B. a      C. The      D. another

Question 12: The book would have been perfect \_\_\_\_\_ the ending

- A. had it not been for      B. it had not been for  
C. it hadn't been for      D. hadn't it been for

Question 13: There are \_\_\_\_\_ that not only governments but also individuals should join hand to tacan

- A. such a lot of environment problems      B. too numerous environmental problem  
C. so fewer environmental problems      D. such many environmental problems

Question 14: Body language \_\_\_\_\_ communication effectively.

- A. is known to enhance      B. has known to enhance  
C. knew to have been enhanced      D. was known to be enhanced

Question 15: \_\_\_\_\_, it is certain that in the future something will be different.

- A. For the best or worst      B. For better or worse  
C. For best or worst      D. For the better or worse

Question 16: There is no use persuading her to join us because her parents her to return home after the last game \_\_\_\_\_ over.

- A. had told/ was      B. have told/ is      C. told/ had been      D. tell/ has been





- Professor: "Congratulations on your award." - Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. I like it that you understand.
- B. I do appreciate your supervision.
- C. I can't agree more with yours.
- D. I feel so sorry for you, professor.

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.**

**Question 33:** Manufacturers may use food additives for preserving, to color, or to flavor, or to fortify food.

- A. may use
- B. for preserving
- C. to flavor
- D. fortify

**Question 34:** If you have some sufficient knowledge of English, you can make yourself understand almost everywhere.

- A. some
- B. Of
- C. Understand
- D. almost

**Question 35:** While working as a travel agency, my elder brother specialized in arranging tours of the Mekong Delta for foreign tourists.

- A. a travel agency
- B. While
- C. specialized in
- D. tours of

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest meaning to each of the following questions.**

**Question 36:** "It can't be Mike who leaked the document, it might be Tom." said our manager.

- A. Our manager suspected Tom of having leaked the document, not Mike.
- B. Our manager blamed Tom for having leaked the document instead of Mike.
- C. Our manager showed his uncertainty about who leaked the document, Mike or Tom.
- D. Our manager made it clear that Tom was the one who leaked the document, not Mike.

**Question 37:** Their holiday plans fell through because there was a strike at the airport.

- A. They couldn't go on holiday as planned as a result of a strike at the airport.
- B. They failed to go on the holiday like they had planned because a strike took place at the airport.
- C. A strike at the airport also put a stop to their holiday plans.
- D. Disappointingly, a strike at the airport forced their holiday plans to nothing.

**Question 38:** Sometimes having professional assistance with your CV can increase your name job.

- A. Having your CV professionally prepared determines whether you'll get the job or not.
- B. The prospects for finding employment can possibly be enhanced by a professionally produced CV.
- C. Having a professional help you with your CV is a sure way to find a job.
- D. Without a professional CV, it is impossible to find a job.

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.**

**Question 39:** He was appointed to the post. Right after his appointment, he fell ill.

- A. No sooner did he appointed to the post than he fell ill.
- B. No sooner had he appointed to the post than he fell ill.
- C. Hardly had he appointed to the post when he fell ill.
- D. Hardly had he been appointed to the post when he fell ill.

**Question 40:** Canada does not require US citizens to obtain passports to enter the country. Mexico does not require US citizens to do the same.

- A. Canada does not require US citizens to obtain passports to enter the country, and Mexico does, either.
- B. Canada does not require US citizens to obtain passports to enter the country, and Mexico does not, either.

C. Canada does not require US citizens to obtain passports to enter the country, and neither Mexico does.

D. Canada does not require US citizens to obtain passports to enter the country while Mexico does.

# PHẦN II : ĐÁP ÁN

## MODULE

### 1

## PHONETICS

### IV. THỰC HÀNH.

I. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three on pronunciation on each of the following questions.

1. D	2. A	3. B	4. B	5. A	6. A	7. C	8. D	9. D	10. D
11. B	12. D	13. C	14. A	15. B	16. B	17. A	18. B	19. B	20. B
21. C	22. C	23. A	24. A	25. C	26. A	27. C	28. B	29. D	30. D
31. B	32. A	33. C	34. B	35. A	36. B	37. D	38. A	39. C	40. D
41. D	42. B	43. C	44. B	45. C	46. B	47. A	48. A	49. A	50. A
51. A	52. A	53. C	54. B	55. D	56. C	57. D	58. B	59. D	60. B
61. A	62. B	63. D	64. B	65. B	66. A	67. D	68. D	69. B	70. A
71. B	72. B	73. B	74. C	75. D	76. A	77. B	78. B	79. B	80. C
81. C	82. B	83. D	84. B	85. B	86. D	87. C	88. C	89. D	90. C
91. D	92. A	93. C	94. D	95. C	96. D	97. C	98. B	99. B	100. A

### B. TRỌNG ÂM TRONG TIẾNG ANH

#### II. Thực Hành

I. Mark the letter A, B, c, or D to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions

1. D	2. C	3. C	4. B	5. D	6. B	7. C	8. B	9. B	10. A
11. A	12. A	13. D	14. B	15. C	16. B	17. D	18. B	19. A	20. A
21. C	22. A	23. C	24. B	25. C	26. B	27. B	28. B	29. B	30. C
31. B	32. A	33. C	34. A	35. B	36. B	37. C	38. A	39. D	40. A
41. C	42. D	43. D	44. B	45. C	46. B	47. D	48. C	49. A	50. B
51. A	52. D	53. A	54. B	55. D	56. A	57. D	58. C	59. D	60. D
61. D	62. A	63. B	64. D	65. D	66. C	67. D	68. D	69. A	70. D
71. C	72. B	73. C	74. A	75. C	76. D	77. C	78. D	79. B	80. D
81. C	82. C	83. B	84. B	85. C	86. A	87. B	88. C	89. C	90. A
91. C	92. C	93. A	94. A	95. D	96. D	97. C	98. B	99. A	100. A

## MODULE

### 2

## VERB TENSES

### IV. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. C	2. A	3. C	4. A	5. D	6. C	7. C	8. B	9. C	10. D
11. B	12. C	13. D	14. A	15. D	16. B	17. B	18. B	19. D	20. B
21. A	22. A	23. B	24. B	25. C	26. C	27. C	28. D	29. B	30. B
31. C	32. A	33. C	34. C	35. A	36. C	37. B	38. C	39. A	40. C
41. C	42. B	43. D	44. A	45. C	46. B	47. C	48. A	49. B	50. B

II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. B	2. C	3. B	4. B	5. C	6. B	7. A	8. A	9. A	10. B
11. A	12. B	13. A	14. B	15. C	16. A	17. B	18. B	19. D	20. C
21. B	22. B	23. D	24. B	25. C	26. A	27. B	28. D	29. C	30. C
31. B	32. B	33. A	34. C	35. B	36. C	37. C	38. A	39. B	40. B
41. B	42. D	43. A	44. A	45. A	46. B	47. B	48. D	49. B	50. B

## MODULE

### 3

# THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

## II THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions

1. C	2. B	3. B	4. C	5. A	6. C	7. A	8. C	9. C	10. B
11. B	12. D	13. C	14. B	15. B	16. A	17. B	18. B	19. B	20. D
21. A	22. B	23. B	24. C	25. D	26. B	27. C	28. A	29. C	30. B
31. B	32. C	33. A	34. A	35. C	36. B	37. C	38. B	39. A	40. A
41. A	42. B	43. B	44. C	45. A	46. D	47. D	48. B	49. B	50. C

II. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.

1. He hasn't never gone abroad before.
2. She has driven for 1 month.
3. We have eaten since it started raining.
4. I haven't cut my hair since I left her.
5. We haven't met (each other) for a long time.
6. How long have you had it?
7. I haven't never eaten such a delicious meal before.
8. The last time I saw him was 8 days.
9. It is .... days since I last took a bath.
10. Samuel has kept a diary since 1997.
11. We have learned English for five years
12. I have lived in Ho Chi Minh City since I was 8.
13. She started to teach the children in this remote village five months ago.
14. The last time he wrote to me was in April.
15. She last had a swim was five years ago
16. They haven't talked to each other for two months.
17. She hasn't seen her elder sister since 1999



18. It's years since she wrote to me.  
 19. It's ten years since Robert and Catherine were married.  
 20. The last time we jogged was in August.

**MODULE**

**4**

**SUBJECT AND VERB AGREEMENTS**

**II. THỰC HÀNH**

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. D	2. A	3. C	4. A	5. B	6. C	7. A	8. D	9. C	10. C
11. B	12. A	13. B	14. C	15. D	16. A	17. D	18. A	19. B	20. A
21. C	22. C	23. C	24. D	25. C	26. B	27. C	28. C	29. B	30. D
31. A	32. C	33. C	34. B	35. A	36. C	37. A	38. A	39. D	40. A
41. A	42. A	43. C	44. A	45. B	46. B	47. C	48. A	49. A	50. A
51. D	52. B	53. C	54. A	55. B	56. C	57. D	58. C	59. B	60. D

**II. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

- |         |           |         |                 |                |
|---------|-----------|---------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. is   | 2. is     | 3. are  | 4. is           | 5. was/were    |
| 6. is   | 7. is     | 8. wear | 9. is           | 10. is         |
| 11. are | 12. was   | 13. is  | 14. is          | 15. has been   |
| 16. has | 17. is    | 18. is  | 19. are         | 20. are        |
| 21. has | 22. are   | 23. is  | 24. are         | 25. command    |
| 26. is  | 27. makes | 28. are | 29. is spent/is | 30. was stolen |

**III. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

- I like classical music very much.
- Cattle were driven hundreds of miles.
- That's wonderful news.
- Have the police arrived yet?
- I don't like hot weather. Thirty degrees is too hot for me.
- Every girl and boy has to wear uniform at this school.
- Where are my trousers? Have you seen them anywhere?
- There is some water in the bottle.
- The trees over the hill are green.
- China, a country with many people, grows a lot of rice.
- The computer lab, with its many computers, is moving into the new building.
- The shoes I bought last month, while comfortable, are out of style.
- The number of students who know the answer is very low.
- Economics is the main subject of her department.
- 20 percent of the forest has been destroyed lately

MODULE

5

MODAL VERBS

II. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. D	2. C	3. B	4. D	5. C	6. C	7. B	8. A	9. B	10. B
11. B	12. A	13. D	14. A	15. D	16. C	17. B	18. C	19. B	20. A
21. B	22. D	23. C	24. C	25. C	26. A	27. C	28. C	29. C	30. A
31. C	32. C	33. C	34. B	35. C	36. B	37. D	38. B	39. D	40. A
41. D	42. D	43. C	44. A	45. A	46. C	47. D	48. C	49. B	50. C
51. C	52. D	53. D	54. A	55. A	56. B	57. C	58. D	59. B	60. A

II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. C	2. D	3. D	4. B	5. A	6. C	7. A	8. A	9. B	10. D
11. B	12. D	13. A	14. C	15. D	16. C	17. A	18. A	19. B	20. D
21. D	22. A	23. C	24. D	25. C	26. C	27. B	28. D	29. C	30. A
31. D	32. D	33. D	34. C	35. D	36. D	37. A	38. D	39. B	40. C
41. C	42. A	43. C	44. B	45. C	46. D	47. B	48. C	49. B	50. C
51. A	52. B	53. D	54. C	55. C	56. C	57. B	58. C	59. C	60. C

MODULE

6

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

II. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. A	2. C	3. B	4. B	5. C	6. A	7. C	8. C	9. C	10. B
11. B	12. B	13. A	14. C	15. C	16. B	17. B	18. D	19. D	20. A
21. C	22. B	23. A	24. B	25. A	26. C	27. D	28. B	29. D	30. C
31. A	32. C	33. B	34. B	35. B	36. C	37. B	38. B	39. D	40. C
41. B	42. C	43. C	44. B	45. C	46. A	47. C	48. D	49. C	50. A
51. B	52. D	53. A	54. A	55. B	56. C	57. A	58. A	59. D	60. B
61. B	62. B	63. A	64. A	65. D	66. B	67. B	68. A	69. B	70. B
71. B	72. C	73. A	74. C	75. D	76. C	77. A	78. D	79. A	80. B
81. C	82. B	83. A	84. D	85. A	86. D	87. B	88. A	89. D	90. B

II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions

1. C	2. C	3. C	4. A	5. C	6. C	7. B	8. D	9. C	10. C
11. D	12. D	13. D	14. A	15. B	16. A	17. A	18. B	19. B	20. A

21. B	22. A	23. D	24. D	25. B					
-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	--	--	--	--	--

**III. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

- |             |             |         |            |                  |
|-------------|-------------|---------|------------|------------------|
| 1. knew     | 2. depended | 3. were | 4. were    | 5. hadn't rained |
| 6. would be | 7. were     | 8. open | 9. leave   | 10. accompany    |
| 11. fly     | 12. take    | 13. be  | 14. remain | 15. find         |

**IV. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it**

- It looks as if he is running away from your fierce dog.
- If only I were rich and famous.
- I wish I were in a secluded beach in Mexico.
- It's high time you acquired a few manners.
- I'd rather you didn't smoke here.
- I wish you wouldn't say things like that.
- I'd rather you delivered the sofa this afternoon .
- It is advisable that she should eat less meat and fat to keep herself healthy
- It is natural that a child respect his parents
- It is necessary that he should come to the interview early
- It is important that she take two medicines everyday
- It is obligatory that every student wear uniform
- They recommended that she should go to the best doctor in town
- The man demanded that everything about the accident should be told
- I really wish I had invited her to the party.

**MODULE**

**7**

**GERUND AND INFINITIVE VERBS**

**II. THỰC HÀNH**

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. C	2. D	3. C	4. A	5. B	6. B	7. A	8. D	9. C	10. B
11. A	12. B	13. D	14. D	15. B	16. A	17. C	18. D	19. C	20. A
21. B	22. A	23. B	24. C	25. B	26. C	27. B	28. C	29. C	30. B
31. B	32. B	33. D	34. A	35. C	36. A	37. B	38. B	39. B	40. B
41. C	42. D	43. A	44. A	45. C	46. B	47. B	48. B	49. A	50. D
51. A	52. C	53. B	54. D	55. C	56. B	57. B	58. B	59. B	60. B
61. C	62. A	63. D	64. A	65. D	66. C	67. C	68. D	69. A	70. A
71. C	72. D	73. C	74. A	75. A	76. B	77. B	78. C	79. D	80. B
81. C	82. D	83. C	84. D	85. B	86. B	87. C	88. A	89. B	90. B
91. D	92. D	93. A	94. A	95. B	96. C	97. C	98. C	99. C	100. B

**Put the verbs into the right form.**

- |                        |                     |                 |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. smoking             | 2. play             | 3. to do        |
| 4. read                | 5. to go            | 6. to drive     |
| 7. to drive            | 8. to turn          | 9. not to touch |
| 10. Talking/ to finish | 11. to try/ to come | 12. to send     |

- |                            |                                       |                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 13. to lock/ going         | 14. going                             | 15. writing     |
| 16. to eat                 | 17. to answer                         | 18. to break    |
| 19. building               | 20. to go                             | 21. working     |
| 22. chatting               | 23. to see                            | 24. sailing     |
| 25. Telling                | 26. not listening/not having listened | 27. looking     |
| 28. climbing               | 29. to go                             | 30. waving      |
| 31. smoking                | 32. eating                            | 33. Not feeling |
| 34. Having finished        | 35. making                            | 36. working     |
| 37. breaking/having broken | 38. becoming                          | 39. cooking     |
| 40. waiting                | 41. going                             | 42. laughing    |
| 43. buying                 | 44. pronouncing                       | 45. Feeling     |
| 46. travelling             | 47. Swimming                          | 48. having      |
| 49. Whistling              | 50. Missing.                          |                 |

**Complete these sentences so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.**

1. My father allowed me to use car.
2. I didn't expect it to rain
3. Let him do what he wants
4. Tim's glasses make him look older
5. I want you to know the truth
6. Remind me to phone my sister
7. Sarah persuaded me to apply for the job
8. My lawyer advised me not to say anything to the police y lawyer advised .....
9. I was warned not to believe everything he says
10. Having a car enables you to get round more easily
11. You don't have to play football with my best friends today. \_\_\_\_\_.
12. You suggested visting her parents the next week.
13. It takes Thanh 3 hours a day to do the homework. Thanh wastes 3 hours a day doing the homework.
14. Hanh reminded to close all the window and turn off the lights before going out .
15. Linh told him not to repair her bicycle.

**Complete these sentences so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence "using Perfect Participle"**

1. Having switched off the lights, we went to bed.
2. Having asked his mother's permission, the boy.....
3. Having drunk too much, he...
4. Having done two test today, we are exhausted.
5. Having filled the washing machine, he switched it on.
6. Having been to the disco the night before, she overslept in the morning.
7. Having worked in the garden all day, he were...
8. Not having slept for two days, she .....
9. Not having seen him for ages, I .....
10. Not having ridden a horse for a long time, I found.....

**Complete these sentences so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence " using perfect gerunds"**

1. After having done his homework, they went to bed
2. Learning how to cook is easy for anyone.
3. People admired Tony for having rescued the kids from the fire.

4. He denied having dumped lots of rubbish onto the beach.
5. Having read some documents about Green Earth, Ha decided to join the organization.
6. I remember having seen him before.
7. Thank you for having saved the lives of hundreds of wild animals.
8. They regretted having hunted and killed many wild animals.
9. Having refused Nam's offer of a lift in his car, Mai had to walk home.
10. The politician denied having lied to the villagers.

## MODULE

# 8

## TAG QUESTIONS

### II. THỰC HÀNH

**1. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. D	2. A	3. B	4. C	5. D	6. B	7. D
8. A	9. D	10. B	11. C	12. B	13. A	14. D
15. A	16. C	17. A	18. A	19. A	20. C	21. D
22. C	23. D	24. C	25. A	26. D	27. A	28. C
29. B	30. D	31. C	32. D	33. C	34. A	35. A
36. A	37. B	38. C	39. C	40. A	41. A	42. A
43. C	44. D	45. C	46. B	47. D	48. C	49. D
50. B	51. A	52. B	53. A	54. C	55. C	56. B
57. A	58. C	59. B	60. D	61. A	62. A	63. C
64. B	65. D	66. B	67. C	68. D	69. A	70. C
71. A	72. B	73. D	74. C	75. C	76. A	77. B
78. C	79. B	80. B	81. C	82. C	83. B	84. A
85. B	86. D	87. D	88. C	89. D	90. D	91. B
92. C	93. A	94. B	95. C	96. A	97. B	98. B
99. B	100. C	101. A	102. A	103. A	104. C	105. C
106. D	107. B	108. A	109. B	110. B	111. B	112. A
113. B	114. A	115. D	116. A	117. B	118. A	119. C
120. B	121. C	122. D	123. B	124. C	125. B	126. C
127. A	128. D	129. B	130. D	131. A	132. A	133. B
134. C	135. B	136. D	137. A	138. D	139. A	140. A
141. B	142. A	143. A	144. A	145. A	146. C	147. C
148. B	149. A	150. A				



**Add the tag questions to complete the sentences.**

- |                  |                 |                 |                    |                |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. isn't she     | 2. don't we     | 3. haven't you  | 4. do they         | 5. didn't he   |
| 6. aren't they   | 7. did she      | 8. couldn't he  | 9. won't he        | 10. aren't I   |
| 11. is he        | 12. am I        | 13. didn't it   | 14. should you     | 15. do you     |
| 16. doesn't she  | 17. isn't there | 18. didn't he   | 19. have they      | 20. isn't it   |
| 21. aren't I     | 22. hadn't you  | 23. didn't they | 24. would you      | 25. won't he   |
| 26. won't they   | 27. hasn't she  | 28. will it     | 29. shouldn't they | 30. am I       |
| 31. have they    | 32. isn't it    | 33. haven't you | 34. didn't they    | 35. isn't it   |
| 36. isn't it     | 37. have you    | 38. aren't I    | 39. wouldn't you   | 40. would you  |
| 41. isn't it     | 42. hadn't he   | 43. is there    | 44. isn't it       | 45. isn't it   |
| 46. will she     | 47. isn't he    | 48. is it       | 49. aren't you     | 50. didn't she |
| 51. did he       | 52. don't they  | 53. hasn't he   | 54. isn't it       | 55. will he    |
| 56. doesn't he   | 57. aren't you  | 58. did he      | 59. hasn't she     | 60. isn't he   |
| 61. was she      | 62. is he       | 63. won't they  | 64. hasn't he      | 65. don't they |
| 66. aren't there | 67. aren't I    | 68. shall we    | 69. will you       | 70. doesn't he |
| 71. will he      | 72. isn't he    | 73. isn't it    | 74. isn't she      | 75. don't we   |
| 76. haven't you  | 77. do they     | 78. didn't he   | 79. aren't they    | 80. did she    |
| 81. couldn't he  | 82. won't he    | 83. aren't I    | 84. doesn't he     | 85. did you    |
| 86. am I         | 87. does she    | 88. can't you   | 89. aren't I       | 90. isn't it   |
| 91. have they    | 92. didn't she  | 93. didn't they | 94. was she        | 95. hasn't she |
| 96. won't I      | 97. should you  | 98. wasn't he   | 99. isn't it       | 100. did you   |

**MODULE**

**9**

**COMPARISONS**

**(A) II. THỰC HÀNH**

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions**

1. B	2. B	3. C	4. D	5. B	6. B	7. A	8. B	9. C	10. A
11. C	12. D	13. A	14. B	15. C	16. C	17. C	18. D	19. C	20. C
21. A	22. A	23. A	24. D	25. A	26. C	27. A	28. B	29. C	30. C
31. D	32. A	33. B	34. D	35. A	36. B	37. C	38. D	39. A	40. D
41. B	42. A	43. C	44. A	45. D	46. A	47. B	48. B	49. C	50. C
51. B	52. A	53. C	54. A	55. C	56. C	57. C	58. B	59. A	60. A
61. A	62. D	63. C	64. A	65. C	66. B	67. B	68. D	69. A	70. D
71. C	72. A	73. C	74. D	75. C	76. D	77. A	78. B	79. D	80. B
81. B	82. A	83. B	84. A	85. B	86. C	87. B	88. A	89. D	90. B

**II. Use the correct form of adjectives and adverbs in blankets.**

- |                           |                       |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. the most popular       | 2. more polite        | 3. more important                 |
| 4. the most international | 5. as intelligent as  | 6. well                           |
| 7. more fluently          | 8. softer             | 9. hotter                         |
| 10. more clever/cleverer  | 11. more dangerous    | 12. big/bigger                    |
| 13. more expensive        | 14. the most exciting | 15. the most clever/the cleverest |

- |                             |                         |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 16. worse                   | 17. happiest            | 18. as mountainous country as |
| 19. northernmost            | 20. the heaviest        | 21. bigger and bigger         |
| 22. more and more bored     | 23. heavier and heavier | 24. more and more nervous     |
| 25. more and more expensive |                         |                               |

**III. Rewrite the following sentences with "COMPARISONS"**

- I've never tasted a more delicious cake than this one.
- George is the most dependable person I've ever met.
- Your mother is more kind-hearted than anyone.
- Mr John is the best teacher in this school.
- Is this the smallest hat you've got?
- Your house is not as big as my house.
- The red car is more expensive than the black car.
- That film is not as interesting as this one.
- Your kitchen is bigger than mine.
- My grandmother is the oldest in my family
- Tam is the tallest student in my class.
- My mother can cook better than me.
- Jack can play tennis better than he.
- You spent more money than than me.
- This book is more expensive than I think.
- No one in his class is taller than him.
- No other films are more interesting than this one.
- Japanese cars are the most expensive car in the world.
- That exercise is not as easy as this one.
- Jack drives not as carefully as he does.

**IV. Rewrite these sentences, using the + comparative...the + comparative**

- The nearer you get to the equator, the higher the temperature becomes.
- The longer she stays in England, the better her English will be
- The faster you write, the more illegible your writing becomes
- The more famous the artist is, the higher the value of a picture is.
- The harder I work, the less time I spend with my family.
- The hotter you get, the more you sweat.
- The more tired you are, the harder it is to concentrate.
- The more expensive a hotel is, the better its service is.
- The longer the delay was, the angrier the crowd became.
- The more I think about the idea, the less attractive it becomes

**(B) II. THỰC HÀNH**

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. C	2. B	3. C	4. A	5. B	6. C	7. B	8. B	9. D	10. C
11. A	12. C	13. A	14. C	15. A	16. A	17. B	18. C	19. B	20. C
21. D	22. A	23. D	24. B	25. D	26. C	27. D	28. D	29. C	30. B
31. B	32. C	33. B	34. C	35. B					

**II. Reorder the words to make sentence.**

- She wore a long white wedding dress.

2. It is an intelligent young English woman.
3. This is a new black sleeping bag.
4. He bought a beautiful big pink house.
5. She gave him a small brown leather wallet.

## MODULE

# 10

## ARTICLES

### II. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. D	2. B	3. D	4. B	5. D	6. C	7. A	8. B	9. B	10. B
11. A	12. D	13. D	14. A	15. D	16. A	17. D	18. D	19. B	20. A
21. A	22. D	23. B	24. A	25. B	26. B	27. C	28. D	29. A	30. B
31. C	32. D	33. A	34. C	35. B	36. D	37. A	38. C	39. A	40. A
41. D	42. D	43. A	44. B	45. A	46. D	47. C	48. A	49. C	50. A

II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. A	2. A	3. B	4. D	5. A	6. A	7. B	8. C	9. C	10. D
11. C	12. B	13. B	14. A	15. C	16. D	17. D	18. B	19. A	20. B
21. C	22. C	23. A	24. C	25. B	26. A	27. D	28. B	29. A	30. B
31. A	32. D	33. B	34. D	35. C	36. A	37. D	38. A	39. D	40. C
41. B	42. A	43. C	44. A	45. B	46. A	47. D	48. C	49. D	50. C

III. Fill in the blank with a suitable word (a/an/the/x(no articles))

1. x/x	2. x	3. x/x	4. the	5. a/x/x/x
6. the/the	7. x	8. a	9. the	10. the
11. x	12. The/x	13. a	14. An/the	15. a/the
16. the	17. The	18. x/x	19. an	20. a/a/the
21. the	22. the	23. x	24. x	25. x
26. x	27. x/x	28. An/x	29. the	30. a
31. a/the/the	32. The/a	33. The/an	34. The/the	35. a/the
36. a/a	37. The/the	38. a/a/the/the/the	39. An/a/a/the/a	40. x
41. x/the	42. x/the	43. The/the	44. the	45. x/x/the
46. a/x/x	47. a	48. the	49. An	50. the

## MODULE

# 11

## WORD FORMATION

### II. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. A	2. B	3. A	4. D	5. A	6. B	7. B	8. C	9. A	10. B
11. C	12. D	13. C	14. B	15. C	16. A	17. D	18. B	19. C	20. C

21. A	22. B	23. D	24. C	25. A	26. C	27. B	28. A	29. D	30. B
31. A	32. B	33. D	34. C	35. C	36. D	37. D	38. C	39. B	40. B
41. B	42. C	43. A	44. C	45. D	46. D	47. A	48. C	49. D	50. C
51. C	52. B	53. C	54. A	55. C	56. C	57. C	58. C	59. B	60. B
61. A	62. C	63. B	64. B	65. B	66. B	67. D	68. A	69. B	70. D
71. C	72. D	73. D	74. D	75. A	76. A	77. A	78. B	79. A	80. C
81. C	82. A	83. C	84. D	85. B	86. A	87. B	88. C	89. B	90. C
91. A	92. D	93. C	94. C	95. B	96. A	97. D	98. B	99. D	100. B

## II. Use the correct form of the word given in each sentence

- deskilled: to reduce the amount of skill that is needed to do a particular job
- insidious: âm mưu thâm độc
- brainy: thông minh
- archetypal: nguyên mẫu, không thay đổi
- burnout: tình trạng kiệt sức
- outgoings: chi tiêu
- enamoured: yêu thích
- repetitious: involving something that is often repeated, in a way that becomes boring.
- blandishments: lời a dua, nịnh hót
- insightful: sâu sắc
- trendy: hợp mốt
- Condescending: xem thường, trịch thượng
- snobbish: trịch thượng, tự cao
- Dispirited: xuống tinh thần
- enraged: vô cùng giận dữ
- acquittal: tuyên bố vô tội (tòa án)
- mercilessly: không thương tiếc
- amateurishly: một cách nghiệp dư
- insanity: tâm thần
- amoral: coi thường luân lý
- falsehood: hành động sai trái
- downcast: buồn bã
- electrifying: hào hứng, thú vị
- misspent: sai lầm
- disintegrated: tan rã
- overjoyed: mừng rỡ
- besetting: lặp đi lặp lại
- provisional: tạm thời
- magisterial: hống hách
- predilection: sự yêu thích

## MODULE

# 12

## EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY

### II. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. A	2. B	3. A	4. C	5. D	6. C	7. D
8. C	9. D	10. D	11. C	12. A	13. A	14. C
15. B	16. D	17. A	18. D	19. A	20. A	21. C
22. D	23. B	24. A	25. B	26. C	27. C	28. D
29. C	30. A	31. C	32. C	33. B	34. D	35. C
36. A	37. B	38. B	39. C	40. B	41. A	42. A
43. A	44. C	45. A	46. A	47. B	48. B	49. B
50. B	51. B	52. A	53. A	54. B	55. C	56. B
57. A	58. B	59. C	60. A	61. B	62. C	63. B
64. A	65. B	66. A	67. D	68. B	69. A	70. B
71. D	72. A	73. C	74. B	75. C	76. B	77. D
78. C	79. A	80. C	81. D	82. B	83. B	84. D
85. C	86. D	87. C	88. D	89. A	90. A	91. A
92. B	93. D	94. C	95. B	96. A	97. A	98. A
99. C	100. A	101. B	102. C	103. D	104. A	105. D
106. A	107. C	108. A	109. B	110. C	111. A	112. B
113. C	114. B	115. B	116. A	117. B	118. A	119. B
120. A	121. C	122. D	123. A	124. C	125. A	126. B
127. A	128. B	129. A	130. D	131. B	132. C	133. D
134. A	135. B	136. C	137. A	138. C	139. A	140. B
141. D	142. C	143. B	144. A	145. C	146. B 147.	C 148. A
149. C	150. C					

**II. Put in ("Almost", "Almost All", "Most of", a few, few, a little, little, much, many, some, any)(one word only)**

- |           |            |              |            |           |
|-----------|------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. few    | 2. little  | 3. many      | 4. much    | 5. few    |
| 6. little | 7. many    | 8. little    | 9. little  | 10. a few |
| 11. few   | 12. little | 13. a little | 14. little | 15. a few |



16. Almost all      17. Almost all      18. most of      19. almost      20. almost  
 21. almost all      22. most of      23. almost      24. most of      25. almost  
 26. few      27. a little/little      28. a little      29. a few/many/some      30. little

**MODULE**

**13**

**PASSIVE VOICES**

**III. THỰC HÀNH**

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. A	2. A	3. B	4. B	5. C	6. A	7. B
8. B	9. B	10. A	11. B	12. C	13. B	14. C
15. D	16. C	17. D	18. B	19. A	20. C	21. C
22. A	23. B	24. C	25. D	26. D	27. B	28. A
29. A	30. A	31. A	32. A	33. C	34. B	35. B
36. C	37. D	38. C	39. B	40. C	41. A	42. C
43. C	44. B	45. D	46. B	47. C	48. B	49. C
50. D	51. A	52. B	53. A	54. C	55. D	56. B
57. C	58. B	59. B	60. C	61. D	62. A	63. C
64. B	65. C	66. A	67. B	68. B	69. C	70. A
71. D	72. B	73. A	74. B	75. B	76. B	77. B
78. B	79. B	80. A	81. B	82. C	83. C	84. B
85. D	86. D	87. C	88. A	89. A	90. B	91. D
92. A	93. B	94. A	95. C	96. B	97. A	98. A
99. D	100. D	101. A	102. D	103. D	104. D	105. A
106. A	107. B	108. B	109. C	110. C	111. D	112. D
113. D	114. B	115. C	116. C	117. A	118. C	119. D
120. B	121. B	122. A	123. B	124. B	125. C	126. D
127. A	128. B	129. D	130. D			

**II. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động các thì )**

- This flower is watered (by my father) every morning.
- Fiona was invented to John's birthday party last month.
- The dinner is being prepared (by her mother) in the kitchen.
- Our teeth should be cleaned twice a day.
- The English grammar has been explained (by our teacher).
- The accident was caused in this city (by some drunk drivers).
- Tom's parents will be visited (by him) next month.
- The secretary wasn't phoned (by the manager) this morning.
- Was this beautiful dress bought by Mary?
- These old pictures won't be hung in the living room (by me).
- This factory wasn't built (by the Greens) during the Second World War.

12. This house and these cars are going to be painted for Christmas day by the Greens.
13. The cats had been fed (by Ann) before she went to the cinema.
14. The pollution problems have been discussed (by the students) since last week.
15. Has the most valuable painting in the national museum been stolen (by the thieves).
16. The new president will be interviewed on TV (by some people).
17. How many languages are spoken in Canada (by them)?
18. Are those shoes going to be repaired ?
19. His nose has been broken in a football match (by him).
20. Have above sentences been finished ?

### III. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động các động từ trường thuật )

1. He is thought to have died a natural death.
2. 13 is believed to be an unlucky number.
3. John is said to be the brightest student in class.
4. The President was reported to have suffered a heart attack.
5. They were known to have told him of the meeting.
6. She was declared to win the competition.
7. The man was rumored to be still living.
8. Jack London's life and writing is thought to represent the American love of adventure.
9. The troops were reported to be coming.
10. The earth was believed to stand still.

### IV. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động thể nhờ bảo)

1. I had the gate painted last week.
2. She will have her car washed tomorrow.
3. They have the story told again.
4. John gets his shirt cleaned.
5. Anne has had her composition typed.
6. Rick will have his hair cut.
7. I will get a new dress made.
8. He had his car repaired.
9. She often gets the heater maintained.
10. They had the shoplifter arrested.
11. Are you going to have your shoes repaired?
12. I must have my teeth checked.
13. She will have her dog examined.
14. We had this photograph taken when we were on holiday last summer.
15. The Greens had their carpet cleaned.

### V. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động 2 tân ngữ)

1. I was paid a lot of money to do the job.
2. Each of us was given two exercise books by the teacher.
3. He will be told that news.
4. Those poor boys have been sent enough money.
5. The women in most countries in the world have been given the right to vote.

### VI. Rewrite the following sentences " with Passive voice" ( Bị động động từ chỉ giác quan)

1. She has been heard to sing this song several times.
2. He was seen to steal your car.
3. The work is being watched by the teacher.
4. You won't be let to do that silly thing again.

5. The children are made to work hard.
6. He was made to work all day.
7. The woman was seen putting the jewelry in her bag by the detective.
8. The hostages were made to lie down by the terrorists.
9. Drivers are advised to use an alternative route by police.
10. I am helped to do all these difficult exercises.

**MODULE**

**14**

**CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES**

**III. THỰC HÀNH**

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. C	2. B	3. B	4. C	5. B	6. B	7. C	8. D	9. B	10. C
11. C	12. B	13. C	14. B	15. A	16. D	17. A	18. B	19. B	20. A
21. A	22. B	23. A	24. C	25. C	26. D	27. C	28. A	29. A	30. A
31. B	32. B	33. A	34. C	35. C	36. D	37. A	38. D	39. A	40. B
41. B	42. B	43. C	44. A	45. D	46. B	47. A	48. D	49. A	50. A

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. B	2. C	3. B	4. B	5. B	6. D	7. C	8. C	9. C	10. C
11. C	12. B	13. C	14. B	15. B	16. C	17. D	18. D	19. D	20. A
21. D	22. A	23. D	24. B	25. C	26. B	27. A	28. A	29. B	30. D
31. B	32. C	33. B	34. C	35. A	36. D	37. C	38. B	39. A	40. C
41. A	42. D	43. A	44. A	45. B	46. B	47. B	48. D	49. A	50. B

**III. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.**

1. C	2. C	3. C	4. B	5. B	6. A	7. B	8. C	9. A	10. A
11. D	12. B	13. C	14. A	15. A	16. C	17. B	18. B	19. C	20. C
21. B	22. D	23. B	24. C	25. D	26. D	27. D	28. C	29. A	30. A
31. B	32. B	33. B	34. C	35. C	36. A	37. C	38. D	39. C	40. C
41. D	42. D	43. C	44. A	45. C	46. C	47. C	48. B	49. D	50. D

**IV. Put the verbs into the correct form.**

- |                          |                               |                                 |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. didn't go             | 2. had missed                 | 3. have                         |
| 4. wouldn't buy          | 5. will go                    | 6. wouldn't marry               |
| 7. had had               | 8. weren't                    | 9. hadn't had/wouldn't have had |
| 10. will take/don't know | 11. need/will you lend        | 12. didn't pass                 |
| 13. have read            | 14. would be                  | 15. are having                  |
| 16. had/would buy        | 17. had set                   | 18. wouldn't have asked         |
| 19. pour/floats          | 20. had played/would have won |                                 |

## V. Rewrite the conditional sentences for the following situations.

1. If Phong had enough money, he could travel abroad.
2. If I drove too close to the animals on safari, they would get scared.
3. If Tom had a passport, he would travel abroad.
4. I would have bought it if I had had enough money.
5. If tourists didn't throw litter in the river, the water would not be polluted.
6. If I could swim, I would go scuba - diving with you.
7. If I had known there was a test yesterday, I would have studied for it.
8. If these students work hard, they would pass the exam.
9. Unless ..you are careful, you will cut yourself with that knife.
10. Unless...we had more rain, our crop wouldn't be better.
11. Unless the flood had risen higher, the crop wouldn't have been ruined.
12. If you..don't keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
13. As long as she had lent the money, she wouldn't have lost it.
14. Were I you, I'd accept the job.
15. Had it not been for his help, I couldn't have overcome the difficulty.
16. She'd live in London if she knew someone there.
17. I'd live in the country if I could find a job there.
18. If I had a spare ticket, I'd take you to the concert.
19. If the schoolchildren watered some seeds, they would grow.
20. If they understood the problem, they'd find the solution.
21. If he didn't sit around too much, he'd be fit.
22. If Carol hadn't been studying, she'd have answered the phone.
23. If Rita had got some sleep last night, she wouldn't be exhausted today.
24. If she weren't/wasn't too thin, she wouldn't feel cold so much.
25. If he polished his shoes, he'd look smart.
26. If he could park near his office, he'd come by car.
27. If my house were/was guarded by two big dogs, it'd be broken into every night.
28. If the flats were clearly numbered, it'd be easy/wouldn't be difficult to find someone/anyone.
29. If I knew her e-mail address, I could tell you.
30. If she didn't work in the evening, she'd have time to play with her children

## MODULE

15

## REPORTED SPEECH

### III. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. B	2. D	3. A	4. D	5. B	6. D	7. A	8. C	9. C	10. D
11. B	12. B	13. D	14. B	15. A	16. A	17. C	18. B	19. C	20. A
21. A	22. A	23. A	24. A	25. C	26. D	27. C	28. B	29. D	30. B
31. C	32. C	33. D	34. D	35. D	36. A	37. B	38. C	39. C	40. B
41. D	42. C	43. B	44. D	45. B	46. C	47. B	48. D	49. A	50. A

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.**

1. C	2. B	3. A	4. B	5. A	6. B	7. A	8. D	9. A	10. B
11. B	12. B	13. B	14. C	15. A	16. B	17. D	18. C	19. C	20. B
21. D	22. C	23. A	24. C	25. B	26. D	27. A	28. D	29. B	30. C
31. C	32. A	33. A	34. A	35. C	36. C	37. D	38. C	39. C	40. A
41. B	42. D	43. D	44. A	45. D	46. A	47. B	48. B	49. A	50. D
51. D	52. A	53. D	54. B	55. B	56. D	57. A	58. B	59. D	60. C
61. C	62. C	63. C	64. A	65. B	66. D	67. A	68. D	69. B	70. B
71. B	72. B	73. B	74. D	75. C	76. A	77. A	78. C	79. B	80. B
81. D	82. D	83. A	84. D	85. C	86. D	87. D	88. D	89. A	90. C
91. B	92. A	93. C	94. D	95. B	96. B	97. A	98. A	99. A	100. A

**III. Rewrite the following sentences in Reported Speech (Statements/Questions)**

- Nam said (that) he was told to be at school before 7 o'clock.
- Thu said (that) all the students would have a meeting the next/following week.
- Phong said (that) his parents were very proud of his good marks.
- The teacher said (that) all the home-work had to be done carefully.
- Her father told her (that) she could go to the movie with her friend.
- Phong asked Peter if he enjoyed reading.
- She asked Nam if his sister and brother went to the same school
- She asked her mom if there were some oranges in the fridge.
- She asked Ba if he had been reading that book at 8 o'clock the previous Sunday.
- He asked his friend if it would rain the following morning.
- The teacher asked me where my father worked.
- She asked Lan how many people there were in her family
- Tam's friend asked him how long he would stay in England.
- The teacher asked Lien what her hobby was.
- His friend asked him how he went to the airport.
- She said she wished she hadn't gone to the party the night before.
- My teacher said (that) the Earth moves around the Sun.
- Peter said (that) he wanted to tell me the news and I must be surprised.
- The woman said when she was walking on the pavement, a strange man stopped and asked her the way to the nearest bank.
- He asked me how many lessons I was going to learn the following month.

**IV. Rewrite the following sentences in Reported Speech (Conditional in reported speech)**

- He said if he caught the plane, he would be home by five.
- He said if he had had a permit, I could have got a job
- He said if she had loved Tom, she wouldn't have left Tom.
- He asked if I had time, what would I do.
- She said if I wanted to lose weight, I had to eat less bread.
- He said if he had had a map, he would have lent it to me.
- He said if he had known that I had been coming, he would have met me at the airport.
- He wondered if the baby was the girl, what would they call her.
- He said if he had lived near his office, he would have been in time for work.



10. She asked if I felt ill, why didn't I go to bed.

**V. Rewrite the following sentences in Reported Speech (Reported speech with gerund and infinitives)**

1. Ms Lien suggested organizing an English competition for their students.
2. Mr Thanh apologized for being late.
3. Bob denied taking Sue's calculator.
4. David accused Henry of taking his pencil.
5. He insisted on seeing the manager.
6. Mike criticized his brother for taking his bike without asking him first.
7. Mary congratulated me on winning the scholarship.
8. Lan thanked Hoa for helping her with her homework.
9. Dick's mother prevented him from playing game then.
10. Peter apologized for breaking the glass.
11. He suggested inviting Mr. Brown to the party the next weekend.
12. The inspector accused him of stealing the jewels.
13. The man admitted borrowing my car for some hours.
14. Bob apologized for damaging Mike's tape recorder.
15. Bob thanked John for inviting him to lunch.
16. She reminded me to write her soon.
17. I advised the boy to spend more time learning to write.
18. Mike invited Linda to have dinner with them that night.
19. Tom begged John to turn off the TV.
20. The shopkeeper warned boys not to lean their bicycles against his/ her window.
21. The robber ordered the bank clerk to open the safe.
22. She told David to leave that space clean.
23. He offered to open the window for Edna.
24. He promised to wait for me.
25. John invited Mary to come with him.
26. Mark reminded me to take the holiday.
27. Jane advised David to have a holiday.
28. John expected Sophia to take a holiday the previous summer.
29. George proposed to take a holiday.
30. Jim told Linda to take a holiday.

**MODULE**

**RELATIVE CLAUSES**

**16**

**VI. THỰC HÀNH**

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. B	2. A	3. D	4. C	5. B	6. B	7. B	8. B	9. C	10. B
11. C	12. B	13. D	14. B	15. B	16. D	17. A	18. D	19. D	20. A
21. C	22. D	23. D	24. A	25. B	26. B	27. B	28. D	29. B	30. B
31. D	32. B	33. B	34. B	35. A	36. A	37. C	38. B	39. C	40. D
41. B	42. C	43. D	44. B	45. C	46. A	47. A	48. D	49. B	50. A

51. D	52. B	53. D	54. C	55. B	56. C	57. A	58. A	59. C	60. B
-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

**II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. C	2. B	3. B	4. B	5. B	6. A	7. D	8. B	9. A	10. D
11. C	12. B	13. B	14. B	15. B	16. C	17. B	18. C	19. B	20. B
21. A	22. C	23. B	24. A	25. A	26. C	27. D	28. B	29. B	30. D
31. A	32. D	33. D	34. C	35. C	36. B	37. C	38. D	39. D	40. D
41. A	42. C	43. C	44. C	45. D	46. B	47. D	48. A	49. B	50. B
51. B	52. B	53. A	54. D	55. B	56. C	57. B	58. D	59. B	60. C

**III. Fill in each blank with a suitable relative pronoun or a relative adverb.**

- |           |           |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. whom   | 2. Why    | 3. Which  | 4. That   | 5. whose. | 6. who    |
| 7. which  | 8. Who    | 9. Whose  | 10. Who   | 11. Whose | 12. who   |
| 13. which | 14. Whose | 15. Which | 16. Which | 17. That  | 18. that  |
| 19. which | 20. Who   | 21. Whose | 22. Which | 23. Who   | 24. which |
| 25. who   | 26. Which | 27. Whom  | 28. Who   | 29. Whose | 30. which |

**IV. Combine These Pairs Of Sentences Using Relative Pronouns**

- The first boy who knows the truth has just moved.
- I don't remember the man whom you said you met at the canteen last week.
- The only thing which make me worried is how to go home.
- The most beautiful girl, whose long hair I like very much, lives in this city.
- The man whom I met at the bar yesterday was Tom.
- The children often go swimming on Sundays when they have much free time.
- They're looking for the man and his dog that have lost the way in the forest.
- The tree which stands near the gate of my house has lovely flowers.
- My wife, whom you were speaking to, wants you to come to dinner.
- I want to talk to the last man who has just returned from the farm.
- The students whose report are very valuable will be awarded the present.
- The book which I was reading yesterday was a lovely story.
- The botanist will never forget the day when he found a strange plant.
- The person who looked for you three hours ago is phoning you.
- The man whose daughter is fond of dancing works for my father's company.

**V. Rewrite the relative clauses by using phrases.**

- The man standing there is a clown.
- The envelop lies on the table has no stamp on it.
- Benzene, discovered by Faraday, became the starting point in the manufacture of many dyes, perfumes and explosives.
- My grandmother, being old and sick, never goes out of the house.
- The student don't know how to do exercise given by the teacher yesterday.
- The diagrams made by young Faraday were sent to Sir Humphry Davy at the end of 1812.
- The gentleman living next door to me is a well-known orator.
- All the astronauts orbiting the earth in space capsules are weightless.
- All students not handing in their papers will fail in the exam.
- I saw many houses destroyed by the storm.
- The street leading to the school is very wide.
- The system used here is very successful.
- John, teaching my son, is my neighbor.

14. Trains leaving from this station take an hour to get to London.
15. The candidates sitting for the exam are all from Vietnam.
16. We are driving on the road built in 1980.
17. Customers complaining about the service should see the manager.
18. The city destroyed during the war has now been rebuilt.
19. My brother, meeting you yesterday, works for a big firm.
20. The vegetable sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.

## MODULE

# 17

## PHRASE AND CLAUSE

### VII. THỰC HÀNH

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. D	2. B	3. B	4. C	5. D	6. D	7. A	8. D	9. D	10. C
11. C	12. A	13. D	14. B	15. C	16. A	17. B	18. B	19. D	20. C
21. A	22. D	23. C	24. B	25. D	26. D	27. C	28. C	29. A	30. B
31. C	32. C	33. B	34. A	35. C	36. B	37. B	38. A	39. D	40. C
41. A	42. B	43. D	44. A	45. C	46. A	47. B	48. A	49. D	50. B
51. A	52. D	53. D	54. C	55. C	56. A	57. A	58. B	59. C	60. A
61. B	62. B	63. A	64. C	65. C	66. A	67. C	68. B	69. D	70. A
71. B	72. A	73. B	74. C	75. A	76. C	77. D	78. A	79. C	80. A
81. A	82. D	83. B	84. D	85. D	86. C	87. A	88. D	89. D	90. A
91. C	92. B	93. D	94. B	95. D	96. D	97. A	98. C	99. B	100. D

**II. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. The man standing there is a clown.
2. The envelop lies on the table has no stamp on it.
3. Benzene, discovered by Faraday, became the starting point in the manufacture of many dyes, perfumes and explosives.
4. My grandmother, being old and sick, never goes out of the house.
5. The student don't know how to do exercise given by the teacher yesterday.
6. The diagrams made by young Faraday were sent to Sir Humphry Davy at the end of 1812.
7. The gentleman living next door to me is a well-known orator.
8. All the astronauts orbiting the earth in space capsules are weightless.
9. All students not handing in their papers will fail in the exam.
10. I saw many houses destroyed by the storm.
11. The street leading to the school is very wide.
12. The system used here is very successful.
13. John, teaching my son, is my neighbor.
14. Trains leaving from this station take an hour to get to London.
15. The candidates sitting for the exam are all from Vietnam.
16. We are driving on the road built in 1980.
17. Customers complaining about the service should see the manager.

18. The city destroyed during the war has now been rebuilt.
19. My brother, meeting you yesterday, works for a big firm.
20. The vegetable sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.

### BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ THỂ CÁCH VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ DANH NGỮ

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. A	2. C	3. B	4. B	5. C	6. B	7. D	8. A	9. A	10. D
11. D	12. A	13. B	14. B	15. A	16. D	17. D	18. D	19. B	20. C
21. C	22. A	23. B	24. A	25. C	26. D	27. D	28. C	29. B	30. B
31. C	32. C	33. A	34. D	35. D	36. B	37. D	38. A	39. D	40. B
41. C	42. A	43. C	44. B	45. A	46. B	47. A	48. C	49. C	50. C
51. C	52. A	53. A	54. D	55. B	56. B	57. A	58. B	59. D	60. B
61. A	62. D	63. B	64. C	65. B	66. D	67. A	68. D	69. A	70. B
71. C	72. B	73. D	74. B	75. C	76. D	77. B	78. A	79. C	80. A
81. A	82. D	83. B	84. A	85. C	86. B	87. D	88. D	89. B	90. C
91. D	92. A	93. D	94. A	95. A	96. C	97. A	98. C	99. A	100. A

### **II. Change the question in parentheses to a noun clause**

1. I don't know how old he is.
2. what he was talking about was interesting.
3. Please tell me where you live.
4. what he said wasn't true.
5. Do you know when they are coming?
6. I can't remember how much it costs)
7. Let's ask him which one he wants?
8. I don't know who is coming to the party.
9. why they left the country is a secret.
10. where she went is not your business.
11. I don't remember how many letters there are in the english alphabet.
12. I don't know who is the mayor of new york city.

### **III. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. I felt as if my head were on fire now.
2. I felt as though I was walking in the air.
3. I'd rather Bill worked hard.
4. I'd rather he didn't drive too fast.
5. I'd rather he wanted to pay his debts.
6. He spent his money as if he were a prince.
7. You speak as tough you were a prophet.
8. It's high time we set out.
9. It's time you reviewed your lessons.
10. I'd rather he gave up smoking.
11. She looked as if she hadn't known me.
12. It's time he called me on the phone.
13. It's high time we started working now.
14. She made up as if she were an actress.
15. She cried as though she were a baby.

16. They talk as if they were kings.
17. It's time we solved this problem.
18. Mary dressed up as if she were a queen.
19. I'd rather she didn't talk too much.
20. I'd rather he come to my house tonight.

## MODULE

# 18

## INVERSION

### II. THỰC HÀNH

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. A	2. A	3. C	4. C	5. C	6. C	7. B	8. D	9. C	10. D
11. B	12. A	13. A	14. A	15. C	16. C	17. B	18. D	19. A	20. B
21. D	22. C	23. A	24. A	25. A	26. C	27. D	28. D	29. D	30. A
31. D	32. D	33. B	34. A	35. C	36. A	37. B	38. C	39. B	40. C
41. B	42. B	43. C	44. B	45. C	46. C	47. C	48. B	49. D	50. B
51. B	52. B	53. A	54. B	55. D	56. B	57. A	58. D	59. B	60. B
61. C	62. C	63. A	64. D	65. D	66. D	67. D	68. C	69. C	70. D
71. D	72. B	73. A	74. B	75. B	76. A	77. D	78. C	79. C	80. B
81. D	82. D	83. B	84. C	85. A	86. B	87. A	88. B	89. B	90. D

**II. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. So intelligent is he that he always scores high.
2. Hardly had he bought an insurance when he had an accident.  
⇒ No sooner had he bought an insurance bike than he had an accident.
3. Only when I reached 18 could I drive motorbike.
4. He had hardly left the office when the telephone rang.
5. Not only is he intelligent but also handsome.
6. Rarely did Mr. Bean show his intelligence.
7. ⇒ No sooner had I gone home than I phoned him.  
⇒ Scarcely had I gone home when I phoned him.
8. Only after he retired did he think about having a holiday abroad.
9. No sooner had he left the office than the telephone rang.
10. Hardly had I just put the phone down when the boss rang back.
11. Not until the bell rang did he finish his work.
12. Only after several months did we begin to see the symptoms of the disease.
13. Under the table was lying a sleeping dog.
14. Rarely had his brother been more excited.
15. Only until later were the facts all made public
16. Had I realized what would happen, I wouldn't have accepted the job.
17. Rarely has she travelled.....
18. Not until he retired did he think about having a holiday abroad.
19. Hardly had he started driving his new car when he had an accident.
20. Only when I got home did I realize how dangerous the situation had been.



21. No sooner had we walked in the door than the phone rang.
22. Under no circumstances will Miss Rose be offered the job.
23. Not only was tom late but he also left all his books behind.
24. Only after they had waited for 12 hours did their flight leave.
25. Were the salary high, the job.....
26. Had the computer not broken down and I wouldn't have had to stop my work.
27. So beautiful was the weather that
28. Such a soft voice does she have that everyone likes her.
29. Never before had the film laid on such a sumptuous celebration.....
30. Should the government be forced.....

## MODULE

# 19

## CONJUNCTIONS

### III. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions

1. C	2. B	3. B	4. A	5. B	6. C	7. D	8. A	9. C	10. B
11. C	12. D	13. A	14. A	15. A	16. A	17. A	18. C	19. D	20. C
21. D	22. B	23. D	24. C	25. C	26. D	27. A	28. D	29. B	30. A
31. B	32. C	33. B	34. A	35. B	36. B	37. B	38. A	39. D	40. C
41. A	42. B	43. C	44. D	45. B	46. D	47. B	48. D	49. B	50. D
51. D	52. B	53. B	54. C	55. C	56. D	57. C	58. D	59. B	60. A
61. C	62. D	63. A	64. B6	5. B	66. D	67. A	68. C	69. C	70. C
71. B	72. D	73. A	74. A	75. D	76. C	77. D	78. B	79. B	80. A
81. A	82. B	83. A	84. B	85. D	86. C	87. D	88. D	89. B	90. B

II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions

1. B	2. A	3. D	4. D	5. C	6. A	7. A	8. B	9. B	10. C
11. A	12. B	13. B	14. D	15. D	16. C	17. A	18. B	19. C	20. B
21. B	22. A	23. C	24. D	25. A	26. C	27. A	28. A	29. D	30. C
31. A	32. D	33. C	34. C	35. A	36. A	37. D	38. B	39. C	40. C
41. A	42. B	43. A	44. B	45. C	46. C	47. D	48. B	49. A	50. B
51. D	52. A	53. B	54. B	55. C	56. A	57. A	58. B	59. D	60. A
61. B	62. B	63. C	64. C	65. A	66. C	67. A	68. C	69. A	70. D
71. A	72. B	73. B	74. A	75. A	76. B	77. B	78. B	79. D	80. C
81. D	82. B	83. B	84. C	85. A	86. B	87. B	88. A	89. C	90. B

III. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.

1. Neither Tom nor Paul lie to his friends.
2. He betrayed not only your trust but also your love for him.
3. He felt both disappointed and misunderstood.
4. Not only will she study hard but also concentrate to do well on the exam.

5. We could both fly and go by train.
6. Neither will the speaker confirm the story nor deny the story.
7. Not only pneumonia but also small pox is a dangerous disease.
8. Both the teacher and Nam's parents gave him a good book.
9. Either Fred or Jane loves traveling.
10. might both rain and snow tomorrow.
11. Jane owns both a shop and a restaurant.
12. she is at either the shop or the airport
13. David plays neither tennis nor table tennis
14. Nam is not only handsome but also intelligent
15. Neither Jane nor I like cats.
16. Both Lisa and I can play badminton well.
17. We could either have lunch at home or go out to eat.
18. She doesn't like neither hip hop nor heavy mental music.
19. We can go to the cinema on both Saturday and Sunday.
20. I'm going to buy either the red shirt or the blue shirt.
21. My father has such a good health that he seldom takes any medicines.
22. My friend is so strong that he can lift up the table himself.
23. It is such strong coffee that I can't drink it.
24. Mary has such a beautiful voice that we all like to hear her sing.
25. Bill is so intelligent that he always at the top of his class.
26. The shelf is so high that the boy can't reach it.
27. Dean is such a powerful swimmer that he always won the races.
28. I had such a lot of equipment that I couldn't carry it.
29. I have so many problems that I can use all the help you can give me.
30. It was so boring a film that we fell asleep.
31. The house is too expensive for us to buy it.
32. The patient was so weak that he/she couldn't get up.
33. This room is not large enough for us to hold the meeting.
34. The test was not easy enough for us to do.
35. The map is too old for me to read.
36. He didn't speak slowly enough for us to hear well.
37. It was not early enough for them to go to the movies.
38. The film is too good for me to miss.
39. The ladder was too short to reach the window.
40. I'm so tired that I can't go to the cinema this evening.
41. Both Jim and Carol are on holiday.
42. George neither smokes nor drinks.
43. Neither Jim nor Carol has got a car.
44. The film is not only boring but also long.
45. She neither wrote nor phoned.
46. Both his parents and his brother are going to Halong Bay next Sunday.
47. Helen lost not only her passport but also her wallet at the airport.
48. I haven't got either time or money to go on holiday.  
I have got neither time nor money to go on holiday.
49. On Friday evening, sometimes I either go to the cinema or stay at home and watch TV.
50. Both she and I were really frightened when hearing the noise from the forest.  
She together with I was really frightened when hearing the noise from the forest.
51. I like both Tom and Peter.

52. The watch is not only the cheapest but also the nicest.  
 53. I like neither horror film nor action film.  
 54. Neither he nor his wife comes on time.  
 55. I don't like either watching TV or reading a novel before going to bed.  
 56. They can begin working neither on Monday nor on Wednesday.  
 They can't begin working either on Monday or on Wednesday.  
 57. My sister didn't either watch TV or listen to music last night.  
 58. We go to school not only in the morning but in the afternoon as well.  
 59. Because I was late for the meeting, I missed the most important part.  
 60. Because of the noisy party, I can't hear what you are saying.

## MODULE

20

# PREPOSITIONS

## II. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions

1. B	2. C	3. A	4. D	5. D	6. C	7. A	8. B	9. D	10. C
11. D	12. D	13. D	14. B	15. B	16. A	17. A	18. D	19. A	20. A
21. B	22. C	23. D	24. C	25. C	26. A	27. C	28. C	29. B	30. C
31. D	32. C	33. A	34. C	35. A	36. C	37. C	38. C	39. B	40. B
41. C	42. C	43. D	44. A	45. A	46. C	47. B	48. A	49. C	50. A
51. D	52. D	53. D	54. B	55. D	56. C	57. A	58. C	59. A	60. D
61. A	62. A	63. B	64. D	65. B	66. D	67. A	68. B	69. B	70. A
71. A	72. D	73. B	74. D	75. B	76. A	77. C	78. A	79. B	80. A
81. A	82. A	83. C	84. C	85. A	86. D	87. B	88. B	89. C	90. A
91. D	92. B	93. C	94. D	95. D	96. C	97. A	98. B	99. A	100. D

II. Fill in each blank with the correct preposition.

- |            |           |          |             |             |
|------------|-----------|----------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. in      | 2. on     | 3. at    | 4. about    | 5. with     |
| 6. from    | 7. before | 8. of    | 9. until    | 10. Between |
| 11. with   | 12. After | 13. by   | 14. into    | 15. at/ of  |
| 16. to/ on | 17. by    | 18. for  | 19. on      | 20. about   |
| 21. ON     | 22. IN    | 23. IN   | 24. IN      | 25. AT      |
| 26. FROM   | 27. ON    | 28. ON   | 29. BY      | 30. FOR     |
| 31. FOR    | 32. IN    | 33. IN   | 34. FOR     | 35. WITH    |
| 36. WITH   | 37. TO    | 38. WITH | 39. TO/ FOR | 40. OF      |
| 41. FOR    | 42. ABOUT | 43. WITH | 44. TO      | 45. ABOUT   |
| 46. FOR    | 47. TO    | 48. TO   | 49. AT      | 50. ABOUT   |

IV. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. C	2. D	3. B	4. A	5. A	6. A	7. A	8. A	9. B	10. C
11. D	12. A	13. C	14. B	15. D	16. C	17. A	18. C	19. D	20. C
21. A	22. C	23. D	24. B	25. D	26. C	27. B	28. A	29. C	30. B
31. A	32. B	33. A	34. A	35. D	36. D	37. B	38. B	39. C	40. D
41. D	42. A	43. B	44. B	45. C	46. D	47. C	48. D	49. C	50. C
51. D	52. A	53. C	54. C	55. C	56. B	57. C	58. B	59. B	60. A
61. C	62. B	63. D	64. B	65. C	66. B	67. D	68. C	69. A	70. A
71. A	72. C	73. A	74. C	75. C	76. B	77. C	78. B	79. B	80. B
81. D	82. A	83. B	84. B	85. D	86. B	87. B	88. C	89. C	90. B
91. C	92. B	93. D	94. D	95. B	96. B	97. B	98. A	99. C	100. D

II. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. A	2. A	3. A	4. A	5. B	6. A	7. A	8. B	9. A	10. B
11. C	12. A	13. D	14. C	15. D	16. D	17. D	18. C	19. B	20. C
21. C	22. D	23. B	24. B	25. A	26. B	27. B	28. C	29. B	30. C
31. D	32. D	33. A	34. D	35. C	36. A	37. D	38. A	39. B	40. C
41. D	42. D	43. C	44. D	45. A	46. B	47. C	48. A	49. B	50. C
51. B	52. A	53. C	54. D	55. C	56. B	57. A	58. A	59. C	60. B
61. A	62. D	63. A	64. D	65. D	66. D	67. D	68. B	69. D	70. C
71. D	72. B	73. A	74. D	75. A	76. D	77. B	78. C	79. C	80. A
81. A	82. B	83. A	84. C	85. D	86. C	87. A	88. C	89. C	90. B
91. D	92. C	93. D	94. C	95. A	96. B	97. B	98. A	99. A	100. A

III. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

1. A	2. B	3. D	4. D	5. D	6. C	7. C	8. B	9. C	10. A
11. A	12. A								

IV. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

1. B	2. D	3. A	4. A	5. D	6. B	7. B	8. A	9. D	10. B
11. D	12. B								

## III. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. C	2. A	3. B	4. A	5. B	6. D	7. B	8. D	9. B	10. A
11. B	12. D	13. C	14. D	15. A	16. C	17. C	18. B	19. D	20. D
21. B	22. A	23. B	24. A	25. B	26. A	27. A	28. C	29. D	30. B
31. A	32. B	33. A	34. A	35. B	36. A	37. A	38. D	39. A	40. B
41. B	42. A	43. A	44. A	45. B	46. A	47. C	48. C	49. D	50. B
51. D	52. C	53. D	54. A	55. A	56. C	57. D	58. A	59. A	60. D
61. D	62. C	63. A	64. C	65. A	66. A	67. C	68. B	69. B	70. A
71. C	72. B	73. C	74. A	75. D	76. C	77. A	78. D	79. B	80. B
81. A	82. D	83. B	84. C	85. D	86. D	87. D	88. C	89. C	90. A
91. C	92. A	93. D	94. B	95. B	96. C	97. D	98. A	99. C	100. B

## III. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. C	2. B	3. D	4. D	5. B	6. C	7. C	8. A	9. D	10. A
11. B	12. D	13. C	14. D	15. C	16. B	17. B	18. D	19. D	20. D
21. A	22. C	23. D	24. C	25. D	26. B	27. C	28. C	29. D	30. B
31. B	32. D	33. D	34. A	35. C	36. B	37. A	38. A	39. D	40. A
41. A	42. B	43. D	44. B	45. C	46. D	47. C	48. D	49. A	50. D
51. B	52. C	53. C	54. D	55. A	56. C	57. D	58. B	59. B	60. B
61. C	62. A	63. A	64. A	65. B	66. D	67. D	68. B	69. C	70. D
71. B	72. A	73. D	74. D	75. D	76. D	77. A	78. C	79. D	80. C
81. A	82. B	83. B	84. A	85. B	86. C	87. D	88. A	89. D	90. C
91. A	92. C	93. D	94. B	95. A	96. D	97. B	98. C	99. C	100. B

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions

1. D	2. A	3. D	4. B	5. A	6. C	7. C	8. D	9. B
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

1. D	2. B	3. C	4. B	5. B	6. D	7. B	8. B	9. A
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------



## III. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. A	2. A	3. C	4. C	5. B	6. A	7. B	8. C	9. C	10. A
11. A	12. D	13. A	14. A	15. B	16. A	17. A	18. D	19. B	20. A
21. B	22. D	23. B	24. B	25. B	26. A	27. C	28. A	29. D	30. A
31. B	32. C	33. A	34. A	35. C	36. A	37. B	38. C	39. C	40. A

## II. Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences

- |                     |               |                 |                       |                |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1. uninterested     | 2. formally   | 3. considerate  | 4. appreciable        | 5. forgettable |
| 6. Life expectation | 7. respectful | 8. respectable  | 9. comprehensive      | 10. beneficent |
| 11. complementary   | 12. farther   | 13. sensitive   | 14. responsible       | 15. successful |
| 16. classical       | 17. deathly   | 18. continual   | 19. economic          | 20. especially |
| 21. terrific        | 22. favourite | 23. awful       | 24. imaginable        | 25. restless   |
| 26. industrial      | 27. dependent | 28. every day   | 29. effective         | 30. principal  |
| 31. later           | 32. illicit   | 33. entrance    | 34. drastically       | 35. package    |
| 36. percent         | 37. desert    | 38. felicitate  | 39. heroine           | 40. complement |
| 41. intensive       | 42. Foul      | 43. sometimes   | 44. beside            | 45. advisory   |
| 46. comprehensible  | 47. Suggested | 48. Ingredients | 49. wounded / founded |                |

## III. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence

- |                 |               |                |              |             |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. take place   | 2. avenge     | 3. Persuade    | 4. Raise     | 5. has      |
| 6. get, receive | 7. taught     | 8. Take        | 9. may       | 10. make    |
| 11. sinking     | 12. Read      | 13. go to bed  | 14. Invented | 15. want    |
| 16. was         | 17. Can       | 18. Accept     | 19. borrow   | 20. rise    |
| 21. see         | 22. Refused   | 23. Convinced  | 24. Looking  | 25. read    |
| 26. hung        | 27. Let       | 28. take out   | 29. Leave    | 30. lend    |
| 31. fetch       | 32. Remembe   | 33. like       | 34. Like     | 35. Take    |
| 36. make        | 37. made from | 38. Sympathize | 39. Tighten  | 40. hear    |
| 41. to be with  | 42. revenge   | 43. learn      | 44. Study    | 45. learn   |
| 46. take out    | 47. care for  | 48. Said       | 49. Invented | 50. puts on |

## XIII. THỰC HÀNH

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best completes each of the following exchanges.

1. C	2. B	3. B	4. D	5. D	6. D	7. B	8. A	9. A	10. A
11. B	12. B	13. D	14. C	15. A	16. B	17. D	18. D	19. D	20. B
21. C	22. A	23. D	24. D	25. D	26. B	27. C	28. C	29. B	30. B
31. C	32. D	33. D	34. B	35. D	36. D	37. B	38. D	39. B	40. D

41. B	42. B	43. B	44. B	45. C	46. D	47. C	48. B	49. C	50. B
51. B	52. A	53. A	54. D	55. C	56. B	57. A	58. B	59. D	60. D
61. D	62. D	63. D	64. D	65. C	66. A	67. B	68. A	69. B	70. D
71. A	72. C	73. D	74. B	75. A	76. A	77. B	78. D	79. C	80. B

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best completes each of the following exchanges.

1. A	2. D	3. A	4. D	5. A	6. B	7. C	8. B	9. B	10. B
11. A	12. C	13. A	14. C	15. A	16. C	17. A	18. D	19. A	20. B
21. B	22. D	23. D	24. C	25. D	26. C	27. C	28. D	29. B	30. B
31. A	32. B	33. B	34. D	35. A	36. A	37. D	38. B	39. B	40. B
41. B	42. A	43. C	44. C	45. B	46. A	47. D	48. D	49. A	50. B

## MODULE

26

## EMPHASIS

### III. THỰC HÀNH

I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. B	2. B	3. A	4. C	5. B	6. D	7. A	8. D	9. D	10. C
11. D	12. A	13. D	14. A	15. A	16. A	17. A	18. A	19. D	20. C
21. A	22. B	23. D	24. A	25. B	26. A	27. D	28. C	29. A	30. D
31. D	32. A	33. B	34. C	35. A	36. A	37. B	38. C	39. C	40. B
41. D	42. A	43. A	44. C	45. B	46. A	47. B	48. C	49. D	50. B

Rewrite the sentences to focus attention on the underlined information. Using structure "it is / was ... that"

- it was the car that she bought from Tom
- it is the computer that gives me a headache.
- it is this weekend that we are coming to stay with Jane.
- it is the important decisions that the president makes
- it is physics exam that I'm looking forward to.
- it was my wallet that I lost somewhere in there
- it was in a small village that I was born and grew up.
- it was last semester that my teacher helped me a lot of with my study
- it was a bicycle that the headmaster gave Tam as a scholarship.
- it was your carelessness that caused the accident.
- it was the neighbour that told them about it.
- it was last night that my friend came to see me late.
- it was the goal that that boy scored for his team
- it was the piece of meat that the dog grabbed at and ran away.
- it was the strong wind that blew the roof off.

Rewrite the sentences to focus attention on the underlined information. Using structure "it is / was not until"

1. It was not until her birthday that she was allowed to open her present.
2. It was not until 2:30 that someone could leave the stadium
3. It was not until midnight that I slept.
4. It was not until last summer that we had some holiday
5. It was not until I had all information could I comment further
6. It was not until Mark helped me that i could finish my project.
7. It was not until the age of 24 that she stopped learning German.
8. It was not until the electricity was cut off that they paid the bill.
9. It was not until yesterday that he became a teacher.
10. It was not until he was 30 years old that he knew how to swim

**Rewrite the sentences with an *Emphasis on the underlined words.***

1. It was Ted that broke the news to me./ Ted himself broke the news to me.
2. It is important to know your limitations.
3. It is money, not affection that they want.
4. He did misunderstand my intentions.
5. It was after she had gone that I remembered her name.
6. I did do my English test very well.
7. Is it Mary that wash up everyday?/ Does Mary herself wash up everyday?
8. It was from Francis that she first heard the news.
9. It is perhaps because he's a misfit that I get along with him.
10. It is pilots, not ground staff that we need.
11. It is certain that prices will go up.
12. It is better to be early.
13. It was Peter himself not Paul that lent us money.
14. We found it impossible to get a Visa.
15. It is today that he is going.
16. We ordered wine itself. We didn't order beer.
17. Bad roads don't cause accidents. Speed itself does.
18. It is cruel to tease animals.
19. It takes time and practice to master a second language.
20. I did love you.

## MODULE

# 27

## ERROR IDENTIFICATION

### ĐÁP ÁN PHẦN I

Question 1	<b>B</b>	Question 11	<b>A</b>	Question 21	<b>D</b>	Question 31	<b>C</b>	Question 41	<b>A</b>
Question 2	<b>C</b>	Question 12	<b>A</b>	Question 22	<b>B</b>	Question 32	<b>B</b>	Question 42	<b>A</b>
Question 3	<b>C</b>	Question 13	<b>B</b>	Question 23	<b>C</b>	Question 33	<b>D</b>	Question 43	<b>A</b>
Question 4	<b>C</b>	Question 14	<b>A</b>	Question 24	<b>A</b>	Question 34	<b>B</b>	Question 44	<b>B</b>
Question 5	<b>B</b>	Question 15	<b>C</b>	Question 25	<b>B</b>	Question 35	<b>A</b>	Question 45	<b>A</b>
Question 6	<b>A</b>	Question 16	<b>A</b>	Question 26	<b>B</b>	Question 36	<b>A</b>	Question 46	<b>A</b>
Question 7	<b>A</b>	Question 17	<b>C</b>	Question 27	<b>B</b>	Question 37	<b>A</b>	Question 47	<b>A</b>

Question 8	B	Question 18	D	Question 28	D	Question 38	D	Question 48	D
Question 9	B	Question 19	A	Question 29	B	Question 39	D	Question 49	A
Question 10	B	Question 20	D	Question 30	B	Question 40	C	Question 50	B

### ĐÁP ÁN PHẦN II

Question 1	B	Question 11	D	Question 21	B	Question 31	B	Question 41	B
Question 2	D	Question 12	C	Question 22	C	Question 32	B	Question 42	C
Question 3	A	Question 13	B	Question 23	B	Question 33	C	Question 43	C
Question 4	B	Question 14	B	Question 24	A	Question 34	D	Question 44	A
Question 5	C	Question 15	D	Question 25	C	Question 35	B	Question 45	B
Question 6	C	Question 16	A	Question 26	B	Question 36	D	Question 46	A
Question 7	B	Question 17	C	Question 27	C	Question 37	C	Question 47	A
Question 8	A	Question 18	C	Question 28	D	Question 38	B	Question 48	B
Question 9	B	Question 19	B	Question 29	A	Question 39	D	Question 49	A
Question 10	D	Question 20	D	Question 30	B	Question 40	D	Question 50	B

## MODULE

28

## OTHER STRUCTURES

### II. THỰC HÀNH

**I. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. A	2. A	3. D	4. D	5. C	6. B	7. A	8. A	9. C	10. B
11. A	12. B	13. D	14. C	15. A	16. D	17. B	18. A	19. D	20. D
21. C	22. A	23. C	24. D	25. B	26. B	27. C	28. A	29. A	30. A
31. C	32. C	33. B	34. A	35. A	36. D	37. D	38. B	39. A	40. A
41. B	42. C	43. D	44. B	45. A	46. A	47. D	48. A	49. C	50. B

**II. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. What do you want to do this evening?
2. I suggest asking for help.
3. Helen agreed to go to the party with us.
4. I clearly remember meeting you somewhere.
5. My mother advised me to go on a vacation.
6. It's best to avoid traveling during rush hour.
7. He admitted not having a license.
8. The teacher didn't allow us to use dictionary during the test.
9. The customs officer made him open the brief - case.
10. John used to smoke a lot.
11. I am used to getting up early in the morning.
12. Do you mind helping me to put the chairs away?

13. My sister is looking forward to meeting my aunt next summer in Hanoi.
14. There's no use trying to get Jim to lend you his car.
15. After I had told him off, I realized I was wrong.
16. By the time I passed the exam, I had worked very hard for it.
17. Before he bought a radio, he had checked the price.
18. I saw her cross the road.
19. We tried to open the door.
20. Dad regretted having sold our house.

**III. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. they used to start these machines by hand
2. I used to play with my dog when I was a little boy
3. Minh used to get up late, but now he doesn't get up late any more
4. He used to go hunting when he was in Africa
5. Jane wasn't used to driving on the left
6. She isn't used to driving a car on the left
7. my brother used to serve in the army
8. barbara used to be keener on travel
9. he used to do morning exercise in the park when he was young
10. the man used to spend his holiday in the mountain when he was young
11. before he had the car, he used to go to work by bike
12. i used to get up early when I was young
13. Minh gets used to getting up early
14. we had five hours to get to london
15. It took he two hours to report
16. I spend twenty minutes to get to work
17. It take your daughter two hours to study english everyday
18. It took John two hours to finish his essay
19. It's very important to keep the environment clean.
20. It 's....important to learn English...

**ĐÁP ÁN TỔNG ÔN TẬP NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 1**

1.D	2.B	3.A	4.C	5.B	6.A	7.C	8.C	9.B	10.C
11.C	12.B	13.D	14.B	15.C	16.B	17.B	18.A	19.C	20.D
21.B	22.D	23.D	24.D	25.C	26.B	27.A	28.C	29.C	30.C
31.B	32.B	33.A	34.A	35.C	36.D	37.B	38.A	39.D	40.C

**ĐÁP ÁN TỔNG ÔN TẬP NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 2**

1.C	2.D	3.B	4.A	5.D	6.A	7.B	8.D	9.C	10.B
11.B	12.C	13.A	14.D	15.B	16.A	17.C	18.D	19.D	20.B
21.D	22.B	23.C	24.D	25.D	26.D	27.A	28.D	29.C	30.A
31.B	32.A	33.C	34.C	35.C	36.A	37.C	38.D	39.A	40.C



### ĐÁP ÁN TỔNG ÔN TẬP NGỮ PHÁP LẦN 3

1.C	2.D	3.B	4.C	5.D	6.A	7.A	8.B	9.A	10.D
11.C	12.A	13.A	14.A	15.B	16.B	17.B	18.A	19.A	20.C
21.B	22.A	23.D	24.B	25.B	26.D	27.B	28.A	29.C	30.C
31.B	32.B	33.B	34.C	35.A	36.A	37.A	38.B	39.D	40.B

# IRREGULAR VERBS

STT	Động từ nguyên thể	Thể quá khứ	Quá khứ phân từ	Nghĩa
1	<i>abide</i>	<i>abode/abided</i>	<i>abode / abided</i>	lưu trú, lưu lại
2	<i>arise</i>	<i>arose</i>	<i>arisen</i>	phát sinh
3	<i>awake</i>	<i>awoke</i>	<i>awoken</i>	đánh thức, thức
4	<i>be</i>	<i>was/were</i>	<i>been</i>	thì, là, bị, ở
5	<i>bear</i>	<i>bore</i>	<i>borne</i>	mang, chịu đựng
6	<i>become</i>	<i>became</i>	<i>become</i>	trở nên
7	<i>befall</i>	<i>befell</i>	<i>befallen</i>	xảy đến
8	<i>begin</i>	<i>began</i>	<i>begun</i>	bắt đầu
9	<i>behold</i>	<i>beheld</i>	<i>beheld</i>	ngắm nhìn
10	<i>bend</i>	<i>bent</i>	<i>bent</i>	bẻ cong
11	<i>beset</i>	<i>beset</i>	<i>beset</i>	bao quanh
12	<i>bespeak</i>	<i>bespoke</i>	<i>bespoken</i>	chứng tỏ
13	<i>bid</i>	<i>bid</i>	<i>bid</i>	trả giá
14	<i>bind</i>	<i>bound</i>	<i>bound</i>	buộc, trói
15	<i>bleed</i>	<i>bled</i>	<i>bled</i>	chảy máu
16	<i>blow</i>	<i>blew</i>	<i>blown</i>	thổi
17	<i>break</i>	<i>broke</i>	<i>broken</i>	đập vỡ
18	<i>breed</i>	<i>bred</i>	<i>bred</i>	nuôi, dạy dỗ
19	<i>bring</i>	<i>brought</i>	<i>brought</i>	mang đến
20	<i>broadcast</i>	<i>broadcast</i>	<i>broadcast</i>	phát thanh
21	<i>build</i>	<i>built</i>	<i>built</i>	xây dựng
22	<i>burn</i>	<i>burnt/burned</i>	<i>burnt/burned</i>	đốt, cháy
23	<i>buy</i>	<i>bought</i>	<i>bought</i>	mua
24	<i>cast</i>	<i>cast</i>	<i>cast</i>	ném, tung
25	<i>catch</i>	<i>caught</i>	<i>caught</i>	bắt, chụp
26	<i>chide</i>	<i>chid/ chided</i>	<i>chid/ chidden/ chided</i>	mắng chửi
27	<i>choose</i>	<i>chose</i>	<i>chosen</i>	chọn, lựa
28	<i>cleave</i>	<i>clove/ cleft/ cleaved</i>	<i>cloven/ cleft/ cleaved</i>	chẻ, tách hai
29	<i>cleave</i>	<i>clave</i>	<i>cleaved</i>	dính chặt
30	<i>come</i>	<i>came</i>	<i>come</i>	đến, đi đến
31	<i>cost</i>	<i>cost</i>	<i>cost</i>	có giá là

32	<i>crow</i>	<i>crew/crewed</i>	<i>crowed</i>	<i>gáy (gà)</i>
33	<i>cut</i>	<i>cut</i>	<i>cut</i>	<i>cắt, chặt</i>
34	<i>deal</i>	<i>dealt</i>	<i>dealt</i>	<i>giao thiệp</i>
35	<i>dig</i>	<i>dug</i>	<i>dug</i>	<i>đào</i>
36	<i>dive</i>	<i>dove/ dived</i>	<i>dived</i>	<i>lặn; lao xuống</i>
37	<i>drew</i>	<i>drew</i>	<i>drawn</i>	<i>vẽ; kéo</i>
38	<i>dream</i>	<i>dreamt/ dreamed</i>	<i>dreamt/ dreamed</i>	<i>mơ thấy</i>
39	<i>drink</i>	<i>drank</i>	<i>drunk</i>	<i>uống</i>
40	<i>drive</i>	<i>drove</i>	<i>driven</i>	<i>lái xe</i>
41	<i> dwell</i>	<i>dwelt</i>	<i>dwelt</i>	<i>trú ngụ, ở</i>
42	<i>eat</i>	<i>ate</i>	<i>eaten</i>	<i>ăn</i>
43	<i>fall</i>	<i>fell</i>	<i>fallen</i>	<i>ngã; rơi</i>
44	<i>feed</i>	<i>fed</i>	<i>fed</i>	<i>cho ăn; ăn; nuôi;</i>
45	<i>feel</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>cảm thấy</i>
46	<i>fight</i>	<i>fought</i>	<i>fought</i>	<i>chiến đấu</i>
47	<i>find</i>	<i>found</i>	<i>found</i>	<i>tìm thấy; thấy</i>
48	<i>flee</i>	<i>fled</i>	<i>fled</i>	<i>chạy trốn</i>
49	<i>fling</i>	<i>flung</i>	<i>flung</i>	<i>tung; quang</i>
50	<i>fly</i>	<i>flew</i>	<i>flown</i>	<i>bay</i>
51	<i>forbear</i>	<i>forbore</i>	<i>forborne</i>	<i>nhịn</i>
52	<i>forbid</i>	<i>forbade/ forbad</i>	<i>forbidden</i>	<i>cấm đoán; cấm</i>
53	<i>forecast</i>	<i>forecast/ forecasted</i>	<i>forecast/ forecasted</i>	<i>tiên đoán</i>
54	<i>foresee</i>	<i>foresaw</i>	<i>foreseen</i>	<i>thấy trước</i>
55	<i>foretell</i>	<i>foretold</i>	<i>foretold</i>	<i>đoán trước</i>
56	<i>forget</i>	<i>forgot</i>	<i>forgotten</i>	<i>quên</i>
57	<i>forgive</i>	<i>forgave</i>	<i>forgiven</i>	<i>tha thứ</i>
58	<i>forsake</i>	<i>forsook</i>	<i>forsaken</i>	<i>ruồng bỏ</i>
59	<i>freeze</i>	<i>froze</i>	<i>frozen</i>	<i>(làm) đông lại</i>
60	<i>get</i>	<i>got</i>	<i>got/ gotten</i>	<i>có được</i>
61	<i>gild</i>	<i>gilt/ gilded</i>	<i>gilt/ gilded</i>	<i>mạ vàng</i>
62	<i>gird</i>	<i>girt/ girded</i>	<i>girt/ girded</i>	<i>đeo vào</i>
63	<i>give</i>	<i>gave</i>	<i>given</i>	<i>cho</i>
64	<i>go</i>	<i>went</i>	<i>gone</i>	<i>đi</i>
65	<i>grind</i>	<i>ground</i>	<i>ground</i>	<i>nghiên; xay</i>

66	grow	grew	grown	mọc; trồng
67	hang	hung	hung	móc lên; treo lên
68	hear	heard	heard	nghe
69	heave	hove/ heaved	hove/ heaved	trục lên
70	hide	hid	hidden	giấu; trốn; nấp
71	hit	hit	hit	đụng
72	hurt	hurt	hurt	làm đau
73	inlay	inlaid	inlaid	cắm; khảm
74	input	input	input	đưa vào (máy điện toán)
75	inset	inset	inset	dát; ghép
76	keep	kept	kept	giữ
77	kneel	knelt/ kneeled	knelt/ kneeled	quỳ
78	knit	knit/ knitted	knit/ knitted	đan
79	know	knew	known	biết; quen biết
80	lay	laid	laid	đặt; để
81	lead	led	led	dẫn dắt; lãnh đạo
82	leap	leapt	leapt	nhảy; nhảy qua
83	learn	learnt/ learned	learnt/ learned	học; được biết
84	leave	left	left	ra đi; để lại
85	lend	lent	lent	cho mượn (vay)
86	let	let	let	cho phép; để cho
87	lie	lay	lain	nằm
88	light	lit/ lighted	lit/ lighted	thắp sáng
89	lose	lost	lost	làm mất; mất
90	make	made	made	chế tạo; sản xuất
91	mean	meant	meant	có nghĩa là
92	meet	met	met	gặp mặt
93	mislay	mislaid	mislaid	để lạc mất
94	misread	misread	misread	đọc sai
95	misspell	misspelt	misspelt	viết sai chính tả
96	mistake	mistook	mistaken	phạm lỗi, lầm lẫn
97	misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood	hiểu lầm
98	mow	mowed	mown/ mowed	cắt cỏ
99	outbid	outbid	outbid	trả hơn giá

100	<i>outdo</i>	<i>outdid</i>	<i>outdone</i>	làm giỏi hơn
101	<i>outgrow</i>	<i>outgrew</i>	<i>outgrown</i>	lớn nhanh hơn
102	<i>output</i>	<i>output</i>	<i>output</i>	cho ra (dữ kiện)
103	<i>outrun</i>	<i>outran</i>	<i>outrun</i>	chạy nhanh hơn; vượt quá
104	<i>outsell</i>	<i>outsold</i>	<i>outsold</i>	bán nhanh hơn
105	<i>overcome</i>	<i>overcame</i>	<i>overcome</i>	khắc phục
106	<i>overeat</i>	<i>overate</i>	<i>overeaten</i>	ăn quá nhiều
107	<i>overfly</i>	<i>overflew</i>	<i>overflowed</i>	bay qua
108	<i>overhang</i>	<i>overhung</i>	<i>overhung</i>	nhô lên trên, treo lơ lửng
109	<i>overhear</i>	<i>overheard</i>	<i>overheard</i>	nghe trộm
110	<i>overlay</i>	<i>overlaid</i>	<i>overlaid</i>	phủ lên
111	<i>overpay</i>	<i>overpaid</i>	<i>overpaid</i>	trả quá tiền
112	<i>overrun</i>	<i>overran</i>	<i>overrun</i>	tràn ngập
113	<i>oversee</i>	<i>oversaw</i>	<i>overseen</i>	trông nom
114	<i>overshoot</i>	<i>overshot</i>	<i>overshot</i>	đi quá đích
115	<i>oversleep</i>	<i>overslept</i>	<i>overslept</i>	ngủ quên
116	<i>overtake</i>	<i>overtook</i>	<i>overtaken</i>	đuổi bắt kịp
117	<i>overthrow</i>	<i>overthrew</i>	<i>overthrown</i>	lật đổ
118	<i>pay</i>	<i>paid</i>	<i>paid</i>	trả (tiền)
119	<i>prove</i>	<i>proved</i>	<i>proven/proved</i>	chứng minh(tỏ)
120	<i>put</i>	<i>put</i>	<i>put</i>	đặt; để
121	<i>read</i>	<i>read</i>	<i>read</i>	đọc
122	<i>rebuild</i>	<i>rebuilt</i>	<i>rebuilt</i>	xây dựng lại
123	<i>redo</i>	<i>redid</i>	<i>redone</i>	làm lại
124	<i>remake</i>	<i>remade</i>	<i>remade</i>	làm lại; chế tạo lại
125	<i>rend</i>	<i>rent</i>	<i>rent</i>	toạc ra; xé
126	<i>repay</i>	<i>repaid</i>	<i>repaid</i>	hoàn tiền lại
127	<i>resell</i>	<i>retold</i>	<i>retold</i>	bán lại
128	<i>retake</i>	<i>retook</i>	<i>retaken</i>	chiếm lại; tái chiếm
129	<i>rewrite</i>	<i>rewrote</i>	<i>rewritten</i>	viết lại
130	<i>ride</i>	<i>rode</i>	<i>ridden</i>	cưỡi
131	<i>ring</i>	<i>rang</i>	<i>rung</i>	rung chuông
132	<i>rise</i>	<i>rose</i>	<i>risen</i>	đứng dậy; mọc
133	<i>run</i>	<i>ran</i>	<i>run</i>	chạy



134	<i>saw</i>	<i>sawed</i>	<i>sawn</i>	<i>cưa</i>
135	<i>say</i>	<i>said</i>	<i>said</i>	<i>nói</i>
136	<i>see</i>	<i>saw</i>	<i>seen</i>	<i>nhìn thấy</i>
137	<i>seek</i>	<i>sought</i>	<i>sought</i>	<i>tìm kiếm</i>
138	<i>sell</i>	<i>sold</i>	<i>sold</i>	<i>bán</i>
139	<i>send</i>	<i>sent</i>	<i>sent</i>	<i>gửi</i>
140	<i>sew</i>	<i>sewed</i>	<i>sewn/sewed</i>	<i>may</i>
141	<i>shake</i>	<i>shook</i>	<i>shaken</i>	<i>lay; lắc</i>
142	<i>shear</i>	<i>sheared</i>	<i>shorn</i>	<i>xén lông cừu</i>
143	<i>shed</i>	<i>shed</i>	<i>shed</i>	<i>roi; rụng</i>
144	<i>shine</i>	<i>shone</i>	<i>shone</i>	<i>chiếu sáng</i>
145	<i>shoot</i>	<i>shot</i>	<i>shot</i>	<i>bắn</i>
146	<i>show</i>	<i>showed</i>	<i>shown/ showed</i>	<i>cho xem</i>
147	<i>shrink</i>	<i>shrank</i>	<i>shrunk</i>	<i>co rút</i>
148	<i>shut</i>	<i>shut</i>	<i>shut</i>	<i>đóng lại</i>
149	<i>sing</i>	<i>sang</i>	<i>sung</i>	<i>ca hát</i>
150	<i>sink</i>	<i>sank</i>	<i>sunk</i>	<i>chìm; lặn</i>
151	<i>sit</i>	<i>sat</i>	<i>sat</i>	<i>ngồi</i>
152	<i>slay</i>	<i>slew</i>	<i>slain</i>	<i>sát hại; giết hại</i>
153	<i>sleep</i>	<i>slept</i>	<i>slept</i>	<i>ngủ</i>
154	<i>slide</i>	<i>slid</i>	<i>slid</i>	<i>trượt; lướt</i>
155	<i>sling</i>	<i>slung</i>	<i>slung</i>	<i>ném mạnh</i>
156	<i>slink</i>	<i>slunk</i>	<i>slunk</i>	<i>lén đi</i>
157	<i>smell</i>	<i>smelt</i>	<i>smelt</i>	<i>ngửi</i>
158	<i>smite</i>	<i>smote</i>	<i>smitten</i>	<i>đập mạnh</i>
159	<i>sow</i>	<i>sowed</i>	<i>sown/ sewed</i>	<i>gieo; rải</i>
160	<i>speak</i>	<i>spoke</i>	<i>spoken</i>	<i>nói</i>
161	<i>speed</i>	<i>sped/ speeded</i>	<i>sped/ speeded</i>	<i>chạy vọt</i>
162	<i>spell</i>	<i>spelt/ spelled</i>	<i>spelt/ spelled</i>	<i>đánh vần</i>
163	<i>spend</i>	<i>spent</i>	<i>spent</i>	<i>tiêu sài</i>
164	<i>spill</i>	<i>spilt/ spilled</i>	<i>spilt/ spilled</i>	<i>tràn đổ ra</i>
165	<i>spin</i>	<i>spun/ span</i>	<i>spun</i>	<i>quay sợi</i>
166	<i>spit</i>	<i>spat</i>	<i>spat</i>	<i>khạc nhổ</i>
167	<i>spoil</i>	<i>spoilt/ spoiled</i>	<i>spoilt/ spoiled</i>	<i>làm hỏng</i>

168	<i>spread</i>	<i>spread</i>	<i>spread</i>	lan truyền
169	<i>spring</i>	<i>sprang</i>	<i>sprung</i>	nhảy
170	<i>stand</i>	<i>stood</i>	<i>stood</i>	đứng
171	<i>stave</i>	<i>stove/ staved</i>	<i>stove/ staved</i>	đâm thủng
172	<i>steal</i>	<i>stole</i>	<i>stolen</i>	đánh cắp
173	<i>stick</i>	<i>stuck</i>	<i>stuck</i>	ghim vào; đính
174	<i>sting</i>	<i>stung</i>	<i>stung</i>	châm ; chích; đốt
175	<i>stink</i>	<i>stunk/ stank</i>	<i>stunk</i>	bốc mùi hôi
176	<i>strew</i>	<i>strewed</i>	<i>strewn/ strewed</i>	rắc , rải
177	<i>stride</i>	<i>strode</i>	<i>stridden</i>	bước sải
178	<i>strike</i>	<i>struck</i>	<i>struck</i>	đánh đập
179	<i>string</i>	<i>strung</i>	<i>strung</i>	gắn dây vào
180	<i>strive</i>	<i>strove</i>	<i>striven</i>	cố sức
181	<i>swear</i>	<i>swore</i>	<i>sworn</i>	tuyên thệ
182	<i>sweep</i>	<i>swept</i>	<i>swept</i>	quét
183	<i>swell</i>	<i>swelled</i>	<i>swollen/ swelled</i>	phồng ; sưng
184	<i>swim</i>	<i>swam</i>	<i>swum</i>	boi; lội
185	<i>swing</i>	<i>swung</i>	<i>swung</i>	đong đưa
186	<i>take</i>	<i>took</i>	<i>taken</i>	cầm ; lấy
187	<i>teach</i>	<i>taught</i>	<i>taught</i>	day ; giảng dạy
188	<i>tear</i>	<i>tore</i>	<i>torn</i>	xé; rách
189	<i>tell</i>	<i>told</i>	<i>told</i>	kể ; bảo
190	<i>think</i>	<i>thought</i>	<i>thought</i>	suy nghĩ
191	<i>throw</i>	<i>threw</i>	<i>thrown</i>	ném ; liệng
192	<i>thrust</i>	<i>thrust</i>	<i>thrust</i>	thọc ; nhấn
193	<i>tread</i>	<i>trod</i>	<i>trodden/ trod</i>	giẫm ; đạp
194	<i>unbend</i>	<i>unbent</i>	<i>unbent</i>	làm thẳng lại
195	<i>undercut</i>	<i>undercut</i>	<i>undercut</i>	ra giá rẻ hơn
196	<i>undergo</i>	<i>underwent</i>	<i>undergone</i>	kinh qua
197	<i>underlie</i>	<i>underlay</i>	<i>underlain</i>	nằm dưới
198	<i>underpay</i>	<i>undercut</i>	<i>undercut</i>	trả lương thấp
199	<i>undersell</i>	<i>undersold</i>	<i>undersold</i>	bán rẻ hơn
200	<i>understand</i>	<i>understood</i>	<i>understood</i>	hiểu
201	<i>undertake</i>	<i>undertook</i>	<i>undertaken</i>	đảm nhận

202	<i>underwrite</i>	<i>underwrote</i>	<i>underwritten</i>	bảo hiểm
203	<i>undo</i>	<i>undid</i>	<i>undone</i>	tháo ra
204	<i>unfreeze</i>	<i>unfroze</i>	<i>unfrozen</i>	làm tan đông
205	<i>unwind</i>	<i>unwound</i>	<i>unwound</i>	tháo ra
206	<i>uphold</i>	<i>upheld</i>	<i>upheld</i>	ủng hộ
207	<i>upset</i>	<i>upset</i>	<i>upset</i>	đánh đổ; lật đổ
208	<i>wake</i>	<i>woke/ waked</i>	<i>woken/ waked</i>	thức giấc
209	<i>waylay</i>	<i>waylaid</i>	<i>waylaid</i>	mai phục
210	<i>wear</i>	<i>wore</i>	<i>worn</i>	mặc
211	<i>weave</i>	<i>wove/ weaved</i>	<i>woven/ weaved</i>	dệt
212	<i>wed</i>	<i>wed/ wedded</i>	<i>wed/ wedded</i>	kết hôn
213	<i>weep</i>	<i>wept</i>	<i>wept</i>	khóc
214	<i>wet</i>	<i>wet / wetted</i>	<i>wet / wetted</i>	làm ướt
215	<i>win</i>	<i>won</i>	<i>won</i>	thắng ; chiến thắng
216	<i>wind</i>	<i>wound</i>	<i>wound</i>	quấn
217	<i>work</i>	<i>wrought / worked</i>	<i>wrought / worked</i>	rèn (sắt)
218	<i>wring</i>	<i>wrung</i>	<i>wrung</i>	vặn ; siết chặt
219	<i>write</i>	<i>wrote</i>	<i>written</i>	viết